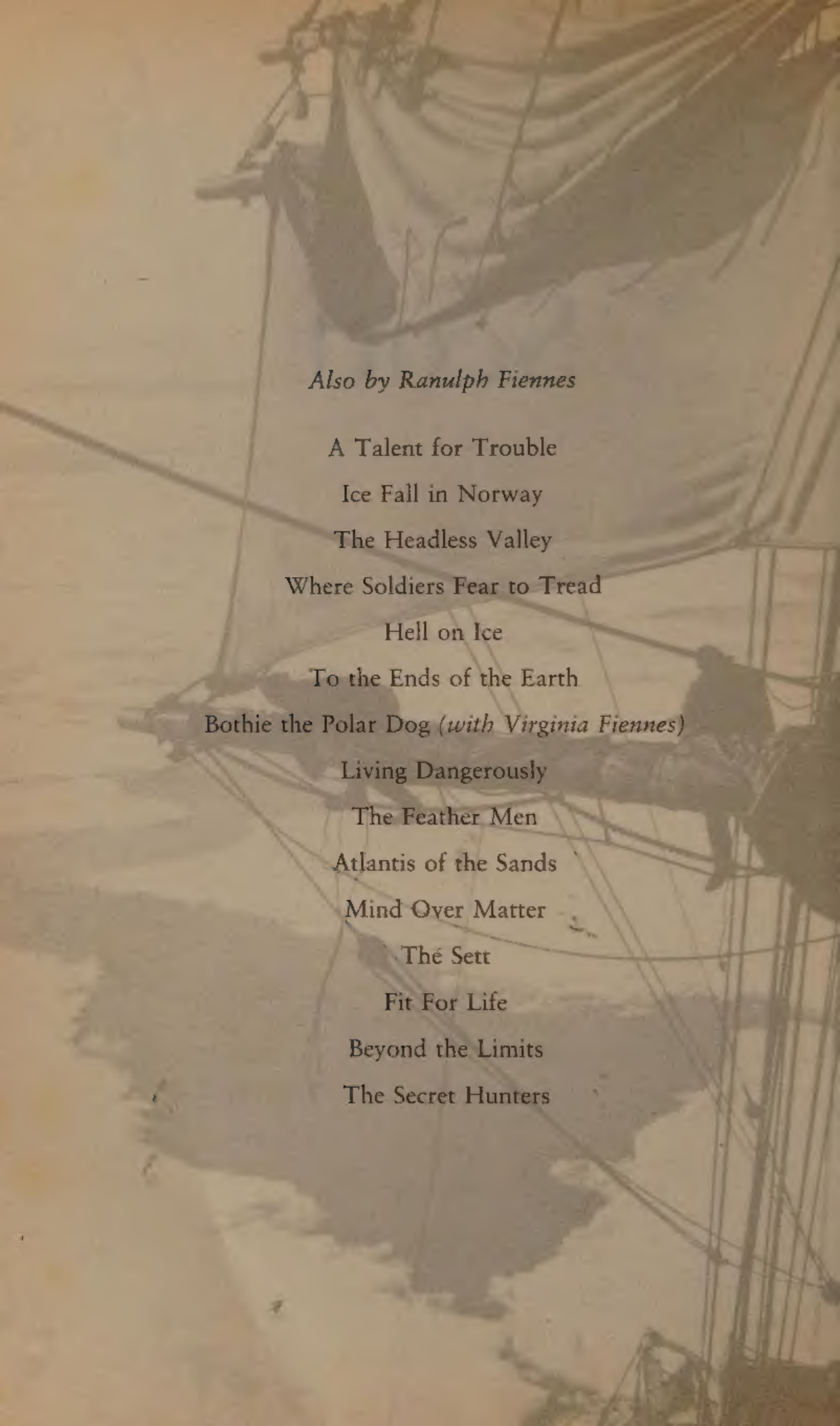
'A gripping tale of courage and adventure.'
Daily Mail

CAPTAIN Scott

RANULPH FIENNES

£2.50

CAPTAIN Scott



Also by Ranulph Fiennes

A Talent for Trouble

Ice Fall in Norway

The Headless Valley

Where Soldiers Fear to Tread

Hell on Ice

To the Ends of the Earth

Bothie the Polar Dog *(with Virginia Fiennes)*

Living Dangerously

The Feather Men

Atlantis of the Sands

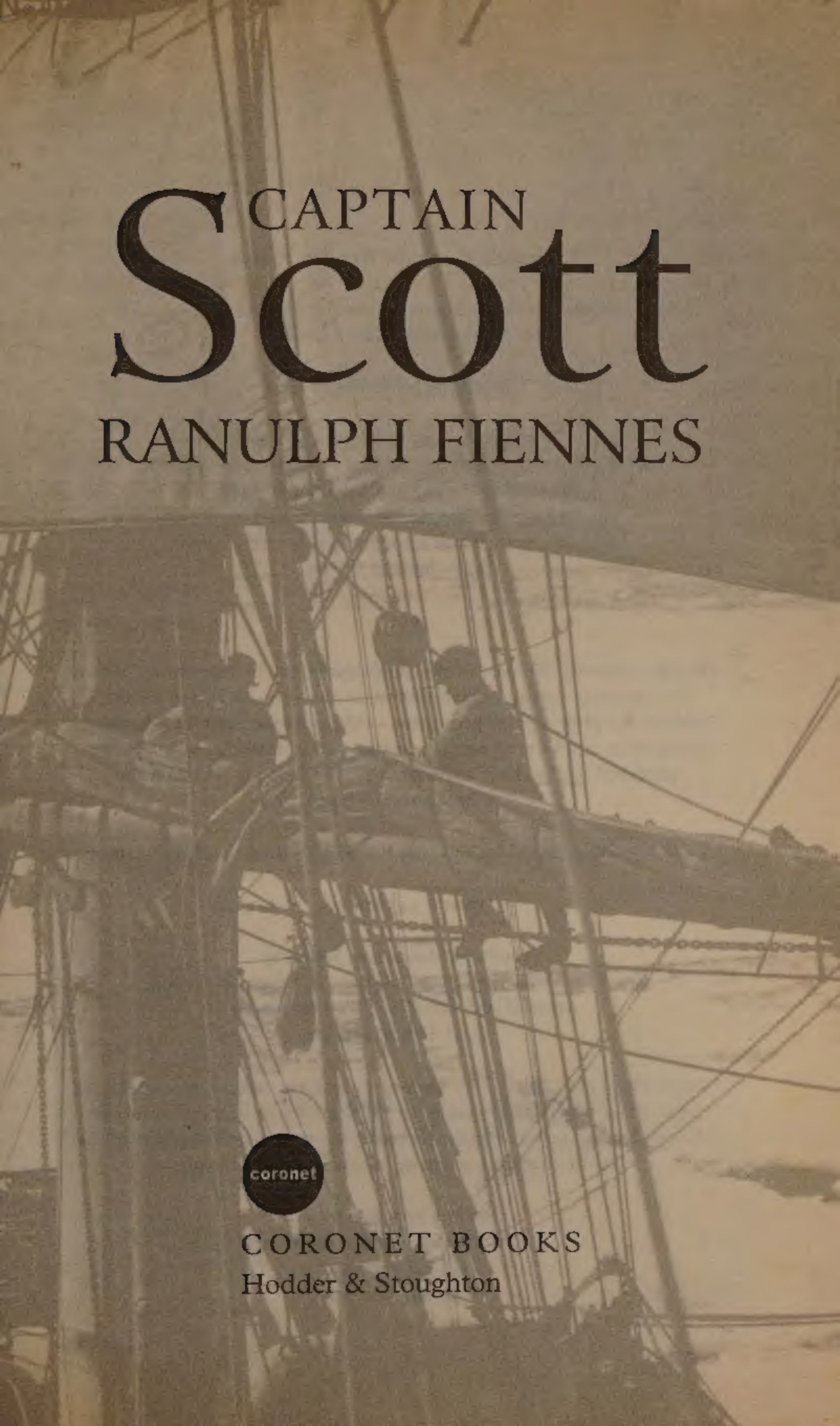
Mind Over Matter

Thé Sett

Fit For Life

Beyond the Limits

The Secret Hunters



CAPTAIN Scott

RANULPH FIENNES

coronet

CORONET BOOKS
Hodder & Stoughton

Copyright © 2003 by Ranulph Fiennes

First published in Great Britain in 2003 by Hodder & Stoughton
A division of Hodder Headline

This edition published in 2004

The right of Ranulph Fiennes to be identified as the Author of the Work has been asserted by him in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.
Title page picture: furling the *Terra Nova*'s main sail, Antarctica 1910, Royal Geographical Society, London
Maps by Neil Gower

9 10

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of the publisher, nor be otherwise circulated in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

A CIP catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library

ISBN 0 340 82699 1

Typeset in Monotype Sabon by
Rowland Phototypesetting Ltd, Bury St Edmunds, Suffolk
Printed and bound in Great Britain by
Clays Ltd, St Ives plc

Hodder Headline's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin

Hodder and Stoughton
A division of Hodder Headline
338 Euston Road
London NW1 3BH

To the families of the defamed dead

Contents

	Introduction	xiii
1.	Markham's Grand Design	1
2.	Torpedo Lieutenant Scott	15
3.	Order Out of Chaos	27
4.	Through the Pack Ice 1901–1902	42
5.	Nudging the Great Barrier 1902	52
6.	Dogs, Skis and Men	63
7.	The First Winter	74
8.	The Southern Journey 1902–1903	89
9.	Lost on the Plateau 1903–1904	110
10.	A Promise Broken	134
11.	The Race Begins 1910	165
12.	Near Disaster 1911	193
13.	The Worst Journey 1911	226
14.	The Dangerous Glacier	262
15.	The Black Flag	295
16.	Intimations of Tragedy	318
17.	The Greatest March Ever Made	339
18.	The Legacy	378
19.	The Last Word	405
	Appendix I Members of the *Discovery* Expedition, 1901–4	437
	Appendix II Members of the *Terra Nova* Expedition, 1910–13	440
	Acknowledgements	444
	Bibliography	447
	Notes on Sources	453
	Index	491

Maps

Ross Island to White Island	x–xi
The *Discovery* Expedition's Voyage to Hut Point	56
Scott's Sledge Journeys from *Discovery*, 1902–3	89
Overview New Zealand to South Pole	194
The *Terra Nova* Expedition	207
The Pony Disaster	222
Winter Journey, 1911	256
The *Terra Nova* Expedition	271
Scott's Last Journey	284

Author's Note

The explorers used imperial not metric so these have not been converted. To provide the metric equivalent to each and every mile would break up 'the story'. So, if you wish to convert, use the table below. On the other hand, the majority of people these days understand temperatures in Celsius so Fahrenheit is not used.

However, this policy does not apply to original quotes which are not tampered with.

Except if mentioned as statute miles in the original quotes, all mileages are given in nautical (geographical) miles.

1 statute mile (1,760 yards) = 0.87 nautical mile (1.6 km)
1 nautical mile (2,026 yards) = 1.15 statute miles (1.185 km)
1 nautical mile = 1/60th of a degree of latitude
1 knot = 1 nautical mile per hour

Weight bearing on the snow:

Ski = ½ lb per sq inch
Foot = 2¼ lb psi
Dog's paw = 3½ lb psi
Horse's hoof = 15 lb psi

To convert °F to °C, deduct 32, multiply by 5, then divide by 9

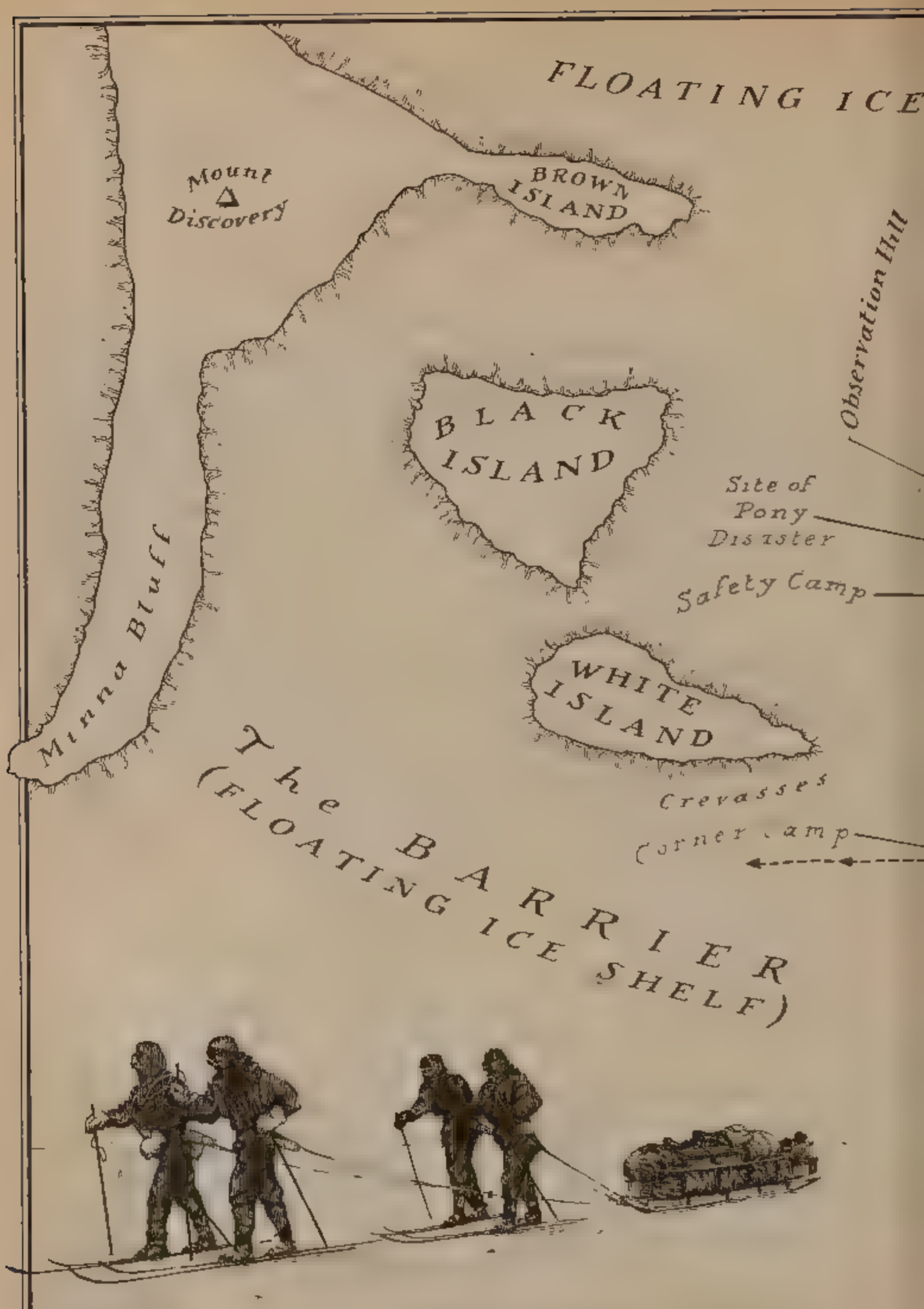
°F	°C
0°	−18°
−20°	−29°
−40°	−40°
−50°	−45.5°
32°	0°
+50°	+10°

Incidentals

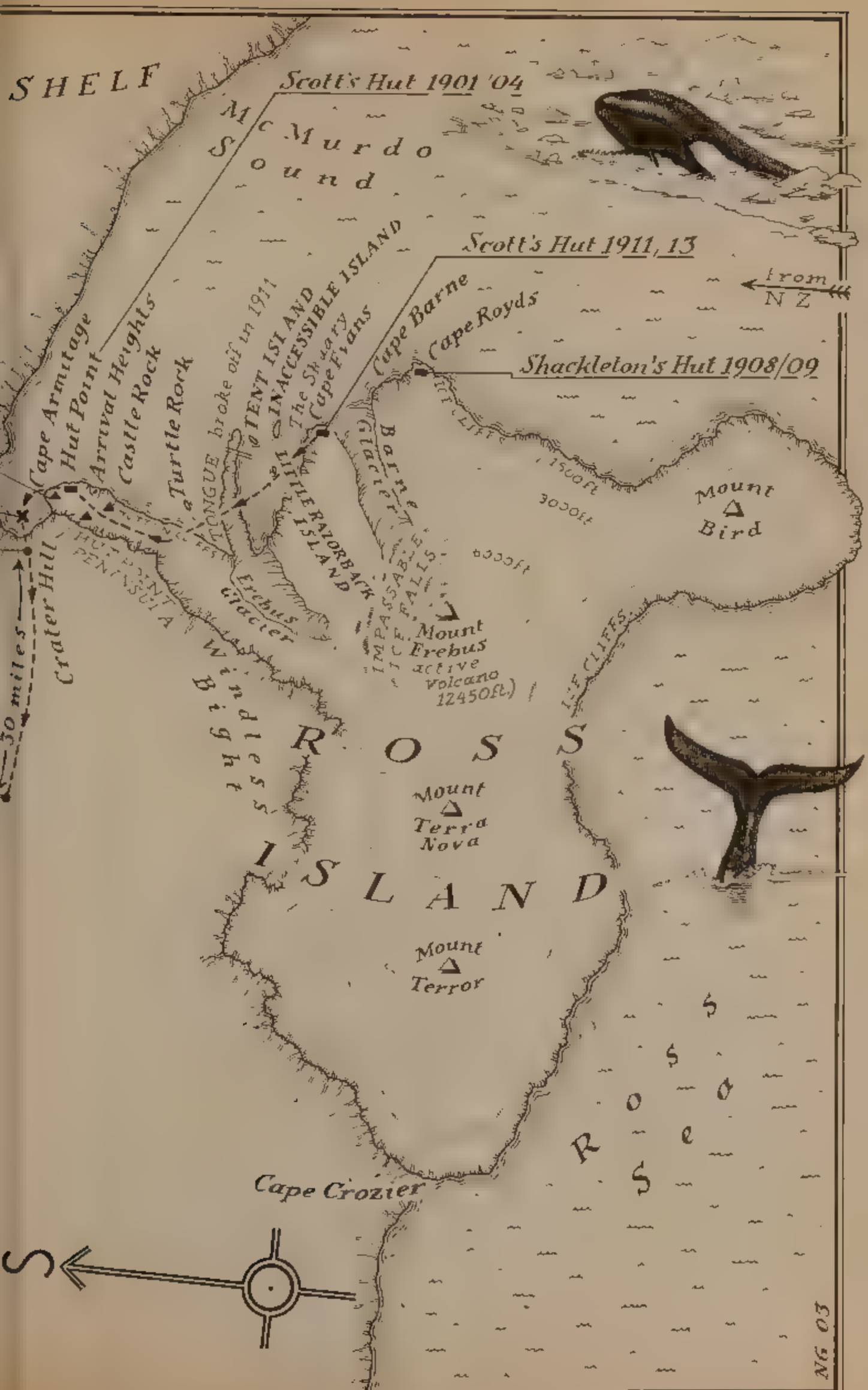
1 ounce = 28.35 g
1 gallon = 3.755 l
1 yard = 0.9144 m
1 foot = 0.3048 m
1 inch = 2.54 cm
1 fathom = 6 ft (1.8288 m)

£1 in 2003 was worth approximately £47 in 1900

1 ton = 2,240 lbs (1,016 kg)
One pound (1 lb) = 0.453 kg



ROSS ISLAND to WHITE ISLAND


SHELF
Scott's Hut 1901 '04
McMurdo Sound
Scott's Hut 1911, 13
from NZ
Cape Barne
Cape Royds
Shackleton's Hut 1908/09
Cape Armitage
Hut Point
Arrival Heights
Castle Rock
Turtle Rock
TONGUE broke off in 1911
TENT ISLAND
INACCESSIBLE ISLAND
The Sharp End
Cape Evans
LITTLE RAZORBACK ISLAND
Barne Glacier
IMPASSABLE ICE FALLS
Mount Bird
1500ft
3000ft
4000ft
Crater Hill
30 miles
Erebus Glacier
Mount Erebus
active volcano
12450ft.
ICE CLIFFS
Windless Bight
ROSS ISLAND
Mount Terra Nova
Mount Terror
Ross Sea
Cape Crozier
S
NG 03

Introduction

In the short polar summer of 1911 1912 five Britons and five Norwegians raced each other to the bottom of the world. Only the Norwegians returned. What happened to the British? We *should* know, since over fifty biographies have since been written about their leader. But there were no witnesses, so a few biographers without experience of the realities have played many tunes, invented many twists to the tragedy and told many lies. In this book I have done what my predecessors could not do; I have put myself in the place of the British explorers and used logic based on personal experience to reconstruct the events. No previous Scott biographer has manhauled a heavy sledgeload through the great crevasse fields of the Beardmore Glacier, explored icefields never seen by man or walked a thousand miles on poisoned feet. To write about Hell, it helps if you have been there.

I do not in any way identify with Scott, nor favour him over his two brave and brilliant contemporaries, the Norwegian Amundsen and the Irishman Shackleton. All three made deadly errors, had grave character flaws and, at some point in their careers, caused other men to die. All that remains by way of evidence as to why the British died are the diaries of the dead and the writings of their surviving friends who described the way things went on journeys under Scott. Some of the writers, for a time, loved or hated Scott and they often made their feelings clear. I have used their words and my experience to give an unbiased account of the way Scott and his men made history.

1

Markham's Grand Design

Three men were close to death on an ice plain in Antarctica in March 1912. They had all reached the South Pole with Robert Scott but were failing on the return journey. Lawrence Edward Grace Oates, known to his expedition colleagues as 'Titus', soon to become an archetypal hero of his century, died slowly over many days and nights of intense pain, finally choosing the moment of his end by going outside the tent, where Antarctica killed him in minutes. Oates once said of his leader: 'I dislike Scott intensely . . . he is not straight, it is himself first, the rest nowhere, and when he has got what he can out of you, it is shift for yourself.' So Oates shifted for himself.

A few dire days later, two other members of Scott's polar team joined Oates in death. One, Scotsman Henry Bowers, had said of Scott: 'I am Captain Scott's man and shall stick by him right through.' And, 'he is one of the best and behaved up to our best traditions at a time when his own outlook must have been the blackness of darkness.' And in a letter to his mother: 'The Captain is a splendid leader and one for whom I have the greatest admiration.' The other, doctor and chief scientist Edward Wilson, the most respected man on the expedition, had written: 'There is nothing that I would not do for him. He is a really good man.' 'He is thoughtful for each individual and does little kindnesses which show it . . . I have never known him to be unfair.' 'I have known him now for ten years, and I believe in him so firmly that I am often sorry when he lays himself open to misunderstanding. I am sure that you will come to know him and believe in him as I do, and none the less because he is sometimes difficult.'

Slowly freezing and starving to death beside Bowers and Wilson, Scott also died and a controversial legend was born which, ninety years on, still retains the fascination and power to spark bitter debate and raise hackles. Scott remains an enigma and Wilson's hope that 'you will come to know him and believe in him' has not been realised, despite some four dozen biographies.

Through two world wars the Scott story was used as an heroic example of how to live and how to face death when fighting for your country. Since the 1980s Britain has looked more askance at her past and, led by a different type of biographer, the modern cynical version of the popular Scott story has become one of failure: a failure caused by typical British imperialist qualities at a time when the empire was beginning to wane. A modern biographer, who paints a portrait of any early twentieth-century individual using the critical yardstick of today's moral and social standards, will produce a mere cartoon of the original personality and I know the present day Scott story to be a travesty of the truth.

I have read all the pertinent literature and correspondence about Scott and his men but, unlike his previous biographers, I have shared Scott's experiences over many years and so can the better comment on his decisions and his behaviour, bringing a sympathy for and practical understanding of the severe problems Scott actually faced. When Robert Scott, an unknown lieutenant in the Royal Navy, came to lead two of Britain's attempts in the early part of the twentieth century to unravel the mysteries of Antarctica, nobody even knew if the icy South Pole was on land or at sea.

In 1900 the British still ruled the greatest and richest empire in the history of the world, surpassing even that of the Romans. Scott,, born in 1868, no rebel or liberal, had experienced little of life beyond full time immersion in naval training schools since his early teens. He was very much a product of his age and nation. London was the world's key capital city. Other royal families copied the ways of (or married into) the British mon-

archy. British coal, steam and steel, driven by British genius for invention, had powered an unprecedented Industrial Revolution. During the nineteenth century the Royal Navy, and a network of institutions, such as the East India and Hudson's Bay Companies, controlled one-third of all world trade. British technology (using other people's raw materials) produced goods that were considered the best and the most reliable in the world. Half of all the ships on the oceans were British. At the turn of the century the empire spread over ten and a half million square miles, twenty-six per cent of the earth's land surface. Over 400 million people were ruled by the British and, thanks to the imperial invention gutta-percha, 83,500 miles of rubberised undersea cable linked most of these (in Africa, Canada, India and Australia) to the mother country, by telegraph, another British invention. The language of Victoria's tiny island was already creeping over the world, as were British fashions, customs and sports, insurance and the use of postage stamps.

By the end of the nineteenth century Scott and his contemporaries really did live in Great Britain, not little England. This inclined them to feel that other races would do well to copy proven British ways of doing things rather than the other way round and they were proud of the way they ruled. The British, besides encouraging and policing the fairest system of imperial government on record, strove to impose systems of justice alongside free movement of goods and labour throughout the empire.

'To have been born English,' said Cecil Rhodes, 'was to have won first prize in the lottery of life.' He went on to state that: 'we happen to be the best people in the world' and, 'Ask any man what nationality he would prefer to be, and ninety-nine out of a hundred will tell you that they would prefer to be Englishmen.' He even considered that Britain could and should re-colonise the United States. This was excessive, but at the height of empire, the British did exhibit both a healthy confidence and sometimes an unhealthy arrogance. Although it didn't feel like that to my grandfather, who worked for Rhodes and was

a typical empire-builder of his time. He would have been shocked and hurt if anyone called him arrogant or narrow minded just because he believed deeply that the British way was the best way.

One field where for three centuries Britain and the Royal Navy had held undisputed sway against all-comers was that of polar exploration. Already, for the last quarter of the century, Clements Markham, President of the Royal Geographical Society, had been an ardent campaigner for another polar push. In the south, James Cook from Yorkshire and James Clark Ross from Scotland had pioneered the way, whilst up north in the Arctic, successive naval expeditions held the 'farthest north' record, ensuring Britain's priority of geographical arrival and thus, by unwritten law, of tenure. The common British view, which today sounds somewhat extreme, was that if nobody lives there, the empire rules. *Terra incognita* was really *terra pax britannica*.

What little was known about Antarctica came largely from the early Royal Navy excursions. In 1773 Cook's ship, HMS *Resolution*, achieved the first crossing of 66°33'S, the Antarctic Circle. Four years later, on his third attempt to penetrate the Antarctic pack ice, he reached 71°S, some 1,100 miles from the South Pole and 300 miles south of the Circle. Unimpressed by what he saw there, Cook wrote: 'Should anyone possess the resolution and the fortitude to [push] yet further south than I have done . . . I make bold to declare that the world will derive no benefit from it.' Although Cook would not live to know it, the ice and bad visibility on both his voyages halted him a mere day's sailing from the coast of Antarctica. He always believed in the existence of a hidden ice-bound continent but in 1779 he was killed by Hawaiians, and the Admiralty sent no more ships south for forty years to pursue his discoveries.

One of Cook's many achievements involved reports of seal colonies on the island of South Georgia. Seal fur was greatly in demand and, since Britain's cities were burgeoning at the time,

they needed oil to fuel the increased street lighting. Oil from the blubber of whales and seals supplied this key necessity but, although great 'blubber fleets' sailed every year to Greenland, demand was fast outstripping dwindling supplies. Cook's report of South Georgian seal colonies was greeted with all the joy of a twentieth-century oil-strike and the fleets headed south. Some skippers, seeking ever new seal colonies to slaughter, discovered islands and spotted fleeting glimpses of mainland Antarctica, not that they recognised it as such.

Fifty years after Cook and seventy years before Scott, a naval officer, James Clark Ross, made his name by being first to reach the north magnetic pole in 1831. The Royal Society then persuaded the Admiralty to send Ross south to bag the other magnetic pole, the position of which was important for navigation. But when he reached Tasmania to set up a magnetic observatory and to take on supplies he learnt that French and United States ships were just ahead of him on the same quest, so instead of following them due south he headed south-east into seas where no vessels had previously sailed. When his ships, *Erebus* and *Terror*, reached the pack ice he simply kept going, for both were strongly built 'bomb vessels', strengthened to fight and survive in pack ice. After only four days the pack suddenly vanished and Ross sailed on south into an open sea.

Ross carried on towards the magnetic pole with growing excitement, as his dip-circle needle pointed to 85°, suggesting that the magnetic pole could not be far although the geographic one was still more than a thousand miles away. Then land was spotted, high mountain peaks some 280 miles south of the Antarctic Circle. Ross called the promontory ahead of him Cape Adare and, landing on a nearby island, claimed the region for Britain, naming it Victoria Land. He then followed the mountainous icebound coast a further 360 miles south, until an entirely new and formidable feature, which he called the Great Ice Barrier, barred his way for it ran east–west across his path, a solid wall of ice up to 200 feet high.

Ross's subsequent reports highlighted two geographical features which all future explorers seized upon: at that point of his voyage, where he first ran up against the Barrier, he described a 12,400-feet high active volcano, Mount Erebus, and a deep bay in the Ross Sea, which he named McMurdo Sound. Four hundred miles further along the Barrier and east of the volcano, where Ross ended his exploration that season and turned back, he reported briefly seeing the appearance of land at 71°40'S. Two years later, by the time Ross finally headed home in 1843, he and his men had opened the way to the Pole.

Her Majesty's admirals next despatched HMS *Erebus* and HMS *Terror* north to complete the discovery of the North-West Passage (the long sought but illusory quicker passage to the Indies) under an already celebrated but ageing Captain Sir John Franklin. Franklin's two illustrious vessels that had achieved so much under Ross down south headed north in 1845 and vanished into thin air, along with their complement of 129 naval officers and men. Over a period of fifteen years some thirty expeditions were despatched to search the treacherous seas north of Canada and 'find Franklin'. These failed forays helped to solve the mystery of the North-West Passage and they surveyed much of the Arctic archipelago with a hundred sledge trips covering 80,000 kilometres. Canada's sovereignty over the region is based on this achievement. But the last of the Franklin searches also saw the end of Royal Navy activities in the region.

In 1875 the Admiralty sent HMS *Alert* and *Discovery*, under Captain Sir George Nares, to reach the North Pole. *Alert* achieved a new 'farthest north' record of 83°20' (400 miles from the Pole), but Nares returned home to semi-disgrace for four of his men had died of scurvy. Once again the Admirals turned their backs against polar exploration.

A generation before Scott's, there was thus a twenty-five-year blip in the Admiralty's ongoing policy of nudging the north and, when Scott was a boy in Devon, eminent individuals in London were deeply worried that Britain had left 'the North' to pioneers

from other lands for far too long. Britain's supremacy at polar exploration was under threat from foreigners. By 1881, when Scott left school and was sent to HMS *Britannia* training ship in Plymouth, it was clear that those foreigners most threatening as north polar rivals were Americans and Scandinavians, including Robert Peary of the US Army Engineers and Fridtjof Nansen, a young Norwegian scholar.

Scott's destiny as an explorer lay in the hands of the eminent geographer Clements Markham, born in 1830, and the grandson of the Archbishop of York. Aged thirteen, Markham left Westminster School and joined the Royal Navy. As a midshipman aboard HMS *Resolute* in 1851 he searched for Franklin alongside Lieutenant Leopold McClintock, who devised the manhaul sledging techniques which impressed Markham and convinced him that fit and disciplined men were far more reliable for long, arduous journeys through the broken pack ice of the Canadian Arctic than were the dogs used by the Inuit, or Eskimos, as they were called at the time and so also in this book. Ironically, McClintock was later to use dog teams successfully on long polar journeys.

It is fair to say that there were two schools of opinion among the Franklin search veterans and quite a few favoured dogs. Admiral Sir George Richards, a famous long-distance sledger of the 1850s, considered that sledges 'dragged like ploughs' and wrote: 'There will never be any more Arctic Sledge travelling . . . I would confirm anyone who proposed such a thing in a Lunatic Asylum.'

After his Arctic experience Markham resigned from the Navy, partly because he disliked the excessive punishments inflicted on bluejackets by way of maintaining discipline. Joining the India Office, he smuggled seeds of the cinchona tree, jealously guarded but ruthlessly exploited by the Peruvians, into India to provide a source of quinine in the first major step towards the control of malaria there. This led to his appointment as private secretary to the Secretary of State for India and, in 1863, five years before

Scott's birth, he became Honorary Secretary of the Royal Geographical Society (RGS), where he worked doggedly to encourage British involvement in polar exploration. He also launched a campaign, which was eventually successful, to end all flogging in the Navy. On becoming President of the RGS he announced unequivocally and unsurprisingly the main aim of his term would be the mounting and execution of a British Antarctic expedition. He attacked both the Admiralty and the Treasury with zeal for the support and funds needed for his project. Two years later he helped organise the Sixth International Geographical Congress in London, which passed a unanimous resolution that the signatory countries, including most of the major powers in Europe, should do their utmost to conduct scientific exploration of the unknown region of Antarctica. Although pleased with the outcome, Markham is likely to have felt uncomfortable that the first two expeditions to take up his challenge were led by a young Norwegian named Carsten Borchgrevink with some British money in tow and a Belgian naval officer, Adrien de Gerlache de Gomery.

Rebuffed in his fund-raising overtures to the Treasury, Markham fretted and plotted and decided to appeal to public sentiment and purses. His fund raising appeal was two-pronged. He aimed at boffins who, in an age of burgeoning scientific research, were eager for knowledge of a region about which so little was known and by 1898 Markham had won over the scientific establishment and presided over an august Joint Committee of the RGS and Royal Society. With such an organising body at its very core, the expedition could hardly avoid major involvement in scientific research. And he aimed at patriots.

Patriotic fervour was alive and kicking with the Queen's forthcoming Diamond Jubilee. The public, Markham knew, clamoured for sensational achievement from its own national heroes. To be first at the South Pole was a tantalising dream and one calculated to shake pennies from pockets, but Markham was at heart a would-be scientist and knew his expedition must be

a three-in-one entity involving the Royal Navy, geographical exploration, and collecting scientific data. This would satisfy all that Markham held most dear, his love of country, his geographical hobby-horse and, above all, his belief that the naval way was the best way. Markham wanted more than mere static studies conducted from a polar base. He thirsted for a geographic quest, the finding and mapping of new lands and, ideally, a new 'farthest south' record.

Markham was very much a man of his era and many of the Victorian ideals that he held were contradictory to today's commonsense views, such as 'any fool can be uncomfortable'. Struggle is no longer an end in itself, even if fitness manuals still proclaim the 'no gain without pain' mantra. But in Markham's day the very act of a good fight well fought against adversity, or even merely against the elements, was greatly admired throughout most levels of society and most religions. Go to a newspaper library and look up any popular Victorian penny news-sheet and you soon realise that Victorians thought, spoke and acted quite unlike us. Markham was not, as has been suggested, old-fashioned, hidebound, narrow-minded, or even traditional in his admiration for the naval methods of exploration. The Navy patrolled the seas and was responsible for almost all polar knowledge. He was simply normal, a man of his times.

By 1899 Markham's appeal had netted a mere £14,000 (£658,000 in today's money) and things were looking far from rosy, when out of the blue came a £25,000 (now £1.2 million) cheque from a rich Hull businessman and Fellow of the Royal Geographical Society, Llewellyn Longstaff, who told Markham he wished to contribute to the advancement of knowledge of our planet. The government unexpectedly chipped in with £45,000 (£2.1 million) on condition that a like amount be raised elsewhere. The RGS added £7,500 (£352,500) to Markham's existing total so, with £90,000 (£4.2 million) in the coffers, Markham was at last adequately financed.

Not a moment too soon. The Norwegian Borchgrevink was

already en route back to New Zealand after an uneventful and static winter spent in a prefabricated hut at Cape Adare. He had not explored the interior and had undertaken very little scientific work of note. He had been first to spend an entire winter in Antarctica but he was no longer a threat to Markham's plans. The Germans planned a scientific expedition, under Professor Erich von Drygalski, underwritten with £50,000 (£2.3 million) by their government. Drygalski was well ahead in organising his expedition with an impressive custom-built vessel, *Gauss*. By 1901, when this and Markham's expedition were to finally set off, a Swedish venture had been announced led by explorer Otto Nordenskjöld, while in Edinburgh the scientist William S. Bruce was organising a Scottish National Antarctic expedition.

The moment his £90,000 was ascertained, Markham advertised for a suitable leader to handle the Markham polar enterprise under his guidance and using methods of his choosing. In particular, Markham required maximum Royal Navy participation, Royal Navy discipline and Royal Navy methods of travel in polar terrain. Since he also wanted the best scientific results, his leader could either be a scientist or a Navy man, but his strong preference lay with the latter. Markham was seventy years old at the turn of the century, a manipulative spider with a web that radiated from his RGS headquarters. He was charming, but uncompromising, crusty, dictatorial and devious. Since his death a handful of detractors have tried to assert that, despite his long marriage, he was a closet homosexual, but any clues that might confirm this innuendo are both flimsy and ambiguous.

The main charge levelled by Markham critics was his preference for man against dog to haul sledges. The Royal Navy expeditions, which for three centuries had opened up the north (without help from Eskimos, Scandinavians, Americans, or, except in a few cases, dogs), had progressed through often nightmarish sea ice conditions by a well-tried manhaul system. Once their ships became icebound, foot parties of hardy bluejackets

would sometimes haul their tents and stores over ice floes using lifeboats as crude sledges. Whenever stretches of open ocean separated the floes, they simply launched their boats and carried on. As time went by runners were devised to help this process, or sledges were carried for use where fewer open-water obstacles were expected. Markham had been greatly impressed by this system during the search for Franklin aboard *Resolute* in 1851.

While Markham admired and wished to emulate the McClintock manhaul system, another school of polar travel based on Eskimo skills had also developed in the 1850s, largely pioneered by employees of the Hudson's Bay Company in Canada such as the Orkney man Dr John Rae, who led various survey expeditions and decided to copy, where useful, the ways of native North Americans who lived and travelled in the polar wastes. Rae's results were spectacular. He surveyed over 870 miles of new terrain and led one of the more successful Franklin searches, but his report on the fate of the vanished expedition included indications of cannibalism which the British public found difficult to accept.

Americans Charles Hall, Elisha Kane, Francis Schwatka and Robert Peary all followed various Eskimo or Lapp practices, including travel with skis, dogs and light sledges. Fur clothing and footwear, igloos and seal-hunting were all employed in the Americans' race towards the North Pole and those Europeans most accustomed to snow and ice in their own backyard, the Scandinavians, were not slow in joining in. Fridtjof Nansen and Otto Sverdrup developed native methods in their own different ways, as did Roald Amundsen. Unlike the British, the Americans and Scandinavians had no entrenched methodology. They were able to look around and experiment without bucking an existing system, since they had none. They profited hugely as a result and all praise to their astuteness, but one man's brilliance is not necessarily another man's folly.

Hindsight forgets this, so today the likes of Peary and Amundsen are easily labelled 'brilliantly versatile', whilst their British

rivals, the Markham school, are castigated as 'too arrogant to learn from the primitive races'. Such criticisms were wrong. Markham knew that Eskimos could survive in those same desolate regions where Franklin's men had died; indeed he wrote learned articles extolling Eskimo skills at survival. But he did not believe Eskimo ways were applicable to polar explorations. Eskimos, he pointed out, had no need to extend their geographical knowledge. Their fishing, trapping, hunting and meat storage skills depended upon a stable base, or bases, from which to operate. Applying such Eskimo skills to ship-based expeditions in search of a 2,600-mile-long marine passage or new territory was not as straightforward as modern critics often suggest.

When, early in 1899, Markham advertised for an expedition leader in both Royal Navy and scientific circles, he also had his own secret short list of favoured Navy officers drawn up over a period of a dozen years or more. Markham is often accused of being stuck in a rut but, far from favouring the old school polar maestros from among his old Franklin-search buddies, his essentials for leadership demanded youth rather than experience. Elderly men, he asserted, were not accessible to new ideas and lacked the energy to meet emergencies. Since he wanted someone with technical ability and a generally scientific turn of mind he directed his search to regular gunnery or torpedo lieutenants. His list started:

Captain George Egerton, 46 years, 'the very best man for it, but too late'.

Commander John De Robeck, 38 years, 'hard as nails, lots of nerve, an excellent messmate'.

Commander Murray J. Park, 37 years, 'keen sportsman, hard as nails, very energetic'.

Commander Owen Gillett, 37 years, 'overflowing with energy'.

Commander James W. Combe, 'clever and full of resource'.

Robert Scott, thirty-one years, with no comments attached, was listed in sixth place out of eleven officers.

Markham had first noticed Scott, one of twelve midshipmen in *Rover*, in the West Indies back in 1887, during a race between two Navy ships' cutters. 'I was much struck by his intelligence, information, and the charm of his manner.' Ten years later Scott was a torpedo officer aboard *Empress of India* training off the Spanish coast when he again bumped into Clements Markham, who enquired about Scott from Captain, later Admiral, Sir George Egerton (once Markham's favourite for the leadership spot) who knew Scott's command abilities well. Egerton sent Markham a list of officers he recommended, with Scott as his preferred choice.

In June 1899 Markham posted an official advertisement for a leader and only two days later quite by chance he met Scott, who was in London on leave. They chatted and Scott learned two things: a national expedition to Antarctica was planned and a leader was being sought. Doubtless with Markham's overt encouragement, Scott duly applied for the post and then returned to his job aboard HMS *Majestic*. He was thirty one years old and supporting his mother and two sisters from his pay packet. He needed promotion and leading polar expeditions, he had heard, was a quick way up the ladder.

Who was he? An obscure torpedo specialist destined to die in fearful circumstances but, in doing so, to become a hero of the British empire.

2

Torpedo Lieutenant Scott

There is no concrete evidence as to Scott's family origins, but all known clues point to the Lowlands of Scotland, possibly the village of Haddington in East Lothian. In 1908, the Garter King at Arms told Scott's sister that her family were descended from the House of Buccleuch and a Jacobite rebel hanged by the Duke of Cumberland's men. One of this rebel's sons or nephews, a Robert Scott, born in Leith in 1745, fled to France, but later settled in Devon, not far from Plymouth, as a schoolmaster. His four sons joined the Navy and fought Napoleon. Two of them, Robert and Edward, retired as naval paymasters, bought the Hoegate Brewery in Plymouth, and an attractive property called Outlands, near Devonport, the naval section of Plymouth.

Edward's sons included an engineer, who designed and supervised the building of the Royal Albert Hall, whilst Robert sired eight children, the youngest of whom, John, a delicate boy, was trained to take over the family brewery while his four sturdier brothers all served abroad in the forces. In 1862, John married Hannah Cumming, the daughter of a Lloyd's surveyor, who produced four daughters and two sons, one of whom, the future polar explorer Robert Falcon, was born in Devonport on 6 June 1868, and known in the family as Con.

Including a maid, a nanny and various ageing Scott relatives, Outlands housed seventeen people and bulged at the seams. One of Robert Scott's sisters described their childhood as happy but simple. They never travelled outside Devon and their one annual outing was to the Plymouth Theatre pantomime. A neighbour said later: 'we frequently robbed orchards just for the fun and excitement of being chased by a fat farmer with a long whip

. . . Con was very unselfish. He had a pony and I had not so he shared him with me.' Scott went to the village school, riding there and back on his pony Beppo. William Hands, the brother of the Outlands' lady's maid, remembered years later how he and Con would catch eels and go boating on the Outlands' pond. 'His temper never lasted for very long and he was always out for fun and games. He was a very good friend and when you were around him you were never without a laugh.'

Like his father, John, Scott was born delicate, weak-chested, moody, quick-tempered and inclined to laziness. Although hard exercise later toughened him physically, he was to die still fighting his inherited blights of depression, temper and indolence. His hatred of human or animal suffering, a natural squeamishness at the sight of blood, and a tendency to seasickness would have had little consequence if Scott had taken over the family brewery. But mainly due to parental pressures and influenced perhaps by tales of derring-do from their four brave uncles, Scott and his younger brother Archie both accepted careers in the forces.

John Scott was a pillar of the local establishment, a magistrate, churchwarden and chairman of the regional Conservative Association. But Outlands' expenses slowly outstripped the brewery income and, when invited to stand for Parliament, Scott senior sadly had to decline for want of funds. He was a frustrated if not embittered man with an explosive temper, not improved when he sold his ailing brewery and retired on the invested funds to tend the Outlands' garden.

Scott adored his mother, loved his sisters and enjoyed a close friendship with his only brother. From his father he learnt the consequences of a quick temper and its poor effect on others, so he fought to squash his own irascible tendencies from an early age. John Scott was ambitious for his children and disappointed when Con obtained less than excellent school reports. Freud would doubtless deduce a strong motive here for Scott's subsequent struggle to forge his own way to success. One reason for the initial appearance of Scott as the runt of the Outlands' litter, in addition

to his inherited physical frailty, was a marked ability to daydream. His father called him Old Mooney and, although his surviving relatives failed to recall the subject matter of his many daydreams, they all stressed his tendency to switch off into a dream world both at home and, more seriously, at school.

From his cosy family nest and local village school, the eleven-year-old Scott was thrust into the harsh reality of a naval cramming school at Fareham called Foster's, or Stubbington House. There he remained until, at thirteen, after holidays spent with further cramming to counter the daydreaming, he passed the exam to be a naval cadet and joined the training ship *Britannia* moored in the River Dart. Temporarily shocked out of indolence and abstraction, Scott learnt the realities of discipline, sparse conditions, conformity, punctuality and, above all, the Royal Navy way of life. Since his innate moodiness, quick temper and shyness were clearly adverse traits in his new surroundings, Scott learnt to suppress or at least hide them. Four years earlier the family doctor had predicted Scott's inability to join the Navy due to his narrow-shouldered, pigeon-chested physique, but life on board *Britannia* slowly wrought physical changes in the frail cadet. He learnt to work the rigging a hundred feet above the deck in high winds, sleep in a hammock, compete at numerous drills and survive on salted meat, cabbage and hardtack biscuit.

Plymouth was both the birthplace of the Navy and the fount of the empire. From her sturdy womb had issued forth the likes of Richard Grenville, John Hawkins, Walter Raleigh, Martin Frobisher and Francis Drake to name but a few. But now, although Britannia's Royal Navy still ruled the waves, the Navy was living in the past, forever recalling the glories of Nelson and Trafalgar, and by the time the fifteen-year-old Scott joined his first sea-going ship HMS *Boadicea* as a midshipman in 1883, Prussian victories over France had begun to frighten the Royal Navy's smug and cobwebbed admirals into abandoning their yacht club ways to peer nervously at changing naval technology.

Warships in 1883 Britain were still equipped with obsolete

muzzle-loading guns. This and other such embarrassments had to change and an already accelerating process of modernisation coincided with Scott's naval apprenticeship. The First World War was still thirty years away but German and British naval technological rivalry was already under discussion by a group of long-sighted officers, including the great moderniser 'Jacky' Fisher, even as the young midshipman Robert Scott learnt the traditional rudiments of running a warship alongside the 450 other inmates of *Boadicea*, the flagship of the Channel Squadron.

Like the majority of mankind, Scott was not a so-called natural leader of men. Asserting himself over others did not come easily, so he had to learn the process as he might any other naval skill. Likewise confidence and decisiveness rather than introspective dalliance were expected, so Scott learned to acquire a new persona. At this time he also learnt to live off his annual pay, which was £30 (now £1,400), and, after two years in *Boadicea*, he moved to the smaller brig *Liberty*, where his commander described him as a 'zealous and painstaking young officer'. Three months later, in the battleship HMS *Monarch*, he was described as 'promising', which bode well for his eventual promotion prospects. As a midshipman, or snottie, in a warship Scott was a teenage pupil learning to become a teacher. His four-year apprenticeship would lead, if he survived, to acceptance as a sub-lieutenant, the lowest grade of officer, and entry to the Royal Naval College at Greenwich for the studies required to be a full officer.

Scott learned to work with his sailors and slowly discovered how best to control them. Often enough he would find himself a teenage duty officer in charge of shore-leave parties, boisterous at best but frequently surly and drunkenly aggressive. Not a job for a weak character and one made easier by learning the lore and the ways of the lower deck.

In December 1886, aged eighteen, Scott was posted to HMS *Rover* of the Training Squadron, where his report summarised him as 'intelligent and capable'. He worked hard in the know-

ledge that, as he had learnt on the grapevine, promotion came either through genuine merit or through family connections. Lacking the latter he focussed on hard grind and discovered in passing that he possessed a steel-like determination. After his year at Greenwich, he emerged near the top of his class with four out of a possible five first-class exam results.

There is no record of Sub-Lieutenant Scott showing any interest in exploration. His short but fateful meeting in *Rover* with Clements Markham had registered in the older man's expedition recruitment diary, but not in the younger man's career dreams as he moved on from Greenwich to active service in a cruiser, HMS *Amphion*, based near Vancouver.

En route to his new appointment in Canada, Scott joined an old tramp steamer in San Francisco bound for Alaska via Vancouver. A violent storm lasting several days caused chaos. Heavy seas swept the decks and poured into the galley, where terrified women and children, sick and freezing, crammed the floor-space. Many of the Californian miner passengers, drinking heavily, began to brawl. Screaming, squalid chaos reigned, with no food or hot drinks to alleviate the misery, and the crew concerned only with the ship's survival. Unable to call on Royal Navy discipline, the twenty-year-old Scott acted off the cuff. He took charge, organising some of the passengers into groups to nurse the sick, swab the filth, find and dole out food, and generally alleviate the nightmare. He used his fists and his presence to sort out those miners who failed to stop fighting. Scott did not need the disciplinary framework of the naval hierarchy to enforce his way, merely the strength of his personality. His years as a snottie had obviously taught him that, although the Navy system might be the best way, it was not the only way.

Whilst based in North America, Scott was briefly posted to another ship, HMS *Caroline*, but was soon back in San Francisco, where he fell for a married American girl, the daughter of an ambassador, and flirted briefly with the daughter of a Canadian judge. He also began what was to become the lifelong

habit of recording his thoughts and his worries in a diary. One entry at that time shows that the dark depressive moods of his childhood, a medical condition perhaps, were still with him: 'this slow sickness that holds one for weeks. How can I bear it? I write of the future; of the hopes of being more worthy; but shall I ever be? . . . No one will ever see these words, therefore I may freely write, "What does it all mean?"'

He returned to Britain as a full lieutenant in 1891, keen to specialise as a torpedo officer. His boss in *Amphion* had given him a good report as 'a young officer of promise who has tact and patience in the handling of men. He is quiet and intelligent and I think likely to develop into a useful torpedo officer.' Scott's decision to specialise, in a technical branch of the Navy then growing in importance, made good sense from a promotional viewpoint. Torpedo warfare tactics were increasingly important to the rival German and British Navies and the latter, waking up rather late in the day to their vanishing superiority, had quickly built 200 torpedo boats and ordered seventy new warships in the 1890s, so torpedo specialists were in great demand. Since Scott had no family connections to help him in the rat-race of promotion, technical expertise must have seemed like an excellent alternative route, so Scott spent the next two years in an old wooden torpedo training ship, HMS *Vernon*, in Portsmouth, where his annual salary rose to £182 10s (£8,554) a year (from which all uniform costs were deducted).

He studied torpedo sea-launching, harbour attack and defence systems, and advanced electricity in *Vernon*, at the same time enjoying himself when on leave at Outlands. The Scotts were a loyal and close clan. His best friends were clearly his brother Archie, with whom he rode, played golf absentmindedly, and their sisters with whom they sailed along Devon's rivers. Asked about her brother's girlfriends, his sister Grace said: 'his romantic nature caused him to idolise women . . . His affections were easily caught though not easily held.'

By now Scott's pigeon chest and physical frailty had been

replaced by a strong, lean figure and a determined athleticism. He was proud of his fitness. His first cousin Bertie Scott remembered meeting him in London 'on a bitter March morning, the only person I saw that day who wasn't muffled up to the eyes. He hadn't even an overcoat on.' Scott told him, 'I don't feel the cold.' The same cousin recounted how Con had forced himself to visit the local abattoir in a (futile) attempt to cure his innate horror at the sight of blood.

In naval terms Scott was doing well, gaining the highest marks of the year for seamanship at his rank and coming first out of nineteen other contenders in the practical exams at the Royal Naval College, Greenwich. Scott's time in *Vernon* was a success, the naval records showing only favourable comments.

HMS *Vulcan*, his first specialist posting, was technically the most advanced cruiser in any navy uniquely combining the roles of warship, torpedo depot and floating dockyard. Six torpedo boats gleamed on upper deck davits alongside a fearsome array of torpedoes and gun batteries. Torpedo Lieutenant Scott was no longer a graduate but an acting naval officer in the world's most powerful navy. Scott was pleased as punch with the *Vulcan* job. He was, he wrote to his father, 'precisely in the same position to gain experience as if on board a battleship. To fall back on the torpedo work again at which I have worked exceedingly hard, I look upon the ship as the best practical experience that could possibly befall an officer; in fact I look upon myself now as an authority on the only modern way of working a minefield and such like exercises.' The records show that his captain agreed with this assessment, so Scott's future prospects in his chosen career looked rosy.

He wrote to an old girlfriend in British Columbia: 'At present I have neither rest nor peace to pursue anything but promotion.' But Fate interfered with his plans when, going home on Christmas leave in 1894, he heard that the family was bankrupt, his father's retirement investments all gone. He and his brother Archie agreed to put their careers on hold to help their family

in this hour of need. Archie gave up his job as a Royal Artillery subaltern and joined a Nigerian regiment with better pay and less expenses. Scott applied for a transfer to HMS *Defiance*, a torpedo training ship at Devonport, close to home. Of their sisters, Rose became a nurse, Ettie an actress, and the other two learnt the trade of dressmaking.

The brothers' contribution allowed their parents to weather the storm. Their sixty three-year-old father let their beloved Outlands to a wealthy linen draper and then found a job as a brewery manager near Shepton Mallet. Once the family was safely resettled, Scott focussed again on his favourite subject, the development of torpedoes and mines. By now he was recognised as an expert and was tasked to produce the section on mining for the Royal Navy's Torpedo Manual. He was also well versed in the principles of surveying, magnetism and electricity, hardly a man who preferred the old way to the new.

In 1896, aged twenty-eight, Scott applied for a sea-going post and joined HMS *Empress of India*, a Channel Squadron battleship. Clements Markham happened to be a guest aboard a sister warship and, eleven years after their first meeting, the two men met again, briefly, in the Spanish port of Vigo. Scott again made his mark on the older man, who remembered him despite the many hundreds of other naval officers he had checked out over the intervening years. 'I was more than ever impressed by his evident vocation for command,' Markham recorded. A year later he asked Scott's then captain, George Egerton, for his opinion of the lieutenant as a potential polar leader. 'He is just the fellow for it,' was the reply, 'strong, steady, genial, scientific, a good head on his shoulders, and a very good naval officer.'

By now Scott ruled the roost in HMS *Empress of India*'s torpedo department. The 1896 Admiral's Inspection gave his unit a flattering report. Scott's sixty sailors responded well to his command. For fifteen long years he had worked the Navy system with British bluejackets and no single complaint about his man management was ever recorded. It is safe to assume

that his men liked him and that he liked them. The Royal Navy way worked for Scott. Later, in Antarctica, when he had the choice to abandon it, he saw no reason to do so.

In the summer of 1897 Scott was promoted to torpedo lieutenant in *Majestic*, the Channel Squadron's flagship, a crack warship far superior to any other ship afloat at the time, with a crew of 700 under the command of Prince Louis Battenburg, Queen Victoria's grandson. Two of Scott's brother officers, Michael Barne and Reginald Skelton, were destined to join him in Antarctica, as would three of the crew, James Dellbridge, David Allan and Edgar 'Taff' Evans.

In October 1897, only four months after Scott joined *Majestic*, his father, John Scott, died of heart disease, aged sixty-six. Workers from the Hoegate Brewery which he had managed for the previous three years carried his coffin to the local churchyard, followed by a long procession of mourners. The old man had been popular in the parish. Con and Archie moved their mother to London, along with their two dressmaking sisters, to start a small business in Beauchamp Place. They further agreed to find £200 (£14,000) a year between them to help their mother in her widowhood. A year later Archie died of typhoid and Scott, aged thirty, became the sole support of his mother and unmarried sisters. He had always lived frugally, but now he pared his expenses to the absolute minimum.

Six months after Archie's death, Scott was on leave in London visiting his family at the dress shop. Heading down Buckingham Palace Road, on his way out of Victoria Station on 5 June 1899, he spotted Sir Clements Markham and greeted him. They walked together to the old man's home in Eccleston Square, where Markham told him about his polar expedition plans. That very week and after years of negative response, the British government had promised Markham enough funds to launch the expedition as soon as he could mount it. So Markham was on the lookout for a suitable man to command the venture and, for anyone with a tendency to superstition, Scott's coincidental

appearance at that auspicious time would suggest a powerful nudge by the Fates. Whether or not either man was influenced by this thought will never be known, nor will the content of their conversation, but two days later Scott applied by letter for the post of expedition leader. Markham's journal, penned many years later, stated: 'I was just sitting down to write to my old friend Captain Egerton of the *Majestic* about him, when he was announced. He came to volunteer to command the Expedition. I believed him to be the best man for so great a trust.'

Maybe Markham's memory was muddled, or perhaps Scott did go round to see him after sending off his written application. Either way the burning question is why, out of the blue, did Scott decide to change the whole direction of his promising career only two days after hearing about this expedition to an area about which he knew nothing? He admitted later that he had no predilection for polar exploration and his sister Ettie, with whom he was in constant touch at the time, said he 'had no urge towards snow, ice, or that kind of adventure.'

In thirty years of reading about explorers and their motives for choosing their way of life, I have grown to suspect there is usually a great difference between the explanation they choose to give (especially in autobiographies), and the truth. My own motive for leading expeditions has always been to make a living, but the financial sponsors who have made my journeys possible have shown distinct disapproval of such a commercial response to the media question: 'Why do you do it?' They would prefer a more romantic rationale along the lines of Mallory's ageless 'Because it is there'. I have always stuck to my guns, but I can sympathise with explorers who have at least adjusted their memory of the why and the wherefore for public consumption.

Scott, like Shackleton, had spent many years in ships listening to the romantic escapades of older naval officers, tales of action, war and remote regions, yet all he experienced day after day, year after year, was an endless series of textbook exercises. Markham offered adventure. The great climber Edmund Hillary

said of the Antarctic explorer Vivian Fuchs: 'I felt that the underlying urge . . . came more from an honest love of adventure and the pride and prestige that he felt would accrue to his country and himself if he were the first to succeed in such a long and hazardous undertaking.' Robert Swan, who attempted to follow Scott's footsteps in the 1980s, wrote: 'I have to feel that life is worthwhile. If or when we pull this [journey] off, I will have done something extraordinary which will give me the opportunity I long for.' And Reinhold Messner, who crossed Antarctica in 1989, said: 'I undertook the expedition because I was curious and was seeking adventure again. Moreover I was a person with a hunger for recognition, with ambition and the need for enhancement.'

Scott may have responded to any or all of such general urges: fame and fortune, love of country, a craving for excitement, the hope for promotion and respect, the curiosity of the amateur scientist. All these, mixed with more mundane personal reasons, probably passed through Scott's mind during the brief two days between his learning of the unique opportunity and the penning of his application. He had always felt a deep responsibility towards his mother and sisters and would have considered the implications of being away from them for a likely minimum of two years, but by then his sister Ettie had married an ambitious politician, who had already helped their mother financially and who, Scott knew, would look after the family in his absence.

Scott must have been flattered by the approval of a prestigious personality like Sir Clements Markham, President of the Royal Geographical Society, one-time searcher for Franklin and friend of many admirals. To fail to apply for the leadership post after Markham had shown enthusiasm and possibly even urged his application would have seemed churlish and, after all, the project might never actually come to fruition, with or without Scott as leader.

It is tempting to imagine that Scott's career was in the doldrums and his main motive was merely to climb the ranking

ladder. But it wasn't and Scott was not a taker of wild risks. The expedition might not succeed. He might prove inadequate in his as yet unknown skills required to organise and execute such a venture, whereas he was already well on his way to achieving specialist success through his chosen field of torpedo and mine warfare. Why throw this all away? Viscount Goschen, a First Lord of the Admiralty, was indeed soon to deplore the possibility that Scott would be 'relinquishing a brilliant navy career'. Markham's polar project was not a miracle fail safe passage to promotion and glory.

His application duly lodged with Markham and his shore-leave over, Scott returned to *Majestic* and concentrated on the down-to-earth business of naval warfare. From time to time Markham wrote to keep him posted on his chances of selection as expedition leader. These appeared minimal because the expedition Committee had thirty-two argumentative members, only seven of whom were naval officers, and many of whom wanted a scientist, not an officer, to lead the venture.

Scott's application was strongly supported by his commander, Captain Egerton of HMS *Majestic*, by his Admiral, by the First Lord and the First Sea Lord of the Admiralty, but it took a year before his supporters finally won the day. Meanwhile he continued to shine at sea and his only comment about the Antarctic opportunity in letters to his mother was: 'I have my eye on another thing which I fear is a bit out of my reach.' Well within his reach, however, thanks to his service record, was promotion to Commander in the Navy lists to be published in June 1900.

The world must have seemed a wonderful place for the thirty-two-year-old Scott when, on 9 June that year, Markham signed his appointment as leader of the National Antarctic expedition and on 30 June he received promotion. He was now Commander Scott. In August 1900 his posting to *Majestic* ended and his work as Britain's great hope for priority in polar exploration began. His learning curve would not be steady; it would be viciously precipitous.

3

Order Out of Chaos

Imagine a floating office worker, for such Scott had been since a teenager, being faced with the task of organising in only fourteen months one of the most ambitious scientific expeditions ever mounted. Since the work was to take place in an entirely unknown region, to whom could he go for sound advice on what skills and knowledge to obtain?

In the 1970s I wanted to organise and lead the first expedition to circumnavigate the world on its polar axis. Working flat out with a dozen helpers and modern communications, it took my wife and me seven long years of full-time work to mount the project. Scott, completely untrained in any polar skill, without knowledge of what problems would confront him in Antarctica, without even an efficient telephone system in his office, had exactly one year and two months in which to build Clements Markham's brainchild into the reality of a suitable ship, crew and equipment. To fit in with the Southern Ocean's narrow window of navigable summer ice, his ship must leave Britain in the month of August. A host of reasons dictated departure in August 1901 and no later. Scott started work in June 1900.

Markham must have loomed like a colossus in the young man's esteem. At that time, Markham defined the very terms of British polar exploration and without him there would have been no expedition. He had taken twelve long years to force the Antarctic expedition to become a reality. Single-handedly he had raised the funds required to build a suitable ship and single-handedly he was responsible for Scott's leadership appointment. However, the reason ten months had passed between Scott's application and final appointment as leader in April 1900 was

the existence of various committees Markham had found it necessary to form, mainly from RGS and Royal Society 'men of influence'. Without such committees Markham could neither have persuaded his sponsors, especially the Treasury, to part with the huge sum of £90,000, nor the Admiralty to lend the paid services of Scott and others to the expedition.

Markham recognised his committees were a necessary evil, 'wild professors' and 'howling cads', he called them, and a millstone around his neck. He seldom ceased to rail about them to Scott. Many of these 'wild professors' from the Royal Society faction had only voted for Scott when their own leadership contenders had proved unsuitable or unwilling and, even a year after Scott's appointment, they were still making progress anything but smooth for him. A critical difference between Markham's faction and his mainly Royal Society opponents was the basic issue of the expedition's chief aim. Should it be a wide array of scientific research programmes, including oceanography, magnetic studies and geology, or should its main thrust be geographical exploration and survey? Markham and the RGS faction favoured the latter.

Five months before Scott's appointment as overall leader, the committees had voted a geologist with sound expedition experience, one Professor J. W. Gregory, as director of scientific staff for the expedition. The general idea was that Gregory and his scientists would be landed at a suitable spot on the Antarctic coast, where he would set up a base hut from which to send out research forays. Once the expedition ship had dropped off the Gregory team it would sail off to conduct coastal survey and dredging work. In the eyes of the Royal Society the ship's captain might hold the title of leader but in reality he would merely provide a taxi service for Gregory.

Markham's group, on the other hand, saw their Royal Navy commander both as ship's captain and overall expedition leader, in charge of all operations, including overseeing the work of the director of scientific staff. Scott made his own position clear to

the Joint Committee only a month after he became active leader. He sent them a list of five conditions on which his continued acceptance of the leadership role would depend.

1 I must have complete command of the ship and landing parties. There cannot be two heads.
2 I must be consulted on all matters affecting the equipment of the landing parties.
3 The executive officers must not number less than four, exclusive of myself.
4 I must be consulted in all future appointments both civilian and others, especially the Doctors.
5 It must be understood that the Doctors are first medical men, and secondly members of the scientific staff, not *vice versa*.

I am ready to insist upon these conditions to the point of resignation if, in my opinion, their refusal imperils the success of the undertaking.

That Scott needed to insist, as leader of the expedition, that he was to be consulted about the make-up of those he was to lead shows how serious the Committee problem was.

Scott would have to perform a number of miracles and quickly. Six days a week he left his mother's flat early to walk to Green Park, then jog to the expedition's rented office at Burlington House in Savile Row. There he joined the affable twenty-one-year-old Cyril Longhurst, who had already acted as Markham's expedition secretary for over a year, time spent largely recording the minutes of endless sub-committee meetings. Markham had persuaded the Royal Navy to lend the expedition three other officers. He personally selected Lieutenant Charles Royds to be Scott's first lieutenant, whilst Scott chose two of his old messmates from HMS *Majestic*, Lieutenant Michael Barne and Engineer Reginald Skelton.

The expedition ship was under construction in Scotland and Scott went there whenever he could find time. But he knew that this was not enough, so he sent Skelton and Barne to the Dundee

dockyard to watch over the ongoing work. No major scientific expedition, such as Markham envisaged and Scott was to organise, had left Britain for a quarter of a century. Its exact aims were still being argued over by the Committee members who controlled it some five weeks before its launch date. This could have been hopelessly confusing and distracting for Scott, but he concentrated on those things he knew would be needed whatever the Committee's eventual decisions. His ship must travel through the tropics and through the roughest seas in the world to reach Antarctica. It must withstand huge pressures from the icepack and be able to serve, if need be, as a floating or icebound base for two or even three years. From the ship Scott's men, sailors and scientists, must have the equipment and transport to take them over unknown regions of land or sea ice.

Professor Gregory, chief scientist designate of the expedition, complained about Scott's general organisation, suggesting he was casual and generally ignorant about the correct equipment. Worse still he seemed unaware of these failings. Such words from a man naturally annoyed that his own leadership position had been clumsily handled by the Committee and usurped by Scott were understandable, but Scott was both aware of and openly honest about his ignorance and did intend to make up for it. He read a great deal, in what spare time he could find, about previous polar journeys and was much helped in this by the Librarian of the RGS, Hugh Robert Mill, a normally critical person, who described Scott as having a most sympathetic character, 'and we were friends at once.' Mill said that Scott 'if anyone, could bring order out of the chaos which had overtaken the plans and preparations'. Mill also recorded Scott's speed in grasping the essentials of oceanography and meteorology, as well as his industry in reading and absorbing everything that had been written about the Antarctic.

Several sea routes could be followed to reach previously reported geographical features on the known outer edge of Antarctica, but Markham favoured McMurdo Bay, which Ross had

discovered sixty years before, on the principle always followed in Arctic exploration that 'in going to the unknown, they should start from the known'. On reaching McMurdo Bay (now McMurdo Sound), Scott should, in Markham's opinion, but not that of his opponents, anchor his ship and winter aboard in readiness for patrols into the interior the following spring. Such forays would be leaps into the unknown territory to the south and west of McMurdo Sound. Markham wrote: 'The main object of the expedition, then, would be to explore this Antarctic continent by land, to ascertain its physical features, and above all to discover the character of its rocks, and to find fossils throwing light on its geological history . . . everything else should be left to the discretion of Captain Scott.' Various versions of the 'Expedition's Aims' reached Scott from the Committee as time went by and none of them mentioned a race to reach the Pole. On the other hand, there was an unwritten understanding that Britain must be first if polar contention should arise.

On the supplies front Cadbury's gave the expedition 3,500 pounds of chocolate. Birds produced generous amounts of custard powder. Nine tons of flour came from Coleman, butter from Denmark. Space to move inside Scott's office was soon at a premium. Scott was later criticised for shipping quantities of Danish butter through the topics when, surely, he could have used butter from New Zealand, his launch point for the last leg to Antarctica. We, too, in the 1970s, used Danish not New Zealand butter simply because, like Scott's, it was freely given in great quantities.

A key item on Scott's list was sledging gear. Contemporary biographers are apt to aim blanket criticism at British polar travellers for failing to learn from the natives. But by adapting many, but not all, Eskimo travel techniques Parry, James Clark Ross and McClintock, all of them Royal Navy, gradually increased the length of their manhaul sledge journeys to the point where they could cover 1,175 miles in seventy days. Their sledges were modifications of native models and James Ross

made several of his pioneer journeys together with Eskimos, thereby enabling him to attain the north magnetic pole.

Scott noted that, since then 'England has not maintained her reputation in the sledging world', and 'it is abroad therefore that the modern traveller must look for all that is latest and best in this respect'. Scott was referring to Oslo, known then as Christiania, and the great Norwegian polar explorer Fridtjof Nansen, who he visited personally for advice.

Nansen was also advising Professor Erich von Drygalski, the leader of the German Antarctic expedition, whose voyage was due to start at the same time as Scott's. After leaving Nansen, Scott visited Drygalski in Berlin and was shocked by the efficiency and the advanced state of the German preparations. Back in London he impressed Markham with his description of the German chain of command and, as a result, was given full independent powers answerable only to Markham himself.

Markham also introduced Scott to a Merchant Navy officer and Arctic veteran, Lieutenant Albert Armitage, whom Markham wanted Scott to take on as his ice pilot and second-in command. Armitage met Scott and impressed him with his first-hand experience of polar work for, only three years earlier, he had explored Franz Josef Land, north of Russia, as the second-in-command of the Jackson Harmsworth expedition. Armitage was in turn charmed by Scott and agreed to serve under him. He took over all matters relating to sledging equipment.

Armitage favoured ponies for hauling, arguing that ponies can be eaten by humans and Siberian ponies can stand the severest cold and drag heavier loads in proportion to their own food needs than can dogs. Their meat is also tastier than dog. The argument that ponies need grass, of which there would be none in Antarctica, whereas dogs could feed off the abundant seal and penguin harvest, was specious since any travel in Antarctica's interior would be quickly out of reach of the sea and into regions as meatless as they were grassless. Fodder bales or seal meat caches would have to be pre-positioned whichever

animal was used. Though Armitage favoured ponies the question was wide open. Should men haul the sledges, as Markham and the veteran McClintock clearly expected, or dogs which Nansen had encouraged both Scott and Drygalski to use?

Scott noted that Nansen's famous first crossing of the Greenland icecap in 1889 had been completed by manhaul alone but Russian and Canadian backwoodsmen used dogs to pull sledges in mostly flat tundra country and in the 1890s Nansen and Robert Peary of the USA had started to emulate them with some success, so the messages were mixed. Scott knew that he could not count on smooth ice down south. In the unknown region he might face rough surfaces over which Nansen had agreed dogs were not much use. Men, Scott knew, could cope with the rough or the smooth. Armitage, with experience of both dogs and ponies, but a preference for the latter, was eventually given the job of obtaining two dozen suitable dogs.

With Armitage handling sledging gear and dogs, Scott could spend more time worrying about his ship. By the end of the year 1900, he was personally involved in decisions affecting the ship's design, decisions not made any easier by the many different functions required of the vessel, nor by the fact that the expedition's Ship Committee had decided what type of ship was needed long before Scott had appeared on the scene.

Markham had invited tenders for building the ship back in 1899. A Barrow in Furness yard sent back a cost estimate of £90,000 (£4.2 million) and the Dundee Shipbuilding Company a better offer of £66,000 (£3.1 million). Markham haggled the Scots down to £45,000 (£2.1 million). They were, he knew, the only firm left in Britain with the knowledge and the craftsmen to construct a large wooden sailing ship. To cope with the immense crushing power of sea ice a thick wooden hull was imperative, so the Dundee shipwrights ordered wood for an inner lining of Riga pine, a framework of Scottish oak, an internal skin of pitch pine, Honduras mahogany and oak, and an outer skin of elm and greenheart.

The resulting hull thickness averaged twenty-six inches and, in the bows, eleven feet of solid wood. Her design was based on the lines of Scottish whalers well used to working polar ice, but she was to be one of the very last wooden three-masted ships to be built in Britain. Equally, she was the first to be custom-designed for the purpose of scientific exploration since a 1694 vessel built for the scientist Halley of comet fame. Her engines and boilers could be easily drained of water to prevent freezing, she had no portholes or unnecessary protuberances below the waterline, and both her rudder and propeller could be jacked up and removed from the deck. Asbestos lining between structural layers was included as insulation and no iron was used within thirty feet of the deck-mounted magnetic observatory. The final cost of the fully modified *Discovery* was £51,000 (£2.4 million) including the engine.

Fifty years earlier coal-powered steamers were already competing for cargo with sailing ships, but they were far slower and limited by their coal-endurance. The risk of running out of coal was high for long voyages into the unknown so both sail and steam must power Markham's vessel. Scott's copious correspondence with Reginald Skelton, his old *Majestic* colleague and chief engineer designate of *Discovery*, shows that they spent many hours discussing and dealing with flaws they spotted in the design. Scott's first team members, Albert Armitage, Charles Royds and Michael Barne, worked hard supervising the modifications and the additional requirements necessitated by newly planned oceanographic or magnetic research work.

Nonetheless, as was hardly surprising for a ship built after its era, the finished article was less than perfect. She leaked in spectacular fashion, her bilge pumps were unreliable (not good on a leaky ship), she consumed coal greedily, and some of her sailing responses were snail-like. Skelton, a critical man who spoke his mind openly on all things, wrote that the shipbuilders had 'performed their contract in a most scandalous manner' and he found their iron and steel work 'perfectly disgraceful'.

Scott's other major task was recruiting the crew. Scott was clear in his own mind about the way he wanted to run his expedition and therefore the type of man required. 'From a very early date I had set my mind on obtaining a naval crew. I felt sure that their sense of discipline would be an immense acquisition.' He had grave doubts as to his ability to deal with a different class of men. Only three months before the launch-date, the Admiralty agreed to a maximum of some twenty warrant officers, petty officers and sailors.

Legally Scott was not entitled to run *Discovery* as a Royal Navy unit under the Naval Discipline Act and everyone on board knew this. However, each new volunteer, whether sailor, officer or scientist, signed on under Captain Scott as master and voluntarily accepted Royal Navy conditions. Scientists were to be treated as officers and were to eat their meals in the ship's saloon, dubbed the wardroom, rather than on the mess deck. Other expeditions of the period, run on more democratic lines, often suffered from insurrection or outright mutiny from one or more members. These included expeditions under Amundsen, Shackleton, Mawson, Borchgrevink and de Gerlache. Scott led two major polar expeditions involving over sixty often highly critical and difficult characters without a whiff of mutiny. For complex and demanding ventures by groups of disparate individuals, such as accompanied Scott, discipline could be a highly useful and healthy basis of operations. Scott was a firm disciplinarian but fair and humane in all his dealings with his men.

Some of Scott's scientists on both his expeditions found the Navy system extremely difficult to accept. A later colleague of Scott's, Canadian Sir Charles Wright, expressed his surprise at how British naval captains were cut off from the crewmen in their own little cabins and passed down orders second or third hand through their officers and petty officers. And, how their orders would be obeyed without question whereas, as a scientist, he was accustomed to question things. Scott faced another potential source of division, especially on the mess deck, because of

the Admiralty limits on Navy volunteers. Scott had been forced to fill the gap by accepting Merchant Navy seamen and there was a deal of historic antagonism and scorn between the two services.

One common myth current today is that the Merchant Navy ran on some form of democratic consensus system and discipline depended on officers with strong personalities or big biceps. In fact, Merchant Navy crews had strict hierarchies and rules of their own and apprentice cadets were not supposed to mix with their social inferiors from the lower deck. There was even a marked social coolness between Merchant Navy engineer and non-engineering officers. Scott's team of volunteers came together gradually. In the light of the violent personal clashes later rumoured to have scarred the expedition, it is important to understand the key characters' backgrounds.

Charles Royds, from a Hampshire family, was accepted to join the expedition even before Scott. He was a protége of Markham, who had great respect for his uncle, Wyatt Rawson. Tall, handsome and strong, Scott's first lieutenant proved both efficient and popular with everyone. Scott, recognising his capacity for hard work, was inclined to overwork him, but he seldom complained.

Reginald Skelton was Scott's first choice for the key post of *Discovery*'s chief engineer. They knew each other from service in *Majestic* and Scott showed sound judgment in his selection. Scott also asked him to keep a photographic record of the expedition, so he became a first-class photographer.

Michael Barne, another of Scott's messmates from *Majestic*, volunteered as soon as Scott approached him. His position in *Discovery* was that of second lieutenant under Royds.

Neither Markham nor Scott selected the next two volunteers. News magnate Alfred Harmsworth (later Viscount Northcliffe), the owner of the *Daily Mail*, gave the expedition £5,000 (£235,000) on the condition that he could put forward two experienced polar men as his nominees. The Committee had

little choice but to accept. Dr Reginald Koettlitz had been the doctor on a three-year long Arctic expedition led by Captain Frederick Jackson and sponsored by Harmsworth. He was trained in London, a keen botanist and a specialist in the treatment of scurvy, which at the time was still not fully understood and an ever present threat to isolated polar ventures. Harmsworth's other nominee, Lieutenant Albert Armitage, has already been mentioned. Merchant Navy man, Arctic veteran, and friend of Nansen, Armitage was, polar wise, the most experienced man in *Discovery*. He wrote many years later about the nature of his appointment:

I went to see Scott, and dined with his mother and sister and him. I was charmed by him from the first. He said to me, 'You *will* come with me, won't you? I cannot do without you.' I felt that we would be friends; I wanted to see the Antarctic . . . Scott had no experience of the work that he was undertaking; I had three years' knowledge of it. I was to be his adviser, a sort of dry-nurse, and knew enough of human nature to fear the result. I threw my reasoning aside. I will say at once that I never met a more delightful man than Scott to work with during our collaboration in the preparation of all matters in connexion with the expedition.

Armitage became known as the pilot and was to be responsible for navigating *Discovery* through the Antarctic ice. Many years later, embittered perhaps, he was to claim he had been asked by Markham to lead the expedition long before Scott was appointed.

With Armitage as his navigator and second-in-command, Charles Royds as first and Michael Barne as second lieutenant, Scott then had a powerful personality thrust upon him as third lieutenant, the last posting to be filled. Ernest Shackleton was born in Kildare in 1874 and lived in Ireland until he was ten, when his father took up a doctor's practice in Croydon, near London, and packed young Ernest off to Dulwich College public school where he excelled at boxing and poetry. Aged sixteen,

he was apprenticed to a Merchant Navy ship, joining as ship's boy and rising to the rank of third officer on the Union Castle line by the age of twenty-five. Shackleton was first mate in *Gaika* late in 1900, taking troops to Cape Town for Boer War duty, when he met Cedric Longstaff, the son of the businessman whose £25,000 (£1.1 million) had recently saved Markham's expedition. Cedric, charmed by Shackleton, who had already applied to join and been turned down by the expedition, persuaded his father to pressurise Markham into accepting him. So Markham passed Shackleton to Scott in March 1901 with his full backing.

It is not difficult to imagine the two officers meeting in Scott's cluttered little headquarters. At that first meeting both men wore tweed suits, highly polished boots and uncomfortably high stiff white collars. They were both strong, ambitious characters, magnetically charming when they wished and stubborn if pushed. Neither had any particular desire to explore or even visit Antarctica for the joy of the great unknown, but both hoped the venture would lead them on to greater things.

How did Scott appear to Shackleton at that first meeting? He was a few inches shorter, but well built and broad chested, with strong firm features and steady blue eyes. Recently promoted to commander, full of newly acquired knowledge from Norway and the confidence born of having dealt firmly with most of the Committee problems, Scott did not need uniform to exude an aura of authority. But he did need an experienced third lieutenant and the Royal Navy would supply no more officers. So he asked Armitage to check the background of his fellow Merchant Navy officer and, not surprisingly, Armitage returned a glowing report on the Irishman.

Fate dealt Scott a decidedly dubious card on this occasion, for Ernest Shackleton was to become Scott's nemesis and rival, at least in the opinion of four generations of journalists and the numerous biographers of both men. Jealousy, duplicity and even hatred were the ingredients of this ever-popular myth.

Scott now had a full complement of officers but the hunt for

scientific staff continued. One of the Committee, the President of the Zoological Society, was searching for an assistant doctor to help Koettlitz with his zoological work and noticed Dr Edward Wilson drawing birds at the London Zoo. Impressed by his artistic talents and likely ability as a scientific illustrator, he asked Wilson to apply for the expedition. At twenty nine, Wilson, who had worked at St George's Hospital in London, seemed at a loose end for his heart was not into medicine and his passion was nature, all aspects of which he illustrated with great skill. Scott so took to the affable bird artist that he ignored a medical report which declared Wilson unfit owing to tuber cular scars on one lung, common enough at that time. He was taken on as *Discovery*'s assistant surgeon in December 1900, another fine example of Scott's good judgment of character.

The scientific complement was rounded off with marine biologist Thomas Hodgson from Plymouth Museum, Cambridge geologist and palaeontologist Hartley Ferrar, and Australian Louis Bernacchi, a physicist and expert researcher on magnetism who had been to Antarctica with Borchgrevink in 1899, and summarised his experience with the words: 'No living thing walks or creeps or flies there.'

For a ship of *Discovery*'s size and accommodation space she would be overcrowded. They had settled for a company of forty seven, including five scientists and thirty salaried Navy officers and men, more than the Navy had originally promised. As it turned out, when scientific shore parties were out sledging and *Discovery* was exploring the coast, every man would be needed and kept at full stretch. There is a detailed crew list at the rear of this book.

Scott's enemies meanwhile had been preparing a last-gasp confrontation. Their champion, Professor Gregory, the prospective science director, fiercely opposed Markham's intention that *Discovery* should winter in Antarctica since that would mean Scott would command at the base camp. That being so, Gregory feared that he would be unable to keep his important science

programme on track, because journeys of geographical discovery or mere adventuring, as he saw it, would take precedence. For a while Scott and Gregory co-existed but in March 1901 Gregory placed a formal complaint to the Committee that Scott had ordered some item of scientific gear without consulting him.

Refusing to accept a position subsidiary to Scott (or presumably *any* ship's captain of Royal Navy origin), Gregory resigned in May 1901 and a new science director, Dr George Murray, Head of the Botanical Department of the British Museum, agreed to take over the job of training the various scientists until *Discovery* reached Australia, at which time he would return to Britain leaving Scott as *de facto* science director. Scott and Gregory in fact parted on good terms. Scott was still writing to Gregory in a friendly vein after the return of the expedition and Gregory's review of Scott's book contained no criticism.

Scott would then become not merely ship's captain but unchallenged leader of all aspects of the expedition. It could be said that Markham's Committee machinations had finally won the day for his man, and averted the pitfalls of dual command which had beset earlier expeditions.

The aims of the *Discovery* expedition can be summarised as coastal exploration to the west and east of McMurdo Sound with inland sledge journeys to include geological and magnetic work on land and at sea where possible. The 1902 winter was to be spent in the ice and a second winter, if funds were available by then, to be spent at sea in the deep south. In an unknown region, plans that allow for flexibility are sensible plans. *Discovery* was launched in Dundee on 21 March 1901, engines were fitted, then she sailed under her own steam to a jetty in London's East India Dock, where Scott's team swarmed all over her as instruments, equipment and cargo began to arrive on the quayside.

Queen Victoria had died earlier in 1901 and the Boer War was going badly for Britain. The *Discovery* expedition was a tonic for Londoners, who crowded the quayside and sometimes

the decks, to the disapproval of Scott's men, especially Ernest Shackleton, in charge of all stowage work under the hot summer sun. With weeks, not months, to go the hectic preparations gathered pace. New construction faults were noted by Skelton but, still within budget, the stores kept pouring in and each new problem was solved.

In the last week Scott sent everyone for dental checkups at Guy's Hospital, a sensible precaution. In 1979 I remember visiting a Cape Town dentist along with the rest of our team due to spend eighteen months in Antarctica. To avoid the danger of peritonitis I also tried to have all our team's appendixes removed, but was turned down on the principle that more people die from a general anaesthetic than ever do from appendix troubles. Ninety-two teeth were removed from Scott's men and 170 holes filled at a cost of £62.45 (£3,000). The records fail to list any costing for the hunting down and execution of the thirty-one stray East End cats found on board.

Discovery sailed from London on the last day of July 1901 to the cheering of crowds and the hooting of Thames boats. The new King and Queen came aboard at Cowes and presented Scott with the MVO (Member of the Royal Victorian Order). As *Discovery* disappeared from the view of the cheering populace, Scott, always publicity shy despite the contrary assertions of many biographies, reflected that a venture which was starting off with fanfares might still end in failure. He may well have nursed fears of hazards ahead and his personal ability to deal with them, but he could be justly proud of what he had already accomplished against great odds over the past twelve months.

By way of judging the scale of Scott's achievement think of the expedition of Vivian Fuchs and Edmund Hillary, the first to cross Antarctica, in the 1950s. Despite Fuchs' own unparalleled experience in Antarctica and full support from the British and New Zealand governments, it still took him five long years of full-time work to launch that expedition.

4

Through the Pack Ice 1901–1902

Discovery's first stop was Funchal on the island of Madeira. En route Scott and Chief Engineer Skelton had closely monitored their new ship's coal consumption and they were not impressed. *Discovery* must reach New Zealand, the launch point for Antarctica, by late November if they were safely to penetrate the pack ice in the 1901–1902 summer season. So from Funchal, Scott knew, they must make New Zealand in ninety days. But reaching Funchal from Britain had taken eight days, so a quick calculation showed more speed was needed. This meant maximum use of engines as well as sail, but as coal storage space was at a premium Scott had to cut out a majority of the halts planned for oceanographic and magnetic work. Scott desperately wanted to achieve the scientific programme entrusted to *Discovery* but something had to give.

The 'Dundee Leak' became ever more troublesome as *Discovery* approached the Equator and the wooden-planked hull responded to the heat. Soon twenty tons of water had to be pumped out of the ship at least once a day. A foul stench invaded the entire ship soon after she entered the tropics and a search in the bilges quickly traced the noxious source. Hungry or curious workers in the London docks had opened various tins from the expedition's meat supplies and consumed some of the contents. The leftovers had gone bad floating around in the ship's bilges. Scott gave Shackleton the complex job of restacking the holds, work which Shackleton achieved quickly and efficiently, thereby winning Scott's admiration.

Shackleton's previous service in merchant ships was very different, of course, from the background training of Scott, Royds,

Barne and Skelton, and the Irish officer's comparatively casual way with *Discovery* ratings may have struck them as strange. Able Seaman James Dell noted that Shackleton was rather an enigma to ratings on the lower deck because he kept a foot in both camps. Shackleton was by nature a hail-fellow-well-met populist, besides which he had a genuine knack for getting on with all people.

Scott's ratings slept on the mess deck in hammocks, warrant officers in their own quarters and officers in individual cabins. Everyone ate the same food, but separately, with a couple of navy stewards serving the officers in their wardroom on a table laid with linen and napkins. Scott's physicist, the Australian Bernacchi, was later to observe the way *Discovery*'s naval hierarchy worked and compared it with his experience of the democratic anarchy of the 1899 *Southern Cross* expedition of the Norwegian Borchgrevink, the first group ever to spend a winter on the mainland of Antarctica. Without the framework of an accepted hierarchy, Borchgrevink's ten men had a terrible time. With nobody prepared to take the burden of active command, dirt, disorder and inactivity were the order of the day.

On 3 October 1901, eight weeks after leaving home, *Discovery* sailed into Table Bay, Cape Town's spectacular harbour. The Royal Navy base of Simonstown lay just around the coast and offered Scott full support. At no cost to the expedition, naval divers scraped the hull, craftsmen modified the engine-room and corrected various faults, whilst the Admiral's administrative staff provided Scott with virtually all his listed needs, including five Royal Navy volunteers to bring his crew up to full strength. As leader of a polar expedition being a naval commander clearly had its advantages over a civilian scientist.

Although Scott's chief of science, George Murray, had agreed to stay on board all the way to Australia, he now decided he must leave at Cape Town. At the time no relief ship had been purchased to supply *Discovery* in Antarctica or, if she were to disappear, to search for her. Murray was keen to be involved

in organising such a vessel as soon as possible, and since delay had meant curtailing the planned oceanographic programme, it seemed sensible for him to leave from the Cape. Scott's critics later seized on this as proof of some deep grievance, but the records show otherwise. Scott and Murray became good friends and by the time they had reached Funchal, Scott had written: 'Murray is excellent as messmate and as director.' He later modified his opinion of Murray's executive ability but they remained very friendly. As for Murray, he concluded a note to Scott: 'Goodbye old chap. Yours affectionately – give Scamp [Scott's terrier] a pat from me.'

Scott became fascinated by the tasks of the scientists and increasingly involved himself in their work. Murray's early departure accelerated this involvement which, luckily, did not seem to irritate the scientists. One of the few *Discovery* men who did have previous polar experience, the Australian physicist Louis Bernacchi, was critical of many on board, including Scott, who sometimes gave him the sharp side of his tongue. Nonetheless he noticed the captain's increasing interest in the scientific programme on the long voyage from Cape Town. 'With his quick brain he could analyse statements and theories in a very embarrassing manner, and the scientists on board soon learned to row cautiously in connexion therewith . . . He was interested in every branch of research carried on in *Discovery*, and frequently made original suggestions to the workers.'

By now some expedition members had formed definite opinions about Scott's abilities and his personality. They knew they had volunteered for an extremely risky venture and their chances of survival would depend largely on Scott's competence. They all knew he had no previous polar experience and they watched his every mood, his reactions to small emergencies, and his behaviour towards others, with close attention. Many kept diaries in which they lodged their feelings. Whilst they felt it best not to let off steam to their captain's face, they could do so safely in their personal diaries. Readers who themselves have

not experienced the extreme stresses of enforced togetherness in uncomfortable circumstances usually believe that diary entries, or letters back home, contain only truthful renditions of facts and of the writers' feelings. From my expedition experience this is certainly not always the case.

On polar expeditions over the past two centuries, those involved have sometimes been driven insane by the conditions and by each other both on board ships marooned by ice and in their snowbound bases. In the late twentieth century the black moods polar explorers and scientists can experience after spending long stretches in polar bases are generally described as 'winteritis'. SAD or Seasonal Affective Disorder can also affect the mind. On Scott's expedition the huge uncertainties of what lay ahead, the stresses especially on those responsible for stores, ponies, dogs, prototype motorised sledges and scientific programmes, and above all the strains on the leader himself, were extreme. Any natural tendency to irritation, depression, pessimism or worry would have been magnified and, in the absence of loved ones, the natural, indeed the safest, outlets for pent up feelings were diaries and letters home. That's human nature.

Today I can look back at my own expedition diaries and letters sent to my wife, or mother, and wonder how on earth I could have written such bitter and twisted comments about good people who are now my friends and with whom I can remember having had no open arguments at the time. The thought that such heat of the moment jottings could be served up by some future biographer as history is laughable. In my case there is no danger of this, but it certainly makes me view critical comments made about past explorers by individuals under stress with great caution. I stress the word critical because comments of a favourable nature made in such diaries and letters tend to be rare but accurate. Diaries yield clues but not hard evidence. Some recent biographies of Scott where his warts dwarf the greatness of his achievements seem to have made unbalanced use of his colleagues' diaries and letters.

One man who kept a concise diary and appears to be a reliable judge of character was the doctor Edward Wilson, who found a special friend in Third Lieutenant Ernest Shackleton, whose enthusiasm for the poetry of Browning hinted at intellectual depths which Wilson found lacking in many of the others on board. About Scott Wilson wrote that he admired him greatly: 'all but his temper. He is quick-tempered and very impatient.'

Clarence Hare, the steward, who saw more of Scott from day to day than did most of the officers, said of his captain that he was not 'bad-tempered in the ordinary sense of the term. He was over-sensitive and allowed himself to get worked up if things did not go as planned.'

Scott wrestled constantly with the problem of improving *Discovery*'s speed. He wanted speed and brooked no delay. He was used to naval efficiency at all times on board ship and was easily niggled by the easygoing, less than speedy responses to orders by some of the Merchant Navy men. He aimed straight at the immediate task ahead, dealt with it, and then focussed on the next one and he expected the same from his men. As Wilson wrote: 'He is very definite about everything; nothing is left vague or indeterminate.' Wilson felt that under Scott's leadership there was 'no fear of our wandering aimlessly about'.

The person on whom Scott was most severe and unrelenting, as can be seen clearly from his own diaries, was himself. When he felt the *Discovery* team had slipped up, he often blamed himself, despite having been miles away from the relevant 'error' at the time, unless he genuinely believed things were going wrong through sheer bad luck, in which case he said so. Scott fought hard to cut out the personal weaknesses he had lived with since childhood and which now, as captain of his own ship and leader of his country's most important venture, were deeply embarrassing to him. His natural inclination to be lazy and untidy and his struggle to hide these tendencies were soon noted by Clarence Hare, the steward, who recorded that Scott did his own clothes-washing 'and made a very poor job of it'. Scott smoked heavily

but advised Hare not to. 'He said that at my age it would stop my growth.' Hare also caught the skipper pouring milk over his plate of curry whilst his mind was off daydreaming. 'He was going to add sugar, only I stopped him and changed his plate.' The guffaws of those officers who witnessed this gaffe brought Scott back to life with a jolt.

'These "brown studies",' Bernacchi wrote, 'might be mistaken for the depression, moodiness and even ill-temper hinted at during his second expedition. He certainly could be irritable and impatient.' So did the critical Bernacchi learn to dislike the crotchety captain after three years in his company? Apparently not, for he went on to note that Scott's predominant trait was 'his sense of right and justice . . . Truth and right and justice were his gods, and these did not come from any religious sense . . . He led a decent human life because he was a decent human being.' As the *Discovery* men were to learn during their ninety days of constant rolling and pitching on the jam-packed, hopelessly cramped vessel, their skipper was not by nature tactful; he called a spade a spade with little attempt at subtlety. Bernacchi summarised this unfortunate failing. 'One of his weaknesses was his strong likes and dislikes. He had no use for shifty blustering and inept people, and his mind was clear of cant and snobbery . . . pompous people annoyed him.'

Some of these comments make Scott sound a cold, humourless sort of cove, inclined to bursts of aggression, but when Scott's guard was down he loved a joke and his laugh was as infectious as his smile. In my experience, a good test of a person's personality is to watch them eased by alcohol. Scott seldom drank but when, at official functions, he did indulge, it 'affected him quickly', in Bernacchi's words, 'making him very pleasantly and smilingly cheerful'. No hint of aggression there. Scott's main pleasures were reading and pipe-smoking. He did a great deal of both and his pipe will have helped his social awkwardness when the *Discovery* wardroom became boisterous, as happened fairly frequently. He did not join the frolics but nor did he

discourage them. He sat back, watched and smiled through a veil of protective smoke.

Scott and Armitage kept the ship at maximum feasible speed, for the success of the entire expedition depended upon reaching New Zealand by late November 1901. On 21 October they clocked up 200 miles in twenty-four hours and, better still some days later, 800 miles in four days. Her high rounded stern allowed *Discovery* to plough through huge forty-foot cresting waves without shortening sail as most cargo sail-ships at that time would have done. The quartermaster once failed to apply the brake to the helm which, forced over by a sudden monster wave, flung all three helmsmen to the deck. One man who had watched the wave approach described it as towering up to the upper topsail. On the bridge Barne, Wilson and Scott were submerged below the cold, green water for many seconds until the ship rolled free. The wardroom was drenched, crockery smashed, science notes sodden and the polar clothing, just brought up from the hold to hand out, was soaked. Scott noted that the way the ship behaved was a great credit to her designer.

In November 1979 en route to Antarctica our polar vessel *Benjamin Bowring* carried a brass inclinometer we had borrowed from Scott's *Discovery*. One day a giant roller forced us to keel over 47° both ways, as recorded by the inclinometer's brass arrow. Our ship could manage nine knots when at full steam and with a favourable wind. *Discovery* at best managed ten. We had only one sailor, a deckhand, on board who had sailed that far south before. Scott had none. I was terrified. He obviously wasn't.

Hundreds of miles south of the shipping lanes a sudden roll toppled a pile of oilskins over an oil lamp and fire broke out. This was spotted in time by the watch and extinguished. Scott pushed on south towards 65° of latitude to research magnetospheric anomalies in that key region, but *Discovery* ran into pack ice and was forced to slow. As soon as all magnetic readings were completed, and with time against him, Scott steamed

towards New Zealand halting only at remote Macquarie Island to collect rare bird specimens for Wilson.

Scott made the men eat the leftover meat from Wilson's skinned birds, especially penguin meat, which was disgusting. He wrote: 'I had anticipated considerable prejudice on the part of the men to this form of diet which it will so often be essential to enforce and was agreeably surprised to find that they were by no means averse to it. Many pronounced it excellent, and all seemed to appreciate the necessity of cultivating a taste for it. I found no prejudice more difficult to conquer than my own.' Some modern biographers wrongly blame Scott for failing to focus on the need for fresh meat to prevent scurvy; the above, however, is proof to the contrary.

Two days west of New Zealand Scott recorded 'as big a sea as one ever comes across' and the inclinometer recorded a record roll of 56°. They dropped anchor off the New Zealand port of Lyttelton on 28 November 1901, just on schedule and proof of highly efficient seamanship.

Discovery could not immediately refuel and rush on south to her Antarctic objective, much as Scott would have wished to do so. Her magnetic foray into the ice had caused suspected damage to the hull and an hour's work with the main pumps was now needed daily to expel leaked water. Another dry-docking was essential. Every item had to be unloaded and Scott chose Shackleton to supervise this key task. Once the leaks were repaired Shackleton would have to note every single item in every box, with its precise location in the holds, as they were restowed. Manpower would be sorely needed for all this but the crew, exhausted after their long and commendable voyage, were due shore leave which, of course, involved relaxation and alcohol. New Zealand hospitality ensured that by 3 a.m. next morning there was not a single sober crewman on board. Skelton noted: 'there has been a great deal of fighting and drunkenness and I hope two of the seamen will be discharged'. He wheeled the miscreants in front of Scott, who merely gave them a dressing

down, initially discharging nobody, partly I suspect because he was not sure he could find replacements. To Skelton's eventual satisfaction, one was demoted and another, who deserted, was replaced by an excellent Irishman, Thomas Crean, from the Royal Navy.

After a long delay caused by repeated but unsuccessful attempts to locate the source of the leaks, Scott was reluctantly forced to accept he would have to set out into the ice pack in a slowly leaking, heavily overladen vessel, hoping that good weather and much pumping would serve to keep the ship afloat. To make matters worse, when the diligent Shackleton had somehow managed to squeeze three years of provisions into the hold, there was no room for the thirty tons of prefabricated huts, forty tons of coal and 1,500 gallons of paraffin (kerosene), so this was all lashed on the decks. *Discovery* was dangerously top heavy and wallowed low in the water.

Just before departure the twenty three sledge dogs Scott had ordered from Russia were chained to kennels amidships and soon began to fight each other, just like the sailors, but without the excuse of alcohol. Scott's little terrier, Scamp, was discharged to spend the expedition with New Zealand friends, because Scott feared the twin hazards of extreme cold and hungry huskies. Shackleton had forty-five sheep, a gift from a local farmer, penned up on a bed of coal sacks and out of the huskies' reach. Bales of sheep fodder were stacked between rows of gas cylinders.

When *Discovery* slipped her moorings and edged away from the Lyttelton quay on 21 December 1901, the cheering of thousands of well-wishers mingled with the bleating and the barking on board. The crew waved from the rigging and, perched on the highest mainmast stay, a deckhand called Charles Bonner slipped and fell. His body cartwheeled down through the rigging and his skull cracked against the winch gear. Although Bonner was probably sober, Skelton noted that he had been clutching a whisky bottle handed to him during his ascent by his crewmate,

Robert Sinclair. Greatly distressed, Sinclair ran away when Bonner's body was landed, technically absent without leave, and a sympathetic Scott refrained from reporting him to the police. Bonner was buried with full naval honours and the Christmas Eve festivities which Scott had planned were postponed.

Discovery headed south from New Zealand's friendly shores into a thick sea fog. Scott's men were on their own, heading into a chartless region, where millions of tons of floating ice crushed ships, and where human life did not exist. As the whalers once sang: 'Beyond 40° South is no law. Beyond 50° South, no God.'

5

Nudging the Great Barrier 1902

On New Year's Day Scott broke out rations of whisky punch and lime to celebrate and, the following noon, *Discovery* passed her first iceberg. A day later, crossing the Antarctic Circle on 3 January 1902, *Discovery* nosed into loose pack ice. Scott knew that Ross had once taken forty six days to break through Antarctica's unique protective belt of floating ice and that in the Arctic other ships had sunk, crushed like eggshells in the billion-ton grip of shifting pack ice.

At Wilson's request, Scott halted the ship amid five-foot thick floes whilst ornithological specimens were collected and Scott followed up his plan to obtain and store fresh meat for the coming winter. Six crabeater seals were shot and hung from the rigging to freeze. All the Lyttelton sheep were also slaughtered, skinned and frozen. The next day Scott had his men axe chunks of ice from the floes to be sledged on board to replenish the water supply. In time brine drains from sea ice and ice from old floes is almost fresh when melted, so Scott saved his precious coal supplies by avoiding use of *Discovery*'s steam-driven desalination plant.

On 5 January 1902, still held by the ice, Scott decided to celebrate Christmas Day, the original festivity having been postponed when Seaman Bonner fell to his death. Scientists, officers and men were issued with skis and given their first chance to learn how to use them as part of the Christmas fun. Even in Scandinavia, the home of cross-country skiing, only one 7-foot-long ski stick was normally used with the skier grasping it in both hands in the manner of a Canadian canoeist using a paddle. The skis themselves were wooden 'planks' and far heavier than

today's models. Surviving photographs of the *Discovery*'s crew learning how to ski on that 'Christmas' outing are generally hilarious, with as many people dotted about the ice floes on their backs as on their feet. Nevertheless, after an hour or two, some individuals were already becoming quite competent. A prize was given for a two statute mile ski race, crackers were lit and a singsong followed on board, topped up with a rum ration handout.

Scott had read everything he could lay his hands on about man hauling sledges and he knew that all the great polar journeys by his Royal Navy predecessors had been achieved without skis. He knew that learning to ski fast downhill, or the skill of cross-country glide techniques, would be of little or no use to his men, who would have to pull heavy sledges slowly but surely over generally level surfaces. So ski expertise was not pivotal in any way to his plans. Using skis to shift a heavy sledge didn't require skill.

On 7 January the clouds to the south darkened in a way unique to pack ice skies and caused by the clouds' reflection of dark seawater belts between ice floes. Early the next morning *Discovery* broke into open water and clear skies. As lucky as Ross had been on his first foray through the pack, Scott passed through the pack ice zone in only four days and nights. All sails were set and soon the mountains of Victoria Land blurred the rim of the southern seascape.

They anchored off a second, coastal band of ice floes, some five miles out from the two deserted huts of the Borchgrevink expedition at Cape Adare where Scott landed with Bernacchi and others, in a rowing boat, to leave a sealed canister containing a brief summary of his intentions — the first clue laid down in a potentially life-saving paper trail. If Markham's relief ship was ever to reach this and five other pre-arranged message points, they would with luck be able to locate *Discovery*.

Scott's original exploration orders from the Committee bade him explore the coast from Cape Adare south to McMurdo

Sound and to locate any likely harbours en route. On reaching McMurdo and its volcano, Scott was to sail east along the Barrier wall and claim for Britain any landmass he might find there. The most hazardous of passages for a ship like *Discovery*, indeed for any vessel short of a modern icebreaker, is to skirt the Antarctic coast. In the fjords and between offshore islands, even in the wider waters like McMurdo, ice conditions can switch from open sea to millions of tons of fast invading sea ice that will collide with enormous power with cliffs and beaches and crush anything in its way. Yet Scott's duty involved purposefully nosing into every nook and cranny along this hazard-strewn coast. This was asking for trouble and Scott knew it. Extra hands were placed on watch as lookouts, including the scientists.

On 7 January Skelton and Shackleton shot a leopard seal. Wilson, who had been appointed chief butcher, was exultant. 'He was near a ton in weight and took the whole watch to hoist him inboard, an enormous beast with a mouth full of teeth and a head bigger than a Polar Bear.' In time, Scott noted: 'we came thoroughly to enjoy our seal steaks and to revel in the thought of seal liver or kidneys.' But not at first.

On 14 January 1902 a seventy-five mile per hour Force 11 gale obliged Scott to shelter his ship in the lee of Coulman Island with both boilers at full steam to provide enough power to fight the current which threatened to tear *Discovery* from her cover. Great icebergs rushed by, any one of which could sink the ship in minutes. The following day, when the wind died away, a boat took Captain Scott ashore to a large cove on the island, the second pre-agreed message point, where a post was positioned and, lashed to it, a red message container.

For two weeks, with many narrow escapes from ice cul-de-sacs, they sailed south, finding two potential harbours en route to McMurdo Sound, which they reached on 21 January. In the hope that the twin volcanoes Ross had named after his ships *Erebus* and *Terror* were on an island and that they could sail south between it and the mainland, they ploughed on through

loose pack deep into McMurdo Sound. High cliffs ahead soon disillusioned them and, at midnight, they headed back north, then east, around the volcanoes. At a north-eastern cape, close to where a descending flank of the volcanoes met the western rim of the Ice Barrier, Scott, Wilson, Royds and others rowed a boat between lethally teetering icebergs in an attempt to land. This point, Cape Crozier, was an important message point and a potential base from which to make sledge journeys into the interior.

Wilson wrote about this little boat foray: 'There was a . . . heavy swell, which broke on the shore with an appalling force and thunder in some places . . . It was a scene one can never forget. [The bergs] had enormous gulf like caves and arches and tunnels, into which the swell broke with a thunder like an avalanche. The water was full of penguins popping in and out like black rabbits.' They somehow managed to land, place their message canister and collect rock specimens.

Having found two likely harbours thus far, Scott told his men his outline intentions and Stoker Plumley summarised one of them in his diary. 'The exploring party reported it [Granite Harbour] suitable for winter quarters, so if we do not find better we shall come back there for the winter.' Now everyone knew that the entire ship's crew, and not just a select sledging group, would be staying put with the ship at anchor through the Antarctic winter with a prefabricated hut for use for shore deployment and as an observatory. When each man had originally signed on he had known this might happen, but some had preferred to hope *Discovery* would go back to New Zealand in between polar summers. Such wishful thinkers were now disillusioned.

By noon on 29 January 1902 *Discovery* at last passed by the limit of Captain James Ross's exploration along the Barrier, the point where he reported seeing possible land to the south-east. Soon afterwards Armitage, the ice pilot, calculated the height of the surface of the Barrier to the south was at least 500 feet above sea level. Some upturned bergs around the ship, floating

The DISCOVERY EXPEDITION'S VOYAGE to HUT POINT

Cape Adare was to be Scott's Northern Party Base in 1911-12; Inexpressible Island was site of their ice cave in 1912-13

topsy-turvy, had embedded earth and rock and the geologist Ferrar rowed a boat over and took samples. Scott and his scientists were convinced this was proof of Ross's 'land'. Fog closed in but, late the next day, the watch officers spotted through the gloom the black face of a rocky cliff high above the decks. A hundred miles beyond the furthest point of Ross's exploration they had finally located land and established another fixed point of Antarctica's outline. They named it King Edward VII Land (now Edward VII Peninsula).

The Committee's orders to Scott were to settle into winter-quarters somewhere along this eastern section of the coast, should he find land and a harbour, but finding none and after becoming comprehensively lost amid the pack ice in the fog, Scott sensibly headed back west to McMurdo Sound.

The next day Scott summoned all his officers and told them his intentions. *Discovery* would winter in the most southerly McMurdo harbour they could find, from which, the next summer, two sledging parties would explore the region of the volcanoes and a third would head due south. The relief ship that Markham had promised would, by visiting the message points, locate *Discovery*, pick up Armitage with a fourth sledge team and drop them off at a coastal point with access to the south magnetic pole. The relief ship would later take this group straight back to New Zealand. *Discovery* would collect the other three groups on their return, explore to the west and then refit in New Zealand. Further exploration of the new eastern land they had discovered would then be possible in the summer of 1903. Even the critical Royds praised Scott's plan and Armitage, who had originally agreed to join the expedition on the understanding that he would lead a major sledge journey, was content.

Some hours later the watch officer spotted an inlet in the wall of the Ice Barrier, unseen owing to fog on their earlier eastward passage. This channel was two miles wide and ran on for twelve miles, deep into the Barrier. Although the containing ice walls were up to 140 feet high they tapered at the head of this bight

to a mere twelve feet, which allowed the ship to moor and the men to land.

Scott had on board a hydrogen balloon, with a basket big enough for a single passenger, which he hoped to use to gain a panoramic view of the Ice Barrier's inner reaches. If the wind changed to the north, floating bergs might easily advance down the inlet, trap *Discovery* and crush her against the cliffs in minutes, so Scott did not intend to stay long. While Skelton and Shackleton set up the fragile skin, winching gear and gas cylinders on the ice, Wilson expressed his disapproval: 'an exceedingly dangerous amusement', he grumbled, 'in the hands of such inexperienced novices'.

The first to try *Eva*, as they called the balloon, was Scott, who threw out the wrong amount of ballast and was lucky to survive. At 600 feet he saw very little through his binoculars, owing to poor visibility and, of course, as was later learnt, there was very little to see in the whole featureless vastness, almost the size of France, of the Ice Barrier. This was unknown territory. Was the feature one giant floating berg or floe? Was it attached to land and, if so, at what point? The *Discovery* balloon did not answer any of these questions, even after Shackleton ascended to 800 feet and took aerial photographs with his camera. The wind speed increased, the balloon fabric was torn and the main hydrogen valve was found to be lethally unreliable. *Eva* was a death trap and further flights were abandoned. This was the first flight by men in the Antarctic.

Scott had enforced a twenty-four-hour limit on the balloon halt not only for fear of entrapment but also because, aware that the short Antarctic summer was ending, he needed to reach the hoped for safety of McMurdo Sound before the sea froze and cut them off from its sanctuary. As soon as the balloon had been unloaded, two of the three members of the expedition with previous polar experience, Armitage and Bernacchi, had rushed off on skis with four sailors and a sledge to reconnoitre inland and take magnetic readings away from the ship. They had Scott's

blessing but only for twenty-four hours. They soon found that the Barrier's coastal zone was riven by shallow valleys with deep cracks to be avoided.

With 200 pounds on their sledge Armitage's group travelled at three miles per hour for two or three hours and pitched camp. In the haste of their departure they had forgotten one of their two tents so Bernacchi spent the night outside at 17°C, a good test of his polar clothing. The following morning four of them skied south for eleven miles, wanting to beat the southerly record the *Southern Cross* expedition made after wintering in their hut at Cape Adare two years previously. Armitage claimed a new record but, as Scott recorded: 'At this time we were very prone to exaggerate our walks.' Armitage's little trip on 4 February 1902 almost certainly fell short of the *Southern Cross* record.

Whilst the sledging group was away Scott sent men to kill seals for he could not be certain they would still be around when winter came and he was desperate to avoid scurvy, the dreaded scourge of any group spending long periods in polar regions. At the time there were many theories as to how best to prevent scurvy but no proven solution. Fresh meat, fruit and vegetables were believed to help, as were hygiene and sunlight. Some, including Scott and the senior surgeon, Dr Koettlitz, also thought that tinned food was often tainted and a cause of the disease. Wilson, as junior surgeon, had the dubious pleasure and task of tasting the tins of food and milk when they were opened, to check for taint.

Scott loathed the killing of any animals but closed his mind to this perceived weakness and had his men kill for meat when ever he could. In the inlet, which he named Balloon Bight, a hundred seals lay sunning on their icy beach, showing little interest in the arrival of these first human beings. Their black limpid eyes expressed no fear and their shiny whiskered muzzles twitched merely with curiosity as Scott's nominated butchers approached them. Scott confessed to his diary his nausea and shame at plundering nature in this unspoiled place: 'but necessities are often hideous and man must live.'

With the sledgers back on board, *Discovery* sailed west to the place of the volcanoes and, edging past Mount Terror, nudged south into McMurdo Sound. Under a clear sky and a shower of ice from the frozen rigging, Armitage, the pilot, pushed the ship through loose pack, probing south until a line of hills ran down from the volcano to form a narrow westerly peninsula with bays on either side. Scott bade Armitage head into the most northerly of the two bays, which he christened Arrival Bay. With Skelton he walked south for ten miles over fast sea ice and around another peninsula or cape until they could see the Ice Barrier rolling away flat and seemingly easygoing towards the South Pole. The geologist Hartley Ferrar climbed a prominent conical hill beyond the second bay and was able to report that the flanks of the two volcanoes were nowhere joined to the mountain ranges to the south. They were clearly on a volcanic island joined to the distant mountains only by the vast expanse of the Ice Barrier. They named the conical feature Observation Hill.

Further exploration on foot revealed that the bay immediately to the south of their anchorage was ideally suited as a winter harbour, being shallow enough to protect the ship from invading bergs, a constant threat in such a place. So they manoeuvred with care through the rocky shoals and around to the next bay south of Arrival Bay. This, their new home, they called Hut Point. Over the next fortnight the engineers and the carpenter erected the main thirty-ton hut, two smaller magnetic huts, and kennels for the dogs on a gravel ridge above the ship. Eight months of provisions were also stored ashore in case the ship was forced away from the bay when teams were inland, or in case of fire aboard. Scott was not certain how the ice would behave and nor was Bernacchi, the only man aboard who had wintered in Antarctica before, albeit 370 miles further north.

In the mid 1980s an expedition set out from Britain calling itself In the Footsteps of Scott and using a powerful North Sea trawler refitted for pack ice conditions. They reached McMurdo Sound at the ideal time of the year, midsummer, when US

Coastguard icebreakers were already in the vicinity. An unexpected shift in the pack ice crushed and sank their ship in a matter of hours. That 1985 crew was rescued by a US helicopter but, back in 1902, *Discovery*'s whereabouts were unknown and a single false move or run of bad luck could have cut off her crew with consequences as fatal as those of the Franklin tragedy.

The only other human beings in Antarctica, or even south of the Antarctic Circle, were the Swedish and German expeditions and they were in no position to rescue anyone. The German expedition of the scientist Professor Drygalski, whose preparations had so impressed Scott, had reached the Antarctic coast only to be dangerously encircled by pack ice. The Germans' 1901–1903 scientific and exploration programmes were, therefore, out of reach and their survival in balance. The *Scotia* expedition (1902–1904) led by another of Britain's most experienced polar scientists, the Scottish oceanographer Dr William Bruce, had failed to make a landing on the continent and wintered in the pack off the South Orkney Islands. The great Swedish explorer scientist Otto Nordenskjöld's ship *Antarctic* was crushed in the pack ice off the northern tip of the Antarctic Peninsula on 12 February 1903. The explorer Dr Jean Charcot, who led the 1903–1905 French national expedition, altered plans for an Arctic voyage that year and diverted south to help rescue the Swedes. He arrived to find that an Argentine gunboat had already found and saved Nordenskjöld. Charcot then set his sights on a southern survey voyage, which he duly completed, but his ship nearly sank and some of his crew almost died of scurvy.

Markham had chosen his leader well and Scott in turn had put together a fine group of men. As the long polar night of 1902 closed in, Scott wrote: 'Eyes are turned towards the south; the land of promise.' But he knew no human could travel far in the terrible cold of an Antarctic winter, so he and his forty-seven men would spend the next ten months crammed together in their ship, the only humans on a continent bigger by far than all of China and India.

6

Dogs, Skis and Men

Ernest Shackleton, in charge of all stores, had to decide what to leave aboard and what to send ashore in case of an emergency. In the hold were three years of provisions for four dozen men including 6,000 pounds of soup, 42,000 pounds of meat, 7,000 pounds of fish and thirty gallons of brandy. Shackleton was riled by the offhand manner of the man most involved in the ship's commissariat, the ship's cook, an Australian named Brett and, Merchant Navy officer or not, Shackleton took him to Scott and reported his insolence. Brett was equally rude to Scott, who described him as 'a wretched specimen of humanity', and told the warrant officers to lock him in irons, a standard Navy punishment for disobedience. Brett fought his jailers and twice escaped the irons but after recapture and eight hours shivering in the fo'c'sle, warmed only by the galley stove below, was released in a less rebellious state. History does not relate whether or not his cooking or his behaviour subsequently improved, but it was a significant event; the only time in a ten-year span of expedition work that Scott ever applied any form of physical punishment to any of his men.

Being clapped in irons was uncomfortable and undignified but not painful. And it was not uncommon. Many sailors, when given the choice, preferred a few hours in irons to the alternative of losing grog, baccy or ship leave allowance. If anything Scott erred on the side of gentleness in his application of naval discipline. He preferred to use his personality and a good tongue-lashing to enforce discipline, whether with senior officers or ratings. Nor did he judge his men harshly if he could give them the benefit of the doubt.

Discovery's arrival at Hut Point on 8 February 1902 was an anxious time for Scott. Although he had found a reasonable spot from where to unload by holding the ship broadside against a twelve foot high ice-face, there were constant dangers from floating flotillas of ice, smaller than bergs but able to invade the shallow bay and sink the ship should the wind change. To reach the rim of the Ice Barrier, the gateway to the south, at any point from their Hut Point cove, Scott's men would have to haul their sledges up steep inclines to the island's plateau above the ship and then over various rocky ridges before descending to the Barrier. This overland route could only be avoided if the sea around the island from the ship to the Barrier was to freeze solid and provide an easy shortcut for sledge groups. Scott was aware, however, that such sea ice might appear to be safe but, with a slight wind change, could break up in minutes and float out to sea. Any sledges out on such ice might then be lost forever.

The Ice Barrier (or the Ross Ice Shelf, as it is known today) was a hugely tempting feature to Scott and his men for it rolled away in a southerly direction and, except where snowdrifts lay deep, looked easy to walk or ski upon. But because the ship could not reach any point with direct access onto the Barrier ice, Scott would have to put up with the difficulties of sledging over the foothills and coastal cliffs of the island with bare rock stretches that could ruin sledge runners, and deeply crevassed glaciers that tumbled sheer to the sea. Either that or risk crossing treacherous sea ice after it formed.

Scott's plans for local sledge trials involved immediate action because winter was already closing in on Hut Point. Scott had never worked with sledging equipment before, nor had any of his men save Armitage, Koettlitz and Bernacchi. These three had scant expertise with sledge dogs and Armitage was openly scathing about their abilities when compared with ponies. Both Armitage and Bernacchi tried hard on the snow slopes around the hut to galvanise the expedition's twenty-three dogs into action. Armitage cracked a whip but could not persuade his

charges even to trot, whereas Bernacchi, using only verbal instructions, found that his team shot away, immediately out of control, leaving him cursing back at the starting point.

Scott therefore sent off a small dog-less team consisting of Shackleton, Wilson and Ferrar to head south to a distant rock-topped island out on the Barrier, from the summit of which, with luck, they would be able to see many miles further to the south. In case they found open sea at any time blocking their way to, or back from, the Barrier, Scott bade them lash a light rowing boat to their sledge. On 18 February 1902 this boat-sledge was towed 800 feet uphill via the snow slope above the ship, between two obvious features, Crater Hill and Observation Hill, then on through a low pass they called the Gap and down to the Barrier ice below. A wind sprang up but the three men tramped on towards the distant island for nine hours until, exhausted, they stopped to camp. The extent of their ignorance in contending with low temperatures is illustrated in Wilson's diary: 'The ski boots were frozen to the socks . . . and it took us all we knew the next morning to tear the socks out. The sweat of one's feet had lined the boots with ice . . . we began to get our furs on, an awful job in a small tent . . . They dressed me first, as I was constantly getting cramp in the thighs whenever I moved, and having dressed me they put me on the floor and sat on me while they dressed each other. We lay on our jaeger blouses, but the cold of the ice floor crept through.'

Next day they climbed the island (White Island) to its 2,300-foot summit and Wilson sketched the panoramic view. They had established a safe route onto the Barrier and south between White Island and its neighbour (Black Island) to a prominent cape (to be called Minna Bluff), some forty miles due south; an ideal location for an initial provisions depot on the Barrier.

Meanwhile, to use the fading daylight hours of summer, the men began to learn how to dog-sledge and ski. Only a dozen or so explorers, primarily Nansen, Peary and Jackson, had used dogs to haul their sledges in the Arctic and Armitage had been

Jackson's second-in-command. So Scott could hardly be said to have no dog advisers. Armitage and Scott, using Nansen's dogs' performance as a model, reckoned they would need twenty-three animals for Antarctica, so this was the number selected for them in Siberia by the man who had supplied Nansen. Unbeknown to Scott, he had selected the *Discovery* dogs from three different canine strains, an error which would lead to even more aggression than is normal between sledge dogs. Another mistake was that instead of keeping set teams together to cut down the fighting and develop team spirit, the various sledgers who tried their hands with the dogs, owing to their initial lack of experience, used different dogs on different occasions. Another common error was to help the dogs pull by harnessing men alongside them. This merely encouraged the dogs to take it easy and let the humans do the work. Armitage advised against it and Scott eventually agreed with him. During the early days at Hut Point the *Discovery* dogs proved disappointing but not hopeless. Nonetheless Scott continued to push his men to keep trying their best at dog driving.

When, in the 1970s, I made plans to cross Antarctica and the Arctic Ocean, I had to decide whether to use motorised sledges or dogs or manhaul. I asked the European with the then greatest experience at dog driving, Wally Herbert, the modern equivalent of Nansen, and his response was concise: 'Do not even attempt to use dogs unless you and your men train with them for at least two years fulltime before your expedition begins.'

Gradually Scott's twenty or so dogs were welded into workable teams and some of the men became reasonable drivers. Scott's attempts at learning the rudiments of manhauling progressed equally slowly and with as many errors made through ignorance.

Scott's polar model was Fridtjof Nansen, who in Norway had helped him to put together the best equipment money could buy and had stressed the benefits of using dogs and skis. Scott knew of Nansen's great pioneer journeys in the Arctic, but could not

be certain that either dogs or skis would suit the unknown conditions of Antarctica. Nansen's first journey, which had made him famous, was the crossing of the Greenland icecap and was achieved entirely without dogs. His second much longer Arctic Ocean traverse, including an attempt on the North Pole, did use dogs, but in conditions unlikely to occur in Antarctica.

Nansen was straightforward about dog usage. 'It was undeniable cruelty to the animals from first to last . . . it makes me shudder even now when I think of how we beat them mercilessly with thick ash sticks when, hardly able to move, they stopped from sheer exhaustion . . . I have moments of bitter self-reproach.'

Nansen believed that 'a combination of horses and dogs might prove advantageous on the Ross Barrier'. Today, Britain's most experienced dog driver who has driven dog teams for thousands of miles including a 220-day, 3,760-mile Antarctic crossing, is Geoff Somers. His random thoughts on Scott include: 'In recent times monumental traverses have been accomplished by teams pulling their own supplies (with no dogs) . . . there have been failed dog sled trips and manhaul treks . . . In Scott's day the greatest dog journeys had only been carried out in the northern hemisphere where dogs were run in their home environment, food was plentiful and the useful sledging seasons longer.'

Scott's attitude to the use of skis or any form of snow shoe was to take them and try them. Use them where they work and not where they don't. Before *Discovery* left London, Scott, who had never seen skis in use and whose experience of snow extended to throwing snowballs at his sisters in Devon, had to decide what to do about skis. In 1901 skis were heavy and bulky, weighing an average of twenty pounds per pair and being seven feet in length. Even ten years after the *Discovery* expedition the British public knew so little about skis that Herbert Ponting, in his popular book about Scott, had to explain what they were. Nansen had told Scott that skis were far superior to any other method of transport when travelling on snow. Scott had no need

to read Nansen's books to appreciate such advice. But, as Scott was to learn, Nansen was as fallible in his opinions as any other polar traveller of his day. Sensibly, Scott did not rely only on Nansen, but listened to others with ski experience.

Another great Norwegian Arctic explorer, Otto Sverdrup, had written: 'Polar exploration without ski is extremely awkward.' The Norwegian, Borchgrevink, had used skis in Antarctica for a few miles only and then merely close to the coastline, not really proving their usefulness one way or the other. There were a few individual Britons with considerable ski experience. The chief of these was David Crichton-Somerville, an Englishman who had lived in Norway and skied for over twenty-five years. He had written of the usefulness of skis for light work on soft snow but said that he would not use them if he was hauling anything or the snow was firm. On the other hand, contemporary British ski pundit Martin Conway wrote after a few weeks' skiing on Spitsbergen that he could drag heavy weights over any kind of snow wearing skis.

Scott soon picked up the advantages of ski use. You could move more safely over crevassed areas if you spread your weight on skis, and a man on skis would not sink as deeply in soft snow, so would save energy. Scott appreciated these advantages, but was equally aware he would critically have to add 100 pounds to the weight of a sledgeload, for the skis of the five manhaulers, wher ever the route climbed uphill and skiing was impossible. Skis were easily broken and sledges often overturned. Spare skis were too heavy to take. Such mathematics made it extremely tempting not to take skis at all and that is precisely what Shackleton decided, four years after the *Discovery* expedition, when his turn came to lead a major South Pole attempt.

As with dogs, Scott sensibly decided to assess the usefulness of skis with realistic sledgeloads by trial and error. Would a course of Scandinavian instruction beforehand have helped? Even if he had found the time to fit one in, it is unlikely.

In Norway and Bavaria in the 1960s, I spent long months

learning the technique of *langlauf*, or cross-country skiing, from Norwegian and German instructors. I spent four winter seasons on the Austrian border instructing Scottish soldiers in the sport and competing in Army *langlauf* races. I then led expeditions towing heavy sledges over Norwegian glaciers and soon discovered the difference between *langlauf* skiing with and without heavy loads to drag. With loads the entire business of technique and skill becomes superfluous. The huge advantage of the Scandinavians virtually disappears when the art of gliding and energy conservation is rendered useless by the need to shift a heavy sledge. Anybody, with a few hours' practice, can learn the simple plodding movement needed for heavy manhaul on or off skis.

A few months later, after considerable experience of local manhaul, Scott wrote: 'We have been trying once or twice lately to go on ski as the snow is very soft and we sink deeply, but we find that we cannot put the same weight on the traces as we do on foot. On the whole our ski so far have been of little value. They have saved us labour on the rare occasions on which we have not had to pull . . . but the labour thus saved is a doubtful compensation for the extra weight which they add to the load.' He added a very valid but often ignored point: 'Another thing to be remembered is that one gets used to plodding, even in heavy snow, and, though it is very tiring at first, one's capacity for performance on foot ought not to be judged until one is thoroughly accustomed to the work.'

The factor that Scott would only learn after long journeys out on the Ice Barrier, in changing wind or cloud conditions and varying temperatures, was the incredible difference that these very changes cause to the experience of manhauling. Within a few metres, differing snow surfaces can change easy haulage into nightmare work. A rise or fall in temperature can have the same effect. One minute a manhauler will praise his skis, the next curse them, load them onto the sledge and carry on without them. When Nansen advised Scott to take skis, neither he nor the ski-makers advised Scott or Armitage to take

ski-skins and ski wax to help the skis grip the snow when heading uphill. Scott and his men were thrown in at the deep end and their first real test run was to be the apparently simple 100-mile flat run from Hut Point around the south of Ross Island to Cape Crozier where the previous month, and from the seaward side, they had established a message point.

Now that they had found their winter quarters they must revisit Cape Crozier to leave details of their location for the relief ship. It would be their first manhaul journey. Scott himself was *hors de combat* with a wrenched knee from his skiing efforts, so it was Charles Royds who led the four sledges hauled by twelve men and, at the last minute, eight dogs. Those who favoured their use took skis, much to the annoyance of those who felt they were white elephants and merely an additional weight on already heavy sledges.

Royds led with four dogs and five men, sailors Wild, Vince, Weller and the American Quartley, together with the experienced Dr Koettlitz. They hauled two sledges, as did the second group, also with four dogs, of Barne, Skelton, Plumley, Heald, the young New Zealander Hare and the big Welshman Edgar Evans.

Scott waved off this cavalcade on 4 March 1902 and later noted: 'I am bound to confess that the sledges when packed presented an appearance of which we should afterwards have been wholly ashamed, and much the same might be said of the clothing worn by the sledgers. But at this time our ignorance was deplorable; we did not know how much or what proportions would be required as regards the food, how to use our cookers, how to put up our tents, or even how to put on our clothes. Not a single article of the outfit had been tested, and amid the general ignorance that prevailed the lack of system was painfully apparent in everything.'

Each day out on the trail taught each of these amateurs little lessons on how to make things easier for himself, how to adjust clothing and how to sleep with socks or mitts close to the body

to avoid overnight freezing. This journey, in itself hardly over-ambitious, was a sound early apprenticeship for a quarter of Scott's men.

In the months ahead temperatures around the island would drop to −56.5°C but now, early in March, 0°C with little or no wind served as a good level of schooling for the men, enough to teach such novices lessons but not so severe as to cripple them. They suffered painful cramps in their tents, a normal post-manhauling complaint, one of the cookers broke, probably for lack of a protective box, there were lightly frost-nipped ears and feet, and a lack of sleep due to too small, three-man sleeping bags and the fearsome intermittent roar of avalanches cascading down the 10,000-foot slopes of nearby Mount Erebus.

After four days' travel through deep soft snow they had advanced only twenty miles and Royds calculated that their twenty one days of rations would not last. Sensibly, therefore, he divided the group into two, sending everyone and everything (except Skelton, Koettlitz, himself and one sledge) back under Michael Barne. Royds suggested that Barne take his group back to the ship by the known outward route, rather than by any easier looking shortcut he might spot.

Two days later, on 11 March 1902, Barne's group of nine men and eight dogs found themselves camped back on the Ice Barrier beneath Castle Rock, an easily recognised feature astride the island's ridgeline and some four miles north of the bay at Hut Point. Barne spotted an easy snow slope leading up to the ridge. The visibility was good and he knew he had only to follow the ridge south until he recognised Crater Hill at the top of the Hut Point ski slope and leading down 800 feet to the ship. This would be an easy enough task in good visibility but, unfortunately, no sooner had Barne's men reached the ridgeline than the fine weather broke with a vengeance and a bitter wind whipped the drift snow into a whiteout.

At this point Michael Barne made a basic error. Instead of settling down with his eight companions in their two tents and

waiting for clear visibility, he decided to risk a quick dash of less than four miles along the ridge top and down the ski slope to safety. He would leave the heavy gear, including the sledge and the tents, on the ridge to collect later in better conditions. Within an hour he expected they would all be safe aboard *Discovery*. With a little bit of luck Barne's plan would have worked. They all left their sledge dump wearing ski boots, except for young Clarence Hare and the chirpy Dorset man George Vince whose boots had frozen so hard the previous night they had to march in their sleeping boots, soft *finnesko* of thick warm felt. The nine men and their dogs were now stumbling along through the gloom immediately above, but unaware of, sheer ice cliffs that fell away to the sea far below. None wore crampons and, as the slope became steeper, they began to lose their footing, especially Hare and Vince in their smooth soled *finnesko*.

Without warning, Hare disappeared down the slope and Barne told the others to spread out as they groped their way forward so that when Hare caught up he would more easily bump into someone. Evans then slid away out of sight, followed by Barne and the American Quartley. A ledge of soft snow halted their downward plunge and a clear patch in the mist revealed to their horror the cliff top just a few feet below them. Frank Wild had knocked nails through his ski boot soles and so had slightly more leverage than the others. When the others failed to reappear Wild rallied the remaining sailors, who were rapidly growing dangerously cold, and led them on in the assumed direction of Hut Point. The slope steepened abruptly and all five men, slipping on the ice, hurtled downwards. Wild and three others managed, just, to kick their boots into a patch of snow along the very rim of the precipice but George Vince's *finnesko* gained no grip and he continued to slide until his flailing body disappeared into the void.

Terrified and using their sheath knives to gain tenuous holds, the four survivors inched their way back up to the crest of the ridge and at length found the rocky plateau which led to Crater

Hill and the ski slope above the ship. George Vince's body was never found and the cross Scott had erected in his memory still stands on the summit at Hut Point. Hare miraculously survived. He had careered down the slope, ending up unconscious in soft snow which covered his body and, forty-eight hours later, he returned to the ship as merry as ever and entirely without frost-bite. Scott, overjoyed, cried out: 'Thank God one of my boys has returned.'

The bad weather which caused this tragedy also nearly killed Charles Royds, Koettlitz and Skelton for they were at the time attempting to descend the Cape Crozier cliffs to the message point and, in the whiteout, almost failed to make it back to their camp. As it was they were low on food and, after two more futile attempts to locate their goal using crampons and a rope, Royds sensibly decided they should head back to the ship, overruling the others' zeal to keep trying. On their return journey the temperature dropped to −41°C of frost, but they made it back in only four days. All the dogs, but for one which had slid over the cliff with Vince, were recovered and a great many lessons were learnt.

Scott took reports from Royds and the others about the equipment very seriously and quickly ordered modifications for the future. The fact that Hare had survived without tent or sleeping bag for forty-eight hours in his sledge clothes and *finnesko* was hopeful, whereas Skelton's report on the three-man fur sleeping bag his group had used was not. When they first used this bag it weighed forty-five pounds but only twenty days later, owing to the accumulated weight of frozen perspiration, it weighed seventy-six pounds.

With Vince's death and the reality all forty-six men now faced of wintering in this stark unforgiving place, the atmosphere aboard *Discovery* may well have been as gloomy as her bleak surroundings when the sun disappeared altogether for the next five months.

7

The First Winter

On the Sunday evening after the death of George Vince a service was held on board in his memory and the sound of the hymns sung by the forty-six men of *Discovery* rose and fell against the flanks of Mount Erebus and above the frozen sea. Scott reminded the ship's company that winter was coming and nobody had ever wintered this far south before so there could be no knowing what conditions to expect. But one thing was certain Hut Point was not a place for personal errors: even a mere one hundred yards away from the ship or the hut a man could be quickly cut off by a blizzard with no visibility to see his way back to safety and warmth. Never, Scott warned, count on good weather lasting. Koettlitz lectured on the hazards of frostbite and Scott announced one last journey before winter conditions prevented further travel. This was to position further depots to the south, give more men sledging experience and allow another trial with the dogs.

His knee recovered, Scott set out on 1 April 1902 together with Albert Armitage, Edward Wilson, Reginald Koettlitz, eight sailors and eighteen dogs. The temperature hovered around −40°C. The dogs managed twenty-three miles on the first day but, at −44°C and with a stiff headwind, only notched up a poor ten miles on day two. The extreme cold had made the snow surface abrasive and the dogs' paws bled. The simplest camping chore took forever with frozen fingers. Eyelashes froze together. Experiments at dragging sledges separately were dropped in favour of all the men and all the dogs hauling all the sledges hitched together in a single train. Most of the time the men hauled without their single ski-sticks which certainly helped

avoid the frostbitten fingers which can result from using a stick with both hands held high but a disadvantage was that hauling power was diminished.

After three days and nights of purgatory, Scott realised that this first experiment at winter sledging in Antarctica was liable to end in injury, or worse, to men and dogs. Some twelve miles from the ship four sledgeloads with 2,000 pounds of provisions were left on the Ice Barrier as a depot for later journeys and Scott turned back. With light sledges and the knowledge they were heading home, the dogs covered the distance back in only six hours. For their very first lesson at sledging, the eight inexperienced sailors must have suffered a great deal. Even for Antarctic veterans in modern times manhauling in April is a nightmare.

In his diary Scott wrote of this and subsequent pre-winter journeys: 'everything was wrong.' Only years later, when writing a book about the *Discovery* experiences, did Scott appreciate the very real value of those early trials. 'That we were eventually able to make long and successful sledge journeys is no doubt due to the mistakes which we made and the experience gained at that time and the fact that we took our lesson to heart.'

Before further thought could be given to sledging Scott needed to concentrate on the immediate and critical task of organising life on board *Discovery* to cope with four dozen humans crammed together in conditions which by any normal standards would be judged as appalling. The only precedents Scott had were the wintering of de Gerlache's *Belgica*, captive in the floating pack, and the *Southern Cross* crew of ten in their Cape Adare hut 370 miles further north of Hut Point. Those experiences had involved quagmires of social dissension, an outbreak of insanity, violent hatred and scurvy, and Scott resolved to avoid a repeat performance in *Discovery*, despite having four times as many men as were in *Southern Cross* and, therefore, a bigger potential for trouble.

The Navy, Scott knew, had a simple formula to avoid trouble:

lay down a basic set of rules for everyone on board and stick to them. Few folk will admit to enjoying the imposition of discipline in civilian life and Scott, realising this, sensibly watered down traditional Royal Navy regulations to a minimum to cope with his mixed-bag crew.

The basis of Scott's discipline system was the standard Forces three-way hierarchy split between officers, non-commissioned officers (petty officers in naval parlance), and ratings. Each group shared separate living quarters and mess tables. Non-naval people, such as the scientists, were classed as officers. The eleven 'officers' ate and lived in a communal wardroom, wood-panelled and ten yards long with a table down the centre and an oft-defective piano up one end. On those occasions when the fingers of its only competent player, Charles Royds, were not frost-bitten, after-dinner music was popular. Each officer had his own tiny cabin, of which Scott's was the largest, but coldest, on board. A good deal of chess was played, each move loudly argued. Hodgson observed that the skipper hated losing, which was true of everything he did from football to manhauling. He was highly competitive and would have been a poor choice for leader had he been otherwise. The warmest room, positioned over the main hold, which provided excellent insulation, was the mess deck where the ratings slung their hammocks when they wished to sleep.

Like all sea captains of his day, Scott nursed a deep-seated fear of scurvy. By 1902 there was still no certain cure but several unproven preventative measures. One of these was to eat fresh meat and Scott still had on board his supply of New Zealand mutton. To supplement this he sent hunting groups out to find and butcher seals and penguins. A single seal fed the crew for two days, but Scott feared the seals would disappear when the sea ice in the vicinity froze over, so he ordered as many killed as would be needed for the coming winter as soon as possible.

The sun, Scott knew, would disappear completely for four

months starting in late April and he feared the tales of polar anaemia which had followed the *Belgica* experience. Medical science had not in 1901 defined Seasonal Affective Disorder as an existing medical condition but many doctors did believe that lack of light for long periods could cause depression, aggression and even insanity. Scott therefore provisioned *Discovery* with great numbers of candles, 1,500 gallons of kerosene for lanterns and a new fangled windmill to generate an electric lighting circuit to illuminate the ship. Nansen's *Fram* had used a similar apparatus with some success in the Arctic and Drygalski had a German version in *Gauss*. Chief Engineer Reginald Skelton, a good-natured grumbler who put together many Scott-designed gadgets, nonetheless complained loud and long about Scott's windmill, which needed constant attention by his hard-worked engineers.

On 23 April 1902 the sun dipped below the eastern horizon for the last time to disappear for 123 days and, as was expected, crew morale dropped. When a storm eventually wrecked Scott's windmill on 2 May, much to Skelton's delight, even he could not deny the month of light that it had generated had been greatly appreciated by all on board.

Wilson noted: 'Men don't improve when they live together alone.' Scott could not read helpful psychological literature on how best to cope in such circumstances for none was available. The Navy answer to keeping the skipper's finger on the communal pulse was through careful maintenance of contact between the junior officers, petty officers, and ratings. Albert Armitage, the senior officer beneath Scott, was under a special contract as ice pilot, so the first officer, Charles Royds, was Scott's conduit to the crew and Royds handled the men with both tact and firmness. He held a fine line of discipline but spent many hours on the mess deck chatting to the men, as did Michael Barne and Ernest Shackleton. They knew from experience that there would be tensions and they hoped, through contact, to diffuse them where possible.

Scott has been ridiculed by late twentieth-century biographers for running his semi-civilian expeditions the naval way. Louis Bernacchi, who lived under Scott's *Discovery* regime for two winters and had also experienced the dismal winter with the *Southern Cross* non-naval crew at Cape Adare, was in a good position to be able to compare the two command methods. He was a critical scientist and an Australian with no Royal Navy attachments but his opinion was straightforward: he stated that Scott's formalities at dinner 'helped to preserve an atmosphere of civilized tolerance such as has seldom been found in polar expeditions'. In the minutiae of everyday life, Bernacchi added that naval tradition was 'of infinite benefit'.

Ninety-nine per cent of the time, the only 'discipline' that Scott relied upon was his quick-tempered reputation and his ability to give a fierce verbal dressing-down, very often in public, whether the target of his wrath was First Lieutenant Charles Royds or the ship's boilerman.

The hut was less than 200 yards from the ship and a guide-rope covered much of the intervening distance, yet in blizzards there was still a danger of disorientation and one night Bernacchi and Skelton left the hut and failed to find the guide-rope which had been blown down. For an hour and a half they lost their bearings and their shouts were inaudible mere yards away. A group returning from the hut by chance and good luck found both men, but by then they were badly frostbitten about their faces and legs. All this happened on the short, flat, familiar path between hut and ship's gangway.

Wilson wrote: 'You can see nothing but white drift and the roar of the wind is utterly bewildering. You cannot consult with anyone because you can't hear him, even if he shouts in your ear. I know nothing so terrifying as these blizzards.'

Scott took *Discovery*'s science programme as seriously as the safety of his men, even inventing gadgets to help additional research work, such as tide measurement. Wilson recorded: 'The Skipper is endlessly planning new theories and new methods of

observation. He's an excellent man for this job, full of theories and ingenuity; always thinking.'

The scientist most at risk from blizzards was Louis Bernacchi whose two magnetic huts were a hundred yards further inland than the main hut. The extremely delicate instruments he monitored daily and for hours on end included one that could measure electricity in the atmosphere, especially useful during aurora displays, and a prototype seismograph. Some of Bernacchi's experiments were timed to the second to coincide with parallel work programmed for the German and Swedish expeditions, the first example of international scientific co-ordination on the Antarctic continent.

Although research jobs kept the scientists, the officers and their selected helpers busy through the long winter, as did routine maintenance by the engineers, there were still long slack periods for many and Scott, well aware that inactivity could lead to discontent, asked Shackleton to edit a magazine, *The South Polar Times*, to which anyone could contribute articles, drawings, cartoons, comments and quizzes. This proved to be a big success.

For those letting off more private steam, diaries were waste bins for hurt feelings, minor dislikes and petty jealousies. On all expeditions diaries have traditionally targeted for criticism the person responsible, the leader. On the *Discovery* expedition every action Scott took, every mood he exhibited, every meaningful comment he made was recorded in one or a dozen diaries. All that went wrong or was thought to be wrong was his fault. Any item missing or faulty was due to his inefficiency. Discomfort, bad weather, poor morale . . . all, in the diaries, could be blamed on Scott. Some writers tempered and balanced their criticisms. Others just let off steam.

Scott maintained just enough of a framework of traditional naval activities to avoid anyone becoming lazy or dirty, owing to the unaccustomed pressures of the polar winter. On Sundays each man had to change his clothes from his weekly wear and join the others to parade in two ranks. Scott had ordered a

custom-made canvas awning to cover much of the deck, where the Sunday services and a weekly inspection were held. This provided excellent protection against the wind and blown snow. Scott, Royds and Skelton inspected first the mess deck and then the men by the light of a lamp held high by Boatswain Thomas Feather.

The ship's bell was then tolled and a church service held, still on deck, at which attendance was not compulsory. Royds played the piano when it worked and everyone sang rousing hymns like 'Eternal Father Strong to Save'. Frank Plumley wrote of the weekly church parades, 'We are not angels but I think the greater part of us enjoys it.' Once, in August, Scott's inspection of the mess deck lasted over an hour whilst the men waited up on deck. This naturally had the men, or at least the voluble Scots carpenter James Duncan, complaining: 'we are treated like children.' But it appears to have been a one-off lapse on Scott's part for there were no other such complaints. Frank Wild, a merchant seaman, found the Sunday parades 'somewhat unnecessary in the circumstances', but another shrugged, 'Oh well, it pleases him and doesn't hurt us.'

The long darkness passed slowly by, marked sixty days after the sun's disappearance by a special Midwinter Day celebration on 22 June 1902. Gifts and cards were doled out to every man, after a Christmas lunch of turkey and distinctly alcoholic plum pudding. Hodgson noted that: 'the Captain was quite as much excited as was necessary for his dignity.' Duncan, who had long grumbled that more entertainment should be laid on, built a stage in the main hut for Charles Royds's first play *Ticket of Leave* with Frank Wild as male lead and two sailors as leading ladies. This was so popular that Royds soon began to rehearse a follow-up show.

Immediately after the morale boost of the Christmas festivity transplanted to Midwinter Day came the white nadir of the darkest moonless week and successive blizzards. Clarence Hare, the youngest man on the ship, wrote that there were more fights

and quarrels than usual and unnecessary behaviour by certain of the crew but he added: 'These little troubles are expected. No expedition has been without them.'

Early in June Scott told everyone they should start full-time preparations for sledging as soon as the hours of twilight began to increase. He did not elaborate on the detail of each planned sledge journey or which men would go where and the resulting uncertainty tended to keep everyone on their toes. Some individuals had already won their spurs the previous autumn and privately favoured their chances of selection for one of the sledge teams. Frank Wild, for instance, had probably saved lives by his steadfast action at the time of Vince's death. Wild would, fifteen years later, become Shackleton's right-hand man and Shackleton himself was to serve his own polar apprenticeship through selection by Scott as a sledger.

Scott realised that three men stood out for their strength, equanimity and ability to undertake equipment modification, repairs, or even to design new gear suggested by the failure of existing items. They were Edgar Evans, William Lashly and Tom Crean. Late in June Wilson suspected that Crean was exhibiting the early scurvy symptoms of swellings on his lower legs. Luckily, a month later, the Irishman's swellings disappeared and scurvy was ruled out. Two months later careful inspections by both doctors indicated that no cases of scurvy (and, therefore, no Vitamin C deficiency) existed on board, so the increased seal meat diet had at least prevented the *Discovery* men from suffering the fate of many of their predecessors aboard *Belgica*.

Thanks to the detailed critiques of Royds and the others who had suffered from the defects of the sledging gear on the autumnal trial journeys, Scott knew exactly what modifications were needed and, with two clear months of ever improving light conditions prior to the first planned sledge outing, Crean and company began their work. Dog harnesses were designed and produced, tents were strengthened, roomier three-man fur sleeping bags were made, sledges were assembled and their runners

were sheathed with German silver (thin nickel-plated steel), food bags were sewn, and wooden sledge boxes were fashioned to avoid breakage of biscuits and other rations. At one point more than twenty of the crew were active at this sledge gear work, especially the sewing of wolf and reindeer skins, using their sail repair needle skills to full advantage.

All work that could be foreseen was finished in good time for the first spring trial but Scott, like his Norwegian rival Amundsen after him, was too eager to start his trial journeys as early as possible, not appreciating how vicious the spring weather could be. His first outing and the suffering involved by both men and dogs came as quite a shock.

Some critics (including Scott in his own diary) suggest that he should have started his trials even earlier, perhaps using the winter moonlight instead of playing football. Bernacchi had been the only person allowed to leave the ship in extreme conditions, since his work in the magnetic huts was critical to the science programme, often reaching his hut only by crawling all the way and never letting go of the safety line from the ship. He became blasé and wrote that some sledging rehearsals could have started earlier. But such a course could easily have led to severe frostbite and dead dogs. Starting trials at the end of August, as Scott did, was undoubtedly the most sensible timing.

The very first outings merely tested different dog harnessing systems, including, on 2 September, a foray by six men under Scott along the Ross Island coast. The overall impression Scott had gained from the first fumbling trials back at the time of Vince's death was that progress over the Ice Barrier, when towing heavy weights, was extremely difficult, especially in bad weather, but that dogs made things slightly less difficult than no dogs. Since, contrary to the ever-present myth, he had no built-in preference for manhauling over any other form of traction, he decided to concentrate first and foremost on dog trials in the hope that the canine way really did prove to be the best way. The main journey for the coming summer, planned to start

in mid-October, was intended to go due south as far as terrain and supplies would allow.

The myth that Scott was set in his ways over manhaul, or anything else, was way off mark. He constantly looked for new answers to his problems and sometimes, if none was available, he invented solutions of his own. Navigating in whiteout conditions can be a soul-destroying, confusing business with zero perspective and no aiming mark. Scott tied a shred of wool to a light bamboo and steered by the direction of the wind.

Especially in the region of the south magnetic pole, a standard compass was useless or, at best, extremely slow, so Scott prepared a device for steering by the sun, a small wooden dial with a shadow-pin. He marked two outer rings, one with the compass points and the other in half-hour stages. Anyone with a reasonable understanding of navigation could use this with ease on the move. Slightly more complex, he improvised a method of determining the daily change in the sun's declination to allow him to locate latitude when out of sight of land.

He invented a tough and practical trawl-net for *Discovery* after all the official nets were broken and an ingenious tide-measurement gauge. To protect the face from frostbite when travelling into the wind, Scott designed a jacket hood with a face funnel into the front rim of which he threaded a hoop of copper wire, soft enough to bend into any shape and stiff enough to retain that shape. This 'face funnel wire' is still used by scientists in Antarctica today. Cherry-Garrard recorded that Scott designed tapered sledge runners, wider at the front than the back, which worked well with much less friction involved. Scott also laid the first ever Antarctic land-line telephone link for communication, between Cape Evans and Hut Point.

Scott was always inclined to observe his men and keep private notes, either highly critical or full of praise, on their ongoing performance. He was quick to forgive and forget, unlike most expedition leaders including Amundsen and later Shackleton. So a man who was in his disfavour one month might easily redeem

himself the next. A record of poor health meant little to Scott if the sick person subsequently completed some admirable sledging feat. This may well have stemmed from Scott's own past as a delicate child. He had taken to Wilson from their first meeting in London and had overruled those who advised him not to take someone who had only recently recovered from tuberculosis on the expedition. Michael Barne had once been Scott's first choice for the Southern Journey but after he damaged his fingers on the first spring attempt to lay the Bluff Depot he had to be relegated to less ambitious projects. Over the long winter Scott came to trust and admire Wilson to the point where his tubercular history was ignored and he became first choice for the Southern Journey.

As a disciple of Nansen, whose famed north polar wanderings had been achieved with only one companion, Scott favoured an equally small team. Wilson favoured a third person on the grounds that, with only two, a single injury would be a disaster. Seeing the sense in this, Scott chose Ernest Shackleton whom he had grown to trust and clearly saw as extremely capable. He also appreciated that the Irishman was powerfully built, ideal for manhauling, and a good friend of Wilson.

If, as biographers with no personal experience of polar travel have subsequently suggested, Shackleton had shown Scott signs of rivalry, actual or psychological, Scott would not have selected him for a major role on the Southern Journey. Scott favoured the competent at all times: he had chosen Shackleton for sledging trials from the very first Antarctic outing and had appointed him editor of the *South Polar Times*, not a position to hand to a potential rival in a small community.

When selecting team members for my own polar expeditions, I choose confident, highly capable individuals, who are not 'yes' men but will not threaten my status as leader. Shackleton was to become a rival to Scott in the years to follow the *Discovery* expedition but that was all very much in the future. Two strong people chasing the same goal will always be rivals and gossip

will often invent personal ill will between them. With Scott and Shackleton these myths have gone on for years. Tales of bitter rivalry have made for a good story but are hardly borne out by the documented facts.

Shackleton was overjoyed when Scott asked him to become the third man for the great trek south. If he or others had believed that Scott would select only Royal Navy men for the plum jobs, they were surely surprised when the final choices were Wilson, a civilian, and Shackleton from the Merchant Navy.

Scott's plan was straightforward. The three men would set out in mid-October with all twenty two dogs. Shackleton would, during the preceding weeks, train and learn to handle the teams; a tall order perhaps but he had Armitage on hand for advice. To conserve the dogs' energy at the outset, Michael Barne would lead a manhaul depot-laying group to leave provisions at Bluff Depot and at 79°30'S. To reach the Pole (90°) would entail a round trip of 1,480 miles and this was just attainable, assuming that flat barrier ice stretched unhindered all the way there. Such conditions would make an average of sixteen miles per day for a hundred travel days feasible, a rate achieved by Nansen on his Greenland crossing. Scott himself at no point mentioned the possibility of getting all the way to the Pole on this first major journey into the interior although Wilson was more hopeful: 'We will go as far south in a straight line on the Barrier as we can, reach the Pole if possible, or find some new land.'

When the sun returned to Hut Point early in September hunting parties were sent out to kill seals to re-stock *Discovery* with fresh meat. At the same time experiments took place on the sea ice with four sledges and sixteen dogs. The results confirmed that, rather than attach four dogs to each sledge, the best method was for all the dogs to haul all the sledges hitched together. This avoided factional fighting.

After a thirty-seven-mile journey, which traced the edge of the firm sea ice to the north of Hut Point, Scott's group returned, pleased with Shackleton's dogs and with the bicycle-wheel

meters Skelton had cobbled together to record distances travelled. At the same time other forays foundered due to simple carelessness – a sleeping bag being allowed to blow away, or a tent unsecurely anchored. Scott blamed himself for not having practised the basic skills of camping during the long dark winter months in the immediate vicinity of the ship, but it is easy to be wise after the event and, in my experience of Antarctic winters, dress rehearsals carried out close by a base camp are no substitute for the real thing and can serve merely to give false confidence. Scott's men still made the occasional error but they were already streets ahead of their performances of the previous autumn.

On 11 September Armitage set out with five men to find a route to the magnetic pole. Locating the position of the magnetic pole was crucial to the updating of magnetic maps of the southern hemisphere and thus to marine navigation. And if they could beat Drygalski to it, so much the better. As the most experienced polar traveller aboard *Discovery* Armitage's adverse opinion on the use of skis for manhauling was well known, so eyebrows were raised when his men, on skis, were each seen to wield a ski-stick in unison as they pulled away from Hut Point. Scott recorded: 'I am inclined to reserve my opinion of the innovation.'

Armitage led his men by a zigzag coastal route to the inlet named New Harbour, where he discovered the beginning of an inland route at the mouth of a great glacier which looked hopeful, and which he named after Ferrar. A blizzard then pinned him down and attempts to reconnoitre on foot soon proved dangerous in poor visibility and high winds. Worst of all, two of his men, Ferrar and Heald, became weak with symptoms which Armitage recognised as scurvy. He knew he must turn back at once lest he and the others also succumb. Back aboard *Discovery* Wilson confirmed that all of Armitage's group were showing symptoms of the much feared affliction.

Royds was astounded, 'when one thinks of the fresh meat

which has been constantly provided throughout the winter.' He, Wilson and Armitage decided in Scott's absence on another provisioning trip to increase the seal meat diet at once. They also double-checked the daily availability of lime juice, jams, bottled fruits, potatoes and other vegetables. Hunting sorties were increased and Armitage, aware that some men often avoided rancid tasting seal meat, which was due to the cook's slackness and failure to remove all the blubber, confronted Henry Brett, the cook, and stressed that his future pay level would depend entirely on how well the food was thenceforward prepared and presented.

Scott, Shackleton and the boatswain Thomas Feather returned to the ship on 4 October with sixteen dogs after an encouraging journey. They had left provisions sufficient for six weeks for three men and eighteen dogs at the Bluff Depot and, despite Feather's near death in a crevasse, they made the return journey of sixty-seven miles in only three days. Scott was pleased with the dogs and had no complaints about Shackleton with whom he had chosen to do more sledging than anyone else. On their arrival at the ship, Wilson wrote: 'None of them were any the worse, apparently, except Shackleton, who has blistered all his finger tips again with frostbite and is obviously a bit done up. He is very much thinner and has lost pounds in weight.'

Scott took the news of the scurvy calmly enough and congratulated Armitage on the measures he had taken to combat the sickness. His Southern Journey plans, however, all based on a mid-October start, were badly dented. He would have to wait a month to ensure his own group had no scurvy symptoms. Instead of a hundred days for the southern trip there would now be a mere ten weeks, nowhere near enough to make the Pole at 90° South but, with luck, 85° South might be reached and a huge chunk of unknown terrain explored.

This change of programme showed the good sense of Scott's policy of keeping crew briefings about his future intentions to a minimum since, in Antarctica, even the best-laid plans

were liable to be altered by last minute problems. As Professor Drygalski had once advised Scott, theorising back in Europe was a waste of time.

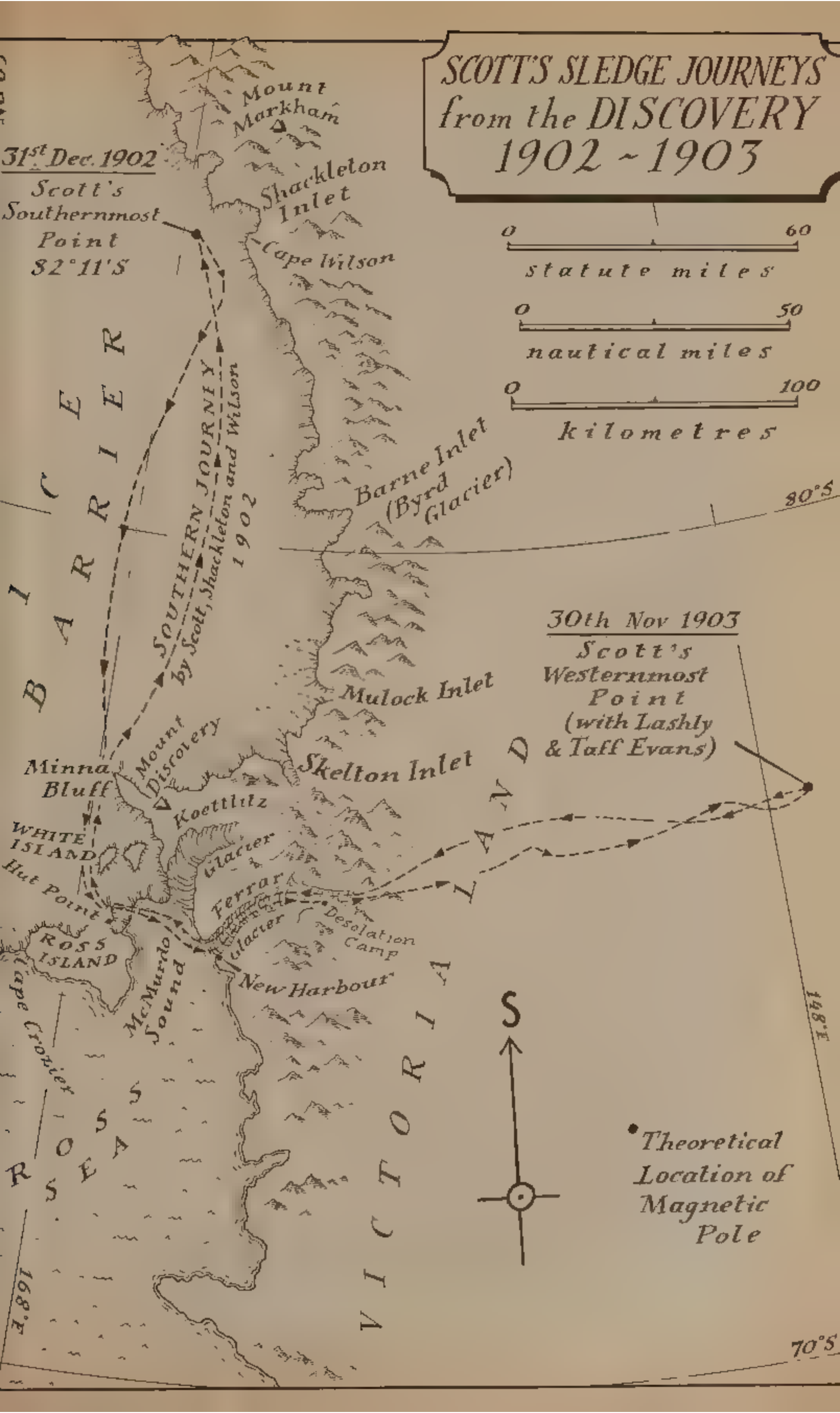
While anti-scurvy operations were in full swing in *Discovery*, including every effort being made to improve hygiene, dryness and ventilation, Charles Royds took a team to Cape Crozier on 4 October where he finally managed to update the message point with the expedition's latest plans for the information of the expected relief ship. A blizzard pinned them in their tents for five days and nights and their thermometer recorded -50°C. From a clifftop near Cape Crozier Royds's men, Skelton, Frank Wild and the American stoker Arthur Quartley, spotted a colony of 300 Emperor penguins on an isolated beach, which they suspected might be the Emperors' breeding grounds. Foul weather forced Royds to turn back and great was the general relief, when Drs Wilson and Koettlitz examined them, that all were found to be fit and well. The scurvy outbreak had been checked and, after giving final detailed orders to Armitage and Royds for their own coming journeys, Scott set out for the interior on 2 November.

8

The Southern Journey 1902–1903

Scott and his two equally inexperienced companions were about to attempt to unravel the mystery of the interior of the last unknown landmass on earth. Was it some floating icefield, punctuated here and there by islands, or a frozen continent? All they could see to their south and east was the limitless Ice Barrier, which Scott shrewdly guessed was 'all afloat'. To their west as they set out lay the distant mountain chain of Victoria Land which, as far as they knew, was in reality merely an island. Not knowing how difficult the snow surfaces ahead would be, nor the likely frequency of blizzards, fog, crevasses and other obstacles, Scott could not predict how many miles his group would advance for each day of rations consumed, but they had food for seventy days, so must turn north again after thirty-five.

To pinpoint their progress in an oft-featureless terrain, the three men used the mariner's latitudinal measurement system based on each degree travelled due south being made up of 60 minutes. Each minute is one nautical mile so each degree is exactly sixty nautical miles. I use nautical miles in this book, unless stated otherwise, which was also Scott's practice. (A nautical mile is 800 feet (244 metres) longer than a statute mile.) Since Hut Point lay at 77°40'S and the Pole at 90°S the direct distance between the two, as flown by a freezing crow, was clearly 740 miles. At any point the direct way south might be blocked by mountains or impassable ice formations. Regions of heavy crevassing and volcanic phenomena had been conjectured and might lie ahead. A leader of great courage and will power would be needed to press on to the limits of endurance but, when Scott had been chosen as leader, the selecting committee


SCOTT'S SLEDGE JOURNEYS
from the DISCOVERY
1902 ~ 1903
0 60
statute miles
0 50
nautical miles
0 100
kilometres
31st Dec. 1902
Scott's Southernmost Point 82°11'S
Mount Markham
Shackleton Inlet
Cape Wilson
SOUTHERN JOURNEY
By Scott, Shackleton and Wilson
1902
Barne Inlet
(Byrd Glacier)
80°S
BARRIER
Mulock Inlet
30th Nov 1903
Scott's Westernmost Point (with Lashly & Taff Evans)
Minna Bluff
Mount Discovery
Skelton Inlet
Koettlitz Glacier
WHITE ISLAND
Hut Point
Ferrar Glacier
Desolation Camp
ROSS ISLAND
McMurdo Sound
New Harbour
Cape Crozier
ROSS SEA
VICTORIA LAND
S
168°E
168°E
70°S
Theoretical Location of Magnetic Pole

had no idea of his character in this respect. Nor, as they set out, did Shackleton and Wilson.

Before departing the three men wrote farewell letters to their loved ones; Scott to his widowed mother, Wilson to his young wife and Shackleton to his fiancée. Scott also wrote orders to his second-in-command, Albert Armitage. 'Should I not return before a date at which there is any possibility of the ship being again frozen in, you should take the ship back to New Zealand provisioning the hut and leaving, if you think fit, a search party, which could be recovered the following season.' Implicit in these instructions was the possibility that Scott's group might not be seen again, might be swallowed up by *terra incognita*. Scott was to be the chief navigator but, should he be injured or debilitated by snow blindness, Shackleton had during the winter practised using the theodolite, introduced by Scott in place of the lighter and easier to handle, but less accurate, sextant. Theodolites need no visible horizon, unlike sextants, and are ideal for survey work in mountainous areas such as the group might well encounter.

Early attempts at skiing when pulling alongside the dogs proved unhelpful, so for the first two days the three men lashed their skis to the sledges, just as Scott's mentor, the great Nansen, had done during his first crossing of Greenland. After the third day the snow surface changed and the skis worked well. Each man used a single ski-stick, toe-strap ski-bindings and warm Lapp *finnesko* boots, as advised by Nansen. Their wooden skis gripped the snow well enough without ski-skins or waxes, since the terrain was wholly flat. For four days they averaged eleven miles per day but then blizzards slowed their pace and at length they reached the Bluff Depot on 10 November. By the fourth day Wilson, the doctor, noted: 'Shackle started a most persistent and annoying cough in the tent.'

For the first two weeks they were followed by a support team under Michael Barne. Scott noted: 'Confident in ourselves, confident in our equipment and confident in our dog team, we can but feel elated with the prospect that is before us.' But only

one day later, their first full day after Barne had left and their loads were at full weight, their progress slowed dramatically for the dogs no longer coped with the heavier weights. Soon Scott was writing: 'Shackleton in front, with harness slung over his shoulder, was bent forward with his whole weight on the trace; in spite of his breathless work, now and again he would raise and half-turn his head in an effort to cheer on the team.'

They agreed that the dogs' rapidly worsening performance was partly due to the absence of any visible object out ahead of the lead dog. There was nothing to aim at in 180° of featureless waste. The obvious answer, frequently noted by Scott, was for one of the group to ski far enough ahead of the lead dog to provide an aiming mark. Unfortunately, the loss of a third of their human pulling power would have made this uneconomical, since there were many other reasons for the dogs' poor perform ance. The best they could manage was to have one man hauling alongside the lead dogs. Whenever feasible Scott would keep his men travelling in bad weather, since the alternative was the quickest way to use food without gaining mileage.

The wind dropped and the temperature rose to –6.5°C and higher, which made sledge-hauling extremely warm work. Rather than kill the dogs through sheer exhaustion in these new difficult conditions, Scott took the painful decision to divide and relay the load. Thenceforward they would pull three of the six sledges for five miles (or less in bad visibility), depot them, then return for the other three. They must now travel three miles to gain a single mile of progress. Scott switched from daytime to night time travel to avoid the hottest time of day since, despite twenty-four hours of daylight, the sun was a lot lower at 'night'.

A phenomenon which frightened men and dogs when first they experienced it was christened the 'barrier hush' or 'shudder'. One man described it as 'the most eerie sound you can imagine'. The worst such quakes I came across in Antarctica were close to the Pole. When snow builds up into a patch of wind crust several inches thick, whether as big as a sports arena, or merely

room-sized, the pressure of even a dog's foot can be enough to trigger a sudden collapse of the whole suspended mass. Never more than a few inches, but it is enough to spark off thunderous sound waves for several seconds.

By early December, after many days of relaying, the men all agreed the chief reason for the dogs' weakness was their food. This was the Norwegian dried stockfish Nansen had strongly recommended in place of the Spratt's cod liver oil biscuits Scott had originally planned for the dogs and which had been fed to them, along with fresh seal meat, for much of the previous winter. They surmised that their dried fish food must have become damp and rotted in the tropics. Scott blamed himself in his diary for not discovering this problem in time and, as the leader, he was right to take responsibility. However, it seems odd that rotting fish would not have been apparent through its stench and so noticed by Armitage, who had fed the dogs on dried fish previously, or Shackleton, in charge of all ship's storage, or Dr Koettlitz, the expert bacteriologist.

After weeks of featureless travel on the floating Ice Barrier they saw slightly to the right of their southerly bearing a dark smudge on the horizon. Another island? They steered for it. Their hunger grew and grew like some living, gnawing creature in the depths of their stomachs. To gain more days for southerly travel, Scott had cut their daily ration to less than twenty-nine ounces each, far too little to replace their calorific expenditure caused by the extreme toil of manhauling. They were consuming around 4,000 calories and probably using more than 7,000 calories daily. Their weight loss would have averaged around ten ounces a day and, since most of their body fat would have disappeared in their first month of travel, their starved bodies were by December metabolising the very muscle they depended upon.

Their mental drive must have received a valuable boost when on 25 November Scott's theodolite readings placed them at the 80th parallel, the nearest anyone had reached to the Pole from

any part of Antarctica's circumference. This reminder of their unique achievement did nothing to help their hunger pangs: Scott found that his meagre daily tobacco ration took the edge off his hunger and when he ran out he noted: 'Today I have been trying old tea leaves but they are horrid.'

The three men's diaries indicate that they were happy together. If Scott's normal impatience flared from time to time, there is no indication of it. After a month or so Wilson's diary mentions that they had Scott 'well in hand'.

At times the land seemed much closer, but then mists would swirl about them and, with nothing at all to steer by, they would attempt to follow a compass bearing, a slow and frustrating task even after weeks of experience. Whenever they halted briefly from exhaustion, they quickly chilled to the core. Then, resuming the haulage, their sweat would again trickle down their necks. The dogs laboured on beside them. Wilson wrote: 'The amount of shouting and beating the dogs want before they will do any work at all is soul sickening. They feel the heat so much despite the night marching.'

By the end of November individual features to the south-west were sometimes clearly visible. Wilson noted: 'The coast we are making for is still about 50 miles away . . . It looks very beautiful though, all snow-covered peaks, bold cliffs and headlands.' Then, soon afterwards: 'Snow grains falling all day. Nothing but "white silence" all round us.'

They depended on their tent for their very lives, as do all polar travellers. At the lunch stop on 2 December Wilson recorded that Scott: 'in preparing our hot stuff set the tent alight, luckily just as we came up with the second loads, or the blessed thing would have been burnt. Providentially I was able to grab the thing the moment the flame came through to the outside and put it out, so that the only damage was a hole you could put your head through.' That night Shackleton worked hard with needle and thread to repair the damage before the next blizzard.

Early in December, Scott began to worry that the fuel stocks

were running low and instituted the economy of chewing frozen, rather than boiled, seal meat chunks at the midday halts. Halfway through December the loads had become light enough to pull without relay; a huge relief since every mile marched now meant immediate southerly progress. For the past nightmarish month only thirty miles had been gained at the mind-numbing rate of one mile a day, despite ninety miles of ground being actually covered. The reason for the lighter loads was that they had finally reached to within a mile of the land they had crept towards for so long, so could safely leave a depot there for their return in the knowledge it would be easy to re-locate. They had tried to reach the nearby land to take rock samples, but a deep chasm like some giant hinge separated the floating Ice Barrier from the landmass and their attempts to cross this divide proved futile. To reach land they had been steering south-west but now they returned to a due south bearing and, because night-time now invariably brought long periods of thick fog and slower progress, they returned to daytime travel. Wilson wrote: 'Our hunger is very excessive.' On 19 December he further noted: 'We have decided now to feed up 8 or 9 of the best dogs on the others, and when these dogs have eaten each other up we must pull our own victuals and gear.'

Contrary to the written evidence, critics have suggested that Scott would never have premeditated such un-British dog slaughter, even though he knew the Norwegians accepted it as a sound means of polar travel, scorning what they saw as sentimentality. Scott was unable to force himself to drive dogs to death in the manner described by the likes of Fridtjof Nansen but he had always accepted the potential need for dog slaughter. With Wilson the previous winter, he had pre-planned the precise mathematics of progress by the dog-eat dog system, as can be seen in Wilson's diary. They must have hoped they would never have to use it but they were ready for the necessity.

As Scott's men trudged painfully south, two always man-hauling alongside the dogs and one, turn by turn, cracking the

whip and shouting from the rear, they slowly grew to loathe the experience and silently to vow never to repeat it. As each dog died or was butchered by Wilson, the men recorded its death in their diaries like the passing of a friend. Scott was in no doubt but that dogs could increase distances to be travelled. His problem was that, for the dogs, it involved torture and slow death. Wilson used his medical scalpel to pierce each new victim's heart, a speedy method of despatch and, when snow-blindness made him incapable, Shackleton took over the gruesome work. Scott was ashamed of his squeamishness and wrote: 'It is a moral cowardice of which I am heartily ashamed and I know perfectly well that my companions hate the whole thing as much as I do . . . [Wilson does] all my share of the dirty work.'

To cope with burns, snow-blindness, cuts, fungal sores, ulcers, diarrhoea, teeth broken on frozen meat chunks, gangrene and a hundred and one other possible ailments, their doctor, Wilson, carried a basic medical pack, which, like everything else on their sledges, was as light as possible. A typical field pack for Scott-era journeys included chalk powder, bismuth and lead compound (all with opium), a tonic containing strychnine, sodium lactate and chlorodyne. Also quinine for fever, cascara for constipation and calomel for purging, mercuric chloride as antiseptic and liquid cocaine for stove fumes and snow-blindness. A mix of bandages, sticking plasters and sprain emulsion completed the doctor's armoury, along with tweezers and some scalpels.

Snow-blindness was the most common affliction. Scott noted: 'Poor Wilson has had an attack of snow-blindness, in comparison with which our former attacks may be considered as nothing; we were forced to camp early on account of it, and during the whole afternoon he has been writhing in horrible agony. It is distressing enough to see, knowing that one can do nothing to help. Cocaine has only a very temporary effect, and in the end seems to make matters worse. I have never seen an eye so terribly bloodshot and inflamed as that which is causing the trouble,

and the inflammation has spread to the eyelid. He describes the worst part as an almost intolerable stabbing and burning of the eye-ball.'

There were times during the journey when two out of the three men were blind and the third had the use of only one eye. As Wilson dragged himself and his load along blindfolded, Scott described to him the view of the landmass to the right of their line of advance. No human eyes had ever seen this unfolding panorama, which included the gleaming black and red cliffs of mountains rising to 14,000 feet and more. Although they could not know it they were walking along Antarctica's heavily indented continental coastline and each wide inlet between successive land features was the snout of a glacier descending to the Ice Barrier from the 10,000-foot-high inland plateau. Fighting his blindness, Wilson worked, whenever they halted, to sketch each new landscape with commendable accuracy.

Christmas Eve saw an improvement in the surface and the three men found to their relief that they could shift the entire load with no help from the surviving dogs. Shackleton had secreted in his clothes bag a cricket-ball-sized plum pudding and a shrivelled sprig of holly in a spare sock, which he produced for their festive Christmas dinner, and Scott broke out triple rations to celebrate. They were within ten miles of 82° South but their food and fuel stocks would allow for only four more days' outward travel. Despite further snow-blindness and bad weather, they reached five miles beyond their unseen goal on 28 December. This put them in the mouth of a wide west-running inlet between two sets of mountains. They realised that, with just a few more miles of southerly toil, they might be able to see sufficiently far into this great inlet to learn whether it was merely a bay or a channel cutting off the coast which they had followed for so long from the new land rising ahead of them.

Neither Wilson nor Shackleton at any point suggested in their diaries or elsewhere that they were continuing too far for safety. Scott used the word 'argued' but not in the sense that later

detractors used to support a quarrel between the men as to when they should turn back. Scott's words were clear: 'We argued, however, that one never knows what may turn up, and we determined, in spite of the unpromising outlook, to push on to our utmost limit. As events proved, we argued most wisely, for had we turned at this point we should have missed one of the most important features of the whole coastline.'

Explorers who turn back a touch before they really must may be lauded as responsible or branded as craven. In my opinion and, it seems, in the judgment of men like Wilson and Lashly, who volunteered again and again to follow him, Scott was bold and ever prepared to take a calculated risk, but never foolhardy. Wilson was clearly pleased. On 28 December he wrote: 'we have had the unlooked for, hardly expected, interest of a long new coast line with very gigantic mountain ranges to survey and sketch.'

The next day unfortunately brought next to no visibility but on the 30th the three men pushed on towards the mouth of the mystery inlet through dense fog. Scott and Wilson skied on with the specific intent of interpreting the nature of the inlet, rather than due south in an effort to add distance to their 'farthest south' record. On the last day of 1902 the fog and the clouds dispersed confirming that, since there was no visible end to it, the twenty-mile-wide inlet must be a strait between two islands. Wilson sketched all the features visible as far as 83° South and Scott named two of them the Shackleton Inlet and Cape Wilson. Knowing the importance of obtaining geological proof to help identify the origins of their new land, they determined to collect rocks before heading back towards *Discovery*, but despite cutting steps in the ice, they were thwarted by unpassable crevasses.

Back at the tent and famished, they made soup, but Shackleton knocked the pot over so they scraped the mess off the floor-cloth and re-cooked it. Not an angry word was spoken nor even diarised but, having experienced the embarrassment of my own in-tent clumsiness many times, I can imagine the wretched

Shackleton's thoughts. Scott noted: 'luckily it all remained on our waterproof floorcloth and by the time we had done scraping, I do not think that any was wasted.'

On New Year's Day, having discovered and mapped nearly 300 miles of virgin coast, the three men turned their eleven surviving dogs homewards from their most southerly point which is likely to have been 82°11'S. They now faced the classic race against time that is the anticipated risk of all such finely tuned return journeys. Speed of travel set against rate of food expenditure equals an outcome of either death by starvation or just reaching base. The explorer who makes it back with plenty of food and fuel will realise that he could have gone further and could have discovered more unknown land. On the other hand, his counterpart who cannot travel fast enough or suffers unexpected bad luck will die regretting he did not turn back earlier.

When in the 1990s Mike Stroud and I planned the rations necessary to manhaul across the entire continent in a hundred days, we took an additional ten days of emergency food. In 1902, for a seventy-day journey, Scott took five days' worth of emergency rations and, by spending that one day rock hunting, cut his bad luck/bad weather reserve down to four days. One of the purposes, perhaps the main aim, of Scott's Southern Journey was to determine the nature of Antarctica and the obtaining of rock samples could help establish the existence or otherwise of a southern continent. Detractors mutter that this was reckless but they forget Scott's men could yet cut their food intake to half-rations and so spin out their survival, desperately hungry maybe but still able to progress.

For four days the exhausted little group averaged eight miles a day, just enough if they were to reach their next depot without cutting into emergency rations. But the dogs were dying one by one and from 5 January the men did nearly all the work with most of the dogs walking behind; an all but useless canine caravan surviving on cannibalism as their numbers dwindled. At midnight on 13 January Scott scanned the horizon through

the telescope of his theodolite and thrilled at the sight of a tiny black spot in 360° of whiteness. He had found the depot.

'I sprang up,' he wrote, 'and shouted "Boys, there's the depot." We are not a demonstrative party, but I think we excused ourselves for the wild cheer that greeted this announcement.' They camped at the depot, agreed to prune their gear to absolute minimal requirements and to kill the last two dogs. Of the dead dogs, Scott noted: 'I think we could all have wept . . . [at] the finale to a tale of tragedy; I scarcely like to write of it.' Neither he nor Shackleton would ever forget what they had been forced to do to their dogs. They would remain determined never to repeat the experience.

Although all written records of the journey are devoid of any reference to any argument between Scott and his two colleagues, a story first told by Armitage twenty-five years later sparked off a legend of a tiff between Scott and Shackleton. The passage of time has long since buried the truth but the myth created by Armitage's tale has blossomed and grown in the telling. 'No smoke without fire' is the standard reaction by most people on digesting the story and neither Scott nor Shackleton is around to deny the whole saga as a groundless lie. The bare facts are as follows. Shackleton's health broke down badly during the return journey and he was still in a bad way after a month of rest and good food on board *Discovery*. At that time Scott had to decide who to send back home in the relief ship and both doctors, Wilson quite clearly and Koettlitz waveringly, advised that Shackleton should go.

Two years later Scott's one time rival for leadership of the *Discovery* expedition, Albert Armitage, wrote his book about the expedition in which no mention is made of any rift between Scott and Shackleton. But Armitage grew bitter with the passage of years, a terrible marriage and the strains of service at sea through the long years of the First World War. In 1925 he wrote his autobiography and, twenty-two years after the event, he suggested that Scott had tried to rid *Discovery* of all Merchant

Navy officers by sending both himself and Shackleton back in the relief ship in that February of 1903. Armitage also wrote a letter to H. R. Mill (who had left *Discovery* in Madeira back in 1901 and was in 1922 writing a biography of Shackleton). In this fateful letter Armitage produced a bombshell out of the blue:

Shortly after their return from the Southern Journey, Shackleton told me that Scott was sending him home, and asked me if I could do anything about it. He was in great distress, and could not understand it. I consulted Koettlitz and he informed me that Scott was in a worse condition than Shackleton. I then went to Scott, and asked him why he was sending [Shackleton] back. I told him there was no necessity from a health point of view, so after beating about the bush he said: 'If he does not go back sick he will go back in disgrace.' I told Shackleton, and promised to look after his interests.

Armitage then added another ancient 'memory', also told for the first time.

During the winter, Wilson told me the following story, which Shackleton confirmed later. On the Southern Journey, Wilson and Shackleton were packing their sledges after breakfast one morning. Suddenly they heard Scott shout to them: 'Come here you BFs.' They went to him, and Wilson quietly said: 'Were you speaking to me?' 'No Bill,' said Scott. 'Then it must have been me,' said Shackleton. He received no answer. He then said: 'Right, you are the worst BF of the lot, and every time that you dare to speak to me like that you will get it back.' Before Shackleton left he told me that he meant to return to prove to Scott that he – Shackleton – was a better man than Scott.

Would Wilson, Scott's great friend and known for his loyalty, have told such a story to Armitage with whom he was never close? The polar historian David Wilson, Edward Wilson's great-nephew, has no doubt that Armitage, embittered by the passage of two difficult decades, invented the conversation between himself and Wilson.

Why should Armitage have invented such a story? *Discovery*'s chief engineer, Skelton's, personal shipboard notes record: 'Armitage is a peculiar chap, especially with regard to his arguments . . . His methods are not always genuine.' After Armitage's death Skelton wrote:

I think Armitage's character was often rather soured - he did not think he got enough credit for his work he is not popular in our Expedition nor in his own Service, the P & O. Scott was tactful with him and none of us had rows. He had that silly inferiority complex of the Merchant Navy for the Royal Navy. In his private life he had much misfortune, his brother in the RN, who I knew well, committed suicide rather than face a Court-Martial for a nasty crime. His wife was 'a hell of a woman' and poor old Armitage whom she made penniless was far too kind to her. The last ten years of his life after leaving the P & O found him very impecunious and embittered by lack of appreciation by others . . . Personally I never had a row with him but never corresponded or got near to him and that goes for all of us in the *Discovery*. His books are not always accurate, and rather poor stuff . . . he is inclined to claim too much.

What did Scott himself give away at the time he sent Shackleton back home? A private letter to his mother was later unearthed in which he wrote: 'All the crocks I am sending away, and am much relieved to get rid of. Except Shackleton, who is a very good fellow and only fails from the constitutional point of view.'

Shackleton's diary made it crystal clear that relations on the journey back were good, but nevertheless the Armitage tale has been seized upon by successive generations of biographers. Here is the record from Shackleton's diary:

On January 15 I broke down owing to overstrain, and haemorrhage started, which was naturally a rather serious matter, as the party was a hundred and seventy miles from the ship. I was, however, able to march the nine or ten miles a day that the party made . . .

Captain Scott and Dr. Wilson could not have done more for me than they did. They were bearing the brunt of the work, and throughout the difficulties and anxieties of such a time showed ever cheery faces.

The acid test of how men have fared with each other on such a long and nightmarish journey comes, in my own experience, at the journey's end when it is at last possible to escape from each other's company. The night after the three men returned to their cabins in *Discovery*, Gerald Doorly, one of the officers from the relief ship, which had arrived during their absence, was passing by the neighbouring cabins of Scott and Shackleton. He heard Scott calling out: 'I say Shackles, how would you fancy some sardines on toast?' This hardly supports the rumours of any estrangement let alone hostility between the two men.

At the time Scott sent Shackleton home, the seventy or so men in *Discovery* and the relief ship were mingling and gossiping, as expedition members do, and finding out from one another the inside story. Those team members due to stay in Antarctica for another year were also writing their experiences to their loved ones back home for mailing on the relief ship. Many of the men's diaries and many of those letters (including fifty-six letters written by the garrulous Charles Royds) have been scrutinised again and again in later years by Scott biographers searching for the least mention of the rumoured rift with Shackleton. No single shred of evidence has come to light by the year 2003.

Another myth encouraged if not invented by the embittered Armitage some ten years after the expedition was his 'memory' that Wilson once told him he 'had it out with Scott' during their Southern Journey and that 'it' involved Scott's treatment of Shackleton. In 1933 the author George Seaver quoted, apparently from papers which Wilson's widow let him see before she destroyed them, the same single sentence from Edward Wilson: 'Had it out with Scott.' Some Scott biographers have used this ambiguous Wilson quote, of which no written source exists,

to show that Wilson confronted Scott about his treatment of Shackleton. There is no evidence that this was so. And, because of this, Scott is now believed to have behaved badly towards Shackleton and been called to account by Wilson.

Who is to say that Wilson was not 'having it out' with Scott on some far more prosaic topic such as not stopping enough to let him sketch or having to leave the tent to urinate instead of using a tin in the tent, the way cooking duties should be shared or even about their differing religious beliefs. There is no mention in any of Wilson's meticulous diaries or anywhere else of any incident that this could conceivably have referred to. Yet this single tale of Seaver has been seized upon by generations of polar historians as evidence that Wilson, acting in his habitual role of peacemaker between all men, attacked Scott over some specific incident that occurred between Scott and Shackleton or, perhaps, to warn Scott against aspects of his behaviour. Maybe Scott's oft-confessed bad moods, impatience and quick temper were the topic of this tête a tête? No one will ever know, they can only speculate.

What needs no speculation, since Wilson's diary and subsequent letters are all available to the public, are his opinions about Scott. On 23 January he wrote: 'The Captain and I had long talks on every subject imaginable and indeed he is a most interesting talker when he starts.' In a letter Wilson sent to Scott's mother when he was back in *Discovery* he wrote: 'during these three months we naturally saw a good deal of each other. I am sure he will bear me out in saying that although we got to know each other very well, we were better friends at the end of the journey even than before. He stood the journey better than either Shackleton or myself, indeed he seems as strong as any here, and fit for any amount of exertion and exposure.'

On 25 January, with ragged clothes, raw lips, swollen scorbutic gums and ravenous with hunger, they saw the smoking stack of volcanic Erebus still a hundred miles away but a welcome signpost to Hut Point. Nine days later, at the Barrier's

edge, the three men were met by Skelton and Bernacchi. Wilson wrote of their homecoming on 3 February: 'the relief ship, *Morning*, had arrived a week or more before and . . . All the news was good except that the *Discovery* was still blocked in by over eight miles of sea ice. But that didn't trouble us too much . . . we saw the ship decorated from top to toe with flags and all the ship's company up the rigging round the gangway ready to cheer us . . . as we came on board . . . Then came the time for a bath, and clothes off that had been on since November the second of the year before and then a huge dinner.'

At dinner there were riotous toasts to everyone, according to Skelton, who raised a toast to all who had died in the cause of science, including the dogs. Shackleton did not attend the dinner. He wrote: 'I turned in at once when I got on board, not being up to the mark, after having had a nice bath – that is the first for ninety-four days. It is very nice to be back again, but it was a good time.'

Scott wrote of the Southern Journey: 'we had plodded with ever-varying fortune over a vast snow-field . . . [and] covered 960 statute miles, with a combination of success and failure.' This modestly summed up man's first great penetration of the unknown southern continent.

The idea of sending a ship to Antarctica in the southern summer of 1903 to relieve Scott (as and where he might need such relief) was that of Clements Markham. As early as May 1901 the expedition's chief sponsor Llewellyn Longstaff had donated £5,000 (£235,000) towards such a vessel, aware that if *Discovery* should founder in Antarctica all Scott's men, benighted perhaps on some remote and barren coast, would be at ever-increasing risk of a Franklin-type tragedy. Markham's fund gradually mounted and he had long promised Scott that a relief ship would materialise to bring provisions and mail, take back any invalids and, should *Discovery* have foundered, all the surviving ship's company, too.

Markham purchased a tough little wooden whaler, *Morgenen*, in Norway for £3,800 (£178,000), renamed her *Morning* and recruited Captain William Colbeck from the Merchant Navy as skipper. Colbeck was ideal for the job for he had served as surveyor in Borchgrevink's *Southern Cross* and had wintered at Cape Adare. The Royal Navy allowed two of its officers to join Colbeck's crew. One was George Mulock, a skilled surveyor, and the other a Welsh sub-lieutenant named Edward 'Teddy' Evans (later Lord Mountevans). Both officers were only twenty one years old. Other officers, including Gerald Doorly, were chosen by Colbeck from the Merchant Navy. Royds commented: 'Evans I thought an ass, and not a good representative of the senior service. Apparently he had been causing a great deal of trouble there by want of tact.'

The question now was whether the natural ice break up would reach Hut Point in time to release *Discovery* before *Morning* had to leave. Early attempts by Armitage and Royds to blast *Discovery* free with explosives were ineffective and when, by 10 February, there was no sign at all of further break up, Scott agreed that all winter provisions should be sledged over to *Discovery* just in case she really did remain icebound at Hut Point. The two captains also agreed that *Morning*, far less powerful in ice than *Discovery*, should depart well before any danger of her being caught down south might threaten. If, after she had gone, the ice did break out, then *Discovery* could follow her north after completing any coastal surveying that might prove possible.

Colbeck's provisions were greatly welcomed by Scott's men, especially the fruit, vegetables and mutton. Scott estimated his crew could now easily survive another two years stuck at Hut Point, but only if enough local meat was obtained; a total kill in Wilson's reckoning of 200 seals.

An earlier error had been overcome during Scott's absence. *Discovery*'s lifeboats had all been stored beside the ship, as was the custom on previous naval expeditions to the Arctic when

lifeboats were removed to make room for canvas deck awnings. But placing *Discovery*'s boats on the sea ice proved disastrous. Since Scott had merely been following a well-tried naval custom by stacking the boats on a floe, he had not taken it kindly when the civilian physicist Louis Bernacchi had warned him the previous autumn that the boats might be lost. He told Bernacchi in no uncertain terms to mind his own business. However confident he clearly was that long established Arctic practices of boat stowage would work at Hut Point, Scott should surely have listened to Bernacchi's warning at least in terms of checking the boats' well being on a periodic basis. The boats were, thanks to Royds and his men, ready to go but *Discovery* looked increas ingly like a firm Antarctic fixture for another twelve months.

The moment had come for Scott to determine who should go home with *Morning*. The party of ten included two sent back on health grounds. Dr Koettlitz recommended that Royal Navy Petty Officer William MacFarlane should leave, despite his specific request to stay on. MacFarlane was one of Scott's chosen sledgers but on Armitage's western journey, while Scott was away, the petty officer had been stricken by a suspected heart attack. He seemed to have recovered but Scott could not risk any recurrent attack on a journey the following year and so MacFarlane was to be sent home. MacFarlane, popular and Royal Navy, was not the only one to be sent back on health grounds and against his will, for Scott decided that Shackleton was also too sick to take on the coming year's sledge journeys. Wilson agreed for he too had witnessed his friend's rapid and alarming deterioration during their recent journey south. Wilson stated that Shackleton's throat and breathing passages had been affected and that his attacks of dyspnoea, coughing and blood spitting made it inadvisable for him to risk a second winter.

Koettlitz examined Shackleton and, finding no permanent damage and perhaps responding to the patient's clear desire to stay, told Scott that he felt Shackleton need not go. Scott pressed him for a definite opinion on whether Shackleton was fit to lead

a sledging journey or not. Koettlitz then wrote: 'Mr Shackleton's breakdown during the southern sledge journey was undoubtedly, in Dr Wilson's opinion, due in great part to scurvy taint. I certainly agree with him; he has now practically recovered from it, but referring to your memo: as to the duties of an executive officer, I cannot say that he would be fit to undergo hardships and exposure in this climate.'

Koettlitz could not have taken kindly to Scott pressing him for an official medical report on Shackleton, rather than his initial vague diagnosis. Subsequent disgruntled comments to his fellow scientist, Hodgson, resulted in the latter writing: 'I hear it is true, as I suspected, that personal feeling is the real reason for Shackleton's departure.' This is the only comment from any of the participants to this effect. Clarence Hare, the steward, who was close to all the officers and scientists and kept an observant diary, mentions no bad blood between Scott and Shackleton, nor does the prolific and critical letter writer, Charles Royds. Remember too Scott's personal regret expressed in his letter to his mother. In his official report he wrote: 'It is with great reluctance that I order his return and trust that it will be made evident that I do so solely on account of his health and that his future prospects may not suffer.'

Shackleton's lungs and heart were clearly susceptible to some ailment unconnected to scurvy. Subsequent sicknesses and eventually his death proved this, but at the time both Wilson and Scott, the two men who actually witnessed Shackleton's physical problems, were both clearly against trusting his health on future journeys. No other rationale was needed, however regretfully, to send both MacFarlane and Shackleton home.

Scott inadvertently fuelled the rivalry myth by asking his dour second in-command Albert Armitage if he too wanted to leave in *Morning*. Before joining *Discovery* the latter had told Scott he must have his wife's agreement. Scott had now been given by Colbeck a confidential instruction from the Admiralty via Markham that he should try to persuade Armitage to return.

The reason was not fully spelled out but involved Mrs Armitage's young child and a brewing scandal with some third party. Scott's attempts to put this tactfully to his second-in-command misfired badly and Armitage decided he was to be purged merely because he, like Shackleton, was Merchant Navy. 'Fortunately my appointment was independent of him. I absolutely refused.'

Scott relied on Shackleton to present as good as possible a picture of the expedition when back home in Britain. Had he suspected bad blood existed between them he would hardly have written as he did to his Royal Society mentors: 'Mr E. H. Shackleton, who returns much to my regret should be of the greatest use in explaining the details of our position and our requirements for the future.' Back in Britain Shackleton was to write a 1,200-word report on the Southern Journey with no note of blame, resentment or victimisation. This is equally true of his personal diaries.

By the time *Morning* left Hut Point on 2 March, Shackleton had rested and eaten well for over a month but, as Michael Barne noted when he accompanied his friend over the ice to say farewell: 'we went on very slowly as poor old Shackles is still very shaky.' Shackleton wept openly as *Morning* sailed north. Scott and his three dozen remaining men waved from the ice-edge. Shackleton was a proud man and the ambitions which had seen him join *Discovery* were now redoubled for he knew he must prove himself to the world. By choosing Shackleton as his companion for the Southern Journey and then sending him home as unhealthy, Scott had inadvertently ensured that the two men would become lifelong rivals.

9

Lost on the Plateau 1903–1904

As Scott's men prepared for a second season's work in August 1903, what of the German expedition of Professor Drygalski? His ship *Gauss* had survived twelve months' captivity in sea ice many miles from the region the Germans had intended to explore. They had tried to sledge inland but crevasses and rough ice soon reduced their activities to building an icehouse laboratory four days' travel from the ship and when that proved unworkable they set out their magnetic equipment on the floe beside the ship. Their on deck windmill blew down, as had Scott's, so all lighting was by oil and blubber lamps. Most attempts at scientific work in the vicinity were blighted by blizzards, poor equipment, reluctant dogs and broken sledges.

When, at about the time Scott returned from his Southern Journey, the ice about *Gauss* showed signs of break up, the Germans tried to shatter the floes with explosives and large ice-saws. These were ineffective but on 8 February a gale broke up the ice and allowed them to escape to the north. Drygalski later tried to head south again, but storms and shortage of coal frustrated him. Near mutiny on board was narrowly averted and Berlin ordered the ship home, as funds were exhausted. A great deal of coastal magnetic and oceanographic work had been done, an ice shelf and an extinct volcano, the Gaussberg, discovered, but no inland exploration or southern journeys were carried out, nor was the existence of a southern continent confirmed.

Scott's other contemporary, Otto Nordenskjöld, had fared little better. The Swedes managed some fine mapping work of the coast of the Antarctic Peninsula and South Georgia before

their ship was lost and the Scots under William Bruce achieved fine scientific results but could not penetrate far to the south. The *Discovery* expedition, by the time the men braced themselves for their second winter at Hut Point, had proved by far the most effective and efficient geographical exploration unit in Antarctica. In addition to the research and survey work carried out on or near Ross Island and the various inland forays prior to the Southern Journey, major journeys from *Discovery* had also been led by Barne and Armitage.

Armitage had discovered a complex route to a great glacier named after Ferrar, which led through the ramparts of the western mountains and up to Victoria Land's inland plateau. En route he conducted magnetic readings, which would later help to establish the position of the south magnetic pole. Had he been able to extend his travels west over the 9,000-foot-high plateau at the head of the Ferrar Glacier he might have proved Victoria Land was indeed part of a continent and not just an island. The last chance that year to find such proof was left to Michael Barne's group.

Whilst Scott was beginning his Southern Journey and Armitage was pioneering a route through the western mountains, Barne's six-man team had headed out from the Minna Bluff Depot and aimed for the most southerly point of land they could see. By 3 January 1903 they had come across a whole new stretch of coastline. Over the next week, in between spells of thick freezing fog, Barne had surveyed parts of the landmass including the mouths of three great inlets that lay between the regions then being explored to the east by Scott and to the west by Armitage.

At the outset of the second winter Scott had studied the detailed reports of Barne and Armitage and praised them both for their considerable success in difficult, often dangerous conditions. With expert surveyor George Mulock, left behind by *Morning* as Shackleton's replacement, he had then carefully worked out a map of the coastline from the survey data,

photographs and sketches resulting from all three journeys. The resulting chart defined some 326 miles of the coastline south and west of Ross Island and gave Scott the information he needed to work out critical plans for the coming summer's exploration work.

Scott knew his career would suffer if *Discovery* remained icebound yet again in twelve months' time. The Admiralty would blame him not the sea ice. He determined to use a giant ice-saw and explosives to prepare for a breakout as early as feasible, probably mid-December 1903. Since major sledging journeys to the interior were impractical in the extreme temperatures before October, there would only be ten weeks available to solve the continental mystery. Also, to sledge in October, depots would need pre-positioning in the cold month of September. Too few dogs were left, so all journeys would involve manhaul. By mid-winter Scott was ready to outline his plans.

First, he would ascend the Ferrar Glacier, taking eleven men all or part of the way, and then traverse the high inland plateau that Armitage had discovered in the hope of delineating Victoria Land's western limits. Second, Michael Barne and George Mulock would take seven men to survey the region south and east of Minna Bluff where Barne's previous journey and Scott's had failed to define the nature of the great inlets. Third, Wilson and two others would work at Cape Crozier to unravel the mystery of the Emperor penguins' breeding habits, which international scientists believed to be the key to solving an evolutionary conundrum. These journeys would account for all but thirteen of Scott's men and leave only two officers, Royds and Armitage, one of whom along with a minimal crew of seven would have to stay with the ship.

With advice from Bernacchi, the magnetic expert, Scott determined that the fourth and last journey, using the available remnant of six men and one officer, should head south-east over the Barrier and well away from any known land. There were two aims to this. Bernacchi and his specialist instruments would

measure the local magnetic forces in parallel with related plotting to be done by appointed magnetic personnel on Scott's western team. The north and south magnetic poles are the two points on the earth's surface where the terrestrial magnetic field has only a vertical component and a zero horizontal component. At these points a dip needle points vertically downwards. The two resulting sets of readings from Scott's men should help to pinpoint the location of the south magnetic pole, even if Scott, on the inland plateau, did not actually reach it.

Faced with the thorny problem of whether Royds or Armitage should lead this last journey, Scott plumped for Royds for two reasons. It was his turn to lead a journey, for Armitage had already completed a lion's share of sledging and discovery. Secondly, Scott, knowing Skelton to be a sound and fair judge of character, was worried by his account of Armitage's behaviour during the Ferrar Glacier journey. There is no record of what Skelton actually told Scott but his diary attacked Armitage for overdue caution and slow progress, for his hectoring attitude to the young scientist Ferrar, and for his failure to inspire his men, some of whom grumbled constantly behind his back. Armitage had his own plans to lead a major push due south and was very upset when Scott said no and explained why he should stay with *Discovery*. Scott did slightly soften the blow by asking him to lead a minor journey to the south-west area of McMurdo Sound but Armitage was to nurse an anti-Scott grudge from then on.

Charles Royds said of the Armitage plan to lead a trip south: 'in my opinion his sole wish is to beat the Captain's record.'

Wilson also noted: 'Armitage applied to the Captain to be allowed to try and get farther south than we did last year, with men only to pull and I think that he was quite rightly refused. The Captain worked the possibilities out on paper and showed them to me and I agreed with him in thinking it was far better to apply all our sledging energies and equipment to new work, rather than to covering old ground to that extent, with the chance of doing so little at the end of it. The upshot of it all is

that Armitage is now off the list of sledging for this year altogether though whether this is due to himself or any one else I cannot say.'

There were clearly not enough men or sledges to mount another southern journey or even the relevant depot-laying preparation work. From Armitage's viewpoint he saw Scott gaining the glory of mapping the high Victoria Land plateau, which he, not Scott, had discovered. Yet he was not allowed to go south. Armitage certainly never forgave Scott. At the end of the *Discovery* expedition he appeared to part with Scott on friendly terms and his book about the expedition, very complimentary to his leader, enjoyed good sales. For many years after Captain Scott's death, Armitage gave no hint of any latent hostility but, a quarter of a century after the event, his autobiography appeared and a long suppressed resentment poured out. Since many biographers have used the Armitage papers to brand Scott with various accusations it is worth a brief look at them.

Contractual niggles still rankled:

My appointment was independent of Scott, although of course I was under his command. I was to be landed, if possible, with a hut and equipment sufficient for two years; eight men, including one of the surgeons, and a team of dogs. There was to be no restriction put on my sledging. My expedition pay was to be not more than fifty pounds per annum less than Scott's. It was to commence when I left my P. & O. ship, and continue until I rejoined a P. & O. ship.

With the exception of the expedition pay, not one of these conditions was fulfilled. I was not put on the pay-sheet until two weeks had elapsed after leaving my ship. I was taken off it at the end of the month of our return to England although I was nine months without a ship. On arrival at our Antarctic base Scott implored me to forgo the other conditions, although they were quite feasible. He put forward the plea, not only that it would cripple his own efforts to a great extent, but that he could not do without me. Naturally I consented to stay with the main party.

Armitage summarised his feelings about Scott, by then dead for over a decade, by asserting that he found much that was lovable in Scott's character but was quite aware that he would allow nothing to stand in his way and was of a most suspicious nature; also that Scott would make a great friend of a man and use him only to throw him aside. Nor could he be trusted to keep his word of honour promises. Armitage wrote:

I was told off to find a pass between the lofty mountain peaks of South Victoria Land, to the west, and gain the inland plateau if such existed. I did so, although he did not believe that I would find it, as a subsequent letter will prove. But he would not allow me to carry on my work: he did it himself, and refused to allow me or anyone else to attempt a further southern journey, saying that there was no use in it. In the years to come he again attempted it, succeeded in reaching the coveted South Pole, but, alas! only to find that he had been forestalled.

All hard-hitting stuff about a long dead colleague.

At the end of the *Discovery* expedition Scott wrote a reference for Armitage: 'I received valuable assistance from him in the equipment of the Expedition and formed a high opinion of his loyalty. I found him to be most capable in all his duties and an excellent Navigator. I can confidently recommend him to anyone requiring his services.' Armitage expected promotion and when it was not forthcoming:

[I] did not allow the matter to rest, for I considered that, when Scott had been promoted to Captain R.N. for his Antarctic services, it was an invidious distinction to leave me out in the cold: . . . When my old leader met with his tragic end . . . Mr. Churchill was First Lord . . . So I wrote to Mr. Churchill and pointed this out, saying that I had always heard of him as a fair-minded man, and requested that I should receive the pay I considered myself entitled to.

The Admiralty was unmoved.

During the second long winter of 1903 in *Discovery*, according

to Skelton, Armitage did not fit in well with the rest. He was unpopular and felt unappreciated. His main associate, with whom he worked at local survey, was George Mulock, another loner.

The winter months passed by with none of the disasters or emergencies of the previous year for the hazards of extreme cold were now familiar, even though by May record temperatures ranging down to 55°C were being recorded and mercury froze in most of the thermometers. Probably owing to the more aggressive types having left in *Morning* there were fewer if any fights on the mess deck and a more cheerful atmosphere throughout the ship. The former cook, Brett, had been replaced by his assistant Clark, a professional baker, and everyone noticed the improvement. He served up fresh seal or skua meat every day and Royds thought the skua tasted like duckling. Skelton and his engineers fixed up an acetylene lighting system throughout the inhabited parts of the ship, a great improvement on smoky lamps and candles.

Wilson sometimes felt homesick and his diary waxed romantic. He wrote of sheets of flame bursting into the night above Erebus and how it was 'Two years now since Ory and I were married and we have had three weeks of it together.' There was bridge and chess with oft recurring bust-ups between Scott, who as always loved to win, and Koettlitz, whose lack of a sense of humour was famous. Hodgson taught mathematics to three of the ratings and Bernacchi tried to explain the mechanics of the aurora.

All day and every day the scientists went about their work in all weathers; Michael Barne usually alone with his sounding gear on a sledge, Mulock with his charts, and Bernacchi away in his huts or out on the ice with Koettlitz. Hodgson had to be rescued when a floe from which he was shrimping drifted out of Hut Point cove and Wilson, who sometimes helped him to haul up his fish trap, wrote: 'Hundreds of thousands of amphipods come up swarming on the seal scraps like a mass of shrimpy

maggots.' Royds kept the men busy through the winter repairing and modifying the existing sledging gear and making new equipment where needed. Taff Evans, Crean and Lashly were as handy as ever with their skills at improvisation and, of course, their newly acquired polar knowledge.

August arrived with wondrous displays of auroral fireworks. The blood-red rim of the sun edged back to lighten briefly the world of Scott's men, turning from black to gold the smoke plume of Erebus. The temperature plummeted to new lows and on 15 August Wilson found one of the dogs, Tin-tacks, too young to have gone south the previous summer, in obvious distress. 'On looking at her today,' he wrote, 'I found she had lost the whole of her tongue . . . She must have got her tongue against some fixed metal and stuck to it . . . then after pulling and struggling till the tongue was dragged far out of her mouth she must have bitten it off . . . it is a most piteous thing to see her hanging her head over food and water . . . Having lost the whole tongue, she can only swallow when her head is held up and we pour something down.' They eventually had to shoot Tin-tacks and, when Hodgson requested her body as bait for his fish trap, a sailor who had befriended her indignantly and secretly buried her remains.

Wilson wrote: 'Every Tuesday for dinner we have skua, half a bird to a man, enough for a meal and very good indeed. One day in the week we have stuffed seal's heart, another seal steak and kidney pie, another seal steak and onions, and so on. For breakfast we have the best dish of all - seal's liver, twice a week, other days stewed seal meat or curried. Thursday is known to everyone as "Scurvy Day", being the only day in the week on which we have tinned meat.'

Despite unpleasant memories of manhauling in early spring the previous year, Scott was determined to start just as early in September 1903. There would, he was confident, be no repetitions of poor Vince's accident, for the men were no longer

novices. On 7 September the Cape Crozier penguin foray set out led by Charles Royds. They slept, or rather shivered, in two three-man bags. Wilson noted: 'I can imagine nothing more uncomfortable. One is constantly waking up the others, through restlessness . . . one cannot lie long on one side. Therefore one finds oneself breathing another man's breath for all one is worth half a dozen times in the night.' They needed eggs with living embryos to help scientists and their evolutionary questions. Sadly all the eggs at the colony were 'dead' but the fact that there were live chicks around showed Wilson that he must come back in midwinter if he was to obtain live eggs.

Michael Barne, at the same time, took sledges out to the Barrier to lay a depot south-east of White Island. While on 9 September Scott, with Skelton, Taff Evans, Bill Lashly, Dailey and Handsley, left to lay a depot to the west and quickly found a far faster route onto the Ferrar Glacier than Armitage's of the year before. They left their most southerly depot 2,000 feet up the glacier and averaged twenty miles a day on the return journey, despite the long hours of darkness and temperatures of -45.5°C. Even experienced Norwegian skiers using dog teams would have been highly impressed.

With all the officers and men back from their ordeals, all depots in position and no serious injuries, the main journeys began on schedule, Barne's on 6 October and Scott's on the 12th.

Scott's western team consisted of three sledge groups. He took his old depot-laying team but substituted Thomas Feather in place of Dailey. Ferrar and two sailors with a second sledge were to concentrate on the geology of the glacier and Dailey, with Thomas Williamson and Frank Plumley, would take a third sledge to lay more depots.

Scott's men each hauled 205 pounds but still managed to advance an average of thirteen miles a day through difficult terrain. By avoiding his perilous pioneering route they reached a point on the lower reaches of the glacier in only six days, instead of Armitage's twenty-seven. However, by scouting out

a new, more direct route unfortunately their sledge runners broke up on the rough ice and proved impossible to repair.

Scott bit the bullet and returned to Hut Point, but in impressive style. Bernacchi, the most experienced Antarctic hand in *Discovery*, wrote: 'Their return journey over some ninety miles, on half rations, was a record in Antarctic travel and proved what could be done by fit men, light loads and no dogs. Eighty-seven miles in three days.' Lashly said of Scott's sledging: 'If he can do it I don't see why I can't, my legs are as long as his.'

Their new sledge was cobbled together from the broken ones but, in a few days and with grim determination, they were back on the glacier again. The sledge runners continued to cause delays for running repairs by Lashly, Evans and the carpenter, Dailey. On reaching their most westerly depot they found that high winds had in their absence loosened the lid of Scott's navigation box and his key nautical logarithms had been blown away. Scott summed up the problem he now faced:

> The gravity of this loss can scarcely be exaggerated; but whilst I realised the blow I felt that nothing would induce me to return to the ship a second time; I thought it fair, however, to put the case to the others, and I am, as I expected, fortified by their willing consent to take the risks of pushing on.
>
> I must here explain what this loss signified. In travelling to the west we expected to be, as indeed we were, for some weeks out of sight of landmarks. In such a case as this the sledge traveller is in precisely the same position as a ship or boat at sea: he can only obtain a knowledge of his whereabouts by observations of the sun or stars, and with the help of these observations he finds his latitude and longitude. To find the latitude from an observation of a heavenly body, however, it is necessary to know the declination of that body, and to find the longitude one must have not only the declination, but certain logarithmic tables. In other words, to find either latitude or longitude, a certain amount of data is required. Now, all these necessary data are supplied in an excellent little publication issued

by the Royal Geographical Society and called 'Hints to Travellers,' and it was on this book that I was relying to be able to work out my sights and accurately fix the position of my party.

When this book was lost, therefore, the reader will see how we were placed, if we did not return to the ship to make good our loss, we should be obliged to take the risk of marching away into the unknown without exactly knowing where we were or how to get back.

In 1981 I travelled to the Pole and worried myself silly trying to locate the uppermost features of the Scott Glacier, which my party needed quickly to descend. I used the same type of theodolite and nautical tables as Scott had and found the calculations bad enough, even with the key astronomical data. I remain full of admiration at Scott's ingenuity in devising what he called 'a rule of thumb' method of ascertaining the daily change in the sun's declination.

He commented on his navigation system:

the prospect which lay before us of wandering over this great snowplain without knowing exactly where we were . . . had naturally been much in my thoughts . . . it occurred to me that we might gather some idea of our latitude if I could improvise some method of ascertaining the daily change in the sun's declination.

With this idea I carefully ruled out a sheet of my note-book into squares with the intention of making a curve of the sun's declination. I found on reflection that I had some data for this curve, for I could calculate the declination for certain fixed days, such as the day when the sun had returned to us . . . other points were given by observations taken at known latitudes on the glacier . . . I plotted all these points on my squared paper, and joined them with a freehand curve of which I have some reason to be proud, for on my return to the ship I found it nowhere more than 4' in error.

Not everyone had complete trust in Scott's ability to navigate over the white ocean-like wastes of the high plateau without a

tried and trustworthy system of position fixing. Skelton, probably the most mathematically capable of Scott's colleagues, worried that they were likely to be lost forever.

However, Scott's three sledge groups, sometimes quite far apart, but always camping together, crept up the frozen valley. Lashly and Skelton needed their skills to repair a number of runner breakages and Thomas Feather had to fix many of their crampons, which received a battering on long stretches of bare blue ice. On 4 November, at 7,000 feet, a sudden windstorm caught them all on a surface so hard they could not anchor their tents to the ice nor find snow-blocks to place on the valances. Fortunately, Thomas Feather somehow solved the problem before they were numbed by exposure.

For seven long days and nights fierce katabatic winds pinned the men down in their tents. They called the place Desolation Camp and shared a single book, Darwin's *Voyage of the Beagle*, between them. They escaped during a storm lull on the eighth day and continued the climb. Ferrar and his two 'assistant geologists' left at this point on their own mission to collect rocks and fossils.

Less than half a mile from Desolation Camp both sledge groups crossed a snow bridge which spanned a mammoth crevasse. Scott noted: 'We as nearly as possible walked into an enormous chasm but none of us really cared much as our sole thought was to get away from that miserable spot.' Setting a breakneck pace, as was his wont, Scott reached the head of the glacier at 8,900 feet on 13 November and saw ahead 'a great snow plain with a level horizon all about'. Before leaving the glacier's upper rock features behind, Scott was able to note these carefully for the weather was briefly clear. These pinpricks of rock might prove vital weeks later in relocating the Ferrar's upper reaches and thus their depot lifeline back home.

When Armitage had reached this point the year before and discovered the plateau, the first man to do so, he had been forced to turn back, but Scott had arrived with five weeks of rations.

He hoped this would allow him, if he could move fast and thus far enough, to find out if this high tableland was merely the summit plateau of an island, the island of Victoria Land.

Feather and Handsley were not as fit or as powerful as Scott's other men so, regretfully, he told them to turn back some seven days out on the plateau. He could not send any group back without a navigator so Skelton had to go too. Skelton always recorded his daily grumbles and, during the ascent from Desolation Camp, he had noted that Scott could get very impatient under such delays and say unkind things but it didn't mean anything and the ongoing bad weather was enough, Skelton thought, to get on anyone's nerves. Ferrar wrote in a private letter after the western trip: 'We all know each other much better and it is entirely due to the Captain for his friendliness and the example he sets of how to pull together.'

Scott tried in his diaries at that time to describe some of the detailed privations involved with manhauling and camping in extreme cold:

The worst time for sledging is the coldest time . . . the human body is always giving off moisture . . . much issuing through the pores of the skin . . . a small quantity will remain as ice on one's garments . . . [increasing] until one is completely enclosed in it. There is ice everywhere . . . and all these things which on board the ship were so caressingly soft to the touch will have become as hard as boards. Worse still, this ice will be found plastered as thickly on everything that makes for comfort at night sleeping bag, night jacket, and night foot-gear will have grown equally hard and chill.

Towards the end of a sledging day:

the sledges have grown decidedly heavier, and legs and back are already giving warning that the camping hour ought to be at hand. Breath is now coming gustily; it has frozen thick under the wind-guards and hangs in long icicles from the unshaven chins; eyelashes are thickly encrusted with it, and now and again a bared hand has

to thaw out a sealed eyelid and restore the sense of vision to its owner.

When they reached the camp site: 'There must be no standing about in this weather; we must be constantly active until we can creep into the shelter of our thin tent.' The gloom of the tent was lit only by a flickering candle which hung from a tent pole. Any incautious move was likely to send this flying. While the cook made supper the rest of the party changed footgear, sodden *finnesko* and ice-covered socks. Night socks were retrieved from warm breast pockets. It was always likely that someone's leg might shoot out dangerously near the Primus and they would exclaim loudly as cramp hit them.

Once the hoosh boils, off comes the pot's lid and all is hidden in a cloud of steam as the cook fills the pannikins . . . This is a moment to be lived for . . . The *hoosh* is followed by an equally delightful drink of boiling hot cocoa, but even as we gulp it down we feel that pleasure is drawing to an end, for the Primus is now out, the steam of cooking that has not passed away through the ventilator has frozen in glistening crystals on the side of the tent, and the chill of the outer air is again finding its way through the thin canvas . . .

Meanwhile the sleeping bag is dragged to the door of the tent, and by dint of much coaxing it is eventually got inside . . . it crackles as it is forced open, and has to be flattened out with the full weight of the body. What was once the soft covering flap will now stand erect and rigid, so stiffened is it with ice. Inside [it is] so hard in places that under the raps of one's knuckles it resounds like a wooden door. Could any bed be more uninviting?

Before we enter it we must have a look round . . . Are we in for a blizzard? . . . a last look at the thermometer shows that the temperature has fallen to −48° . . . It is breathless work this . . . we lift the flap of the sleeping-bag and step inside . . . this is the time for diaries, meteorological records, casual repairs, *and pipes*. The last-named, being the only attractive part of this programme . . .

Experience soon teaches that a pipe must be kept in a very warm place, otherwise the stem will be found choked with ice . . .

As these tasks are finished, one by one the inhabitants of the sleeping-bag wriggle down into its horny depths. The last to lower himself is the centre man . . . he laboriously wrestles with the fastenings of the bag over their heads . . . and works himself down as best he can between his companions, and finally seals the opening above his own head . . .

The last squirm brought the wind guard of our helmet across our face. It is crusted with the ice of the day's march: this is now gently thawing, and presently a drop trickles down our nose. Our thoughts become fixed on that drop. It is very irritating; we long to wipe it away, but that means taking out one hand and disarranging the whole scheme of defence against the cold. We are debating the question when a second drop descends. Flesh and blood cannot stand this: out comes our hand, and for the next quarter of an hour we are pitching and tossing about to try to regain the old position.

The morning ordeal was putting on their marching boots:

It is very trying work. With a caution born of experience we took immense care last night in freezing them to conform as nearly as possible to the shape of our feet. After the march they had been wet through, and came off in a soft and flabby condition; we knew that this would only last for a few minutes, and as they froze we had carefully supported and kneaded them into the required shape. Half an hour later they were so hard that we could throw them about without risk of altering it; they are still in this condition, and we are about to test the result of our labours. They clatter like wooden sabots as they are deposited on the floorcloth.

We squat down and withdraw one foot from its night-clothing, grope in our breast for our day-socks, produce one of them still very wet but moderately warm, jam our foot into it, and with many gasps proceed to wedge it into a wooden finnesko. The finnesko has been prepared by placing in it a sole cut from reindeer-skin and a little padding of *sennegræs*. This grass is soft, but the sole is as wooden

as the boot, and has needed much pushing to get it in place. We are lucky if our foot gets half-way into its rocky cover at the first attempt. We leave it at that for the moment, and proceed with the other; by the time it is in a similar position, an inch can be gained on the first, and so inch by inch these tiresome boots are pulled on. Meanwhile our feet have got alarmingly cold, and with a groan we are obliged to start up and stamp about.

Once Skelton's little group had departed on 23 November, Scott was left with two sailors, Taff Evans, whom he knew well from his *Majestic* days, and Stoker William Lashly. Evans weighed 178 pounds, Lashly 190 pounds and Scott 160 pounds. Each towed well over 200 pounds but they worked extremely well as a team. Scott wrote: 'With these two men behind me our sledge seemed to become a living thing, and the days of slow progress were numbered.'

Constantly checking his course by simple neck slung sundial when there was the faintest hint of the sun's position or by compass when there was not, Scott led the way at first west and later south-west over the rolling white snowfields. For twenty-one days they crawled on over this featureless tundra, ever hoping that some landmark would eventually reward their toil. Ranks of parallel ice ridges called sastrugi, like deeply ploughed field furrows, some two feet high and more, slowed their advance and caused capsizes. Their breath came in gasps of rarefied air at the polar equivalent of 15,000 feet in the Alps or the Himalaya. Constant capsizes resulted in slow leakage from the cap seals of their kerosene cans and Scott took a calculated risk by continuing south and west until the last day of November, the date he had set as 'turn-back day' when they had left Desolation Camp. On reaching the last horizon that day they saw only the ongoing 'immensity of this vast plain' and no end to Victoria Land.

A week into the return journey, having averaged sixteen miles daily, Scott asked the others if they were prepared to march an extra hour each day, forgo a midday halt for hot food and

reduce their daily rations. They agreed. There were soon no traces of their outward tracks to follow, for snowdrifts had covered them and, with no nautical tables or features to help, doubts crept in. On 10 December Evans glimpsed a faint black dot which hour by hour grew into one and then several rock features, none of which Scott recognised. In such a situation it would have been very easy to panic for if, as they so easily could, they missed the entry to the Ferrar Glacier, and their depots, no other route could save their lives.

Eventually they found a smooth crevasse-free slope and set out down it wearing crampons with Scott up front and the other two holding the rear of the sledge to stop it sliding downhill. Lashly lost his footing and the others, jerked forward by the runaway sledge, followed suit. Tumbling over and over, they shot downwards bouncing off ice blocks and cartwheeling through the air. Some 300 feet below, they came to a halt much shaken but alive. Not only were no limbs broken, but immediately they knew where they were. The sky was bright and clear and they could see as far as Erebus. Scott wrote: 'Half an hour before we had been lost . . . Now in this extraordinary manner the curtain had been raised; we found that our rule-of-thumb methods had accomplished the most accurate "land fall".' Some miles below them they could see the rocks that marked their first depot and, restacking their miraculously unbroken sledge, they set off at once across the next plateau.

With no warning at all Scott and Evans broke through a snow bridge and plunged into the void of a hidden crevasse. By good luck the sledge jammed by the narrowest of margins between the lips of this abyss and Lashly did his best to hold it there against the swinging motion of the two bodies down below, suspended from their harnesses in the dark cold air. With infinite care he manoeuvred two skis as wedges to anchor the sledge so that the men below could move without fear of dislodging it.

Scott somehow managed to swing his feet onto a little ledge protruding from one sheer blue wall of the crevasse. Once he

could stand up on this icy platform he helped Taff Evans across to join him. There they stood some twelve feet below the thin ribbon of sky and the outline of their sledge. Soon they would lose all feeling in their hands in that dark deep-freeze, so the lighter Scott hauled himself up his harness with his numb and blistered hands, a performance needing considerable body strength, to the point where Lashly could help him. Then, together, they hauled Evans to the surface, where the dazed Welshman, according to Scott, exclaimed, 'Well, I'm blowed!'

They soon reached their depot and, two days later, the tireless Scott decided they had sufficient rations to spend a day exploring a series of side valleys branching off the Ferrar Glacier. This excursion on 7 December 1903 resulted in the discovery of a network of narrow rock valleys containing lakes and running streams with no ice or snow in sight but for the ends of retreating glaciers high up the valley's canyon walls. Scott wrote: 'It is certainly a valley of the dead: even the great glacier which once pushed through it has withered away.' He had discovered one of Antarctica's rare dry valleys, as they are known today.

Observing all the alluvial mud on the valley floor the practical Lashly commented: 'What a splendid place for growing spuds!'

On 20 December the three men topped a rise and saw to their dismay that McMurdo Sound was still blocked with sea ice for many miles to the north of Hut Point. *Discovery*, they feared, might have to spend yet another year in Antarctica. Four days later, on 24 December 1903, they were back on board to learn that the edge of the sea ice was still twenty miles to the north and, as instructed previously, Armitage had set up a camp out on the floes with a giant ice-saw to cut a route through the sea ice in readiness for the anticipated arrival of Colbeck in *Morning*. A report from Armitage soon reached the ship with an optimistic assessment of the cutting operations, so Scott and his men took a few days off to recover and reflect on their expedition's accomplishments.

Scott's first priority was to check the accuracy of his watch

upon which depended the longitudes of all his theodolite sightings and, therefore, the exact route of his recent journey. The resulting mathematics were startling. The three men had for eighty-one days, in all weathers and snow conditions, manhauled 827 miles, including climbs of 19,800 feet. In 1949 the Director of the Scott Polar Research Institute in Cambridge summarised this feat: 'Few dog parties, working under plateau conditions, have ever exceeded Scott's best, when on foot when returning from their plateau journey of 1903.' Charles Royds noted of Scott: 'He takes the cake for being a hard nut. His total is 197 days for two seasons.'

On a personal level the expedition had worked well too. Nansen wrote most of the descriptions of his epic two-man north polar wanderings in the first person: Scott recounted his remarkable western journey using 'we' not 'I'. His affection for Taff Evans and Bill Lashly was evident in his diaries. Scott enjoyed the company of his men, living, eating and suffering cheek by jowl with them, sharing a sleeping bag month after month, laughing, joking and singing together. 'Few of our camping hours,' he wrote, 'go by without a laugh from Evans and a song from Lashly.' And he added, 'no class of men are so eminently adapted by training to cope with the troubles and tricks of sledging life as sailors.' With Evans and Lashly, as much as with Skelton or Wilson, Scott experienced true comradeship. Nansen complained of his sailor companion Johansen that he never provided 'any sort of intellectual companionship', and day followed day in often hostile silence. This never occurred with Scott and his close sledging companions, who understood and forgave his brief outbursts of impatience and periods of depression.

After the western journey Scott never again sledged without at least one of these three beside him: the Welshman Evans, his fellow West Countryman Bill Lashly, or Irishman Tom Crean.

During Scott's absence the other journeys had enjoyed mixed results. Repeated visits were made to the Cape Crozier penguins

as Wilson was increasingly convinced that an embryo would confirm the Emperor was the missing link between birds and their possible Jurassic progenitors. But they never managed to bring back an unbroken egg containing stages of developed embryos.

On Michael Barne's expedition to the south west in the spring of 1903 his colleague George Mulock surveyed more than 200 mountains and consolidated the intricate data needed to map 300 miles of coast to the south and south-west of Hut Point. During this journey Barne collected key geological specimens that would later help prove Antarctica's continental nature.

Charles Royds and Louis Bernacchi had sledged over the south-east sector of the Ice Barrier never visited before and proved that it continued as an entirely level shelf. Their magnetic observations were later to yield key data about the region's magnetic characteristics.

Returning from the Ferrar Glacier before Scott, Skelton had obtained a unique set of half-plate panoramas of the south-western mountains and Hartley Ferrar had collected fossils which, when finally broken open (in 1928) at the Natural History Museum, provided crucial additional evidence of Antarctica's former position in the super-continent of Gondwana 300 million years ago.

Although, as with most successful scientific projects, the findings of the *Discovery* expedition would take many years of specialist work to analyse, it was already clear that Scott's scientists had been hugely successful, especially during this second season. In the fields of meteorology, magnetic research, geography, biology, geology and glaciology extensive new data had been collated, the first long-distance penetration of the continent achieved and the high inland plateau discovered. Armitage, in locating and ascending the Ferrar Glacier, had also identified the then largest known valley glacier in the world. Scott's *Discovery* achievements far outweigh those of his contemporary scientific leaders Nordenskjöld in 1901 and Drygalski in 1902.

The only enterprise which was making no progress was Albert Armitage's attempts to break through the sea ice with saws and explosives. Scott inspected the work and called it off. They would have to wait for nature to do it for them. Meanwhile they looked out for the return of the relief ship, *Morning*.

When, on 5 January 1904, the ship duly arrived, they were all astonished to spot another bigger vessel, *Terra Nova*, close behind her, and Scott was shattered soon after boarding *Morning* to find his mail included an envelope containing orders from his employers at the Admiralty instructing him that, if *Discovery* could not be retrieved as soon as possible, she was to be abandoned and all her crew must return north with the two relief ships. Scott summoned all *Discovery*'s men to a meeting aboard and, with tears glistening from the emotion of the events, he explained the Admiralty's ultimatum after thanking everyone for their years of loyal service to the venture. Charles Ford noted that the men gave Scott three cheers which Ford thought were well deserved.

Scott did not need a 'rescue'. Just one item was in short supply, coal, and that needed only a single ship, *Morning*, to provide. Relief by one ship was useful. Relief by two was unwanted. Even before the two ships' arrival Scott had begun plans for another winter, since he could plainly see the ice was more extensive than the previous year when they had remained icebound. He knew they had up to five years of supplies on board and had conquered the scurvy threat. So, why the sudden order to abandon ship? As he opened all his mail the background to the fiasco became clear.

After raising funds for the 1903 voyage of *Morning*, Markham had to find more money to send her back south in 1904 so he applied to the government for a grant. The Treasury, fearing that this expedition was a bottomless pit that might long continue to devour government money, took matters out of the hands of Markham and the Societies and agreed to fund one last relief voyage large enough to extract the entire crew of *Discovery*,

should that ship still remain icebound. Clements Markham was furious but powerless since he had no funds. A letter from Markham's expedition secretary, Scott's London colleague, Cyril Longhurst, lamented: 'I feel more disgusted about this than I can say . . . you will probably be sick at having the *Terra Nova* down there.'

Scott expressed his private thoughts to a friend:

> the utterly unnecessary efforts that were made and the frightful waste of money makes me terribly sore. I had to write a lot in a hurry last year and I wrack my brain to think if there was an excuse, for none of us felt any alarm or even that the situation was serious . . . The second winter was passed in the greatest comfort without a sign of sickness or discontent . . .
>
> [I] suppose anyone would object to being moved in such a position however much they might appreciate the motive! – to crown it all, the ships brought tons of stores which we had no use for at all and of coal, which was the one thing I DID especially ask for, they could only spare a miserable 75 tons when it came to the point . . .
>
> I fear I shall not be very popular at the Admiralty after giving so much trouble, but I do hope they will be prepared to deal handsomely with the other officers and men for if ever people deserved it, they have.

To avoid any risk of *Morning* and *Terra Nova* becoming icebound themselves, all three captains agreed, Scott doubtless reluctantly, that *Discovery* be abandoned if not free by 25 February at the latest. A major attack began at once on the seaward edge of the ice with explosives, saws and all available manpower. By 5 February the ice-edge was a mere six miles from Hut Point and Wilson wrote: 'Guncotton explosions were going on all day, the Captain superintending.' By the evening of the 14th Scott recorded: 'A glorious sight met our view. The ice was breaking up right across the strait, and with a rapidity which we had not thought possible. No sooner was one great floe borne away than a dark streak cut its way into the solid

sheet that remained and carved out another, to feed the broad stream of pack which was hurrying away to the north-west.'

At dawn on 16 February Scott set off two further explosions and the ship broke free. The crews of all three ships went wild and a party was held on board to thank Harry McKay of *Terra Nova* and his men from Dundee. William Colbeck of *Morning* wrote: 'Scott was terribly excited. He came on board as soon as I got alongside the ice face and could hardly speak. It meant all the difference of complete and comparative success to him and there was not a happier man living than Scott on that night.' Before departure all the men gathered hatless around a cross raised in memory of George Vince and Scott said a prayer for his expedition's only Antarctic victim.

That midnight a gale blew up and the relief ships stood out to sea. *Discovery*'s engines were made ready and the mainsail raised because loose pack ice approaching from the south had begun to look threatening. The wind increased to storm strength and blew *Discovery* onto one of the shallow shoals that had made the bay at Hut Point so attractive two years before by fending off drifting bergs. Now these shoals proved a double-edged sword as *Discovery*'s hull pounded against their rocks and the condenser valves on the ship's bottom went aground. The engines then stopped to the horror of all on board. Wilson noted: 'Soundings were taken all along the ship and from the end of the jib boom, which showed that there was no possibility of running *over* the shoal. We must go back to get off.' An agonising period of waiting followed.

'About lunch time,' wrote Wilson, 'the Captain said to me he was afraid she was done for . . . The seamen too said she was there to stay and when six o'clock came and we sat down to dinner, we were about as glum a party as could well be got together.' Some of the crew acted as though nothing had happened and Bernacchi recalled the steward sweeping out the wardroom and polishing the silver. Wilson continued: 'Mulock was on watch and when we were half through dinner he came down

and surprized us by saying the wind was going down and the ship had begun to swing round and work off the shoal astern . . . The engines were immediately tried . . . they were put hard astern. All hands were called on deck and immediately set to "sallying" the ship i.e. running from side to side to make her roll . . . for half an hour we rushed backwards and forwards to roll the ship, and the engines plodded on . . .'

At length Scott was able to give Skelton 'Full Astern', *Discovery* slid away from the shoal bank and joined *Terra Nova* out in the open bay. Even then Scott was still eager to trace more coastline but with a damaged rudder, limited coal and the winds against them, the *Discovery* eventually set course for New Zealand. Only George Vince stayed behind to watch over the empty huts.

10

A Promise Broken

Discovery arrived back at Spithead on 10 September 1904 to a warm welcome by the nation. In the two years and three months of their absence the Boer War had ended, removing from the national consciousness, at least for a while, a sense of diminishing greatness. What had looked at the time of *Discovery*'s departure in 1901 like an inevitable defeat by the puny yet frustratingly invincible Boers had by 1904 ended up as an honourable peace. Nevertheless, to help boost national morale the British media made great play in early 1904 of the daring and Kiplingesque expedition of Major Francis Younghusband to the Forbidden City of Lhasa in Tibet. With the nation's appetite for derring-do thus whetted, Scott's return in September that year from unknown Antarctica was timed to perfection from a public relations point of view, not that anyone, even Clements Markham, had planned it that way.

At thirty-six years of age Scott became a national hero. One of the first to greet *Discovery*'s return was Ernest Shackleton, who, since his own return a year before, had done his utmost to fight Scott's corner against hostile elements in the Admiralty. Knowing that Scott would not need or welcome 'rescue' he had turned down an offer to command the *Terra Nova*. Had he felt bitter personally towards Scott, he would undoubtedly have seized this chance to score over him. He left Scott a note:

My dear Captain Scott,
Just a line to welcome you safely back again after your long anxious time . . . I am so glad that the whole show has been such a complete success, and that you will now for a time be

able to enjoy a rest from your work. As you no doubt know, I am married and settled down as Secretary to the Royal Scottish Geographical Society (RSGS). The pay is only £200 [£9,400] a year, but it is better than going to sea . . . I had thought of trying to go on another expedition sometime but have given up the idea now as there seems to be no money about, and besides I am settled so I now have to make money.

Shackleton later joined Scott and Markham for 'a very jolly evening', a sign that all was well between the three men. The RSGS voted for Scott to be awarded their most prestigious medal. The King invited him to stay at Balmoral and previously hostile elements at the Admiralty were soon converted, at least superficially, into lauding the success of the expedition.

Scott praised his officers and men loud and long in a series of lectures that he gave countrywide to enthusiastic audiences. Shackleton attended many of the celebratory events and clearly had no axe to grind against Scott. Armitage was much involved with the opening of *Discovery* as an exhibition for the general public after she returned to London and, at the inaugural dinner, he toasted Scott as a companion and leader for whom all the *Discovery* men 'felt they could do anything at any sacrifice'.

Late that year, a reporter from the *Daily Mail*, present at a lecture given by Scott to an audience of 7,000 in the Royal Albert Hall, suggested in an article that Scott had accused Shackleton of malingering. Scott indignantly wrote back to the editor:

The inference is that after Mr. Shackleton broke down on our southern sledge journey he had to be carried on the sledge for 150 miles. The facts were that though Mr. Shackleton was extremely ill, and caused us great anxiety, he displayed the [most] extraordinary pluck and endurance, and managed to struggle on beside the sledge without adding his weight to our burden.

The struggle over those wearisome miles was bad enough for Dr. Wilson and myself, but it was infinitely worse for a sick man who under ordinary conditions would have been sent straight to bed.

I assume you will see the reason why in remembering the courage and spirit shown by Mr. Shackleton, I am anxious to correct the statement made in the report.

Scott could rebut the *Daily Mail*'s allegations, unlike Armitage's which were only made public after his death.

Granted Admiralty leave for nine months, Scott now concentrated on writing his book about the *Discovery* years. He was as unsure of his ability as are most first-time authors. Nevertheless he finished the task by the summer of 1905 and in October that year his two-volume *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, containing an impressive array of Wilson's drawings and Skelton's photographs, was published to glowing reviews. Today a single original Wilson drawing can sell for £6,000 but at the time, when Scott offered Wilson £100 (£4,700) for all his work, Wilson refused to accept a fee. Scott paid him anyway.

The magical lure of the polar wastes, known to Norwegians as *polarhuller*, will draw an explorer back again and again to the extreme latitudes and neither Scott, Shackleton, nor two of their *Discovery* companions proved immune. Scott's book may well have hastened Michael Barne, Teddy Evans (one of *Morning*'s officers), and Shackleton into forming their own polar plans but at no point, except in the autobiographical ramblings of Albert Armitage, did Shackleton ever indicate that resentment of Scott was a factor in his own subsequent expedition career. His being invalided home added spark to his determination to prove himself to the world, certainly, but this was not petty resentment of Scott.

Once Scott escaped from his self-imposed book-writing seclusion, he began to accept some of the many social invitations with which, as a well-known and colourful figure, he was now showered. He became friends with literati like James Barrie, the Scottish playwright of *Peter Pan* fame, and the artist Aubrey Beardsley, whose sister Mabel gave a lunch party at which Scott noticed an attractive sculptor named Kathleen Bruce. He

followed her away from the party at a discreet distance but did not pluck up enough courage to ask her out. A year later, at another Beardsley party, they finally became acquainted and Scott began to court her with determination, entranced by her forthright manner.

Kathleen, thirteen years younger than Scott, was as wild and eccentric as he was formal and reserved. She was, like him, of Scottish extraction, her father a Wiltshire vicar, being descended from Robert the Bruce. She had until recently lived in *rive gauche* Paris, where she had studied sculpture under Rodin and become friends with the wild-child, Isadora Duncan, and other such bohemians. She mingled with equal ease amongst the upper classes and the Paris poor whom she painted, caring little what others thought of her. She shrugged off numerous would be lovers of various races and backgrounds being, not unusually for the period, a determined virgin. She nursed a dream that the man to whom she would give herself would father her child and must therefore be ideal.

Quite why she eventually returned first Scott's interest and much later his love is not really clear, even from her diary. She kept very strong opinions and, like Scott, exhibited from time to time a fairly sharp tongue. However, they made each other happy and were essentially natural together. Kathleen admitted to being an intellectual snob yet she never behaved in a socially superior manner. Money meant as little to her, having never experienced poverty, as it was important to Scott, who had spent much of his life learning to penny pinch. He was to write to her some months after his eventual proposal: 'I want to marry you very badly but it is absurd to pretend I can do so without facing great difficulty . . . My mother is 67, only a strand of life remains. She has had a hard life in many respects. I set myself to make her last years free from anxiety.'

Scott did not see how they could afford to marry since half of his modest income went to his mother. He sent Kathleen a plan he had worked out as though deciding on the feasibility of

an expedition, a plan for a marriage budget – £25 laundry, £15 coal, £5 stationery, papers, etc., £45 for a maid, 10 shillings per head, per week, for food and drink: Total £329 (£15,450) per year. Worries over financial viability and their character differences plagued Scott but did not prevent their eventual agreement on a wedding date and Scott's leasing a house in Buckingham Palace Road, his favourite part of London and where the Victoria Coach Terminal now stands.

Not many of Scott's expedition colleagues, even Wilson, found Kathleen easygoing: she could be frightening, confrontational and blunt. Her diary included her thoughts on government grandee Lord Birkenhead: 'I suppose the world does not hold a more repugnant individual . . . He should die. I have always known he is a drunkard and libertine, but I did not know he had such an evil tongue.' Of Winston Churchill she commented more mildly: 'He may be a genius but he disguises it very well.'

During Scott's years of courtship and engagement he flirted very little with ideas of further polar expedition. His *Discovery* book had sparked Michael Barne into asking Shackleton to join him to 'go South'. The two met up with Clements Markham to discuss their joint plans in October 1905, only a month after the publication of Scott's book, but soon afterwards they were rebuffed by the Royal Geographical Society and dropped the project.

The following September of 1906 Scott must himself have started to nurse polar dreams for he began to discuss another expedition with Markham and then asked Barne if he would join up as first lieutenant should he go ahead. Strangely enough, this invitation crossed in the post with a letter Barne had just sent Scott urging him to explore again. This correspondence was kept completely confidential by the three men so everyone, including Shackleton, remained ignorant of Scott's still nebulous plans until 18 February the following year. Scott and Barne had a clear vision that the best way to travel would not be manhaul or dogs but by inventing a motor car capable of snow travel.

Scott promptly put Barne in charge of looking into the viability of such a machine because he, Scott, had to spend a year back at sea if he was to stay in the new deadly serious Navy of Admiral Jacky Fisher, a Navy where promotion to the upper echelons would go to serious naval executives not to explorers. By Christmas of 1906 Scott had mooted his still vague idea of a new Antarctic venture to another *Discovery* man, the surveyor George Mulock, who agreed to join. Scott had also taken the big step of confidentially alerting the President of the RGS, Sir George Goldie, and the Secretary, Dr John Keltie, as to his plans to go south again.

All this time Scott believed he had a clear field in which to operate. The great contemporary polar pundits, such as Admiral Peary and Dr Frederick Cook of the United States, and the latter's good friend the Norwegian Roald Amundsen, were all firmly focussed on the North Pole and Shackleton, at the time of Scott's 1904 return to Britain, had written clearly telling Scott that he was not contemplating further exploration anywhere. So Scott was not in a hurry to publicise his own still uncertain aims when, in early 1907, he went back to sea to follow his naval career. Keltie, Barne and Mulock told nobody of Scott's plans.

Shackleton, equally unaware that his old leader, Scott, was planning a further expedition, had given up his job with the RSGS and unsuccessfully tried a career as a politician. He kept his ear at all times to the RGS grapevine and heard a rumour in late January 1907 that a South Pole attempt by a Belgium-based Pole, Henryk Arctowski, using snow machines, was under discussion and intending to follow the route from McMurdo Sound pioneered by Scott's Southern Journey. Shackleton approached his then employer, a rich Clydeside industrialist named William Beardmore, who agreed to sponsor him. He then rushed to the RGS to tell the Secretary, John Keltie, of his intention to go south. Keltie did not tell Shackleton about Scott's plans as they were confidential and, as a result, Shackleton

believed the field was clear for him to announce his plans in public. That same day, 11 February 1907, Shackleton bumped into Arktowski at the RGS who informed him of his intention to announce his South Pole plan that very night at an RGS dinner. Shackleton reacted with lightning speed. He announced his own plans at the dinner minutes before Arktowski could do likewise and, after dinner, contacted *The Times* to describe his project as a national venture to beat off a foreign rival.

This sensational Shackleton news reached Scott at sea in his ship HMS *Albemarle* a week later at a very bad time when, due to a serious collision in the Atlantic, Scott felt his whole career to be suddenly in jeopardy. On New Year's Day 1907 Scott had proudly taken command of the battleship *Albemarle* and six weeks later, just before Shackleton's press release, was practising dangerous and highly skilled line of battle tactics in the Atlantic, west of Portugal, on a pitch dark night. Steaming at high speed, eight multi-ton steel warships sped through the darkness without lights in a staggered line with only 220 yards between each ship. Scott left the bridge to take a signal message to the Admiral in his cabin and suddenly felt the engines stop, then go astern. Then came the horrific impact as *Albemarle*'s bows struck another ship.

News of the accident linked with Scott's name was soon front-page news and Scott wrote to his mother explaining the likelihood of an official inquiry. This subsequently cleared him of all blame, but on the day Scott first heard of Shackleton's polar intentions, he was still under severe stress, fearing a court martial and disgrace. In the circumstances his response to Shackleton could only be described as pretty restrained. On 18 February 1907, Scott wrote:

My Dear Shackleton,
I see by the Times of Feb. 12th that you are organising an expedition to go on our old tracks; and this is the first I have heard of it. The situation is awkward for me as I have already

announced my intention to try again in the old place, and have been in treaty concerning the matter. As a matter of fact I have always intended to try again but as I am dependent on the Navy I was forced to reinstate myself and get some experience before I again asked for leave, meanwhile I thought it best to keep my plans dark but I have already commenced fresh preparations and Michael Barne is in London seeing to things in preparation for August when I shall be free to begin work myself. You see therefore that your announcement cuts right across my plans and to an extent which it would not have done two months ago when I first intimated them to the Geographical Society and others.

I needn't tell you that I don't wish to hurt you and your plans but in one way I feel I have a sort of right to my own field of work in the same way as Peary claimed Smith's Sound and many African travellers their particular locality. I am sure you will agree with me in this and I am equally sure that only your entire ignorance of my plan could have made you settle on the Discovery *route without a word to me . . . I was going to delay my attempt [until] later as I don't want to take anything that is not well tested.*

He added as a postscript: 'I feel sure with a little discussion we can work in accord rather than in opposition. I don't believe the foreigners will do anything much. The whole area is ours to attack.'

In a second long letter that day Scott explained to Shackleton his deeper feelings, intentions and worries:

I don't want to be selfish at anyone's expense and least of all at that of one of my own people, but still I think anyone who has had to do with exploration will regard this region primarily as mine . . . The question now is what you intend to do? . . . If you go to McMurdo Sound you go to winter quarters which are clearly mine, and I must either abandon my plans or go elsewhere . . . I do not like to remind you that it was I who took

you to the South or of the loyalty with which we all stuck to one another . . .

I think at present that there are quite a number of ways in which a compromise could be arrived at . . . My dear fellow it would be a thousand pities to rush this effort that should crown the Discovery *work . . . I am writing these main facts to Wilson*

he is a person I think who commands our respect and who could not be otherwise than straight. I shall ask his advice and ask him to communicate with you . . .

Well goodbye for the present, the subject is very close to my heart so please write openly and freely.

Shackleton's response took fifteen days to reach Scott for he sent it *via* Wilson to forward if he approved the contents. Wilson became the middleman between his two friends and wrote back to Shackleton: 'I think you ought to offer to retire from McMurdo Sound as a base . . . I do wholly agree with the right lying with Scott to use that base before anyone else.' Letters shot backwards and forwards and a compromise approved by all parties appeared to be on the horizon. Meanwhile Shackleton went ahead with the detailed preparations and recruitment for his journey. He assured Scott he had known nothing of his plans and, now that he did, he would of course conduct his journey away from Scott's work area of McMurdo Sound. He then wrote, on 8 March, to Clements Markham confirming this:

I had always a wish to go to our old quarters though it is only a short time ago since I saw a real chance. How even now things may be altered as I have heard from Captain Scott that he intends to go again . . . I had not the most remote idea that he ever intended to go again: indeed he told us down South that he could not again go because of the Navy . . . He has written me on the subject and so he really means to go. I have advised him that of course I will give up the McMurdo Sound Base . . .

I hope Scott will get a good fund and be able to do a really good show. I expect he really would like to do the Pole and I

myself have not hidden that idea of mine; yet think that in doing that one can make sense of solving the secret of the Barrier.

On 16 March Scott sent Shackleton a friendly letter thanking him for agreeing to alter his plans in a very honourable manner and for 'the sacrifice you are making'. Despite the mutually friendly words, from about this time the relationship between Scott and Shackleton slowly but surely altered in that, although they never lost their basic mutual respect for one another, they began to treat each other as rivals for the same great goal and as such were open to mutual misunderstanding and the mischievous machinations of the press.

The two men met on 17 May and Shackleton summarised their agreement. 'To make everything clear as regards our arrangements and plans for the two expeditions to the Ross Quadrant of the Antarctic, I am following your suggestion and writing it down . . . I am leaving the McMurdo Sound base to you, and will land either at the place known as Barrier Inlet or at King Edward VII Land . . . I shall not touch the coast of Victoria Land at all. If I find it impracticable to land at King Edward VII Land or at Barrier Inlet or further to the N.E., I may possibly [try to land elsewhere]. I think this outlines my plan, which I shall rigidly adhere to.'

Three days after Shackleton sent this letter off, the United States explorer Dr Frederick Cook announced his own plan to reach the South Pole from Ross Island. Shackleton accelerated his preparations, purchased *Nimrod*, a Dundee sealer, and in July, 1907 set sail for the Ross Sea with a crew that included Frank Wild and Ernest Joyce from the *Discovery*. None of *Discovery*'s officers were available to join *Nimrod* and Wilson had to turn down Shackleton's offer because of existing commitments. He wrote to Markham: 'with him [Scott] it will be an honour to drop down any crevasse in the world. I am really very fond of him.'

While negotiations proceeded and Shackleton was bringing

forward his plans, Scott stayed another seven months as the *Albemarle*'s skipper before being relieved by Captain John, later Admiral of the Fleet, Earl Jellicoe. From *Albemarle* Scott moved on to command HMS *Bulwark*, flagship of the Nore Division, part of the Home Fleet, and had to rely on Michael Barne, existing on half-pay from the Navy, to continue development work on a prototype motorised sledge; the key to South Polar success, as Scott saw it. He was not alone in this for France's great explorer, Dr Jean Charcot, like Michael Barne, was having a snow machine manufactured by De Dion Bouton near Paris. These two models, plus a third developed in Finchley which used the novel idea of a continuous looped track instead of wheels, all proved highly unreliable during trials but Scott decided to be patient in the hope the engineers would make a breakthrough sooner rather than later. The Pole would not wait forever, even if Shackleton failed.

In January 1908 Shackleton's little sealer *Nimrod* reached the eastern end of the Ice Barrier which, well away from Scott's McMurdo Sound preserves, was where he had promised Scott he would make his base. Unfortunately, Shackleton fell out in a big way with *Nimrod*'s skipper, Captain Rupert England, a cautious Yorkshireman who considered Shackleton rash and likely to endanger *Nimrod* by entering inlets that he considered to be lethal traps. The new land, confirmed at the eastern limit of the Barrier by Scott in 1901 and christened by him King Edward VII Land, appeared to be devoid of any suitable landing spot, so *Nimrod* turned west and nosed along the edge of the Barrier searching for an inlet, such as the bay where Scott and Shackleton had once made their balloon ascents.

Since then huge chunks of the Barrier's frontage had calved away, removing many inlets which had existed at the time of *Discovery*'s visit and during those of Ross's *Erebus* and *Terror* and Borchgrevink's *Southern Cross*. Two of these inlets, known as Borchgrevink's Bight and Barrier Inlet, had been replaced by a single much larger bay, which the *Nimrod* men called the Bay

of Whales. Shackleton deemed it would be folly to establish himself in it because there was no guarantee that further calving would not send any base camp placed there out to sea on a giant new berg. He began to feel he had little option but to establish his base in the only known available bay, McMurdo Sound, precisely where he had promised Scott he would not winter.

Nimrod's chief surgeon, Dr Eric Marshall, reckoned the Bay of Whales would have been viable and noted that, if indeed Shackleton was aiming to land at McMurdo, 'he hasn't got the guts of a louse, in spite of what he may say to the world on his return.' Soon afterwards *Nimrod* narrowly escaped being crushed between bergs during a final desperate attempt to locate an alternative landing spot to McMurdo. Finally accepting the inevitable need to break his written agreement with Scott or abandon the expedition, Shackleton headed for McMurdo Sound with a heavy heart. He wrote to his wife Emily: 'I have been through a sort of Hell . . . I have had to break my word to Scott [due to] the overwhelming forces of Nature.'

When, thousands of miles away, frustrated that he could not even launch his own project until his motorised sledge was much improved, Scott heard that Shackleton had disregarded their agreement, he kept his annoyance private; he never indulged in any recriminations with Shackleton or spoke to anyone in public, confining his expressions of anger to correspondence with his family.

Shackleton, whose introduction to Antarctica had been as Scott's right-hand man, was now all set to head for the South Pole using Scott's own unofficially patented route. Nowadays many people's reaction to this would be, 'So what? That is what I would have done in Shackleton's place.' But, at that time, nearly a century ago, there was still a generally accepted code of manners, one could call it chivalry, where a person's promise was not lightly broken. When Shackleton eventually returned to England his old friend and polar comrade Edward Wilson made

it clear that he saw his broken promise as inexcusable and he never spoke to Shackleton again.

Jean Charcot, the Frenchman also experimenting with motorised transport, stated: 'There can be no doubt that the best way to the Pole is by way of the Great Ice Barrier, but this we regard as belonging to the English explorers, and I do not propose to trespass on other people's grounds.' Amundsen, Scott's later rival, clearly agreed with this for he wrote to Nansen: 'it is my intention not to dog the Englishmen's footsteps. They have naturally the first right. We must make do with what they discard.'

There are those in polar circles today who support Eric Marshall's view and suspect that Shackleton may have planned all along to base himself in McMurdo Sound and ignore his private agreement with Scott. I do not subscribe to this theory and recent research by Robert Headland, Archivist of the Scott Polar Research Institute, would support my belief. He pointed to a philatelic project set up by Shackleton prior to the *Nimrod*'s arrival in Antarctica, an overprint of one-penny New Zealand stamps with the words *King Edward VII Land*. In New Zealand Shackleton was sworn in by the Prime Minister as Official Postmaster and he officially opened a branch of the New Zealand Post Office when *Nimrod* was off the Bay of Whales. It is very unlikely that Shackleton would have gone to such trouble if he was never intending to land at or near King Edward VII Land. My personal belief is that Shackleton was basically honest but circumstances forced his McMurdo landing, much to his distress.

Shackleton was undoubtedly under duress during *Nimrod*'s time in McMurdo Sound. A wide expanse of ice barred any access to Hut Point, attempts to land and use a motor car with wheels slightly modified for ice failed dismally and an unloading accident resulted in Dr Marshall having to operate on and remove an eye from one of the crew. Eventually Shackleton had everything successfully unloaded at a bay some ten miles north

of Cape Evans, next to Cape Royds, but not before he had fallen out with Captain England, with tension spreading through the rest of the ship's company. At one point, off Cape Royds, Shackleton seized the speaking tube from Captain England and shouted 'full ahead' to the engine room, whereupon the skipper seized it back and ordered 'full speed astern'.

On Shackleton's next expedition in 1914, he again ran into territorial claims when he announced that he would start from a base at Vahsel Bay on the Weddell Sea coast, an area claimed by the Austro-Hungarian venturer, Felix König. The Vienna Geographical Society wrote to the Royal Geographical Society officially complaining about Shackleton. Was Shackleton prone to minor deceits? The greatest of Australian polar explorers, Sir Douglas Mawson, wrote in 1956: 'for a time Shackleton double-crossed me . . . Later I was shocked to find . . . he was cashing in on my own proposals . . . I had many large promises of funds and the [Australian Science] Society voted one third of its entire capital but only "if Shackleton had nothing to do with the undertaking".

Whilst Shackleton spent the winter of 1908 at Cape Royds, Scott followed his naval career, commanding *Bulwark*, encouraged Michael Barne's polar preparations, made ready for marriage and perused the emerging reviews of the *Discovery* scientific results. It was a hectic time. 'I am very, very busy,' he wrote, 'from 6.30 when I rise to 11.30 when I seek my bed. You can imagine how much is to be done – new ship, new officers, new men.'

Some three years after Scott's *Discovery* scientists first handed their results to the research bodies who would analyse and use them, reviews of their work started to emerge. Bernacchi later observed that no funds were made available to enable the *Discovery* scientists to analyse and publish their results themselves so 'this comprehensive and important work had to be undertaken chiefly by scientists in Government departments.' The work of both Bernacchi, the physicist, and Royds, the painstaking trainee

meteorologist, was criticised. Scott studied the reports and discovered the Meteorological Office's criticisms were themselves heavily flawed. They had, for instance, wrongly transposed expedition data, such as daily camp locations, and even applied magnetic variation backwards in their interpretation of the sledge parties' wind direction reports. Scott and his scientists were rightly incensed and Scott asked the Royal Society for an official inquiry. This was refused as it might prove embarrassing to the scientific establishment. Scott's erstwhile opponent in the Admiralty, Admiral Mostyn Field, who had strongly opposed his leadership appointment in 1901, was now the Hydrographer of the Navy and equally opposed to an inquiry. He did, however, try to placate Scott by focussing all the blame onto the scientists and not the leader. This incensed Scott still further but he was powerless to force a fair and timely reappraisal of the report. When the reappraisal finally came, exonerating the *Discovery* scientists completely, it was not published until 1913 so Scott was never to see it.

Much of the analysis of *Discovery*'s work took decades to complete and it wasn't until the 1960s, when that analysis was finally completed, that its overall success set against any other polar expedition of the early twentieth century became self-evident. And, from a southerly penetration viewpoint, four other national expeditions (those of Drygalski, Bruce, Nordenskjold and Charcot) that went south at the dawn of the century hardly gained even a toehold on the continent.

The *Discovery* men made the first Atlantic flight (in a balloon) and took the first aerial photographs. Thomas Hodgson remains the pioneer of Antarctic marine biology and thirty-two marine specialists wrote up his phenomenal results in five volumes. Many of his discoveries were of hitherto unknown marine species. Edward Wilson discovered new bird species, and conducted original studies into their polar lives and behaviour, including, for the first time, that of the breeding colonies of the Emperor penguin. His superb watercolour panoramas are now

collectors' items all over the world. Charles Royds and his helpers maintained continuous meteorological records for two years and identified the phenomenon of the Antarctic coreless winter, when temperatures stay more or less the same throughout that fearful season; a feature of great significance to meteorologists worldwide. Scott, Evans and Lashly visited the unique dry valleys of Victoria Land during just one of twenty-eight sledging journeys carried out in the severest of conditions. Louis Bernacchi kept magnetic records, often synchronised with those of Drygalski's German team which, when added to the observations of Armitage and Mulock, located the precise position of the south magnetic pole as accurately as if they had reached it. Their results, together with those of Drygalski, enabled the construction of a magnetic map of the southern hemisphere which had been the Anglo-German aim and which proved key to the navigation of the southern trade routes until the evolution of satellite navigation.

King Edward VII Land was discovered, the coast of which proved to be the eastern limit of the Ice Barrier. This was the first Antarctic discovery of the twentieth century. The nature of the Ice Barrier was correctly defined as a floating entity, a vast mobile 'shelf' hinged to the mainland. An immense new range, the Transantarctic Mountains, was glimpsed and charted for 320 miles up to 83° South. The Southern Journey did not reach the Pole but pioneered a route towards it as far as 82°11' South. Hartley Ferrar, the pioneer of Antarctic geology, collected a wide range of rock samples, including a leaf fossil which defined Antarctica's position in the 300 million years old Gondwana super-continent with a once tropical climate. His samples also confirmed the findings of other *Discovery* scientists, that Antarctica must be a continent rather than merely a collection of islands.

Discovery's scientific programme was uniquely successful despite the disputes among its London-based organisers, the extremes of its work environment and the inexperience of some

of those involved with the research, including Scott, the deeply involved director of the programme.

In May 1908 Scott wrote to Kathleen telling her proudly that he was the most junior captain in command of a battleship at an annual pay packet of £832 (£39,000 today). On 2 September 1908 Scott married his Kathleen in the Chapel Royal at Hampton Court during a thunderstorm and in the presence of a 150-strong congregation, including Kathleen's former art teacher, Rodin, from Paris. After a honeymoon in France, which Kathleen described as having passed as 'confusedly and insecurely as most honeymoons', she settled into their terraced house in Victoria whilst Scott went back to his ship *Bulwark*. Scott needed to watch his back, like all Navy officers at the time, because Admiral Sir John Fisher, First Sea Lord, was ruthlessly scrapping any warships and officers he considered obsolete. Scott was proud of his 750-man crew's performance, reporting to Kathleen: 'we grow to better understanding to a stronger mutual confidence and so to ordered efficiency. We shall be a man-of-war soon.'

Scott's expedition work at this stage crept along slowly for he knew that the South Pole prize might soon be Shackleton's. Michael Barne called often at *Bulwark* to see how plans were progressing and Scott wrote: 'he was full of enthusiasm for the cause but, alas! poor chap, there was little to tell him.' Times of doubt and uncertainty had always sparked off Scott's 'black dog', the phrase his sisters used to describe his dark mood of self-loathing and doubt, quite possibly a medical condition of melancholic depression, which nowadays might be alleviated with daily pills. Scott was famous and successful, his naval career was looking good and he had secured the woman he loved. So why did he brood and rate himself so low? He wrote to Kathleen: 'I'm obstinate, despondent, pigheaded, dejected . . . You're so exalted somehow, I can't reach up.'

Good news from the Finchley motorised sledge engineers would have helped but there was none. Scott's very best manhaul

effort on the *Discovery* expedition had ended less than halfway to the Pole so he attached great importance to the motorised sledge. Shackleton, he knew, had taken a 'polarised' motor car and eight Manchurian ponies. Perhaps these would prove the answer? Neither Scott nor Shackleton wanted a repetition of their harrowing dog experience on the Southern Journey.

Husband and wife rarely saw each other through the first six months of married life owing to Scott's work at sea. A fortune-teller visited the couple when Scott was on weekend leave and commented on his 'laziness, untidiness, touchiness and tendency to gloom'. Kathleen readily agreed with this summary. In January 1909, however, she put her man in a very good mood by announcing she was pregnant. He temporarily forgot his command status when he heard the news and rolled one of his subordinate officers around on the deck in his happiness and pride.

Two months later things took a major turn for the better when the Commander-in-Chief of the Home Fleet, appointed Second Sea Lord, decided he would need a naval assistant at the Admiralty. He asked for Scott, who immediately accepted. He could now live at home and spend his spare time on his polar plans. On 26 March 1909, the very day Scott took up his new post, he was walking past a railway station together with his old *Discovery* colleague, Tom Crean, when he saw on a hoarding the news of Shackleton's narrow failure to make the Pole. 'I think,' he said to Crean, 'we'd better have a shot next.' He sent a telegram off at once to Shackleton in New Zealand: 'Unqualified congratulations on magnificent success.'

Because Scott had never made public his correspondence with Shackleton about the use of Hut Point, nor about Shackleton's breaking of their private agreement, nobody but a few of the polar *cognoscenti* and Scott's friends and family knew of the matter, nor, following Shackleton's triumphant return to Britain that June, did the two men discuss it further. They had never been openly unfriendly. Latterly they may well have nursed the

mutually hostile thoughts that come naturally to ambitious individuals chasing the same goal; however there is no evidence that they were anything but friendly and polite to one another and managed to compromise whenever their respective aims were likely to clash. This says a great deal for the common sense and level-headedness of both men. In their private correspondence to close friends and family they often grumbled about each other, in much the same way that even brothers and sisters, however close, will do from time to time.

When, on 14 June 1909, Shackleton reached London, a great cheering throng greeted him off the train at Charing Cross. Scott's *Discovery* return five years before had been a muted affair by comparison with the public acclaim for Shackleton's triumph; the public mood was changing. The country, far more aware now of the German menace, was accordingly eager for any boosting of self esteem. Shackleton's epic journey fitted the bill perfectly and reached a much wider audience than had Scott's exploits, thanks to the increased printing and distribution capabilities of the new popular press. Shackleton had even made a movie film of his polar experiences.

At first Scott could not make up his mind whether or not it would be appropriate for him to attend Shackleton's triumphant return. Shackleton's Royal Geographical Society mentor, Dr Hugh Mill, briefly with *Discovery*, encouraged Scott and they went off together. At Charing Cross they fought their way through the cheering crowds and Scott was able to grasp Shackleton's hand and shout 'Bravo!' in his ear. Then Shackleton with his wife and children, ignoring the new preponderance of motorised taxis, climbed into an open carriage which made its way past the cheering crowds that lined their route along the Strand and through Trafalgar Square. Hugh Robert Mill, later Shackleton's official biographer, wrote: 'I never saw anyone enjoy success with such gusto.' But he added, Shackleton 'cared nothing for science nor for the Antarctic, and would just as soon have sought buried treasure on the Spanish Main.'

Scott went away unrecognised, acknowledging that this was Shackleton's hour and, over the next few weeks, went out of his way to ensure Shackleton's great feat was fully recognised in all the right places. At the official welcoming dinner, held at the Savage Club, Scott chaired the event and spoke warmly of Shackleton's great achievement. He also announced his own intention to ensure that foreign explorers did not take advantage of the path to the Pole opened by the two of them. 'In the immediate future,' he said, 'and before other countries can step in to take the credit of the results of these great works of Mr Shackleton, this country should come to the fore and organise another expedition.'

Shackleton's return and the resulting renewal of public interest in the South Pole spurred on Scott's own plans. First he was keen to learn any lessons he could from Shackleton's experiences. Shackleton's *Nimrod* had been forced by the sea ice to drop the expedition at Cape Royds, twenty-three miles further north than Hut Point from the Barrier and, therefore, from the Pole. Winter in their hut had been uneventful and more comfortable than had been the cold confines of *Discovery*. Five of the group, none of them experienced climbers, had managed the first ascent of the 12,450-foot-high Mount Erebus. The prototype polarised car proved useless, except on smooth ice floes, so Shackleton concentrated on manhaul and ponies.

Shackleton split his men into three groups. One, including Mawson, made an epic journey to claim the south magnetic pole successfully for the empire. Another group, led by Raymond Priestley, carried out geological exploration work in the western mountains.

Shackleton's main journey was led by him and had but a single aim, to bag the South Pole. His companions were Frank Wild from the *Discovery* crew, a rough mannered naval lieutenant named Jameson Boyd Adams, and the expedition's surgeon, Eric Marshall, a rugby-playing, public school Cambridge graduate, who was powerfully built and arrogant.

Much is made of the fact that Shackleton never compartmentalised his winter-quarters on 'officers and men' lines as had Scott, but even the quickest glance at the mainly middle-class and civilian bunch of characters Shackleton had selected soon reveals why he could not have done so even if he had wanted to. Shackleton alone had his own room. The others divided the hut into compartments using sheets. The hierarchical divide was between the leader and the others, rather than between the different classes of expedition members.

Towards the end of the winter of 1908 Shackleton took a small team away to test the polar car and the ever critical Marshall noted: 'A general feeling of relief at absence of Shackleton freely experienced by many. All in excellent spirits and no ill will. Easy to see where cause of all trouble lies.' He does not specify the nature of 'the trouble' and Shackleton obviously had no major retaliatory feelings towards Marshall since he selected him to go south as doctor and chief navigator.

The dogs he had brought south were left at base when the group set out for the Pole on the last day of October 1908. The four ponies that had survived the winter coped infinitely better than the dogs Shackleton had trained and led on Scott's 1903 Southern Journey. The last pony died in a crevasse 1,700 feet up the glacier. As was later confirmed, Shackleton suffered all his adult life from intermittent lung and heart troubles, but was otherwise fit and strong as an ox. He devised a ration based on biscuits and pemmican weighing twenty-four ounces per man-day, almost the same as the *Discovery* allowance. As an example of his vitality he led his group over the first twenty-three miles of sea ice to the Barrier, slept for four hours, then completed the next thirty-nine miles in twenty-four hours. At no stage of his Pole attempt did he or his men wear skis, nor did his ponies have snow shoes. Whereas on the 1903 Southern Journey the inadequacy of their dogs had led Scott, Shackleton and Wilson to relay their loads, thereby tripling the mileage to be covered, Shackleton in 1909, not having to relay thanks to his

ponies, did the same distance over the ice shelf in half the time.

When they reached that point on their chosen route over the Barrier where mountains barred their way south, Shackleton spotted the mouth of a majestic glacier that appeared like a highway to the south. Without hesitation he found and negoti ated an access route over the crevasses, which barred the way between the Barrier and this glacier. Then, by way of a convenient pass he called the Gateway, he began a 9,000 foot climb up this crevasse-ridden 120-mile long ice ramp. He named it the Beardmore Glacier after his sponsor.

The diary of Shackleton's man Marshall, unlike those of Scott's 1904 colleagues, was filled with hostility and tension but the group eventually reached the upper plateau and, amazingly, persevered to within only ninety-seven nautical miles of the Pole before turning back. Their farthest south beat that of Scott's 1902 record by 366 miles. The return journey was a classic of narrow escapes and hunger but they made it back by the skin of their teeth thanks to Shackleton's decision to turn back when he did. He later described this moment of truth to his wife with the now famous phrase. 'I thought you would like a living donkey better than a dead lion.'

The hard facts behind his turn-back decision were very simple. He and his men knew that one more day's march would end in their deaths by starvation. They knew that if they were tempted to continue, they would die. So the decision was surely that which any leader capable of working out basic mathematics and not palpably insane would have taken in the circumstances. Three years later, when Scott travelled to the Pole, he never had to face such a decision because he reached the Pole before his rations dropped to such a turnaround-or-you-die point. On their respective return journeys both Shackleton and Scott often reached their depots with a mere half-day's food and fuel left. Neither group suffered starvation merely because they failed to turn round earlier than they did. Yet Scott critics often suggest otherwise.

Shackleton and his men made a journey of 1,613 nautical

miles, more than half over virgin terrain, in just over four months. They nearly made the Pole by manhauling, with only four ponies, no skis and no dogs. This was a lesson, the key lesson surely, for Scott to observe in his own planning.

The *Nimrod* expedition was rightly acclaimed at home and abroad for its boldness, the success of its scientists and, above all, the ascent of the Beardmore Glacier. Shackleton received medals, awards and praise from many countries. In 1909 he was knighted by the monarch for, unlike Scott, he had not upset the Treasury or the Admiralty or gained enemies in high places. His expedition's debt was dealt with by a government grant of £20,000 (£940,000) and his fame, at least for a while, eclipsed that of his former leader, Robert Scott.

Roald Amundsen wrote to the RGS: 'The English nation has by the deeds of Shackleton won a victory in Antarctic exploration, which can never be surpassed. What Nansen is in the North, so is Shackleton in the South.' Amundsen could not fail to notice, of course, the inviting highway to the Pole opened up by the *Discovery* and *Nimrod* expeditions. Nor could certain other foreign aspirants, any one of whom could steal a march on Scott, who had no backing this time, no Clements Markham, no funds and no Admiralty acceptance.

Unconfirmed rumours of a Japanese Antarctic expedition to be led by one Lieutenant Nobu Shirase were rife, but nobody took the Japanese very seriously. The Belgians, with memories of *Belgica*, were muttering darkly of south polar intentions, but they, like the Japanese, were largely ignored. Norwegians would have been a different matter, for they were the undisputed world masters of snow and ice travel, but their major protagonist, Roald Amundsen, was known to be focussed on the North Pole.

Shackleton was soon in the news again announcing Antarctic plans for 1911, but he wrote to Scott assuring him the Pole and the Ice Barrier were not involved and this time Scott trusted him without asking for any private contract.

What Scott did not know was that the man who might

nowadays be described as the Dark Avenger had suddenly begun to plot, in great secrecy and with ruthless efficiency, to beat him to the Pole. The chronology of which explorer was doing what at that time is confusing and has been used by anti-Scott, pro-Amundsen biographers to suggest that, when Amundsen originally decided to be the first to the South Pole, he did not know of Scott's plans. To clarify the picture and show that Amundsen's head must have been buried in sand for him not to have heard of Scott's plans, I have listed key dates.

January 1908	News of Scott's trials of motorised sledges in Lauteret, France, is given in *Le Monde*, Paris.
September 1908	Scott marries. News reports mention his general plans for another Antarctic expedition.
March 1909	Scott sees news that Shackleton has narrowly missed claiming South Pole.
1st week Sept 1909	Press rumours of American intention to claim South Pole emerge at same time as the claims of both Cook and Peary to have reached the North Pole (in 1908 and 1909 respectively). The controversy that followed concentrated public attention worldwide on the South Pole.
13 September 1909	Scott officially announces his South Pole aim. This is in the Norwegian press by 18 September. (Amundsen blocked any attempt by Scott to obtain the best Greenland sledge dogs by ordering a hundred himself and writing to the Danish minister responsible for Greenland's Interior Affairs firmly reminding him that he was first in the queue if the minister should receive orders for dogs from anyone else.)
15 September 1909	Peary announces from Newfoundland his intention to claim South Pole. By this date the German Filchner had already announced his South Pole aims. (Peary's challenge came to naught.)

Meanwhile in 1907 Amundsen had stated his aim to prepare for an Arctic scientific voyage. He tried to hide his real aim – to reach the North Pole first - from the likes of Peary, and when, on 15 September 1909, he heard of Peary's claim, he immediately switched his plans from the North Pole to the South Pole and, within two days, had already placed his crucial order for fifty Greenland dogs.

So, two days after Scott's announcement, Amundsen switches his plans secretly, tells nobody but his brother and, later, says he did not know that Scott had any South Pole plans at the time. Despite being a highly observant, intelligent man with no work nor focus but his polar activities, he is expecting the public to believe that he has heard nothing of the plans Scott had been making for nearly two years. Scott dealt with many manufacturers of polar equipment used also by Amundsen. The polar grapevine, especially in London and Oslo, buzzed with rumour and gossip, then and now, about who was planning what.

The press had leaked Scott's plans and details of his snow vehicle trials as far back as January 1908, and in March 1909 Scott had conducted further snow vehicle trials, covered by the local Norwegian press, in the Lillehammer district not far from Oslo. Protestations that Amundsen did not know of Scott's South Pole intentions at the time he switched his own plans from north to south are absurd and transparent.

Amundsen proved to be a master of deceit. He told nobody of his decision except his business partner, his brother Leon. He knew that there were various likely rivals for the South Pole and was keen not to alert them as to any challenge from him. He would deceive them into believing he was still focussed on the Arctic. He also knew that all his sponsorship and the ship he had 'borrowed' from Nansen would be forfeit if he publicly announced this change of plan. He was heavily in debt, which did not help, but he proved as masterful at the subtleties of deceit as the intricacies of polar travel.

Scott's plans, made in ignorance of Roald Amundsen's,

involved a major science programme in addition to an attempt on the Pole. If at this stage, or indeed at any point prior to departure from Britain, Scott had contemplated a race with the Norwegians, he would have approached his good friend Fridtjof Nansen for advice. That advice would have been to take the best sledge-trained dogs in the world and a team of the best Norwegian skiers with years of experience of driving dogs . . . or forget it. Otherwise in race terms Scott would stand as little chance of winning as Amundsen would of competing with Scott in the skills needed to command a battleship involved in torpedo warfare.

Scott's preparations received a boost by the addition to his fledgling team of Teddy Evans, erstwhile second-in-command of *Morning*, now twenty-eight years old and a naval lieutenant. At one point, excited by Shackleton's accounts of the *Nimrod* expedition, Evans had nursed plans for an Antarctic expedition of his own and had begun to raise funds. Clements Markham had encouraged him to join Scott's team instead, and he had agreed at once. 'There was not room for two British expeditions, nor was there any man, not even Shackleton, then in our country equal to Scott as a scientific organiser and leader. I willingly stood aside and got many of my supporters to give their assistance to Captain Scott.'

But Evans's participation in the Scott team came at a cost. He must be Scott's second-in-command. Clements Markham put this to Scott, causing him a considerable dilemma for he had already approached his old friend, the chief engineer of *Discovery*, Reginald Skelton, to join the expedition. Evans objected to his presence on the grounds that Skelton had a senior rank. The original suggestion to modify motor cars for use in Antarctica had been Skelton's. Although Shackleton had not succeeded with his motor car version, Scott and Barne had persevered with theirs and Skelton had agreed to lend his considerable engineering design skills to the project. By the time of Evans's approach to Markham, Skelton had already spent a great deal of his valuable free time working on the motorised sledge at

Finchley and abroad and Scott did not want to drop him from his as yet unannounced, unfunded venture. Skelton was loyal to Scott whom he knew very well and, despite his own career prospects and the needs of his family, he was fully prepared to spend another two years in Antarctica under Scott's command. Teddy Evans had a wealth of support, useful funds, boundless energy and enormous enthusiasm. He was a highly skilled naval navigator and surveyor with Antarctic experience and, if not subsumed into Scott's expedition, a loose cannon likely to go his own way and drain potential funds from the limited national reservoir.

Scott hoped that there could be some compromise but Evans declared he could not accept the invidious position of number two, where another officer with a senior rank (Skelton was a commander) was expected to follow his orders. This despite the clear agreement by Skelton to do just that and numerous examples of expedition ships' companies where such a hierarchy had worked perfectly well. Evans was adamant so Scott asked Skelton to 'write or speak to him . . . quietly and try to remove his objection to yourself'. Unfortunately Evans did not remove his objection. Skelton's granddaughter, Judy, an ardent student of Skelton's copious diaries, is uncertain as to the real reason for Evans's refusal to co-exist with her grandfather but she has copies of correspondence between Skelton and Scott over the three years following her grandfather's eventual withdrawal from Scott's last expedition. It is clear that both men retained their respect and friendship for one another despite the problem caused by Evans's arrival on the scene.

Evans was to play a major part in the coming events and, I believe, if Scott had owned a crystal ball back in the spring of 1909, he would have turned down Teddy Evans, whatever the downside of so doing, for Evans was a closet troublemaker, one of three or four that Scott unknowingly took on board that year. With his *Discovery* people Scott had been fortunate for Albert Armitage had been the only natural grudge-bearer.

In mid-September 1909 Scott opened an office for his British Antarctic Expedition in Victoria Street, manned by Teddy Evans plus a £4 (£188) per week secretary. He was helped rather than hindered this time by an eight-man Advisory Committee which included Clements Markham. Scott's own name did not appear on the expedition stationery, a true sign of modesty.

That month was an interesting time for Scott. His wife, who was eight months pregnant, had introduced him to the new world of flying machines and taken him to an international gathering of aircraft designers and owners, where the fascinated Scott compiled a meticulous report for the Admiralty on all the different flying machines with their various pros and cons, as seen from a naval torpedo officer's viewpoint.

In the autumn of 1909 the United States equivalent of the Royal Geographical Society, the American Geographic Society, also announced an expedition to reach the Pole, from the Weddell Sea coast, and its appointed leader, Robert Peary, wrote to Scott to ask if he had any objections. There were none and both men agreed to co-operate over their scientific work. Scott allowed his correspondence with Peary to be published, adding his own footnote that rivalry to reach the Pole would be 'entirely friendly' but that each group would naturally wish to be first. Peary then published his own intentions in Washington and promised that 'the race for the South Pole between the Americans and the British would be the most exciting and nerve-wracking race the world has ever seen'. At the time Peary was engaged in a bitter public wrangle with Dr Cook as to which of the two had reached the North Pole first. Scott's publicly stated aim was simple: 'The main objective is to reach the South Pole and to secure that objective for the British Empire.' He did not immediately admit to the ambitious scientific programme that he envisaged since the aim of his announcement was to raise funds by appealing to the public's craving for national achievements (a trait by no means unique to the British then or now).

He specified a public appeal for £40,000 (£1.8 million). He

outlined his intention to complete the great journey by means of motorised sledges, Manchurian ponies and dogs. Manhaul, like science, was not mentioned. *The Times* summarised Scott's appeal the following day: '£40,000 is needed. The work begun by Captain Cook in the 18th century has been continuously carried forward by British explorers in the face of desperate difficulties and should not be dropped now that the goal seems attainable.'

The very next day, 14 September 1909, Kathleen produced Scott's first and only child, a son named Peter, so named because of Scott's friendship with James Barrie, author of *Peter Pan*.

Two months later Scott resigned from his Admiralty post, went on half-pay and left his wife and baby son to tour the country to raise money through lectures and appeals to businessmen. Teddy Evans proved a more successful beggar than Scott. He actually enjoyed fundraising: 'It's no good talking to business men,' he opined, 'about magnetism, geology, meteorology or any of that scientific stuff' and set about enthusing Welsh magnates with tales of unbelievable mineral wealth and whaling profits waiting to be plucked down among the glaciers.

Everyone in Britain was eager for Scott to claim the Pole so long as somebody else paid for it. Scott was often heckled by worthy socialists demanding to know what possible benefit was to be had from another expensive polar jaunt when in Britain folk were unemployed and starving. This was a time when Lloyd George announced a People's Budget, which aimed to raise vast funds for social welfare through taxing the rich with ever increasing levies on unearned and investment income. The wealthy were in no mood to give easy handouts to Scott. Miners and dockers were threatening national strikes and workers everywhere were flexing new-found muscles.

Scott and Evans worked on doggedly and learned to reduce the cash needed, where equipment could be obtained free or well discounted. Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, at the height of his Sherlock Holmes fame, gave a well publicised appeal to the

nation, stressing that only one Pole was left to claim and Scott must be enabled for Britain, and by Britain, to be the claimant. The government eventually relented and gave Scott £20,000 (£940,000).

Scott knew he must aim to leave England by June 1910 to gain the most from seasonal ice movements and set up a base by early 1911. This gave him seven months to find his ship, all necessary manpower and a lot more funding. His scientific programme meant planning for a complement of thirty-three officers, scientists and men living ashore and, depending on the size of the ship, some thirty more to stay aboard, because this time Scott did not intend his ship to winter.

Scott found preparing for this his second expedition easier, in that he was the originator and leader without Committee delays. He was now a veteran polar leader with many contacts and a respected name. This was as well for seven months is not long when organising such an ambitious venture. The empire's response to Scott's advertisement for volunteers was overwhelming and immediate. Eight thousand applicants flocked to Victoria Street in person or penned eloquent letters explaining why they should be considered.

Scott's French explorer friend, Jean Charcot, wrote on his return from the South that he had lost all confidence in motors for polar work. This hardly worried Scott, who was by now basing his plans on a commonsense combination of *Discovery* and *Nimrod* travel methods. These he summarised as having three stages between the winter base and the Pole — the Barrier, the Beardmore Glacier and the high plateau. If no suitable transport could be found to climb the glacier, Scott, like Shackleton, would use manpower alone.

Since Shackleton had been forced to turn back only ninety-seven miles short of the Pole, entirely owing to food and fuel shortage, it followed that Scott must reach that latitude correspondingly better provisioned, which would be possible merely by having more men reaching that point with more supplies.

The same applied down on the Barrier: where Shackleton used four ponies, Scott must take at least eight. Although neither dogs nor skis had featured on the *Nimrod* sledging journeys, Scott decided to cover his options by taking both.

In March 1910, some three months before his departure deadline, Scott telephoned Roald Amundsen, whom he had never met, to request specific scientific co-operation between himself in the south and the Norwegian up north. Amundsen, desperate to avoid being forced into admitting his real intentions to beat Scott to the South Pole at all costs, would not take the call. He was 'unavailable'. He continued successfully to deceive his patron, Nansen, his government whose ship he was using, all his sponsors and, more importantly, Robert Falcon Scott.

11

The Race Begins 1910

Discovery had been acquired by the Hudson's Bay Company who refused to give her up to Scott for this second voyage at any reasonable price. Six decades later I was sponsored by the HBC with Russian wolfskins to turn into parkas and, by then, their directors were expressing regret at their predecessors' hard-headed treatment of Scott – 'We missed a good PR opportunity there.'

Scott had objected to the rescue mission of *Terra Nova* back in 1904 but he had not forgotten how well she had handled the ice so he made an offer to her owners, Bowring Brothers of Newfoundland. He went to inspect her with his second-in-command, Teddy Evans, who was to command her. Evans noted:

She was the largest and strongest of the old Scotch whalers, had proved herself in the Antarctic pack-ice and acquitted herself magnificently in . . . sealing voyages extending over a period of twenty years. In spite of her age she had considerable power . . .

I shall never forget the day I first visited the *Terra Nova* in the West India Docks: she looked so small and out of place surrounded by great liners and cargo-carrying ships, but I loved her from the day I saw her, because she was my first command. Poor little ship, she looked so dirty and uncared for and yet her name will be remembered for ever in the story of the sea, which one can hardly say in the case of the stately liners which dwarfed her in the docks. I often blushed when admirals came down to see our ship, she was so very dirty. To begin with, her hold contained large blubber tanks, the stench of whale oil and seal blubber being overpowering, and

the remarks of those who insisted on going all over the ship need not be here set down. However, the blubber tanks were withdrawn, the hold spaces got the thorough cleansing and whitewashing that they so badly needed. The bilges were washed out, the ship disinfected fore and aft, and a gang of men employed for some time to sweeten her up. Then came the fitting out, which was much more pleasant work.

Scott wangled the asking price down to £12,500 (£590,000) which was not difficult for Bowring was a family firm favourably disposed to British polar pioneering and even donated £500 (£23,500) to Scott's funds. He made an immediate down payment without knowing if and how he would ever find the balance.

Using an early November start date and after consulting with meteorological experts who had studied the *Discovery* met-reports, Scott estimated the entire journey to the Pole would last 144 days, returning to base on 27 March, long after his pick-up ship would have had to depart from McMurdo Sound. This did not worry him as he had already planned enough supplies for a second year down south and had initially made unpublicised plans for a hugely ambitious scientific programme.

All his meticulous planning was based on reaching the Pole in his own good time. If Scott had known before he set out from Britain in 1910 that he would face a direct race for the Pole in 1911 against one of the greatest snow and ice travellers in the world, he would of course either have amended his plans or concentrated on his beloved science programme alone (if funds could have been raised). Believing that he had no immediate rival, he laid out his travel plans. He would use four types of transport at the start of his journey and discard any that didn't work as he went along. He would try using his experimental motorised sledges but, since they were likely to break down, he would not rely on them. If they worked, even for a short while at the beginning, that would be a bonus, nothing more. So all his

calculations for moving his loads were based on the possibility of zero machine usage.

Scott objected to plans that relied upon animals suffering but he did not object to animals being shot and used as food, either for dogs or for humans, observing: 'There is no real reason why the life of a dog should be considered more than that of a sheep, and no one would pause to consider the cruelty of driving a diminishing flock of sheep to supply the wants and aid the movement of travellers in more temperate climes.' He carefully weighed the pros and the cons. In favour of dogs he listed McClintock's findings: two dogs need the food weight of one man to go twenty-five per cent further with the same load. They require no heavy kit like tent, sleeping bag, cooker, clothing or skis. Against these advantages Scott had found dogs unreliable compared with men on long journeys with heavy loads over bad terrain. His own best journeys in Antarctica had been achieved without dogs. Dogs, Scott concluded, could be counted upon to drag loads further than men, provided you did not mind their very considerable suffering in the process. So, this time, he would take dogs but only use them for as long as they could cope without the need of ill-usage. They would not be relied upon as the main haulage means.

This left two transport systems that would be critical to the Scott plan, ponies and men. This combination had worked for Shackleton to reach within a mere ninety-seven miles of the Pole. Simple calculations showed that Shackleton's shortfall, a 194-mile round trip, could be covered by the simple expedient of setting out with more ponies, more men and more supplies. Shackleton had learnt from Scott in 1903 and had gone on to achieve great results. Scott would now improve on Shackleton enough to cope with the extra distance.

There was one imponderable which did not escape Scott's notice – the plateau. 'Shackleton was five weeks there and was nearly done, while our Pole party will have to spend ten weeks on the plateau – if we have bad weather, no one can stick it.'

The pros and cons of ponies were obvious to Scott. They would be too heavy to manhandle if, for instance, they dropped into a crevasse. Their ground pressure was far greater than a dog's or a man's, so they sank deeper into soft snow and broke through snow bridges more often. They were not as adaptable to extreme polar weather as were dogs and, being herbivores, would need fodder in a land with no grass: nor could they eat each other's meat.

The fact that neither Scott nor his colleagues (other than Oates who was in India until the last minute) were natural 'horsey' folk did not help, yet Shackleton had been equally handicapped in this respect and ponies had been key to his success. He had shown that, on mixed snow and ice surfaces, ponies could haul heavier loads, pound for pound, than could dogs and that Siberian or Manchurian ponies could withstand the Barrier weather, provided no move was attempted before early November (about three weeks later than would be possible with dogs). In any race for the Pole, dogs would therefore be absolutely critical to any chance of winning but Scott, as noted, was not expecting to race.

Scott took on a self-proclaimed dog-sledging expert named Cecil Meares to procure both dogs and ponies. He had heard about Meares through Herbert Ponting, a forty-year-old professional photographer and cinematographer who was already signed on with the expedition. Ponting had highly recommended Meares, who was the son of an Army major. He had failed to obtain a commission but had signed on anyway and fought in the Boer War. He had then become a free spirit, working for no known employer but most folk assumed he was connected to British Intelligence. At some point he had spent time in the far north of India involved in the cold war between Britain and Russia, both of whom wooed the tribesmen of the Himalaya, the northern gateway to India. Meares had also traded furs by dog-sledge in the Okotz and Kamchatka regions of eastern Siberia, fought in the Russo-Japanese War and spoke fluent Russian,

Chinese and Hindustani. Meares was summed up by Scott as having 'no happiness but in the wild places of the earth'. He must have appeared as a godsend for here was a man with years of experience at driving dogs in Siberia, who knew the exact areas where not only the best dogs but also the best ponies were to be purchased. On top of that he knew how to horse-trade in the local language and so was unlikely to be fobbed off with cranky beasts.

Meares personally checked out and purchased thirty-one dogs and nineteen ponies which he then accompanied to New Zealand on schedule. He also hired two eighteen-year-old Russians, a dog-driver, Demetri Gerof, and a groom, Anton Omelchenko, to help with the animals throughout the expedition. Scott later took on horse expert Oates, but he appeared on the scene far too late to help Meares select ponies in Manchuria, since he only obtained leave from his cavalry regiment in India in March 1910 and reached *Terra Nova* in London in May, three weeks before her voyage began.

A myth has been created that Scott instructed Meares to buy only white ponies because they looked charming in a snowy environment. In reality Scott had studied the history of Shackleton's ponies, four of which had died at Cape Royds, leaving four to make the journey south. The majority of those that died were dark-coloured so Scott decided to favour light-coloured animals.

Scott sent his brother-in-law, Wilfred Bruce, a Royal Naval Reserve officer who had joined the *Terra Nova* crew, to Vladivostok to help Meares on the voyage to New Zealand but the two men soon fell out. Bruce was an easy going bear of a man who Meares considered idle but then Meares was by nature ever ready to criticise. 'We got sick of each other,' Bruce wrote to his sister. 'He wasn't a bit my style.'

Whilst Teddy Evans and Scott set about cutting their list of 8,000 volunteers down to size, Wilson concentrated on the scientists to ensure Scott's wish to take the largest, most

professional and best equipped scientific team ever assembled to Antarctica. He had, like Scott, smarted under the Meteorological Office's flawed report on the *Discovery*'s weather reports. He was now determined to make sure that such a scurrilous slur would not be repeated so he cast a wide net to recruit the very best men in the Commonwealth.

Back in 1901 Scott had turned down George Simpson, a physicist from the Indian Weather Bureau, who had failed his medical. Scott had then written: 'I am very disappointed as I thought him an exceedingly nice fellow . . . [he] would have been in every way fitted for the work.' This time Simpson's renewed application was welcomed with open arms, his medical condition notwithstanding, and he brought with him unparalleled knowledge and an impressive array of instruments. His results this time would render him the father of Antarctic meteorology and, in years to come, the Director of the British Meteorological Office. 'Simpson,' wrote Wilson, 'is our only real socialist, anti everything and a firm believer in the *Manchester Guardian*.'

Simpson's assistant was Charles Wright, a twenty-three year-old Canadian physicist from Cambridge University. The two men achieved very valuable results down south and the dry, fairly humourless Simpson, ironically nicknamed 'Sunny Jim', was to praise Scott as a great scientific leader. He noted early on: 'One thing which never fails to excite my wonder is Capt. Scott's versatile mind. There is no specialist here who is not pleased to discuss his problems with him and although he is constantly asserting that he is only a layman, yet there is no one here who sees so clearly the essentials of a problem.'

Scott tried to recruit Douglas Mawson, the famous Australian geologist who had reached the south magnetic pole on the *Nimrod* expedition. Mawson was later to fall out with many of his colleagues and, when interviewed in London for *Terra Nova*, he noted: 'I did not like Dr Wilson', which may have had something to do with the fact that he also wrote: 'I would go in no other capacity than as Chief Scientist and as Wilson had been

appointed to that position I would not . . . henceforth accept a post on the expedition.'

Undeterred, Wilson found three professional geologists; Frank Debenham and Griffith Taylor from Australia and Raymond Priestley, who had been on *Nimrod*, from Cambridge. He also recruited two biologists, both from Plymouth Marine Laboratory, Dennis Lillie, a frail twenty-six-year-old from Birmingham who Scott had his doubts about from the first, and Edward Nelson, a wealthy rake from Cambridge who Kathleen Scott once said 'spends all his time on shore being a man about town, which makes him look exceedingly tired'.

The scientists were to be classified on *Terra Nova*, just as on *Discovery*, as 'officers' and two non-scientists were added to their number. One was Bernard Day, the motor mechanic from Arrol Johnston Motors who had engineered both Shackleton's polarised car and Scott's motor sledge. On the *Nimrod* expedition the car had proved useful only on firm sea ice but this time, since Scott's prototype had tracks instead of wheels, Day was hopeful. (Barne, the original motorised sledge enthusiast, had dropped out to get married.) The other non scientist was a friend of Wilson from a wealthy estate-owning family, Apsley Cherry-Garrard, who offered £1,000 (£47,000) to the expedition but was still turned down. When he heard this he asked Scott to keep the money anyway. Scott was so impressed he interviewed him again and, this time, he was appointed as zoologist's assistant. The scientists' fellow inmates of the *Terra Nova*'s wardroom were mostly from the Royal Navy.

Two characters who appeared on board during the last few months of loading in London were Henry Bowers and Laurence Oates. Both were to affect the outcome of the expedition and to suffer dreadfully beside Scott. Their characters were as chalk to cheese. Henry Bowers yearned from childhood to follow his father to sea and, at fourteen, there not being enough money for regular training at Dartmouth, he entered the Merchant Marine via HMS *Worcester*, a training ship at Greenhithe. After

eight years with the merchant navy he transferred to the Royal Indian Marine Service as a sub-lieutenant on river patrol boats up the fast and tricky waters of the Irrawaddy. He learnt Hindustani but was posted to catch pirates in the Persian Gulf. Always hungry for adventure he read Scott's *Discovery* and Shackleton's *Nimrod* books and wrote home: 'If only they will leave the South Pole itself alone for a bit they may give me a chance. Don't laugh!' Clements Markham, who had met and been impressed by Bowers as a cadet years before, put his name forward forcefully to Scott in 1909 and had him accepted sight unseen.

This was perhaps just as well because when Scott did first set eyes on Bowers, he was as startled as most people. Frank Debenham described him as: 'a fat little man with a perfectly immense nose and red bristly hair, unquenchable spirits and energy'. *Terra Nova* wits soon christened him Birdie. He was twenty-seven on joining the expedition and arrived six weeks before departure date. His work rate was as phenomenal as his strength. Quasimodo springs to mind. Teddy Evans was not impressed when, soon after his arrival, Bowers fell through the main hatch, a nineteen-foot drop, onto a bed of pig iron. 'What a silly ass!' Evans exclaimed when he heard. The mate, Victor Campbell, then reported with amazement that Bowers had walked away unhurt. 'What a splendid fellow!' Evans retorted. The legend of the indestructible Bowers was born.

Lawrence Oates, three years older than Bowers, was a very different character in most ways and his background was Essex landed gentry. Laurence, or Titus as he was nicknamed after a notorious seventeenth-century conspirator, was outwardly a languid country squire with all the self-confidence and ready arrogance of his class. But Oates was also dyslexic and spoke as he thought, very slowly. He specialised in failing exams and blaming his superiors. I find myself much mirrored in him and empathise with many of his reactions to life. We both lost our fathers when we were young and were blessed with loving

mothers. We came from old English families without financial worries. We could not pass exams, nor understand basic mathematics. We went to Eton and failed to enter university. We both desperately wanted to be career officers in the same cavalry regiment, the Royal Scots Greys. We saw action in wild countries against our country's enemies but we never made it to promotion beyond captain and ended up in the polar wastes. Like Oates, I always wanted to be boss in my own fiefdom and have always been wont to castigate my senior officers when they interfered with what I perceived as the best way forward.

Oates's letters home to his doting mother did just that. Although his family were wealthy, she carefully regulated his allowance which kept him in close correspondence with her and taught him not to be spendthrift. Given my empathy with the instincts prompting Oates's letters and my great admiration for Scott I feel doubly sad when I see how Oates, in his kneejerk carping at Scott, just another boss to blame, ends up unwittingly providing the lion's share of ammunition for the serious damage caused to Scott's reputation from 1979 onwards.

When in 1909 Oates first heard about the *Terra Nova* expedition his thirtieth birthday was coming up and his determination to leave the Army was peaking. He had moved with his regiment to India where his frustrations and complaints against life in general and his immediate superiors in particular continued to feature in the ongoing stream of letters to mother. His latest gripe was at a push by the War Office to recruit officers with brains from the working classes. A 'man with brains,' Oates growled, 'knows too much to join the Service.'

Oates did not want to join any expeditions as an also-ran. He told a friend soon after his interview at the polar office: 'I told Scott I had no intention of being left at the base and that I should want to be in the party to make the dash for the Pole.' To his mother he added: 'The job is most suitable to my tastes. Scott is almost certain to get to the Pole and it is something to say you were with the first party.'

There is no record of how Scott reacted to Oates stressing his aversion to 'being left at the base'. Oates was in no position to stress anything to his prospective leader, being merely one of 8,000 applicants, but he did offer £1,000 (£47,000 today) to expedition funds which Scott would not have sneezed at and he did, above all, have great experience at dealing with horses, something which Scott sorely needed. Oates was the first soldier to join a British polar expedition. He was entering a world of naval customs and naval discipline and when he first climbed up the *Terra Nova*'s gangplank at the dockside, Scott's team were expecting a moustachio'd Army blimp. Oates may have been shrewd enough to foresee the danger inherent in his status since he turned up in shabby clothes with a battered bowler. This worked well, for Tom Crean, back again working for Scott and one of the first to meet Oates, remembers his introducing himself very simply to the sailors. 'I'm Oates,' he said. Crean also noted: 'we never for a moment thought he was an officer . . . We made up our minds that he was a farmer, he was always so nice and friendly, just like one of ourselves . . . and always a gentleman.'

Oates settled down happily to menial deck work. As a practised yachtsman he was at home high up in the rigging and could turn his hand to most things. Teddy Evans and the mate, Victor Campbell, himself an old Etonian, found Oates an excellent and diligent worker and asked Scott to keep him on board during the vital preparations of the last month before departure. Scott agreed and signed him on as a midshipman for one shilling a month. Oates was too modest to boast of his equine skills and little could be achieved at this late stage by sending him out to help Meares with the ponies long since purchased in Manchuria.

In March 1910, whilst his team came together, Scott took Kathleen to Fefor in Norway for the final field trials of his latest motorised sledge. He was on the lookout for any gadget, old or new, that would help towards success and, in 1910, there were plenty of new gadgets about, since electrical propulsion had just

begun to take over from steam power and submarines and aircraft were becoming ever more sophisticated, although neither had reached a stage likely to help his plans. Wireless telegraphy involved too much bulky gear but the forerunner of British Telecom provided Scott with a land-line that did prove useful.

Scott's latest motorised sledge was made by Wolseley Motors of Birmingham, powered by a petrol-engine, equipped with a looped track of links, and was the forerunner of the snocats that, forty years on, would complete the first crossing of Antarctica under Vivian Fuchs and Edmund Hillary. Scott's trials in Fefor, watched by Fridtjof Nansen and presided over by Bernard Day (who was to go south) and Skelton (who wasn't), progressed most impressively on good hard snow surfaces. A 3,000-pound load of local Norwegian passengers clinging to four sledges in tandem was dragged with ease up a long one-in-five slope.

Scott and Kathleen were delighted, Day optimistic and Skelton worried that subsequent trials on soft snow would prove the machine almost useless. Nansen, if at all impressed, did not show it. He merely congratulated Scott on the fifty pairs of locally made skis Scott had recently bought and pointed out that he must now take on a first-class ski instructor to instruct his fifty skiers. He suggested a twenty-one-year-old Norwegian ski champion called Tryggve Gran and introduced this protégé to the Scotts forthwith.

Halfway through the Fefor trials the motorised sledge's axle broke and Gran skied ten miles down the valley to Bernard Day's store dump to bring back a twenty-five-pound spare axle. He did the round trip in five hours and Scott was highly impressed, not only by Gran's skill but by modifications to his gear, including the use of two sticks, better boots and clever ski-bindings that were all new since the *Discovery* days. Scott did not hesitate to offer Gran the position of ski adviser to the expedition.

Before Scott left Norway Gran agreed to put him in touch with Amundsen because Scott was still trying to contact the

great Arctic explorer to suggest liaising over a north south science project. The two men travelled to Amundsen's home at Bundefjord where they met one of his brothers, Gustav, who said he had told Roald that Scott was due that day and it was strange he wasn't there. 'We waited,' said Gran, 'a good hour, but not a sign of life from the conqueror of the North West Passage.' Gran went away 'ashamed' and Scott disappointed. Amundsen, hiding from his unwelcome visitors, who could not suspect the true reason for his evasiveness, was answering no telephone calls since he needed to deceive his government, his sponsors, all his team and, above all, his patron Nansen, who was an honourable man and would surely be against any secretive switch by Amundsen from his well publicised north polar plan to a desperate race to the South Pole to beat Scott.

Gran later wrote: 'Could Scott have beaten Amundsen? I answer without hesitation that, should he have had the possibility of competing fairly under similar circumstances, he would have had to know that Amundsen planned to be the South Pole conqueror well before the winter of 1910, for the battle is won at the preparation stage.'

In mid-May Gran joined *Terra Nova* in the West India Docks. He noted 'a hurry and scurry that impressed me almost as much as the traffic in the streets of the metropolis. Men tore about like busy ants. Sailors were crawling over rigging and spars.' Among the stores were gifts to keep the men happy which included 35,000 cigars, half a ton of tobacco, plum puddings, a piano and an HMV gramophone with assorted records.

There were good men aboard who had served with Scott before and wanted to go again: as well as William Lashly, Taff Evans and Tom Crean, Petty Officer Thomas Williamson had applied. 'Dear Sir, I have heard that you are contemplating another Expedition to the South . . . I hope when the time comes for the selection of your crew you will not omit me. I feel convinced in myself that I can do much more for you than I did before for the simple reason that . . . I am getting older but

wiser. Trusting you will . . . let me know if there is any chance of my serving under you again.'

Kathleen had taken an ever increasing interest in Scott's expedition and there were to be many sour comments as to her wearing the family trousers. She spurred his ambition and bolstered his confidence during his 'black dog' moods. Once in a letter she wrote: 'You shall go to the Pole. Oh Dear me what's the use of having energy and enterprise if a little thing like that can't be done? It's got to be done so hurry up and don't leave a stone unturned.' Gran described Kathleen as 'a very very clever woman very very pushing . . . very ambitious . . . I don't think Scott would have gone to the Antarctic if it hadn't been for her.'

If Scott had not gone south, his torpedo expertise and command experience would in all probability have meant rapid promotion in the Great War that loomed even as *Terra Nova* was made ready. On the eve of departure the *Daily Mail* editor told Scott that there was a strong expectation that Germany would be 'ready to strike in the summer of 1914'. After a moment's reflection, Scott answered: 'By then I shall be entitled to command a battle cruiser of the *Invincible* class. The summer of nineteen-fourteen will suit me very well.' Another newspaper reported their interview with Scott. 'He was not an alarmist, he said, but he had just recently left the Admiralty, and he believed that the time was coming when we should want men who could shoot. The menace which was gradually showing its head abroad was, he thought, very great, and none of us could afford to treat it lightly. He believed the time was coming when the navy would want to be the strongest navy we ever had.'

King Edward VII, after whom Scott had named a huge peninsula in Antarctica, died three weeks before *Terra Nova* set sail and Scott recalled that *Discovery*'s departure, nine years before, had been overshadowed by Queen Victoria's death. As he watched the quayside ease away and waved to the many supporters who had given their time and skills free for the past few months, he could see just across the dock a familiar outline from

his past, for *Discovery* was berthed there, taking on Hudson's Bay Company stores bound for North America.

En route to Cardiff for coal in June 1910, Scott summoned everyone on deck and appealed to them all to make a will. He also wrote to the Admiralty: 'If nothing is heard of the ship by the middle of January 1912, it would be well to consider the organisation of a relief Expedition, but no active steps . . . should be taken until the close of the open season of 1911–1912.'

At Cardiff the ship filled the coal holds with free Welsh coal, the Lord Mayor promised £1,000 (£47,000) to the expedition and the City gave a banquet. Taff Evans, being well known in his native Wales from his *Discovery* days, was seated between Scott and the Lord Mayor. In an impromptu speech he declared: 'No one else would have induced me to go there again but if there is a man in the world who will bring this to a successful conclusion, Captain Scott is that man.' Later Evans drank too much and had to be dragged aboard *Terra Nova* by six strong men. At about this time the quasi-Welsh Teddy Evans began to fall out with his lower deck namesake. It seems the reason for this had to do with Taff spotting an error made by Teddy (over ordering some wrong ski-bindings) and then 'sneaking' to Scott. New equipment was ordered and First Officer Evans was promptly replaced as boss of ski gear by Petty Officer Evans. Teddy was not large in stature but significant in terms of pride so he nurtured this grudge with dedication.

Scott did not leave Britain on board the ship because the expedition was still £8,000 (£376,000 today) in the red and by taking a ride on a speedy mail ship to Cape Town, he could use the extra time in Britain to raise funds, fix media contracts for magazine, news and cinematograph rights and pay bills. He nevertheless found time to slip away to his childhood home, Outlands, to say goodbye to his memories and to carve his name on a tree he had planted long ago. He put off the moment of parting with Kathleen. She would now stay with him on the mail boat to Cape Town. Wilson's Oriana and Teddy Evans's

Hilda would go the same way. They all met at Waterloo Station for a quiet send off by a few friends, including Ernest Shackleton, who called for 'three cheers for Captain and Mrs Scott' as the train puffed away.

Meanwhile aboard *Terra Nova* the men learnt about one another in their cramped and often sea sick state. Spells spent working shifts on the bilge pumps or stoking the boilers helped break the ice and Wilson noted: 'The bunkers hold about 50 tons each . . . we take it in three hourly spells . . . It is hot work, and in 10 minutes one is streaming with sweat and black as Kaffirs with dust.' In one shift Bowers and Wilson shovelled seven tons, despite the ship's movement being so bad they had trouble avoiding the moving coal in the darkness. Wilson recorded some time later: 'the coal is now patent fuel which has a horrible burning action on one's eyes and skin as it is full of pitch and resin. The scalding comes on in an hour or two after one has bathed and lasts for many hours.'

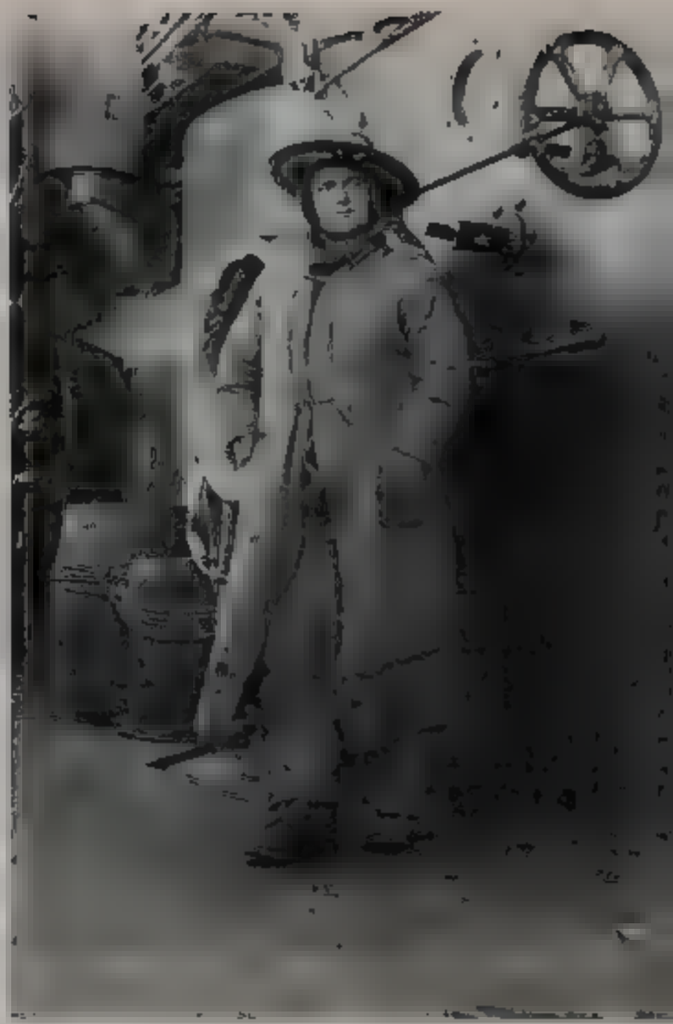
Teddy Evans observed: 'In this fashion officers, seamen and scientific staff cemented a greater friendship and respect for one another.' The scientists learnt various new skills including, according to the Canadian Charles Wright, splicing ropes, coal trimming, paint-washing and, most alarming, sail-hauling aloft.

One of Teddy Evans's party tricks consisted of lifting people off the ground by clenching their trouser belts in his teeth. Horse-play was developed to a fine art under his leadership. Oates, who had seen many an officer's mess after-dinner scrum, must have felt at home but the scientific types, not to mention the sailors, would surely have wondered where such madhouse behaviour might lead.

Time was lost in the Doldrums but the final stretch to Simonstown naval base, just south of Cape Town, treated them to strong westerly winds and they flew along under full sail, arriving on 15 August to the waiting Scott's great relief. A good deal of work was needed in harbour to prepare for the voyage

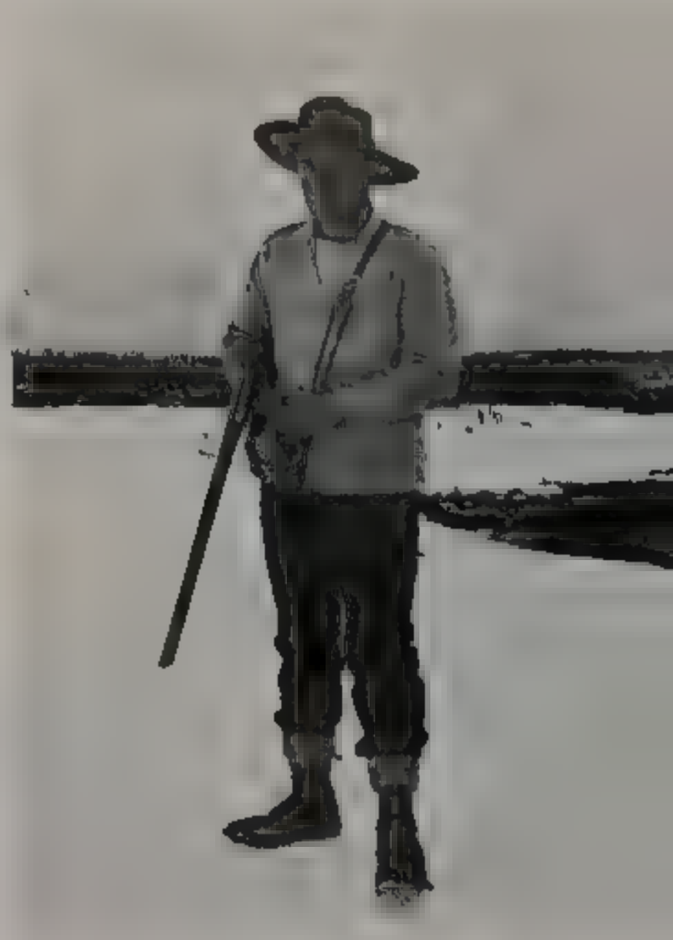
1. Robert Falcon Scott in his early twenties. He never planned to become an explorer but was one of the Royal Navy's top torpedo experts. From 1901 his polar destiny lay in the hands of the eminent geographer, Clements Markham, who was determined that Britain should be first to penetrate the unknown land of Antarctica.

2. Charles Royds, with penguin for dinner



3. Jacob Cross on board *Discovery*

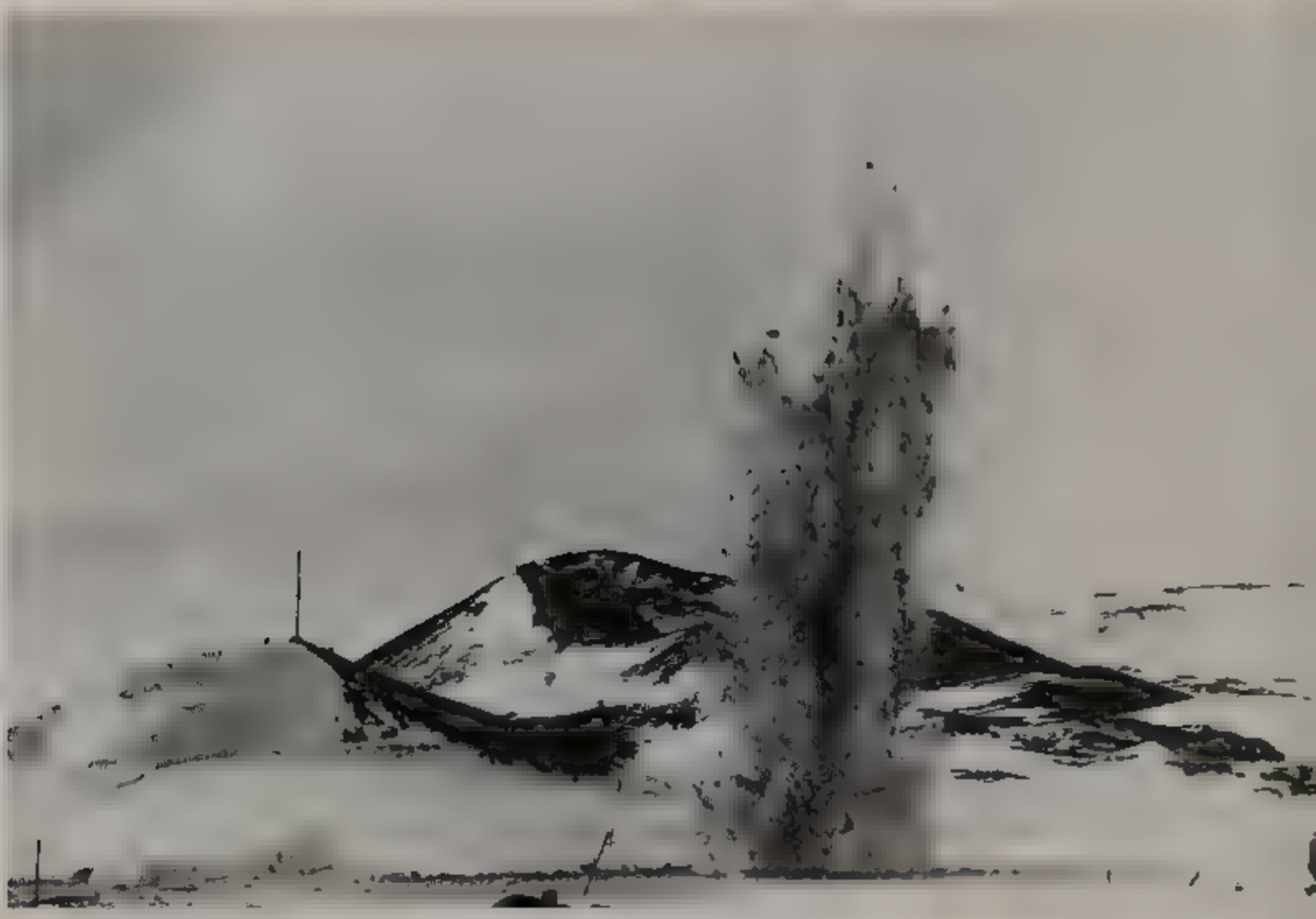
4. Reginald Skelton, chief engineer and expedition appointed cameraman.



5. Ernest Shackleton on a Vitamin C hunt.

6. Left to right: Ernest Shackleton, Robert Scott and Edward Wilson at the start of the Southern Journey, January 1902.

7. A photograph by Shackleton shows Scott or Wilson in the chasm which prevented them travelling from the Barrier to continental Antarctica, 15 December 1902.



8. Blasting with explosives close to *Discovery*, which lies hidden behind Hut Point, cut off from the open sea by twenty miles of pack ice.

9. Thanks largely to ocean swell breaking up the first ice, *Terra Nova* and *Morning* break through at midnight on 14 February 1904. Further blasting finally released *Discovery* (left) on the 16th.

10. Some of the *Terra Nova* crew (not officers or scientists), and the ship's cat, right.

11. Unloading the last of the three caterpillar tractors, shortly before it sank through weak sea ice and was lost forever, 8 January 1911.

12. George Simpson (later Director of the UK Meteorological Office) at work in the Cape Evans magnetic hut, January 1912.

13. Herbert Ponting with camera gear at Hut Point in 1910.

14. Edgar Evans dressing Dr George Atkinson's frostbitten hand.

15. Dog driver Anton Omelchenko cutting the hair of Petty Officer Patrick Keohane, a tough and reliable Irish sledger.

16. Apsley Cherry-Garrard, the youngest member of the expedition and trainee zoologist assistant, November 1911.

17. Robert Forde, crew member and sledger, who suffered badly from frostbite, November 1911.

18. Petty Officers Edgar 'Taff' Evans and Irishman Thomas Crean, April 1911. The expedition's sledging equipment and clothing was diligently and ingeniously modified by both men.

19 The Canadian Charles Wright, expedition physicist, April 1911.

20. Oates in the stables beside the hut, with three of the ten ponies which he nursed diligently through the long winter months of 1911. Of the nineteen ponies brought to Antarctica, nine had died during the first year.

21. Lawrence 'Titus' Oates and his friend Cecil Meares outside the Cape Evans hut in June 1911, midwinter when the sun disappeared for twenty four hours a day. Note that Oates was still using just one ski-stick, as did the *Discovery* team six years before.

ahead but everyone took some time off and Cape Town was as hospitable as ever.

Oates described *Terra Nova* as an extremely dirty ship and he was not at all impressed with her speed. He wrote to his mother: 'The Skipper has decided to come on the ship to Melbourne with us, this is not a very popular move but in a way I think it is a good thing as he gets to know the people better and we get to know him.' Scott's decision to travel on *Terra Nova* rather than continue on by mailboat with Kathleen for the next leg to Australia was sudden and unexpected. He sent Wilson on to Melbourne in his place, thereby giving him extra time with his own wife Oriana on the mailboat. There may well have been speculation that Scott was keen to escape from Kathleen or that he was jealous of Teddy Evans's rapport with the company, but there is no proof at all of either and, if Evans was upset at being usurped, he certainly never said so, nor do his personal diaries make any such comment. Bowers, whose early Indian diaries were so critical of his skippers, wrote about Scott in Cape Town: 'Scott hits it off well everywhere and is certainly a top-hole leader. There is not one of us whom he does not take a personal interest in . . . He will take nothing but a straight answer to his questions . . . He sticks to what he says, knows what he intends to do, and does not change his mind.'

Terra Nova left the Cape bound for Australia on 3 September with Scott in command. The horseplay continued but was muted by the leader's presence. Charles Wright, the Canadian physicist, noted that Scott, whom he admired for his interest in all things scientific, stayed clear of the horseplay but never disapproved of it. Gran wrote: 'If the voyage from Cardiff to Simonstown has been characterized by splendid comradeship the passage from South Africa to Australia was an even better proof that Scott had well understood how to choose men who get on well together. In Norway I had learned to know Scott as a cheerful and easy man, and this first impression was strengthened when I again came close to him. He was short-tempered and

not to be trifled with when angry, but if he had judged someone unfairly and discovered his mistake, he was quick to make amends.'

Four days out of Cape Town, *Terra Nova*'s passage was being secretly shadowed by Gran's countryman, Roald Amundsen aboard *Fram*. On that day, 6 September, the Norwegians slipped out of Madeira intent on reaching the Ice Barrier with no further stops en route. Amundsen must have suspected a hostile public reaction to his ongoing deception and decided to give at least a minimal announcement of his real intentions to the world at large and to the British in particular. So he addressed a cryptic message to Scott to await his arrival in Melbourne by which time it would be too late for any change of British plans, too late to buy more dogs. The message read: 'Beg leave to inform you Fram proceeding Antarctic. Amundsen.'

He also sent a confidential letter to a Norwegian friend: 'The *Fram* goes direct south from Madeira into the Antarctic regions in order to compete with the Englishmen for the South Pole.' Scott sailed on towards Australia, in happy ignorance of any rival, let alone the immediate threat of the highly professional ice traveller, Roald Amundsen. He continued to work on his plans for his scientists and for his own slow but sure plod to the Pole based on the lessons learnt by the only journeys yet made towards it, those of the *Discovery* and *Nimrod* teams. His aim was not to manhaul to the Pole. His aim was to reach the Pole by whatever means at his disposal proved most successful when the time came. His final choice of his travel system would not have to be calculated with the aim of being first at the Pole, merely of getting there by a reasonable date.

Soon after *Terra Nova* left Cape Town the *Cape Times* noted: 'While Captain Scott and his comrades are making their way southwards towards the unconquered Pole, a Norwegian, Captain Roald Amundsen . . . is setting out to solve some of the unfathomed mysteries of the Great North.' So Amundsen had successfully fooled the world's press all the way.

Amundsen had no compunction about poaching on anybody's preserves: 'I do not belong to that class of explorer who believes that the Polar sea has been created for myself alone . . . First come, first served is an old saying.' So he read everything he could about previous Antarctic history and decided from the works of Ross, Borchgrevink, Scott and Shackleton that by far the best place for a winter base from which to race to the Pole must be the Ice Barrier near or at the Bay of Whales. The main danger was that any winter-quarters hut built on the Barrier's edge might float out to sea. Amundsen, however, unlike Shackleton and Scott, thought the gamble worth taking. If there was any risk he assumed it to be minimal since the bay had been sighted by Ross and by Shackleton in the same location over a seventy year period. Amundsen was taking a big risk (as the aerial satellite photo in the first picture section shows) but the risk paid off. He was also trusting to fate that he would find a convenient glacier to lead him onto the plateau. Unlike Scott's plan, Amundsen's depended hugely on geographical luck.

Amundsen knew that Scott was planning a major scientific programme involving many scientists and cumbersome instruments. There would be sixty-five men with Scott, whereas Amundsen planned to take no scientists and only a tightly knit group of travellers based around the world's best dog sledgers and skiers. His ship's company would total nineteen men, including both land group and crew.

Once *Fram* had cast off from Funchal's quayside on 6 September 1910, Amundsen summoned his men on deck and dropped the bombshell news of the change in their destination. Now they would not end up being merely second to reach the North Pole but they would go to the Arctic via the South Pole in order to be first. Amundsen told them that it was now a matter of trying to beat the English. 'Hurrah' was the response of Bjaaland, a champion skier. 'That means we'll get there first.' Three weeks after *Fram* left Madeira, by which time Scott could not alter his own plans, Leon announced his brother Roald's

new aim to the world press. His statement was couched as carefully as possible to minimise accusations of duplicity: 'At first glance this will appear to many to be a change in the original plan. This however is not the case. It is only an extension of the Expedition's plan; not an alteration.' Scott received Amundsen's curt telegram on his arrival in Melbourne on 12 October. He took it to Gran, who noted at once that the message from Oslo was dated 3 October yet *Fram* had left Madeira three weeks earlier. On Gran's advice, Scott later sent a message to Nansen to ask for clarification of the Amundsen telegram. Nansen, whether he knew by then about Amundsen's deceptions or not, sent an enigmatic response to Scott: 'Unknown.'

To confuse matters further Scott received messages from Markham, one of which mentioned a press release from *Fram* talking about oceanographic work they planned in the Punta Arenas region. This inferred that Amundsen *was* planning to head for Antarctica but via the Weddell Sea not the Ice Barrier. On the other hand Markham had also learnt that Amundsen had purchased charts from the Admiralty of the McMurdo area of the Ross Sea. Amundsen 'is going to McMurdo Sound to try to cut out Scott,' Markham deduced. '. . . If I were Scott I would not lend them his land, but he is always too good-natured.'

Scott, at the very moment he first received the fateful Norwegian telegram in Melbourne, was being introduced to his new geologist, the Australian Frank Debenham (later the founder of the Scott Polar Research Institute in Cambridge), who was about to join *Terra Nova*. Debenham noted that Scott seemed unruffled on reading the Amundsen news. All but one of the *Terra Nova* crew reacted to the Norwegian announcement in similar vein to Raymond Priestley, who remembered it as 'the greatest geographical impertinence ever committed'. The Canadian Charles Wright wrote that he and the others found the Norwegian leaders' behaviour not quite right. Back in London Shackleton expressed his surprise that Amundsen had 'so considerably altered his plans without giving a more explicit explanation'.

The only member of the *Terra Nova* crew to find Amundsen's behaviour above board was Oates, which appears at first to make little sense since he was by nature xenophobic and distrusted all foreigners on principle. Nonetheless, by the time he gave his reaction to the Amundsen news he had already begun his old habit of criticising his current boss, Scott, and to a lesser extent, Evans. They could do no right. So his attitude was ambivalent. 'Bloody Norskies,' he muttered, 'coming down south is a bit of a shock', and added, 'I only hope they don't get there first.' Then, his Scott dislike getting the upper hand of his xenophobia, he added, 'It will make us look pretty foolish after all the noise we have made . . . They say that Amundsen has been underhand the way he has gone about it, but I personally don't see it as underhand to keep your mouth shut . . . if Scott does anything silly such as underfeeding his ponies he will be beaten as sure as death.'

When *Terra Nova* left Melbourne, Teddy Evans was again in command and Wilson back on board. Scott was forced back onto the fundraising front, desperately seeking Australian help with the debt he still owed. In Sydney the Lord Mayor appealed on his behalf and in due course the New South Wales government stumped up £2,500 (£117,500) which was half what he still needed. Scott must have realised he could easily capitalise on Amundsen's deceit to appeal to Australians and their wallets. But he said nothing and later noted in his diary: '[Amundsen's] proceedings have been very deliberate and success alone can justify them. That this action is outside one's own code of honour is not necessarily to condemn it and under no condition will I be betrayed into a public expression of opinion.'

Scott had a thousand and one more immediate problems than Amundsen. His reason for getting to know his men better on the Cape to Melbourne voyage had allowed him to reassess many of those he had previously earmarked in his mind as fit to stay in Antarctica with him. Remembering the unloading of *Discovery* at Hut Point and the efficiency of Ernest Shackleton

with all the stores, Scott had already provisionally appointed a stores-keeper in the person of Lieutenant Henry Rennick, RN, but, on the trip to New Zealand, he had observed the outstanding organising abilities, strength and memory of Bowers. He now had to inform Henry Rennick, before leaving civilisation, of his decision to replace him on the shore party with the chirpy Scotsman. Rennick, who stayed on board ship for the rest of the expedition, took the decision in good part, bearing no grudge against Scott or Bowers. Scott, like most leaders, rightly promoting very good individuals over the heads of merely good ones, did not enjoy the task. He wrote of Rennick: 'He is a good fellow and one feels for him much at such a time – it must be rather dreadful for him.'

Scott made the right decision for Bowers was to prove a superb quartermaster.

Scott and Kathleen took a passenger boat to New Zealand and learnt on arrival that their fundraising in New South Wales had paid off for a rich Sydney citizen had now decided to match his government's £2,500 donation and so make up Scott's shortfall. One less problem. But journalists also greeted the Scotts' arrival with gleeful queries about the race and the Norwegians and what Scott would do now. Scott kept his calm and, wishing Amundsen luck, assured the media that his own plans would remain unchanged.

Terra Nova, on arrival in Lyttelton harbour on 29 October 1910, was completely unloaded under Bowers' supervision, then taken into the dry dock where leaks were plugged, pumps cleaned and bolts tightened. Back in the harbour, the old boat was found to leak a good deal less and the reloading began. Bowers re-listed everything and re-packed a good deal in light but strong colour-coded boxes. Scott's plans involved the splitting of his over-wintering group into two separate units, one to work from the Hut Point vicinity and the other, under the mate, Victor Campbell, to land at the far eastern end of the Ice Barrier to explore King Edward VII Land, the landmass Scott had

discovered there in 1901. This six-man group was called the Eastern Party and all their boxes were painted green.

Bowers worked his men day and night, ignoring the constant stream of visitors as politely as he could. Oates found 'rather sickening' the way some of these tourists scratched their names on the paintwork. As new stores arrived on deck so *Terra Nova*'s long since painted over Plimsoll line sunk even lower. Scott and the naval element knew this was dangerous but there was no alternative. Every last item would be needed down south. Some of the heavier, bulkier gear included two and a half tons of petrol in drums, crates of large but delicate scientific instruments, three motor sledges with all their spares and Bernard Day's tools, 460 tons of coal and five tons of dog biscuits. Scott commented: 'Meares is reluctant to feed the dogs on seal, but I think we ought to do so during the winter.'

The nineteen ponies were housed in stables designed by Oates, and placed immediately above the quarters of the sailors, onto whom the horse urine intermittently streamed. Thirty-three sledge dogs, desperate to kill each other when not barking, howling or fouling the decks, were chained out of reach of each other which meant the entire deck was spattered with snarling hounds leashed to sacks, crates, or bollards. There was also a ship's black cat called Nigger, a blue Persian kitten, three rabbits, a pigeon, some squirrels and a guinea pig that lived in a tobacco container (which was later dropped overboard by mistake). Once the on-deck 'ice-house' was made ready, 162 carcasses of mutton were squeezed inside. Two dozen sledges were lashed aboard, followed by thirty-two tons of pony fodder, somehow to be kept dry and soon to be increased by Oates to fifty tons. The deck itself was everywhere invisible.

In New Zealand Oates began to wax hostile to Scott. This was partly Scott's fault because he had a multitude of worries and yet, although he had delegated all equine matters to Oates, he was not ready to give in to him whenever and wherever Oates demanded. Oates was the horse expert and Scott knew nothing.

Scott did not pretend otherwise but his own polar agenda could not always yield to fit in with Oates's advice, however excellent. On top of which Oates was not an expert at the behaviour and abilities of Manchurian ponies operating in snow any more than Scott was. Scott worried about the entire forest whilst Oates focussed fiercely on his few trees.

Oates wanted fifty, not thirty-two, tons of horse food stacked on board and if there was no space, something would have to be moved. Oates wrote: 'Scott has been kicking up another fuss about the forage but I succeeded in defeating him, also we smuggled in an extra two tons.' And again: 'I have now ordered just a little more which I shall try to get in on the quiet this afternoon.' To accommodate Oates, Scott had Bowers remove a like amount of coal and Oates was triumphant. 'Dear Mother,' he wrote, 'I have had a great struggle with Scott about the horse forage. He told me I was a "something" nuisance but he has given way which shows he is open to reason.' Oates's self-confidence about his own judgment and embattled vocabulary with words like 'given way' instead of 'agreed' again reminds me of my own attitudes whenever I suffered the affliction of having a boss.

Bowers happily colluded with Oates. 'Oates was anxious to procure an expensive linseed meal and Scott was keen on the compressed variety. When my opinion was asked (knowing nothing of horse fodder) I got in a wink from Oates and said I was sure nothing could equal the linseed meal, and to O's great delight the motion was carried on the spot.' Oates also made a point of registering his adverse attitude to the state of the ponies Meares had bought from Manchuria, a position in which I suspect there was more than a little self-interest.

Seven weeks after Meares and Bruce left Vladivostok they had reached Lyttelton with all but one of their ponies alive, despite fifty two days of non-stop standing up, there being no space to lie down. All the ponies and dogs were dropped off on tiny Quail Island, some two miles from Lyttelton, where they were

quarantined and rested well before *Terra Nova*'s arrival. When Scott and Oates went to visit Meares' tented camp on Quail Island he found Bruce with the remains of two black eyes and a swollen nose dealt him by a punchy pony but otherwise well. Scott warmly congratulated Meares, saying he was 'greatly pleased' with all the animals.

Oates wrote home. 'Dear Mother, *the ponies themselves are first class* but all the feeding I have been stuffing them with has made them fairly festive and there may be trouble.' Some of the sailors came to the island to help exercise the festival animals and Oates moved over to the Quail Island camp where he made friends with the Russians Gerof and Omelchenko. He also began to teach the ponies to drag loads. Despite the favourable judgment Oates had expressed when writing home, he made a point of giving Scott a damning pony report which included the summary:

> Victor . . . Narrow chest, knock knees . . . suffers with his eyes. Aged windsucker.
>
> Snippets . . . Bad wind sucker. Doubtful back tendons off fore legs. Pigeon toes. Aged.
>
> James Pigg . . . Sand crack near hind. Aged.
>
> Bones . . . Aged.
>
> Snatcher . . . Black marks under eye. Aged.

Whether or not that was Oates's intention, his report would serve to impress Scott and all the team that the ponies were rubbish. That way Oates would not subsequently be blamed should they fail in Antarctica despite all his expertise and his very best efforts at caring for them. He was therefore most upset when Scott continued to express himself 'greatly pleased' with the ponies, feeling that Scott had ignored his advice. Although what use this advice was when Scott could hardly react by exchanging them for a new batch is not apparent. The only other advice Oates gave Scott was to improve and increase the forage and Scott clearly gave in with hardly a whimper on that front.

No sooner had Scott, at least temporarily, placated Oates than trouble brewed from another quarter. In the frenetic period only three days before departure from Lyttelton, the Bishop of Christchurch found a narrow perch somewhere on the deck to bless the ship. The Navy men wore their best, normally moth-balled, uniforms and all was well until, later in the day, Taff Evans, having enjoyed a final binge ashore, fell drunk into the harbour. An alternative version of events, relayed to Cherry-Garrard by Wilfred Bruce, had Taff Evans arriving on board drunk just as the bishop was coming and being chucked over the side by Lieutenant Evans. Taff, Scott's old Southern Journey comrade and one of the most experienced men aboard, hardly warranted sacking from the expedition for what would clearly be his last chance to have a few too many for at least two years. But a semblance of naval discipline being a loose pillar of the whole venture, Scott had to be seen to admonish the giant Welsh petty officer. So he ordered him home on the grounds he had disgraced the whole venture in public. Teddy Evans, who disliked his namesake, was naturally pleased. The ship, on leaving Lyttelton, had to take on more coal at Port Chalmers, a short voyage along the coast. The Welshman managed to tag along and, once there, appealed to Scott to reconsider his banishment. Scott, no martinet and inclined to common sense rather than rigid enforcement of all orders, willingly forgave his contrite chief sledge expert and thereby sparked off a major clash with Teddy Evans, who saw the petty officer's reinstatement as very bad for discipline.

Teddy Evans told colleagues privately that he intended to resign unless a clear understanding was reached between him and Scott. The trouble was exacerbated, according to Bowers, by the excessive jealousy of the wives, each goading her husband to gain ground over the other. Bowers, Oates and Atkinson decided they would resign in sympathy if Teddy Evans quit, and they asked Cherry-Garrard if he would join them. He refused. He would have been happy to see Teddy Evans go. 'From the

first,' he wrote, 'I have never liked Evans.' Behind Teddy Evans's relentless high spirits Cherry-Garrard saw 'a shallow man with none of Scott's complexity or Wilson's thoughtful altruism'.

Scott himself mentions no rebellion or threat of resignation. He merely refers to Teddy Evans's 'vague and wild grievances'. Teddy Evans's diary makes no reference to the affair which relies for its origins entirely on a note in Cherry-Garrard's journals, whose notes add that Scott called Teddy Evans's bluff and that 'Teddy Evans climbed down.'

Various diaries mention a tense atmosphere between Kathleen Scott and Hilda Evans which Bowers attributed to mutual jealousy. Bowers adored Hilda Evans as 'wildly beautiful' but said of Kathleen, who had questioned him over a store-keeping detail: 'Nobody likes her on the expedition and the painful silence when she arrives is the only jarring note of the whole thing. There is no secret that she runs us all just now and what she says is done – through the Owner. Now nobody likes a schemer and she is one undoubtedly . . . We all feel that the sooner we are away the better.'

At one point during the last day at Port Chalmers Kathleen and Hilda, each about to say goodbye to their respective husbands, lost their tempers. Oates heard about the resulting shouting match and wrote: 'Dear Mother, Mrs Scott and Mrs Evans have had a magnificent battle, they tell me it was a draw after fifteen rounds. Mrs Wilson flung herself into the fight after the tenth round and there was more blood and hair flying about the hotel than you see in a Chicargo [sic] slaughter house in a month, the husbands got a bit of the backwash and there is a certain amount of coolness which I hope they won't bring into the hut with them, however it won't hurt me even if they do.'

Oates's exaggerated prose sums up the entire storm in a teacup. Scott and Kathleen later went for a last walk in the hills together. Then, on the day before departure, they collected Teddy Evans and drove together to the ship. On departure day, 29 November 1910, Kathleen's diary had one last spit: 'Evans'

tantrums spoiled the day,' she wrote. 'He told me a string of lies and hot air.' Bowers, who seemed to relish the ladies' ups and downs, recorded: 'May it never be known how very nearly the *Terra Nova* came to not sailing at the last few hours.'

Kathleen did not kiss her man farewell just before departure as she did not want 'anyone to see him sad'. Mrs Evans, on the bridge, said she wanted to have hysterics but didn't. Kathleen took her and Oriana Wilson 'for tea in the stern and we all chatted gaily'. Teddy Evans described his feelings: 'personally I had a heart like lead, but, with every one else on board, bent on doing my duty and following Captain Scott to the end. There was work to be done, however, and the crew were glad of the orders that sent them from one rope to another and gave them the chance to hide their feelings, for there is an awful feeling of loneliness at this point in the lives of those who sign on the ships of the "South Pole trade".'

Scott sent off his last letters home. To his little niece he wrote:

If you could look down through the Earth right under your feet with a great big telescope you would see Auntie Kathleen and me at the other end . . . The dogs are rather fierce and the people who don't know them have to be careful not to go too close or they would get bitten – but wasn't it funny there was a girl the same age as Phoebe who went up to the fiercest dog of all and put her arms round his neck – and the dog didn't mind at all. When you grow older you will understand that there are lots of animals and lots of people who are like that dog.

We are getting ready to sail away and when you are having your Christmas dinner . . . you can imagine the 'Terra Nova' all amongst the ice – great big pieces larger than the Mint or even the Tower will be all around her and the sea will be full of seals and penguins . . . I shall be thinking of you all at Christmas and hoping that you are having a very merry time and that you won't forget,
Your loving, Uncle Con

On 29 November *Terra Nova* sailed away from Port Chalmers with an apprehensive crew for she was dreadfully overladen and sluggish. Many a prayer for the weather to hold fair, at least until a good distance was covered and heavy fuel expended, must have reached the Almighty. But would He respond in that region so famed for its violent storms?

Not everyone was worried. Nigger the cat, who could climb ropes and do tricks, was popular and lay for much of the day on cushions in a cat hammock lovingly made by his fans. A year later he was to fall overboard in mid-ocean and all hands were set to man a lifeboat and save the sodden feline. Back in New Zealand, members of parliament and their wives were so enchanted by the tales told by successive Scott and Shackleton visitors to Lyttelton that they had become keen to head south themselves. Thomas Cook & Sons even announced their intention to send a tourist ship to the Ross Sea the following summer. (At the time of writing they have yet to do so.)

As for Kathleen Scott and Oriana Wilson and the families of Taff Evans, Titus Oates and Birdie Bowers, they would never see their men again.

12

Near Disaster 1911

On 1 December 1910, less than twenty-four hours out of Port Chalmers, Wilson was 'wondering what the barometer was falling so quickly to bring us. The one thing we didn't want was this heavy storm – but it came right enough and it came quickly.' Everyone, from Scott and Teddy Evans down, understood the dangerous implications of having overloaded the *Terra Nova* but nobody was blamed for they all knew there had been no alternative. Bowers noted: 'risk nothing and do nothing; if funds could not supply another ship, we simply had to overload the one we had or suffer worse things down south.' They also knew of the double jeopardy that had lurked throughout the voyage. The ship was prone to leak and the pumps, vital to remove the leaked water from the bilges, although not defective were prone to clog from oily balls of coal filth. Attempts to plug the leaks and modify the pumps had failed in Cardiff, Cape Town and Lyttelton so they would have to make do.

Cherry-Garrard, checking the barometer on 1 December, wrote: 'It makes me feel sick just to look at it.' Oil was released overboard to still the rising seas about the ship, as was the custom, but this did nothing to lessen the power of the waves that broke with ever increasing fury over the decks. Ponies began to fall over and chained dogs to float to and fro in the wash of successive waves. Ponting wrote on 1 December: 'a full gale was howling and shrieking through the rigging, and raging and roaring over the now mountainous waves. The ship rolled and plunged and squirmed as she wallowed in the tremendous seas which boomed and crashed all that night against the weather side, sending tons of water aboard every minute.'

All hatches were battened down but the storm rose and the ship slowly but surely filled with water. On Friday 2 December, Lashly spent hours up to his neck in the bilges clearing the clogged pump valves but then the water rose too high for him and, once he stopped, the main pumps seized. They tried the secondary pump but this too clogged up in a short while. A huge wave of filthy water now washed to and fro in the engine room and all about the furnace stokers. The noise and the steam and the roaring rush of water in the lamplight or the furnace glare were terrible. Up on deck coal bags burst their ties and, acting like missiles, tore adrift heavy petrol cans; a hazard to any animal or man in their way. One dog's chain snapped and the animal was quickly washed away. Another was thrown into the sea on the surge of a wave then flung aboard again with the very next roll.

Captain Scott, supervising the re-lashing of cans, said to Bowers: 'I am afraid it's a bad business for us – what do you think?' Bowers was optimistic as ever. As they watched, the lee railings, between one of the heavy motor sledge crates and the deck-edge, were swept away. Scott restrained Bowers from trying to save the petrol cases, telling him that they did not matter.

Down below the water rose so high that the engineers feared an implosion of steam, so the furnace was drawn and the engines stopped. It now seemed that only hand pumps could save the ship, but they were tried without success, so Scott divided the men into two shifts using buckets. Debenham wrote: 'Seems a primitive idea, to bale out a ship.' His fellow Australian, geologist Griffith Taylor, noted: 'Thus were we driven to a method almost unique with a ship of 750 tons – that of bailing out with buckets!'

Scott knew the main hand pump was key to survival. He, Teddy Evans, Mate Victor Campbell and First Officer Harry Pennell worked out a possible solution to reach the suction-well of the main hand pump by cutting through a steel hatch in a

OVERVIEW NEW ZEALAND to SOUTH POLE

ANTARCTICA

MARIE BYRD LAND

SOUTH POLE (9300ft)

Amundsen

Scott

85°S

ROSS ICE BARRIER

Ross Island

McMurdo Sound

SOUTH VICTORIA LAND

WILKES LAND

Cape Adare

70°S

PACIFIC OCEAN

FLOATING ICE

0 600
statute miles

0 500
nautical miles

0 1000
kilometres

Route of TERRA NOVA

The Gate

Port Chalmers

Lyttelton

Christchurch

NEW ZEALAND

Macquarie Island (Aus)

Auckland Islands (N.Z)

50°S

Melbourne

AUSTRALIA

180°

bulkhead. This was eventually done, whereupon Teddy Evans wriggled his way down into the oily bilges beneath the pump, together with the even shorter Bowers. Between them and over many hours they passed up bucket after bucket of oil-coal sludge until, at last, the hand pump worked again.

Pennell at one time spotted Scott high up 'on the weather rail of the poop, buried to his waist in green sea'. Scott wrote: 'A dog was drowned last night . . . Occasionally a heavy sea would bear one of them away, and he was only saved by his chain. Meares with some helpers had constantly to be rescuing these wretched creatures from hanging.' Evans found Oates, by himself for the two Russians were both badly seasick, 'actually lifting the poor little ponies to their feet as the ship lurched heavily to leeward . . . He himself appeared quite unconscious of any personal suffering, although his hands and feet must have been absolutely numbed with the cold and wet.' Oates wrote: 'I was drenched all night . . . one pony was down as many as eight times and . . . two killed. One fell and broke its leg and the other got cast so badly . . . it could not be got up.' By chance these two ponies were called Davy and Jones.

Once the exertions of Evans, Bowers and the engineers had the hand pump working things gradually improved, the water level fell and, at length, the boilers were re-fired. By noon on the Saturday the nightmare was over. Scott, Oates and others squeezed the bodies of the two dead ponies out through the fo'c'sle hatch and overboard. Scott heaped praise on the crewmen whose quarters, bedding and possessions were soaked. There was little light, no fresh air and a constant rain of urine from the stables above. 'Not a word has been said; the men living in that part have done their best to fend off the nuisance . . . but without sign of complaint.' The scientists and officers had fared a little better but their notebooks, diaries and belongings floated about their cabin floors. Teddy Evans wrote: 'Scott himself working with the best of them and staying with the toughest. It was a sight that one could never forget: everybody

saturated . . . every one filthy.' Their hair stayed sticky with coal oil grease for weeks afterwards.

Despite the loss of a dog, two ponies, some coal and some petrol, the ship had survived and the men had gained a great deal of respect for each other. Teddy Evans, Bowers, Oates, Meares and the engineers had shown their powers of endurance and there were no obvious shirkers; a fine comment on Scott as a judge of character in his final selection of the ship's company. Not a single note of criticism for the leader or 'Owner', to use his applied and affectionate title, was sounded in any letter or diary, not even by Oates.

Bowers, so critical a week before of Kathleen Scott, noted now: 'Captain Scott was simply splendid, he might have been at Cowes, and to do him and Teddy Evans credit, at our worst strait none of our landsmen who were working so hard knew how serious things were . . . take my word for it, he is one of the best, and behaved up to our best traditions at a time when his own outlook must have been the blackness of darkness.'

After the storm *Terra Nova* pushed on south with sail and steam. On 5 December Gran was teased for sighting an iceberg, which turned out to be merely a whale blast. Nevertheless *Terra Nova* reached the edge of the pack ice further north than expected, probably because Scott had arrived in the area far earlier in the year than had *Discovery* or *Nimrod* and so the pack had not yet begun its seasonal dispersal. Scott's ongoing worries about the tight schedule had become irrelevant since they were now utterly dependent on the whims of the pack ice. There was no way of knowing how long it would take to break through into the open waters of the Ross Sea. *Discovery* had taken only four days but other ships had been caught for twelve months or more inside the pack.

The best way to make at least some progress within the pack would be to maintain full engine power twenty-four hours a day to push the floes constantly and always at their weakest point. To do this would involve more coal use than Scott could afford.

Patience was the only answer but Scott, famous for his impatience, was desperate to reach McMurdo Sound, set up his base and complete major depot laying forays before the end of March when travel would become impossible.

The ship was soon jammed between floes and most of the crew were delighted at the welcome rest, the chance to dry out clothing on sunny days and the novelty of their situation. The ship's freshwater-from-the-sea condenser was not designed for a complement of over sixty thirsty men and as many animals, so the boatswain led a chain gang of chanting sailors who man handled chunks of ice aboard from old floes where the brine had leached away.

Cherry-Garrard, one of the youngest at twenty one and fresh from university, was beginning to learn his new job as assistant taxidermist to Wilson by skinning penguins caught on the ship side floes. He waxed delirious: 'I have never thought of anything as good as this life . . . the novelty, interest, colour, animal life and good fellowship.' The penguins probably did not appreciate Cherry Garrard as much as he appreciated them. He and Wilson had developed a method of killing them which Debenham described: 'Dr Wilson then "pithed" the penguins . . . "Pithing" consists of pushing a needle thro' the back of the head and shoving it about in the brain. A penguin will take half a dozen shots from a gun and any amount of waddling before it will die, yet these were motionless in less than 20 seconds.'

Up in the crow's-nest Teddy Evans or Harry Pennell peered ahead for weaknesses in the pack and shouted their orders through a megaphone to the helmsman below. Wild games began again in the wardroom with Oates and Wilson among the most rowdy participants. Gran seized his chance to do what Scott had ordered, the training of the company to become top-rate skiers. The flat floes provided good nursery slopes and Gran did his best. Oates and his friend the Navy surgeon, Edward Atkinson, stripped to the waist and goggled, sped around the floe with no attempt at technique but most of the sailors shied

away from 'the planks'. Gran had taught the Queen of Norway to ski but can never have had so much difficulty as with these fifty or so ignorant, clumsy Britons on their way to conquer the Pole. Meares and Gerof harnessed a dog team to a sledge and went for a trial run, greatly cheered by the onlookers, most of whom had never seen any sledge in motion before, with or without dogs.

Teddy Evans, unable to coax the ship south faster than a rate of one knot at full power, agreed with Scott to conserve coal and let the furnace die. He wrote, on 13 December, as five days of enforced sailing began, that *Terra Nova* 'is like a slug crawling across a bucketful of biscuits strewn on the water,' and further commented that 'our patience was sorely tried.' Evans wrote about 'penguin stews and "hooshes" to eke out our fresh provisions . . . Wilson found a new kind of [penguin] tapeworm . . . with a head like a propeller. This worm has since been named after one of us! . . . We are now down to under 300 tons of coal . . . I had no idea that Captain Scott could be so patient. He put the best face on everything, although he certainly was disappointed in the *Terra Nova* and her steaming capacity.'

Cherry-Garrard wrote years later, 'To Scott any delay was intolerable' and this I am sure was a correct assessment of the man. He must have tried hard not to show his impatience for he knew it to be his greatest failing but his diary remained a safe outlet. Near the end of what must have been a nail-biting three weeks in the floes, he wrote:

I can imagine few things more trying to the patience than the long wasted days of waiting. Exasperating as it is to see the tons of coal melting away with the smallest mileage to our credit . . . It's damnable for them [the ponies] and disgusting for us . . . You can imagine how often and how restlessly we climbed to the crow's nest and studied the outlook.

He described the pack.

Huge icebergs crept silently towards or past us, and continually we were observing these formidable objects with range finder and compass to determine the relative movement, sometimes with misgiving as to our ability to clear them . . . sometimes we passed through acres of sludgy sodden ice which hissed as it swept along the side, and sometimes the hissing ceased seemingly without rhyme or reason, and we found our screw churning the sea without any effect . . . As a result I have grown strongly attached to the *Terra Nova*. As she bumped the floes with mighty shocks, crushing and grinding a way through some, twisting and turning to avoid others, she seemed like a living thing fighting a great fight.

Christmas Day was celebrated with the ship jammed firmly in the heavy pack and much singing to tunes produced by Ponting on a banjo. Scott, who had listened to many previous polar musical sessions, was unimpressed and noted: 'It is rather a surprising circumstance that such an unmusical party should be so keen on singing.'

Scott tried to keep his frustration in check by spending many hours in his cabin working on his detailed plans in readiness for landing. He needed, with as much care and tact as feasible, to designate those men in his opinion best suited for the variety of tasks to be completed as soon as they reached their destination. One such appointment was Priestley as leader of a planned inland journey composed of geologists. Scott chose Priestley as leader on the grounds that he was the most experienced traveller and the oldest of the group. When Scott then told Australian geologist Griffith Taylor that he would be second-in-command, he was visibly upset so, in Scott's words, 'we three talked the matter out between us, and Ponting at once disclaimed any right, and announced cheerful agreement with Taylor's leadership.' Scott did not find all his people so ready to be understanding. Oates remained determinedly hostile to both Scott and Evans, writing to his mother: 'their ignorance is colossal.'

I have found on many of my own expeditions over thirty-two

years that some individuals are naturally averse to receiving orders. I usually try to avoid confrontation with such types by letting them do their own thing so long as they do not endanger my overall plans. Reading the diaries of Scott and Oates (and of their more reliable colleagues) I detect just such an unfortunate clash of personalities between the two officers, one Navy-, the other Army-trained. Late in December Scott noted: 'Oates is unremitting in his attention and care of the animals, but I don't think he quite realises that whilst in the pack the ship must remain steady and that, therefore, a certain limited scope for movement and exercise is afforded by the open deck on which the sick animal[s] now [stand].' This was good advice but, for some reason, it appears he never actually suggested it to Oates. Eventually Oates did take the initiative to stretch some ponies' legs and clean their stalls, but not before penning a letter to his mother complaining that Scott had failed to suggest pony exercise on the floes. Scott was very good at his multifaceted, complex job and Oates was without equal at his specific task, but neither could bridge the hostility gap between them for both were natural introverts.

Scott's mood would have deteriorated had he known that Amundsen's *Fram* was to arrive at the northern edge of the pack only a week after *Terra Nova* finally broke into the open water of the Ross Sea on 29 December, or that *Fram* would then ease through the pack in only four days just as Scott had in *Discovery* back in 1901. Frank Debenham noted: 'Talking to Capt. Scott about it he told me he thought our slow passage through the pack was due to our starting so early in the season and due to rank bad luck.' Scott, expecting a 200-mile band of loose pack, in fact had to deal with double that distance. Anticipating thirty tons of coal consumption, he had used up sixty. Some critics have blamed Scott for bad timing but he could not possibly have known about the exact seasonal dynamics of the very variable floating pack. We now know from hundreds of subsequent Antarctic voyages, and from satellite photographs, that a very sud-

den change does occur in the pack in early to mid January; so a single week can make all the difference between meeting heavy pack in December or loose floes in January. Scott had been lucky to enter the pack in January 1902 with *Discovery* but, in 1910, his natural zeal to make an early landfall resulted only in frustration.

The last of the more solid pack ice was indeed left behind on 30 December and on New Year's Day the watch sighted Mount Erebus 115 miles away and Scott headed straight for his intended base camp, Cape Crozier. Surf pounded the beach at the Cape and bergs jostled one another just offshore, so *Terra Nova* had to nose around the familiar western coast of Ross Island, into McMurdo Sound and on towards Hut Point. Early on 4 January the ship arrived off two wide bays some ten miles north of Hut Point and Scott called a council with Teddy Evans, Victor Campbell, Harry Pennell and other officers.

When all were agreed they steamed directly for a cape baptised back in 1901 as The Skuary, a beach to the north of which would provide excellent winter quarters. Hut Point itself was obviously not a popular destination since the sea ice there had in 1903 and 1904 proved so reluctant to release *Discovery*. The new location of The Skuary, being twelve miles further north, should prove far more accessible to ships. In terms of sledging access to and from the Ice Barrier, the additional twelve miles of flat sea ice over the two bays that lay between The Skuary and Hut Point was an acceptable nuisance. *Terra Nova* made directly towards the bay to the north of The Skuary, which Scott named Cape Evans in honour of his second-in-command.

Solid bay ice stopped the ship reaching the beach itself, as was to be expected, but only a mile and a half of smooth flat going separated the ice edge from the hut site so the crew, under the experienced Boatswain Alf Cheetham, made the ice anchors fast and the unloading process began at once under Bowers' supervision. Two of the three motor sledges were landed, followed by the seventeen surviving ponies, glad to roll on the ice. Meares took the dogs ashore to the detriment of many

over-curious penguins and within a few hours of arrival a caravan of goods, starting with timber for the base hut, was being sledged to a beach site fully approved of by the entire company. Scott summed up the Cape Evans site as: 'Comfortable quarters for the hut, ice for water, snow for the animals, good slopes for ski-ing, vast tracks of rock for walks.'

The unloading work continued round the clock with men sleeping briefly when exhausted. The key was speed. At any time the weather could deteriorate and *Terra Nova* would then have to fire her boilers and move away to open water, thereby losing hours or even days. This Scott could not risk since, after the delay in the pack, time was short in which to lay depots on the Barrier before the beginning of winter in April. Each day chunks of sea ice broke off beside the ship and Cheetham's men tightened the anchor chains or repositioned the ice anchors accordingly. Gradually the distance between the ship and the shore lessened. By the end of January the bay would be ice free and likely to remain that way for three or four months.

In due course the third and last of the motor sledges was unloaded and hoisted onto the sea ice where it sat waiting for Day to start the engine. Some thirty minutes later a message arrived at the ship from Scott warning that the ice was deteriorating rapidly so no more ponies should be used in rotten areas and the motorised sledge should be taken ashore as soon as possible. Before Mate Victor Campbell's chain gang had managed to drag the machine a hundred yards the ice beneath it began to give way, tearing the rope out of the men's hands. The bay was over a hundred fathoms deep so there was no chance of recovering the lost machine. Scott took all the blame for its loss.

I have taken far heavier machines over different thicknesses of sea ice a thousand times over the last twenty-five years but I still find myself unable to predict the weight-bearing behaviour of different ice types. If, every time there was a risky patch, I had reacted negatively, my polar career would have stood no

chance of success. One day in 1982, wandering around Hut Point after crossing Antarctica, I came across a memorial to one Richard T. Williams, who drove his thirty ton tractor over the sea ice on 6 January 1956 when the ice gave way and the vehicle sank. Williams was on a standard ice trail used by dozens of heavy US vehicles and close by Cape Evans at the time.

Scott sensibly shrugged and moved on. As Shackleton said: 'What the ice gets, the ice keeps.' That most critical of writers, Cherry Garrard, wrote later: 'Indefinite conditions always tried Scott most: positive disasters put him in more cheerful spirits than most.'

Some days later the unloading was again interrupted when the wind shifted and Pennell had to move the ship. A few miles offshore she ran aground. Charles Wright wrote that he was watching the drama beside Scott as the crew of the *Terra Nova* struggled to free her. They finally succeeded and Wright was greatly impressed by Scott's equanimity at such a moment of potential disaster. I mention this because it was the first time I had actually seen Scott suddenly meeting a catastrophe which might have wrecked completely all his plans.' Cherry-Garrard, who was with Wright, said: 'Scott . . . himself came back into the hut with us and went on bagging provisions for the Depot Journey. At such times of real disaster he was a very philosophical man.'

Herbert Ponting was busy with his cameras when not helping with the work. One morning he walked over the floes close by the ship to film penguins and killer whales. The latter, spotting an opportunity to bag Ponting as well as the penguins, dived deep, then struck upwards at Ponting's floe, breaking and tipping it. The photographer fled with his cameras, jumping from floe to floe with the killers in hot pursuit. Sadly, nobody else had a camera to record the event.

The geologist, Raymond Priestley, was apt to compare everything about *Terra Nova* with his previous experience in Shackleton's *Nimrod*, thereby reminding his colleagues that, unlike

them, he was an old hand: 'between the way the work was carried out and the way when we were landing stores at Cape Royds . . . there are too many officers superintending and the men never knew when and where to go for orders . . . an Expedition to make a complete success should be entirely away from any Navy ideas . . . in this one particular give me Shackle ton's expedition over and over again.'

The reality of the two operations was the opposite of Priest ley's glib summary. Scott completed his entire operation in eight days, despite vastly more complex stores and scientific gear than in *Nimrod*. Shackleton took fourteen days, largely due to a major disagreement with Captain England, who could see the dangers of anchoring against the lee shore selected by Shackleton for his base at Cape Royds. Under Scott's regime, Teddy Evans supervised the erection of the hut, Oates the horse stabling, Meares the dog kennels and Bowers the exact locating of all stores.

Scott had noted the performance of the different transport systems used to unload the ship but only over flat, mostly hard, sea ice surfaces. He proclaimed himself 'astonished' at the strength of the ponies who had hauled 1,100-pound loads despite the often slippery ice. 'Oates,' he wrote, 'is splendid with them – I do not know what we should do without him.' Eight of Shackleton's ponies had survived his *Nimrod* voyage. Scott, thanks to Oates, now had double that number. Many of the ponies bit, kicked, reared and refused orders in a committed manner. According to Oates 'a more unpromising lot of ponies to start a journey such as ours it would be almost impossible to conceive.' Cherry-Garrard felt that the way Oates handled them 'might have proved a model to any governor of a lunatic asylum'.

Of the other non-mechanical transport modes, Scott wrote: 'The dogs are getting better, but they only take very light loads still and get back from each journey pretty dead beat. In their present state they don't inspire confidence, but the hot weather

is much against them.' Scott had already accompanied Meares on a short dog-sledge journey, on 15 January 1911, to see if the old Hut Point hut was still in good condition for it formed a vital part of his plans. He was dismayed by what he found. Wilson later described the scene: 'we found the old hut simply filled with hard packed snow drift up to the roof. We had to get in through a window and then we began to dig and clear it out – a long job which we couldn't nearly finish. The last occupants had been Shackleton and his party on their return from the southern journey. His relief and depot parties had also spent a good deal of time there and had left it in a perfectly filthy condition besides having broken a window open and left it unboarded, so that every blizzard had poured more snow drift in and filled the hut.'

Scott had brought enough ski-sticks for all the shore party to use two each rather than just the single stick per man of the *Discovery* days, noting: 'Everyone declares that the ski sticks greatly help pulling; it is surprising that we never thought of using them before.'

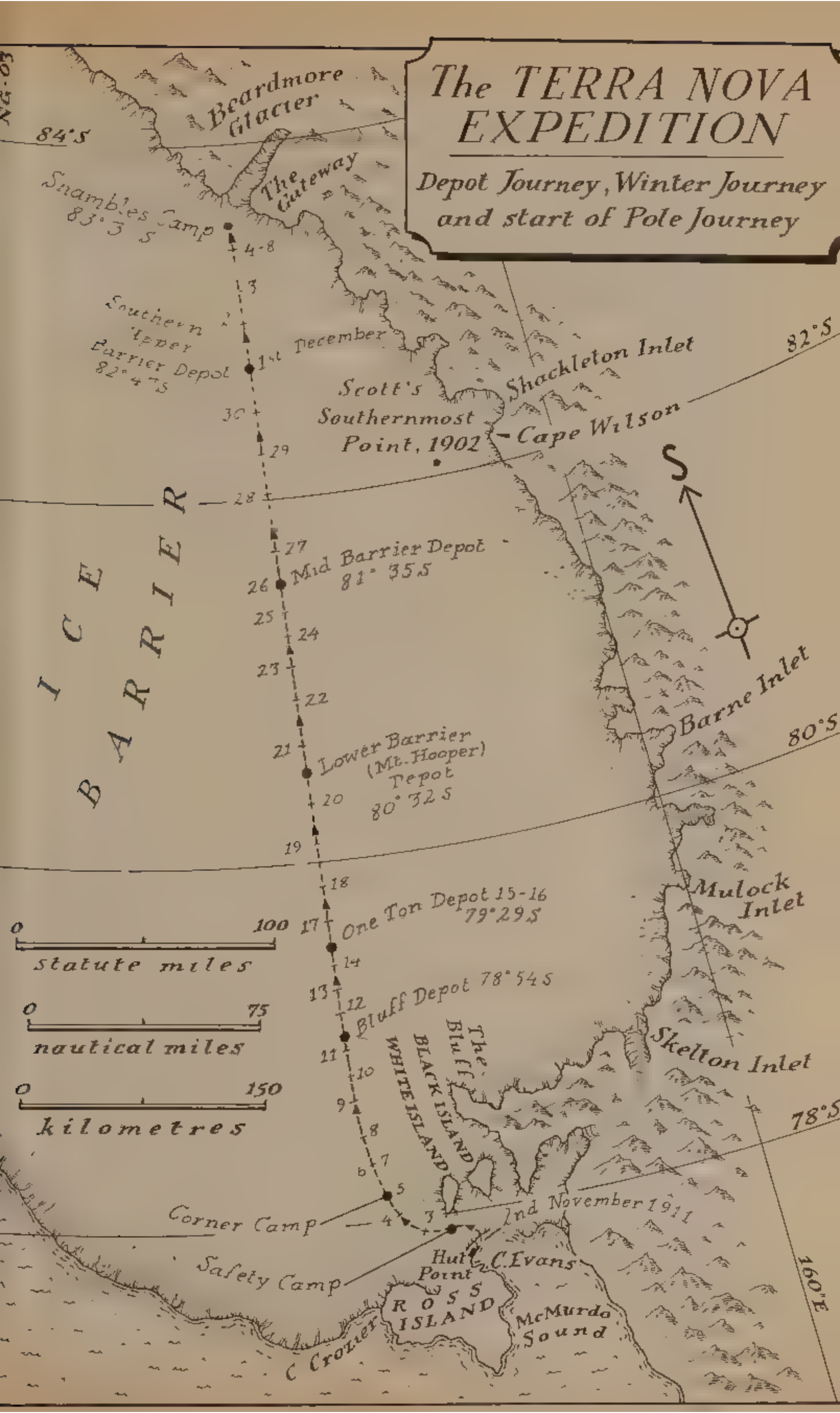
On 18 January the shore party began to move into their new base hut, which Scott divided into two sections on traditional Navy lines. He and the fifteen other officers and scientists were allotted two-thirds of the space and the nine sailors had the rest. A shelved wall separated these two living areas. At no stage was a single voice raised aloud or by way of diary comment against this solid division. Apart from the scientists, almost all of Scott's men had, since their early teens, been trained and lived with the same set social structure. The reason there is no recorded complaint about the system in Scott's hut was clearly the fact that each group felt more normal, free and easy amongst their peers.

Thanks to his *Discovery* experiences, Scott knew that his South Pole chances for the following summer would depend on laying out suitable depots on the Barrier and Bowers, already dog-tired

but still the most capable of administrators, was told by Scott to complete the preparations of all sledgeloads for the depot journey as soon as possible. Whatever manpower Bowers needed to help with these preparations was made available to him and a date was agreed for departure, 24 January. Scott made the overall aim of the depot journey clear to all concerned. A series of depots would be laid, starting at the edge of the Barrier and ending at 80° South, 140 miles out on the Barrier en route to the Pole. This final dump, the biggest, was to be called One Ton Depot. No vehicles would be used because the sea ice had already become too risky. Eight of the fittest ponies, out of the seventeen at Cape Evans, would go, each with a 570-pound sledgeload, and two dog teams, each towing a 490-pound load. Twelve men would be selected to lead the animals and it was fairly obvious that Scott's final choice for the main Pole attempt the following summer would include only men who had experienced this depot journey.

Two days before leaving Cape Evans, Scott noted that he disliked giving out to the press (or anyone else) 'any definite information of details which it might be advisable to modify at a later date'. The scientists who were used to being consulted and to being fully in the picture at all times were hurt by not being told more detail well in advance. Since none but Wilson and Priestley had been south before, they did not appreciate how unpredictable weather and ice changes made Scott's apparent secretiveness advisable to avoid constant modification and plan changes unlikely to inspire confidence in his leadership.

Ten days before departure on 14 January, Scott was ready to draw up a list of those chosen for the depot journey and informed each man accordingly. Cherry-Garrard was a surprise choice as a pony leader and, less of a surprise, Wilson as a dog-driver. The cavalcade set out over the sea ice carrying 5,300 pounds, enough food and fuel for fourteen weeks. Apart from Crean, Scott and Wilson none of the men had travelled in Antarctica before. Some were, Scott believed, prime polar material and


The TERRA NOVA EXPEDITION
Depot Journey, Winter Journey and start of Pole Journey
Beardmore Glacier
84°S
The Gateway
Shambles Camp 83°3 S
Southern Upper Barrier Depot 82°4 S
1st December
Shackleton Inlet
82°S
Scott's Southernmost Point, 1902
Cape Wilson
ICE BARRIER
Mid Barrier Depot 81° 35 S
Barne Inlet
80°S
Lower Barrier (Mt. Hooper) Depot 80° 32 S
Mulock Inlet
One Ton Depot 15-16 79° 29 S
Bluff Depot 78° 54 S
The Bluff
BLACK ISLAND
WHITE ISLAND
Skelton Inlet
78°S
0 100 statute miles
0 75 nautical miles
0 150 kilometres
Corner Camp
Safety Camp
1nd November 1911
Hut Point
C. Evans
ROSS ISLAND
McMurdo Sound
C. Crozier
160°E

this journey would be their testing ground. Atkinson, the naval surgeon, had failed to own up to a blistered heel, no doubt in the hope it would clear up and not be noticed. Within two days, however, the wound was festering and the doctor limping. Like one or two of the others Atkinson was also soon suffering mild snow-blindness from the glare.

Ponies floundered about in waterlogged patches but the loads were slowly shifted south and around the last capes of Ross Island towards the Barrier. Two days after departure Scott took a fast dog team hitch back to the ship in order to thank the crew and the two sledge groups of scientists about to head off in different directions. The two Australian geologists, Debenham and Taylor, together with Charles Wright the physicist, Petty Officer Forde and Taff Evans as their guardian, would be away for six weeks to study three glaciers to the west of Ross Island. *Terra Nova* under Harry Pennell was to drop off a six man group under Victor Campbell at the far eastern end of the Ice Barrier to explore King Edward VII Land. Once this group was safely landed with its stores the ship would head north to New Zealand. Scott thanked everyone aboard and wished them well. He did not expect to see the ship's crew or Campbell's men again for a year.

After four days ferrying loads over the sea ice, the depot party reached the Ice Barrier. Oates had already begun a fresh litany of moans but otherwise all was going well when, a mile or so onto the Barrier's surface, the ponies hit a soft patch and floundered about, advancing at a snail's pace and only with great difficulty. Scott called a halt a few miles in from the Barrier's edge and far enough back that it seemed unlikely their camp site would break off and float away into the Ross Sea. This place was designated as Safety Camp.

Atkinson now admitted that he was in trouble for his heel had become an open suppurating sore. Scott was annoyed for he could not leave the surgeon alone and had to shed Tom Crean to stay with him. This would not be the last time Scott's

plans would be thwarted by individuals hiding known weaknesses.

By now Scott had a fair idea of the depot group's travel potential on the Barrier's mixed surfaces in autumn temperatures and of how to use ponies as well as dogs with heavy loads. Until now any plan he might have made would have been based entirely on theory not reality. He unveiled his intentions and kept them simple. There was no frenzied rush, in fact the opposite since they were now on safe 'ground' and he no longer feared a sudden break up of the ice beneath their feet. From Safety Camp, Scott told his men, they would go east in order to avoid the crevasse zone to their immediate south, by White and Black Islands. Once past this danger zone they would lay another depot named Corner Camp, whence they would march due south for about ten days to reach 80° South and leave there one ton of supplies ready for the main Pole journey the next summer.

Oates meanwhile had taken against Gran, writing to his mother: 'I can't stand this Norwegian chap, he is both dirty and lazy.' As for Scott, he 'would fifty times sooner stay in the hut seeing how a pair of Foxs spiral puttees suited him than come out and look at the ponies legs or a dogs feet.' With Oates, Scott was on a losing wicket since, when he did comment on the pony welfare, it was considered to be fussing or interference.

As Scott saw it, the ponies were the key to success, at least as far as the base of the Beardmore Glacier. Shackleton had proved that with just four ponies. So the fewer ponies that died during the depot journey the better. The ground pressure of an unshod pony hoof is about fifteen pounds per square inch, five times that of a dog, and Scott and Meares had, long before Oates's arrival from India, decided that snow shoes were vital for the ponies' health. They had obtained enough pairs of *hestersko* (Norwegian horse snow shoes) for all the ponies. But the snow shoes were all still sitting at Cape Evans because Oates had no

faith in them and had decided to leave them behind, but for a single pair which he might try out en route. Shackleton's ponies had reached the Beardmore without snow shoes, which is perhaps why Oates thought they were unnecessary, but when Scott tried out the sole set of *hestersko* on Gran's pony, a slowcoach called Weary Willie, the improvement was 'magical'. Scott was delighted, but also annoyed with Oates. His diary was fairly restrained given the circumstances. 'If we had more of these shoes we could certainly put them on seven out of eight of our ponies . . . It is trying to feel that so great a help to our work has been left behind at the station.'

Thirty miles from Hut Point, they laid their Corner Camp Depot. There they were caught by bad weather in the strong winds zone between Minna Bluff and Cape Crozier. Cherry-Garrard described this, his first blizzard, as 'raging chaos' and it lasted, as many blizzards do, for three days and nights. They hunkered down in their four-man pyramid tents, smoked their pipes and waited. Cherry-Garrard decided he was lucky to be sharing the tent of Scott, who knew how to make the best of things. 'Scott's tent was a comfortable one to live in, and I was always glad when I was told to join it . . . He was himself extraordinarily quick . . . He was most careful, some said over-careful but I do not think so, that everything should be neat and shipshape.' Outside, Cherry-Garrard wrote: 'Fight your way a few steps away from the tent and it will be gone. Lose your sense of direction and there is nothing to guide you back.'

The dogs curled up in the snow and slept but the ponies, without their full Arctic seasonal coats, suffered dreadfully. Scott, not Oates, had the idea of building walls out of snow blocks to provide some protection to the windward of each tethered pony and this did seem to help them a great deal. Nonetheless, as Cherry-Garrard added: 'all our ponies were weakened [by the blizzard], and two of them became practically useless.' This was surely proof that dogs were better suited to

the polar cold than even snow-wise Manchurian ponies, but the fact remained that Shackleton held the Antarctic travel record using ponies, not dogs, on this very route.

After the three day Corner Camp blizzard they continued south and a week later Scott split the group into two. Teddy Evans with Robert Forde and Patrick Keohane were to take the three weakest ponies slowly and carefully back homewards and try to keep them alive, whilst the others took the last five ponies on to the hoped for goal of 80° South.

On 14 February Gran's pony, Weary Willie, lagged far behind the other four and at one point lay down to rest. The dog teams were passing at the time and, seeing a pony in a defenceless position, attacked him in force. Chaos ensued until Gran, Meares and Wilson eventually whipped the dogs off their intended meal. Weary Willie, badly bitten, carried on to the chosen camp site even more slowly than before and without his load, which Scott and three others went back to manhaul. Scott recorded with feeling: 'It taught us the nature of the surface more than many hours of pony leading!!' He noticed that the injured pony's sledgeload was a good deal heavier than the others, which may well have been the responsibility of Oates to check, although this is not made clear. Scott wrote: 'The incident is deplorable and the blame widespread . . . I blame myself for not supervising these matters more effectively and for allowing W.W. to get so far behind.' Here was another of many examples of Scott's natural tendency to blame himself: an ultimate the-buck-stops-here policy, which does not allow the process of delegation to provide an excuse.

Throughout this period, Scott and his four remaining companions continuing south with their five ponies used a single four-man tent, as did the four dog-teamsters. At no time did anyone complain about the discomfort of an extra man in the tent and Scott merely noted: 'We are five in a tent yet fairly comfortable.' It was to prove useful knowledge. Three days later matters came to a head between Scott and Oates. Watching the

suffering of Weary Willie, Scott had made up his mind. There were two alternatives. Either to press on the remaining thirty miles to 80° South (the geographical and featureless spot which Scott had nominated as the site for his One Ton Depot), in which case the ponies would almost certainly die, or to dump the loads where they were and stand a good chance of getting most, perhaps all, of the ponies back to Hut Point to survive for the main event the next summer, by which time their Arctic winter coats would be fully developed.

On 17 February Scott told his men that he had decided they must cut their losses, lay the depot thirty-one miles short of 80° South and head home to conserve the ponies if possible. Oates was appalled. He pressed Scott to keep going and to kill each pony as it foundered. The meat could then be dumped in caches for dog or human consumption at a later date.

Many years later Gran described in his book the conversation he thought took place between the two officers. 'Oates proposed to Scott that the animal ("Weary Willie") should be killed and that we should push on with the other ponies, but Scott rejected this suggestion. He had, as he himself put it, felt quite sick on account of the animal's sufferings . . . [Oates said] "Sir, I'm afraid you'll come to regret not taking my advice." "Regret it or not," replied Scott, "I have taken my decision, as a Christian gentleman."'

So that was that. The depot was made not at 80° South but at 79°29' South, some thirty-one miles to the north. A great deal was later to be made of this deficiency of thirty-one miles.

Scott wrote: 'It would have been ridiculous to have worked some [of the ponies] out this year as the soldier wished. Even now I feel we went too far with the first three.' Scott commented often that Oates was magnificent in his tireless solicitude for each pony but such care was not everything. He might be the world's expert on horses elsewhere but on the Ice Barrier that was not the only expertise that counted. According to Scott: 'Oates is certainly a poor judge of the amount of work which

different surfaces entail. He does not show well as a judge of the animals' capacity for covering distance.'

They built a six-foot-high cairn at One Ton Depot inside which was stacked 2,181 pounds of fuel, food and equipment. Scott knew well that his overall plans were progressing satisfactorily. The thirty-one-mile shortfall in his planned depot line should not prove a serious problem, all things being equal, since the overall reserve fuel and rations allowance in theory could more than cope with such a minor difference. What concerned Scott now was the ever-weakening state of the eight ponies out on the Barrier. He bade Oates take Weary Willie and the other four animals back with great care. Their sledges were now lightly laden and the Barrier winds would be behind them. More worrying was the state of the three weak ponies Teddy Evans had turned back with the previous week. Scott decided to make his way back with the dogs as quickly as possible to minimise delay in getting Evans's survivors back to base.

Leaving Oates, Bowers and Gran with the ponies, Scott joined Meares, Wilson and Cherry-Garrard, whose pony had died, with the dogs. Lightly laden they sped back towards Safety Camp, covering over thirty miles each day. On 21 February the dog teams returned to the region of Corner Camp, the point where the trail turned west at the limit of the White Island crevasse fields. Since the exact edge of this crevassed zone was invisible Scott, travelling with Cecil Meares, took a chance and cut the corner. Cherry-Garrard, following Scott with the second dog team, wrote: 'It was not expected that this would bring us across any badly crevassed area.'

Wilson recorded:

I was running my team abreast of Meares, but about 100 yards on his right, when I suddenly saw his whole team disappear, one dog after another, as they ran down a crevasse in the Barrier surface. Ten out of his 13 dogs disappeared as I watched. They looked exactly like rats running down a hole — only . . . I saw no hole. They simply

went into the white surface and disappeared. I saw Scott, who was running alongside, quickly jump on the sledge, and I saw Meares jam the brake on as I fixed my sledge and left Cherry with my dogs and ran over to see what had really happened. I found that they had been running *along* a lidded crevasse, about 6 to 8 ft wide, for quite a distance, and the loaded sledge was still standing on it, while in front was a great blue chasm in which hung the team of dogs in a festoon. The leader, Osman, a very powerful fine dog, had remained on the surface and the 2 dogs next [to] the sledge were also still on the surface.

It was clear to all four men that only Osman's strength, hauling back against the rope's downward pull, was stopping the remaining dogs and the sledge from dropping into the abyss. They managed to haul up all but two of the dogs which had slipped from their harnesses and landed on a ledge sixty-five feet down. Cherry-Garrard described what happened next. 'Scott told Meares to go down and get the dogs. Meares refused. I said I often went down the well at home let me go! Scott said to Bill [Wilson] "What do you think?" Bill said he didn't think anyone ought to go, but if anyone went he would go down. Scott then said he [would go] down; & he went.'

Scott was lowered on a rope to rescue the two marooned dogs, but whilst he was down there a furious fight broke out between the dogs above. An hour later, the battle over, a freezing Scott and the last two dogs were hauled up. Cherry-Garrard wrote of the crevasse incident: 'I feel that a man who never says much in the way of prayers would say one tonight.' He added years later: 'Up to this day Scott had been talking to Meares of how dogs would go to the Pole. After this, I never heard him say that.' Not surprisingly, after seeing the near terminal effects on an entire dog team of a small Barrier crevasse and having read of Shackleton's terrible experiences in the vast chasm fields of the Beardmore Glacier.

They were soon back at Safety Camp only to find that Teddy

Evans, despite great care, had been unable to save two of the three weak ponies. The third, Jimmy Pigg, was greatly recovered. But more bad news awaited Scott in a long letter from Victor Campbell. The news was about as bad as could be. On bidding Scott farewell four weeks before, *Terra Nova* had sailed for the far end of the Barrier to drop off Campbell and his five men on the King Edward VII Peninsula coast. But Pennell had found it a hazardous maze of pack, great bergs and sheer ice cliffs. Threading his way back west, looking for an alternative landing for Campbell's party, Pennell had found none and so decided to try for the Bay of Whales area. Once there to his shock and dismay he saw *Fram* and, some three miles from the Barrier front, the hut and tents of Amundsen's Norwegians.

When the Norwegians spotted *Terra Nova*, whose arrival the well-informed Amundsen had been expecting sooner or later, one of the *Fram* sailors wrote: 'Well, if they are planning some thing bad (we were constantly asking ourselves in what light the Englishmen would view our competition) the dogs will manage to make them turn back . . . I had better be armed for all eventu alities.' This indicates that the crew of *Fram* were well aware that Amundsen's behaviour might be thought of as deceitful.

Victor Campbell, who had often skied in Norway and spoke the language reasonably well, was duly invited to the camp with others from *Terra Nova*. The two groups visited each other's 'properties' and an atmosphere of strained politeness prevailed, mixed with intense mutual curiosity. Campbell learnt that *Fram* had sailed non-stop from Madeira, passed through the pack ice in only four days, reached the Bay of Whales on 9 January and that the crew were still unloading her nearly a month later. Amundsen politely offered Campbell the option to make his base at a suitable spot about a mile from the Norwegian camp with unloading help from the Norwegian dog teams. Campbell declined this offer with equal politeness.

Wilfred Bruce wrote that the Norwegians 'all seemed charming men, even the perfidious Amundsen,' adding that once *Terra*

Nova had left the Bay, 'Curses loud and deep were heard everywhere' and there were 'heavy arguments . . . about the rights and wrongs of Amundsen's party and the chances of our being able to beat them. Their experience and number of dogs seem to leave us very little.'

Surgeon Levick commented: 'It is very unfortunate that Amundsen was not more aboveboard about his coming here . . . Anyhow it is going to be one of the finest races next summer.' Priestley added that he and the others were left full of conjecture about the Norwegians and their obvious expertise with polar travel, especially with their great number of dogs.

Once *Terra Nova* had left, the Norwegians completed their unloading and began to lay their own southward depots. Amundsen hoped to place depots as far south as 83°, 180 miles farther south than Scott. Apart from his expertise with dogs and skis Amundsen's base was sixty miles closer to the Pole. This gave him less far to travel, out and back, and no treacherous sea ice to negotiate between his base and the Barrier.

The Norwegians set out to lay their depots on 21 February, eight men, arguing among themselves, and seven 660-pound sledges, each pulled by six dogs. Amundsen failed to realise how soft his dogs had become during their long voyage on *Fram*. They tired easily, lost weight quickly and cut their pads so their paws become bloody sponges. They reached 81° South on 1 March. Somehow they had forgotten to bring the key navigation manual, *The Nautical Almanac* for the year 1912, and only a single copy for the year 1911. One night an oil lamp set fire to this vital copy and burned all but the pages for the summer months September to December 1911. Amundsen decided this was a 'powerful indicator that he must reach the Pole and return to his base by 31 December 1911. He had neither scientists nor scientific programme to worry about so every effort of all his men, save the cook, was focussed on the Pole.

He was keen always to explain how he hated any pain suffered by his dogs. On 6 March, approaching 82° South, Johansen,

Amundsen's deputy, wrote: '16½ miles covered today – the last part of the way terribly slowly. The poor dogs had to be whipped on.' And the next day: 'did 13 miles with greater difficulty than hitherto, and it goes very sluggishly . . . The Chief's dogs are the worst, they don't take any notice of thrashing any more, just lie down in their tracks, and it is a terrible performance to get them going again.' Amundsen, like Scott, was forced by his animals' limitations to settle for a final depot further from the Pole than he had planned. 'I have decided,' he wrote, 'only to take the depot to 82° S. It will not pay to push on further.'

Since dogs were able to travel both earlier and later in the season than ponies, Amundsen carried on well into the month of April, boosting those of his depots closest to his base but at a cost of two dogs lost in a crevasse. With his advance line secured all the way to 82°, able to start out for the Pole at least two weeks earlier than Scott's ponies and with 120 miles less to go, things looked rosy for Amundsen. 'We must at all costs get there first,' he wrote. 'Everything must be staked on that.' All should go well so long as his base did not float out to sea and provided that a suitable route to the Pole happened to lie at the end of his Barrier depot line.

When *Terra Nova* left the Bay of Whales, Harry Pennell headed back to Cape Evans so that Campbell could leave news of Amundsen for Scott, then he landed his men on 18 February on the beach at Cape Adare, the original over-wintering site of Borchgrevink back in 1899. Scott's Eastern Party had become, owing to events not of their choosing or liking, the Northern Party. *Terra Nova* then left for New Zealand, intending to pick them up the following summer.

Back at Safety Camp, Scott's immediate reaction to Campbell's news about *Fram* was one of shock. Roald Amundsen, the great ice traveller, was not after all aiming for the South Pole via the Weddell Sea. He was just across the Barrier with his base sixty miles closer to the Pole than Cape Evans. Scott wrote:

'Every incident of the day pales before the startling contents of the mail bag.'

Cherry Garrard, who was present at the time, noted:

For an hour or so we were furiously angry, and were possessed with an insane sense that we must go straight to the Bay of Whales and have it out with Amundsen and his men in some undefined fashion or other there and then. Such a mood could not and did not bear a moment's reflection; but it was natural enough. We had just paid the first instalment of the heart-breaking labour of making a path to the Pole; and we felt, however unreasonably, that we had earned the first right of way. Our sense of co operation and solidarity had been wrought up to an extraordinary pitch; and we had so completely forgotten the spirit of competition that its sudden intrusion jarred frightfully. I do not defend our burst of rage – for such it was – I simply record it as an integral human part of my narrative. It passed harmlessly.

Many years later Cherry-Garrard, suffering from melancholia and long periods of mental distraction, conferred with his neighbour and long-time friend George Bernard Shaw, who adored Kathleen Scott but, although they had never met, disliked the then long dead Scott. He helped with Cherry-Garrard's book and Cherry-Garrard told him many a tale which contradicted his initial post expedition account and included Scott, on hearing the Amundsen news, leaping out of his bag shouting, 'By Jove what a chance we have missed – we might have taken Amundsen and sent him back on the ship.' An even later elaboration by the ageing Cherry-Garrard added: 'Scott in the tent with Wilson and myself said we would go and fight Amundsen. There was no law south of sixty . . . We had hours of it . . . About this time Wilson said to me, "We had a bad time with Scott on the *Discovery*: but never anything like this."' These imaginative ramblings of an ageing, sick and unhinged Cherry-Garrard contradict his own clear record written on his return from Antarctica and that of another man present at the time, Teddy Evans, who wrote:

We spent a very unhappy night, in spite of all attempts to be cheerful. Clearly, there was nothing for us but to abandon science and go for the Pole directly the season for sledging was advanced enough to make travelling possible after the winter. It now became a question of dogs versus ponies, for the main bulk of our stuff must of necessity be pony drawn unless we could rely on the motor-sledges nobody believed we could. However, all the arguing in the world wouldn't push Amundsen and his dogs off the Antarctic continent and we had to put the best face on our disappointment. Captain Scott took it very bravely, better than any of us, I think, for he had done already such wonderful work down here. It was he who initiated and founded Antarctic sledge travelling, it was he who had blazed the trail, as it were, and we were very very sorry for him.

Scott summarized his thoughts on Amundsen's situation and his reaction to it: 'One thing only fixes itself definitely in my mind. The proper, as well as the wiser, course for us is to proceed exactly as though this had not happened. To go forward and do our best for the honour of the country without fear or panic. There is no doubt that Amundsen's plan is a very serious menace to ours. He has a shorter distance to the Pole by 60 miles – I never thought he could have got so many dogs safely to the ice. His plan of running them seems excellent. But, above and beyond all, he can start his journey early in the season an impossible condition with ponies.' In deciding to follow his existing aims and to ignore the threat of Amundsen, Scott was unknowingly following a George Bernard Shaw adage: 'If you have a destination, you will not get to it if you stop to fight people on the way.'

When Scott left Cape Evans the following polar spring, he told Simpson, who would take over command at the base, to lend assistance to Amundsen if the Norwegians needed it. Wilson's diary nowhere mentioned any furious reaction by Scott and he was himself ambivalent about Amundsen's chances: 'As for Amundsen's prospects of reaching the Pole, I don't think

they are very good . . . I don't think he knows how bad an effect the monotony and the hard travelling surface of the Barrier is to animals.'

And what of the reaction of others not in Scott's immediate coterie when the news of Amundsen's well kept secret reached them? Tryggve Gran, according to Bowers, 'was so genuinely upset at the behaviour of his countryman that one could not help feeling sorry for him and his awkward position.' Gran wrote: 'If we reach the Pole, then Amundsen will reach the Pole, and weeks earlier. Our prospects are thus not exactly promising. The only thing that can save Scott is if an accident happens to Amundsen.' And elsewhere: 'I think Amundsen's enterprise falls far short of what a gentleman would permit: there is nothing like it in polar history.'

Back in his homeland, Amundsen's own countrymen, to whom he had earlier ranked as a hero alongside Nansen, now deserted him in shame, and such was their hostility to his behaviour that when his backers asked the Norwegian government to request a grant from the Storting (parliament), they were afraid to do so.

When Bowers, Gran and Oates made it to Safety Camp with the five ponies the animals were still alive but seriously weak. Scott knew time was of the essence. 'Now every effort,' he wrote, 'must be bent on saving the remaining animals.' The only hope was shelter from the extreme conditions on the Barrier as quickly as possible and that meant the hut at Hut Point. The best route accessible to ponies lay over the sea ice and that looked hazardous as, although the ice was still *in situ*, the deep pools which pocked the floes were a sure sign of fragility. Within hours the pack could crack up and blow out to sea as a thousand rotting floes!

Scott told Wilson, the most experienced man present with plenty of experience of sea ice, to lead the way over the bay with his own and Meares's dog teams. The total distance to

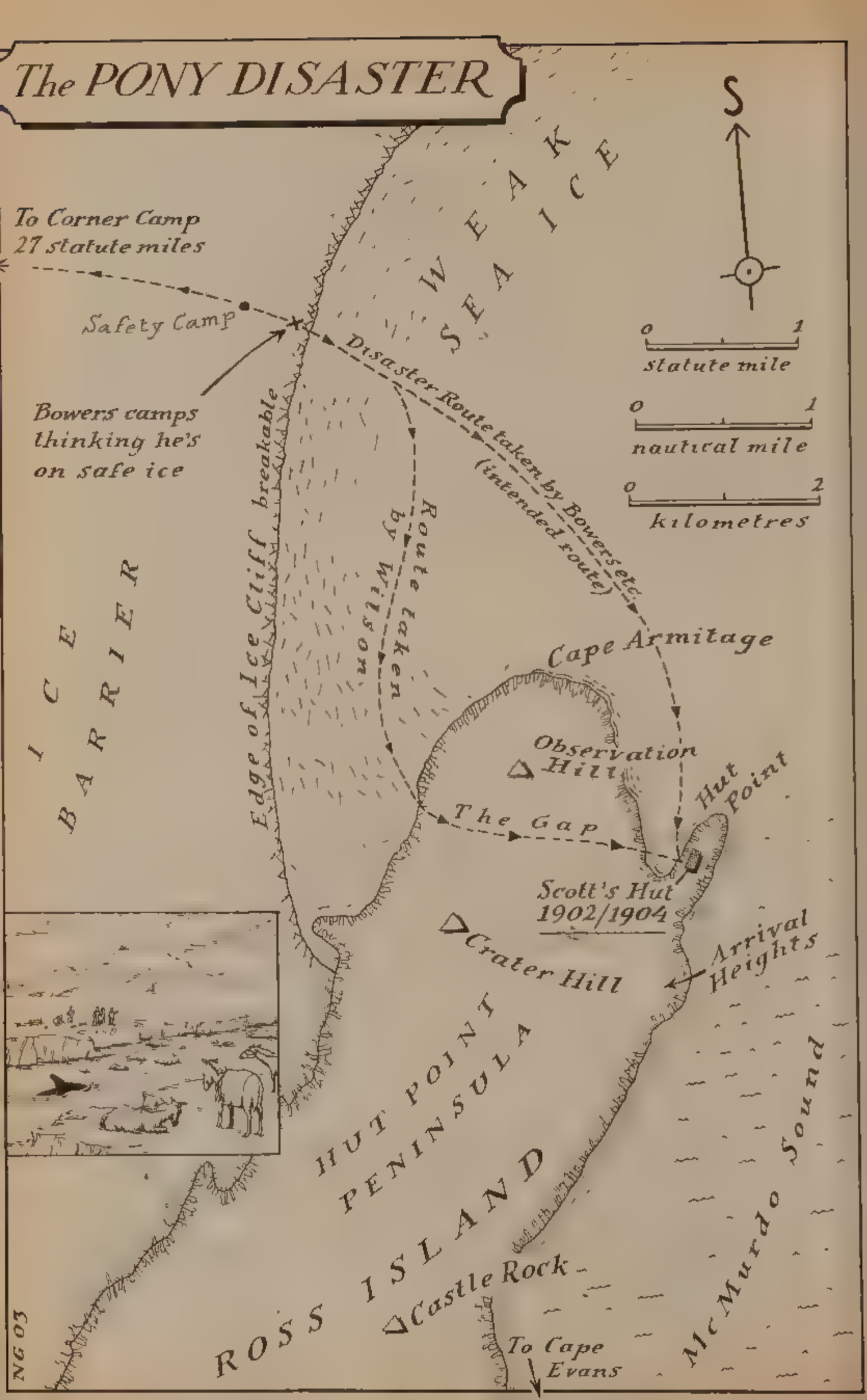
Hut Point was only four miles across the bay. The alternative was to cross the bay, aiming not for Hut Point but for a nearer landing point on Ross Island known as the Gap and then to manhandle each sledge, every item of camp gear and the dogs in pairs over a three-and-a-half-mile section of slippery rocks. This would be especially difficult for the ponies, which might well break their legs. So since Hut Point was but an hour's trip by pony, or twenty minutes by dog, and since the ice still looked passable, the risk factor to the ponies appeared less by aiming straight across the bay rather than by the Gap.

Wilson, however, voted to go by the Gap and Scott compromised. If Wilson should find the bay route looked dangerous, he should use his initiative and make his own route choice. So Wilson and Meares set off on 1 March, aiming for Hut Point. To their right was an area of thick mist or frost-smoke, which Wilson knew must come from a zone of open water or thaw-pool. Such a pool had existed in the bay even back in January so, at first, Wilson kept going, but then he came to a series of regular thin cracks across his route and found these to be rising and falling with the swell. Should the tide change, he knew, each of these cracks could quickly widen to form a myriad separate floes which in a sufficiently strong southerly or easterly wind would blow out to sea. They could well be in imminent danger, so he and Meares turned about and backtracked.

They soon reached a point where Wilson reckoned they could safely aim for the Gap on the island side of the thaw-pool. Wilson could see the pony party, led by Bowers, less than half a mile away and heading straight towards him. Shouting loudly at their dogs, Wilson and Meares turned their sledges northwards right in front of the Bowers group and then headed off towards the Gap, expecting Bowers to follow suit.

At this point Bowers made the decision to carry straight on towards Hut Point rather than to follow Wilson's dog trail. Since this decision was to lead to tragedy, it seems important to understand Bowers' thinking. Was he following his initiative,

The PONY DISASTER



as Wilson had done, or had Scott given him instructions? Scott's own diary is clear-cut: 'The plan was for the ponies to follow the dog tracks.' Wilson wrote, 'Meares and I are now to take our dog teams to Hut Point with all our gear and the horse party will follow us. We had a somewhat lengthy discussion on the advisability of [the best route]. I was all for the Gap, which point I urged, but I was overruled to the extent of being told to go the direct (Cape Armitage) way, if possible, but to feel quite independent and be guided by my own judgment. We had nothing to do with the ponies as Captain Scott was in charge . . .' Wilson did not know, of course, that Scott was not in fact with Bowers and the ponies due to Weary Willie's breakdown. Bowers himself wrote: 'My orders were to push on to Hut Point over the sea ice without delay, and to follow the dogs.'

The key to all that sadly follows was that, when Bowers saw Wilson's group veer off suddenly towards the Gap, he decided, wrongly, that they had 'misunderstood their orders and, instead of piloting us, dashed off on their own'. Tom Crean, one of Scott's most experienced men with many previous journeys on sea ice to his credit, was travelling with Bowers. The two of them and the third man in their group, Cherry-Garrard, agreed to keep going for Hut Point. As with Wilson, the choice was theirs.

At each step the inexperienced Bowers sensibly asked Crean's advice. 'Crean,' Bowers wrote, 'who had been over the ice recently told me it was alright farther round.' After a while, in thick fog, they came to moving cracks, just as Wilson had before them, and wisely also decided to turn back and follow the out ward tracks back to firm sea ice close beside the Barrier. This Bowers did and he took no risks, continuing to travel for a while before making camp. So, thinking they were off the sea ice and on the comparative safety of the Barrier ice, they dug snow walls for their four ponies and made a hot drink. In the semi-darkness Bowers mistook curry powder for cocoa but they were tired and 'Crean drank his right down before discovering anything was wrong.' He continues:

It was 2 pm before we were ready to turn in. I went out and saw that everything was quiet: the mist still hung to the west, but you could see a good mile and all was still. The sky was very dark over the Strait though, the unmistakable sign of open water. I turned in. Two and a half hours later I awoke, hearing a noise. Both my companions were snoring, I thought it was that and was on the point of turning in again having seen that it was only 4.30, when I heard the noise again. I thought – 'my pony is at the oats!' and went out.

I cannot describe either the scene or my feelings. I must leave those to your imagination. We were in the middle of a floating pack of broken-up ice. The tops of the hills were visible, but all below was thin mist and as far as the eye could see there was nothing solid; it was all broken up, and heaving up and down with the swell. Long black tongues of water were everywhere. The floe on which we were had split right under our picketing line, and cut poor Guts' wall in half. Guts himself had gone, and a dark streak of water alone showed the place where the ice had opened under him. The two sledges securing the other end of the line were on the next floe and had been pulled right to the edge. Our camp was on a floe not more than 30 yards across. I shouted to Cherry and Crean, and rushed out in my socks to save the two sledges; the two floes were touching farther on and I dragged them to this place and got them on to our floe. At that moment our own floe split in two, but we were all together on one piece. I then got my finnesko on, remarking that we had been in a few tight places, but this was about the limit. I have been told since that I was quixotic not to leave everything and make for safety. You will understand, however, that I never for one moment considered the abandonment of anything.

Meanwhile, on firm ground in the Gap, Wilson and Meares, finding that Bowers had inexplicably not followed them, made camp. Through his binoculars Wilson saw that the others had camped too and turned in.

At 5 am I woke. I was horrified to see that the whole of the sea ice was now on the move and that it had broken up for miles further

than when we turned in, and right back past where they had camped, and that the pony party was now, as we could see, adrift on a floe and separated by open water and a lot of drifting ice from the edge of the fast Barrier ice. We could see with the glasses that they were running the ponies and sledges over as quickly as possible from floe to floe whenever they could, trying to get near the safe Barrier ice again. The whole strait was now open water to the north of Cape Armitage with frost smoke rising everywhere from it, and full of pieces of floating ice, all going up north towards the Ross Sea.

13

The Worst Journey 1911

In 1982 I spent three months with a friend cut off on an ice floe floating for 400 miles over the Arctic Ocean and constantly fearful that the floe would fracture into pieces. In Antarctica two British scientists recently died on a floe that broke away from the coastline only a few miles from their permanent base, despite both men's years of experience and ice awareness. Any travel on sea ice is risky but in many parts of Antarctica, as with Scott's men by Hut Point, there is no reasonable alternative. So, you look at the weather and the state of the ice and, if all looks well, you start out. The weather can sometimes alter without warning, bringing untravellable conditions, so you are forced to pitch camp out on the pack ice just when you know you should be making all speed for land. If your luck is bad, the power of the wind can then fracture the ice into individual floes which may head out to sea. You will then risk death by exposure, starvation, drowning or killer whales who lurk about the floes and can batter through quite thick ice to grasp their prey.

When Henry Bowers looked out of his tent in the early morning of 1 March 1911 his chances of survival were minimal. They were floating west towards the open sea and he saw that their only hope lay to the south, by moving from floe to floe if and when two floes touched. They found that, luckily, the ponies were prepared to jump over small water gaps and they made slow but sure progress back towards the Barrier edge from which their floe had earlier broken.

'After some hours,' Bowers wrote, 'we saw fast ice ahead, and thanked God for it.' Meanwhile a further unpleasantness occurred in the arrival of a host of the terrible killer whales.

These were reaping a harvest of seal in the broken-up ice, and cruised among the floes with their immense black fins sticking up, and blowing with a terrific roar. It took us over six hours to get close to the fast ice, which proved to be the Barrier, some immense chunks of which we actually saw break off and join the pack . . . and I made for a big sloping floe which I expected would be touching. We rushed up the slope towards safety, and were little prepared for the scene that met our eyes at the top. All along the Barrier face a broad lane of water from thirty to forty feet wide extended. This was filled with smashed-up brash ice, which was heaving up and down to the swell like the contents of a cauldron. Killers were cruising there with fiendish activity, and the Barrier edge was a sheer cliff of ice on the other side fifteen to twenty feet high. It was a case of so near and yet so far. Suddenly our great sloping floe calved in two, so we beat a hasty retreat . . . to a sound looking floe.

Both Cherry-Garrard and Crean volunteered to fetch help but because Cherry-Garrard wore glasses and could not see well Bowers sent Crean. 'I sent a note to Captain Scott, and, stuffing Crean's pockets with food, we saw him depart.' They watched Crean through the telescope as he jumped from floe to floe and it was some hours later before they saw him up on the Barrier. When Crean was later asked about this highly risky journey and the speed with which he managed it, he responded: 'Oh I just kept going pretty lively, sorr, them killers wasn't too healthy company.'

Meanwhile Cherry-Garrard and Bowers put up their tent and tethered the ponies close by. Their floe bobbled about close by the Barrier edge and they prayed that an offshore wind would not come again from the east or the south before help could reach them. Bowers wrote:

The Killers were too interested in us to be pleasant. They had a habit of bobbing up and down perpendicularly, so as to see over the edge of a floe, in looking for seals. The huge black and yellow heads with sickening pig eyes only a few yards from us at times, and always

around us, are among the most disconcerting recollections I have of that day.

That evening at 7 p.m. Tom Crean appeared at the Barrier edge with Scott and Oates: he had taken a great many risks to fetch help. Scott, Bowers wrote, 'was too relieved at our safety to be anything but pleased. I said. "What about the ponies and sledges?" He said: "I don't care a damn about the ponies and sledges. It's you I want."' I heard later that, when Crean first told Scott of our predicament, he was very angry with me for not abandoning everything and getting away safely myself.' Between them they used the sledges as ladders from the floes and up the ice wall to the Barrier top.

Captain Scott was so pleased, that I realized the feeling he must have had all day. He had been blaming himself for our deaths, and here we were very much alive . . . I was all for saving the beasts and sledges, however, so he let us go back . . . Scott knew more about the ice than any of us, and, realizing the danger we didn't, still wanted us to abandon things.

At one point they were all ready to haul the ponies up the ramp they had made when,

To my intense disappointment at this juncture the ice started to move again . . . We dug [at the ramp] like fury until Captain Scott peremptorily ordered us up. I ran up on the floe and took the nose bags off the ponies before we got on to the Barrier, and hauled the sledges up. It was only just in time. There was the faintest south-easterly air, but, like a black snake, the lane of water stretched between the ponies and ourselves. It widened almost imperceptibly, 2 feet, 6 feet, 10 feet, 20 feet, and, sick as we were about the ponies, we were glad to be on the safe side of that.

They pitched tents half a mile back from the Barrier edge as new bergs were constantly breaking away from the front. Bowers continued:

While supper . . . was being cooked, Scott and I walked down again. The wind had gone to the east, and all the ice was under weigh. A lane 70 feet wide extended along the Barrier edge, and Killers were chasing up and down it like racehorses. Our three unfortunate beasts were some way out, sailing parallel to the Barrier. We returned, and if ever one could feel miserable I did then. My feelings were nothing to what poor Captain Scott had had to endure that day . . . He said . . . that he had no confidence whatever in the motors after the way their rollers had become messed up unloading the ship. He had had his confidence in the dogs much shaken on the return journey, and now he had lost the most solid asset — the best of his pony transport. He said: 'Of course we shall have a run for our money next season, but as far as the Pole is concerned I have but very little hope.'

Next morning they found that the ponies' floe had floated only a few miles to another lower part of the Barrier edge so they tried again to save the three animals. Bowers described what happened. His only thoughts were to save the ponies whereas Scott knew that the floes, together with his men and he himself, might drift out to sea at any moment.

The hardest jump was the first one, but it was nothing to what they had done the day before, so we put Punch at it. Why he hung fire I cannot think, but he did, at the very edge, and the next moment was in the water. I will draw a veil over our struggle to get the plucky little pony out. We could not manage it, and Titus had at last to put an end to his struggle with a pick.

There was now my pony and Nobby. We abandoned that route, while Captain Scott looked out another and longer one by going right out on the sea-floes. This we decided on, if we could get the animals off their present floe, which necessitated a good jump on any side. Captain Scott said he would have no repetition of Punch's misfortune if he could help it. He would rather kill them on the floe. Anyhow, we rushed old Nobby at the jump, but he refused. It seemed no good, but I rushed him at it again and again [and at last he made it] . . . Titus, seizing the opportunity, ran my pony at it with similar

success. We then returned to the Barrier and worked along westward till a suitable place for getting up was found. There Scott and Cherry started digging a road, while Titus and I went out via the sea-ice to get the ponies. We had an empty sledge as a bridge or ladder, in case of emergency, and had to negotiate about forty floes to reach the animals. It was pretty easy going, though, and we brought them along with great success as far as the two nearest floes. At this place the ice was jambed.

Nobby cleared the last jump splendidly, when suddenly in the open water pond on one side a school of over a dozen of the terrible whales arose. This must have flurried my horse just as he was jumping, as instead of going straight he jumped [sideways] and just missed the floe with his hind legs. It was another horrible situation, but Scott rushed Nobby up on the Barrier, while Titus, Cherry and I struggled with poor old Uncle Bill. Why the whales did not come under the ice and attack him I cannot say [but] . . . we got him safely as far as [the bottom of the Barrier cliff], pulling him through the thin ice towards a low patch of brash.

Captain Scott was afraid of something happening to us with those devilish whales so close, and was for abandoning the horse right away. I had no eyes or ears for anything but the horse just then, and getting on to the thin brash ice got the Alpine rope fast to each of the pony's forefeet. Crean was too blind to do anything but hold the rescued horse on the Barrier, but the other four of us pulled might and main till we got the old horse out and lying on his side. The brash ice was so thin that, had a 'Killer' come up then he would have scattered it, and the lot of us into the water like chaff. I was sick with disappointment when I found that my horse could not rise. Titus said 'He's done; we shall never get him up alive.' . . . In vain I tried to get him to his feet; three times he tried and then fell over backwards into the water again. At that moment a new danger arose. The whole piece of Barrier itself started to subside.

It had evidently been broken before, and the tide was doing the rest. We were ordered up and it certainly was all too necessary; still Titus and I hung over old Uncle Bill's head. I said: 'I can't leave him

to be eaten alive by those whales.' There was a pick lying up on the floe. Titus said: 'I shall be sick if I have to kill another horse like I did the last.' I had no intention that anybody should kill my own horse but myself, and getting the pick I struck where Titus told me. I made sure of my job before we ran up and jumped the opening in the Barrier, carrying a blood stained pick axe instead of leading the pony I had almost considered safe.

Two ponies, Jimmy Pigg and Nobby, out of the original eight used for the depot journey, had survived and were now quartered under cover beside Hut Point hut which Atkinson and Crean had laboriously emptied of ice and excrement. Over the next few days the different groups all rendezvoused there.

The bay between Hut Point and the main Cape Evans base was now open sea so the thirteen men of the depot party would have to live in the hut until the sea refroze in a month or two. It was no paradise. Cherry-Garrard described his first night there: 'there was an open blubber fire in the middle of the floor. There was no outlet for the smoke and smuts and it was impossible to see your neighbour, to speak without coughing. . . and to say that the hut was cold is a very mild expression of the reality.'

Scott walked to a high point on the ridge above the hut to look north. He was astonished for half of the Glacier Tongue, a feature that had existed for centuries, had broken off and floated away. Scott realised then the enormous forces of nature that must have caused the recent break up. By some fateful coincidence Bowers' group had set out on their disastrous ice crossing, which should normally have lasted an hour at most, at the worst possible moment. Bowers summed up this example of extreme bad luck: 'Six hours earlier we could have walked to the Hut on sound sea ice. A few hours later we should have seen open water on arrival at the Barrier.' Cherry-Garrard wrote: 'no one in the world could have foreseen they would break up just in those few hours we were on them.'

Nevertheless Oates wrote, predictably, to his mother: 'We lost 6 ponies including mine, which was a long way the best pony we had. I was very upset the more so as I think he could have been saved if Scott had not been fussing to the extent he was, this pony was one of the ones drowned, the loss of the ponies was Scott's fault entirely.'

Gran noted on first hearing of the disaster: 'Our party is split up and we seemed like a defeated army – dispirited and inconsolable.' He added: 'Scott was the one with the greatest cause to be discouraged but in fact he tried in every way to cheer us up.' Gran described the hut as the 'smoke cabin'. 'Inside it is dark and unpleasant; the fireplace smokes almost unbearably.' The usual banter between individuals soon began, as on board ship. Wilson remarked to Oates one day: 'The way thoughts flash through your mind, Titus, reminds me of a snail's climbing a cabbage stalk.'

Cherry-Garrard wrote: 'We spent . . . our evenings in long discussions which seldom settled anything.' Sitting on packing cases, they smoked in the dim glow of candles and the blubber lamp before spreading their reindeer-pelt sleeping bags on the floor. Water dripped on them all night, though after six weeks' hard sledging they were able to sleep for twelve hours at a stretch without any difficulty. 'Perhaps this is not everybody's notion of a good time,' Cherry wrote, 'but it was good enough for us.'

After two weeks, on 15 March 1911, another sledge group that had spent many weeks geologising in the western mountains, Ferrar Glacier and the dry valleys arrived over the ridge above the hut, having followed more or less the same route from the Barrier as the original trail pioneered by the *Discovery*'s first foray towards Cape Crozier at about the time of George Vince's death. Griffith Taylor, Charles Wright, Frank Debenham and Taff Evans made up this party and increased the already cramped Hut Point community to sixteen. Now there was room only to sleep in shifts. Tempers could have flared but they did not.

Long debates raged about the stove between the ragged, bearded, soot-black figures. Cherry Garrard noticed: 'Scott and Wilson were always in the thick of it . . . Taylor is seldom at a loss and his remarks are often original, if sometimes crude. Rash statements on questions of fact were always dangerous for our small community contained so many specialists that errors were soon exposed.' Of his time in the overcrowded, damp hut Griffith Taylor wrote: 'I was closer to Scott than at any other time in our association. I was next to him on the floor in our sleeping bags. What discussions we had! Scott was interested in everything. One evening we discussed Mormonism, the medieval ramparts of Aigues Mortes, and the pronunciation of ancient Greek. He and I would talk after all the others had gone to sleep. It was just as well. There was nothing to read: a *Family Herald*, a few reviews, and some copies of *The Girl's Own*.'

Fed up with smarting eyes and oily soot, Wilson, Oates and Gran experimented with acetylene but Gran's prototype lamp blew up and nearly killed Meares. 'This life,' Gran wrote, 'is quite interesting despite its monotony. Time goes unbelievably fast and that's the main thing really.'

Everyone took their turn at cooking the daily hoosh. Oates, Meares and Debenham were among the better cooks or certainly so in Oates's estimation. When some other poor person served up their own exotic effort, Oates commented in a loud voice for all to hear: 'Some of our party, who rather fancy themselves as cooks, quite spoil the meals by messing up the food in their attempts to produce original dishes.'

There was a nagging worry at the back of all their minds, especially Scott's. Only huge seas, they realised, could have sundered the great Glacier Tongue and, as Wilson wrote: 'We wonder what our hut at Cape Evans may have suffered as it is built very low on a shelving northern beach and the swell seems to have been from the N. or N.E.' Cherry-Gerrard noted, 'On top of all the anxieties which had oppressed him lately Scott had a great fear that a swell so phenomenal as to break up

Glacier Tongue, a landmark which had probably been there for centuries, might have swept away our hut at Cape Evans.'

Scott had every good reason to worry about a possible calamity at Cape Evans for he had sited his main base there in the light of his previous years' experience of the weather in McMurdo Sound. He had not expected any such cataclysmic events as a storm capable of breaking off an apparently immovable feature such as the Glacier Tongue. Now he was sorely troubled. His diary notes sought to legitimise to himself his choice of Cape Evans:

In choosing the site of the hut on our Home Beach I had thought of the possibility of northerly winds bringing a swell, but had argued, first, that no heavy northerly swell had ever been recorded in the Sound; secondly, that a strong northerly wind was bound to bring pack which would damp the swell; thirdly, that the locality was excellently protected by the Barne Glacier; and finally, that the beach itself showed no signs of having been swept by the sea, the rock fragments composing it being completely regular.

When the hut was erected and I found that its foundation was only eleven feet above the level of the sea ice, I had a slight misgiving, but reassured myself again by reconsidering the circumstances that afforded shelter to the beach.

Hut Point is surrounded by sea on every side except for a slope known as Arrival Heights. A devious route to the Barrier from this feature, very difficult for heavy loads and ponies, is possible all year round. But progress further north towards Cape Evans is cut off for so long as the sea remains unfrozen. Scott and Wilson reconnoitred a possible route north over the slopes of Erebus but it involved crossing many crevasses and climbing to over 5,000 feet, so they gave up the attempt to check up on the fate of the Cape Evans hut (see map on page 256).

With temperatures in late March dropping into the -40°s, the sea froze quickly as soon as the wind dropped, but the next breeze soon rippled and dispersed the new ice. Any attempt to

travel before truly solid sea ice formed could prove lethal. On 17 March a southerly gale blew against Hut Point with thirty-foot high breakers crashing against the rock and high-flung spume freezing onto the hut walls. Meares and Wilson had to free the dogs from their picket lines for their fur was soon covered in frozen armour plating from the spray. Vince's cross, forty feet further up the hill, was covered in an inch of ice.

To make the most of their enforced rest, Scott sent another sledge group out to increase the depot at Corner Camp. Teddy Evans led this foray and recorded a temperature of −41°C before returning. Supplies at Hut Point were limited and seals were killed whenever possible. Wilson wrote after five weeks in the hut: 'Here we have come to an end of our sugar today. We have also finished the flour . . . [and] our oatmeal, but we have lots of seal meat and biscuit and cocoa. Butter is running out, but we can't starve! And we are a very happy party of bohemians. Our clothes soaked in seal blubber and soot.' One day he killed an Emperor: 'a male, very fat. Half the breast and the liver was a substantial meal for 16 men with nothing else but some pease, cocoa and biscuit. We fried it in butter and it was excellent.' Cherry-Garrard described the seal-killing method the party used. A heavy blow on the nose with a large stick stunned the seal which then felt no further pain as a fourteen inch knife pierced the heart. The blubber came away with the skin, the meat was sliced away, the entrails removed and the liver saved. This was all left to freeze, then cut up with an axe when needed.

On 7 April Scott, extremely anxious to know that all was well at Cape Evans, took a small group out on fairly thick ice. Taylor fell through a weak patch but he quickly levered himself back out. They wisely retreated. That night a wind blew all the ice out to sea but, four days later, Scott tried again by a new part-land, part-sea route taking seven others with him. This journey proved successful thanks to Scott's imaginative route-finding abilities. Where a lava rock outcrop at the Hutton Rocks pierced the ice-face, he lowered a rope forty feet to the sea ice

and then led the group over the truncated Glacier Tongue to the last bay before Cape Evans.

Teddy Evans said of Scott's cliff descent: 'It was a good piece of work getting everything down safely, and I admired Scott's decision to go over; a more nervous man would have fought shy because, once down on the sea ice there was little chance of our getting back and we had got to fight our way forward to Cape Evans somehow.' Scott asked the seven men if they would prefer to camp where they were, for it was 6.30 p.m., or to attempt the seven-mile trip over the ice to Cape Evans as a night march.

'We gladly started off at 8 o'clock for a night march,' Teddy Evans wrote, 'picturing to ourselves a supper of all things luxurious.' Not a single voice was raised in favour of camping but Bowers, remembering no doubt his recent experiences of the fickleness of sea ice, later wrote: 'it seemed folly to venture upon a piece of untried, newly frozen sea-ice in inky darkness.' By 10 p.m. a strong wind had increased to blizzard strength and Scott decided to camp in the lee of a rock islet, Little Razorback Island. Everybody had wanted to press on, including no doubt Scott himself, the hardest and most energetic of sledgers. But, as Cherry-Garrard wrote: 'the snow hid everything; in fact we could hardly see the island itself when we were right under it. It was impossible to go wandering on, so we had after all to camp on the sea-ice . . . there was only six or ten inches of precarious ice between you and the black waters beneath. Altogether I decided that I for one would lie awake in such an insecure camp.'

Taylor subsequently observed: 'If ever there was a reckless stunt,'this was it, and I could not admire Scott for it. We had no food. The blizzard was a killer. Instead of a few hours, it took us two days to do those [few] miles and we were lucky to make it. I'd say this was my worst experience in the Antarctic.' Debenham, Taylor's fellow Australian geologist, wrote: 'Opinions were varied in the camp, I for one wishing to march

on in spite of the blizzard and Griff urged it almost too strongly.'

Scott would have known, as do all competent outdoor leaders of today, that strong characters who are very cold and very miserable will always opt for carrying on, if only to keep up the warmth of movement. But this natural reaction is not always the most sensible option. Scott knew that the further north and west he headed towards the mouth of the bay, the greater the chance of floe fracture and open water. Better to stay inland of the island group including Razorback, at least until visibility improved. This he did, at first camping on the sea ice below the island's cliffs and then, when Bowers located a tiny rock ledge at the base of the cliff, moving to its relative safety. Scott did not lose his sense of humour, commenting to explain this site move that it was 'to ensure Taylor's safety'.

They stayed on Bowers's ledge for twenty four hours whilst the storm raged about them. Gran wrote: 'truly awful. I don't dare to take my boots off for fear I shall not get them back on when they stiffen. The sleeping bag is wet through and my teeth chatter as I lie writing this.' On 13 April, Scott wrote: 'I roused the party at 7 a.m. and we were soon under weigh, with a desperately cold and stiff breeze and frozen clothes.' The last bay seemed to go on forever. Gran wrote: 'We reached some stranded icebergs, passed them round the point, and before us was the hut . . . soon the people from the hut poured out to meet us. It was 80 days since we had seen each other and we greeted one another with warmth. How wonderful to set foot inside this palace! . . . Soon a bath – and then to bed!' Scott's relief must have been enormous.

Scott was away again in four days to bring more men back from Hut Point. The ponies and dogs, which could not climb down the cliff section, were left at Hut Point under Meares with a group of six men to come on only when the sea ice was really solid. The rest raced each other back to Cape Evans, an easy journey with good visibility.

Whilst the depot group was away the Cape Evans hut had

become a place of great comfort for men, dogs and ponies alike. Music issued from a gramophone and sometimes from the pianola. Acetylene gas jets provided plenty of light around the clock. Adequate hot water was available for baths and scientific gadgets ticked or purred in many corners, installed by meteorologist Simpson, Bernard Day the engineer, and Edward Nelson the biologist. Scott had his own cubicle full of books, photos of his family and piles of notebooks to aid his endless planning for the journeys ahead. Ponting had a darkroom. Gran and 'the colonials' from Australia and Canada had one section of bunks close by another that housed good friends Cherry-Garrard and Bowers, alongside the close group of Oates, Meares and Atkinson.

As soon as everyone was well settled into the base, Scott outlined his plan which, true to his initial reaction when learning of Amundsen's presence on the Barrier, completely ignored the Norwegian challenge. His mathematics and his transport system were based entirely and sensibly on the only previous journey to nearly reach the Pole, that of Ernest Shackleton. He would not rely on dogs or motor sledges but, unlike Shackleton, he would take skis and use them wherever they proved an advantage over ski less manhaul; probably at least as far as the Beardmore Glacier.

Scott preferred to choose his sledging groups at the last possible moment, which enabled him, like the leader of an Everest expedition, to select those who were fittest at the key moment rather than have a pre-nominated group which might entail big disappointments when he made his last minute and final choice. He announced that he would select men for the Pole team at a later date, but everyone must realise that a second year at Cape Evans was already a reality. This had become necessary because of the behaviour of the ponies on the depot trip: they could not stand the bitter spring weather and so would not be able to set out until 1 November. This would mean the Pole party returning to Cape Evans too late to catch *Terra Nova*'s brief summer call.

Those who felt they could not stay on for a second year would, of course, have to go when she left.

Scott estimated that supplies would have to cover a journey of 144 days of which eighty-four would be spent on the high plateau. Shackleton's men had travelled a lesser distance up there, yet the conditions had affected them badly: this was Scott's main worry. Shackleton had set out with four ponies, Scott pointed out, whereas they would have double that number which, together with the very considerable amount of stores already laid out in the depots, would give them the essential extra 200 miles travel ability that Shackleton's men had lacked.

When Scott had left Britain the year before his twin aims had been his scientific programme, which was already well under way, and his stated goal to reach the South Pole. His plan as announced on 8 May 1911 at Cape Evans made good sense to most of those present, but did not remove the background fear in all their minds that the Norwegians might beat them to the Pole. Scott knew that he could never hope to compete directly with Norwegian skills on skis and driving dog teams. Scott's team consisted of Navy men and professional scientists, a small proportion of whom had been with him ten years previously. They were well prepared to follow up their previous scientific work and they had taken great care to learn from their 1903 experiences at manhauling, dog-driving and skiing. Despite this, they could not hope to win a race against a group of Norway's best skiers and dog-drivers.

When Teddy Evans and Oates first learnt of Amundsen's presence at the Bay of Whales, they were all for changing plans and making a race of it by starting out early. But, in Gran's words: 'Our expedition to Corner Camp cured Teddy Evans' desire to leave early.' Scott knew he had learnt far too late about the threat from Amundsen to reassess his plans. There was the faint hope that, even though the Norwegians had 120 miles less far to travel, they would aim for the Beardmore Glacier, the only known route, which Shackleton had proved was a bad place

for dogs and so could slow them down. Indeed, Amundsen's successful deceit had reduced Scott's hopes of reaching the Pole first into a mere reliance on the Norwegians suffering a setback. Scott must have seen that, for he was nobody's fool, but he could not openly say: 'Look, we've been fooled. The enemy are at our doorstep. They are the best in the world at travelling on snow. We can only win by default.'

So what could he say or do from the moment he learnt of the Norwegian presence on the Barrier? He could either get on with his science and announce a Pole attempt was off since it would be futile, or he could hope that Fate would halt or delay the Norwegians. Of these two options I would have chosen the latter, as did Scott. Any one of a thousand things could go wrong for Amundsen and, if something did, Scott would have cursed himself for not having tried the race option. Amundsen could have suffered an injury. Without him, the Norwegians would have lacked the drive and awareness to make the journey. The Norwegian base could have floated away out to sea, as indeed it later did. The unknown route Amundsen took over the Barrier might easily have met with huge geographical obstacles. Scott was surely right to carry on *exactly* as he did, given the blow that Fate, in the shape of the Norwegians, had dealt him. So, the winter at Cape Evans was to be business as usual, at least on the face of it. Under the surface, however, the personal strain on Scott must have been great.

At the end of Scott's presentation of his plans he asked for the men's reaction. Gran noted: 'The presentation was followed by a long discussion [at the end of which] Scott thanked all his opponents and the discussion ceased after our leader said "It is easy to make plans when one sits in a good, warm cabin, but to realise them is not so pleasant and simple."' Charles Wright was impressed both by Scott's presentation and by the round-table discussion that followed it.

On 14 May Cecil Meares and the five men who had stayed at Hut Point arrived back at Cape Evans with the two dog teams

and the two surviving depot trip ponies, Jimmy Pigg and Nobby. The sea ice was firm all the way, although still liable to break up by violent southwesterly storms.

One pony wasted away during the winter and had to be shot. Oates could not identify the cause of the sickness. This left ten ponies in all out of the seventeen landed at Cape Evans. The key to Scott's plan was the health of the ponies and that burden rested squarely on the broad shoulders of Oates. Scott had done well to select him for this purpose. Oates did a truly wonderful job in caring for the ten ponies all that winter, for which Scott was openly fulsome in his praise and his gratitude. Scott must have regretted that Oates had not been available in time to choose the ponies. On 17 May, as one of a series of evening lectures in the hut, Oates gave a two-hour talk on horse care. He ended with an amusing story from a sophisticated dinner party he had attended, where a young lady arrived very late and flustered, explaining that 'the cab-horse: he wouldn't get on at all. "Ah, perhaps he was a jibber," suggested her hostess. "Oh, no," smiled the damsel, all unknowing, "he was a bugger. I heard the cabby say so several times."'

Oates was a quiet but powerful character who attracted to his side the equally taciturn Cecil Meares and Edward Atkinson and, to a lesser extent, Frank Debenham.

Debenham, like Oates, wrote letters to his mother as a safety valve for his feelings.

I am afraid I am very disappointed in him . . . There's no doubt he can be very nice and the interest he takes in our scientific work is immense, he is also a fine sledger himself and as organiser is splendid . . . His temper is very uncertain . . . In crises he acts very peculiarly . . . I have been quite disgusted with him. What he decides is often enough the right thing I expect, but he loses all control of his tongue and makes us all feel wild . . . I cannot say he is the least popular, still we are all prepared to follow him . . . the marvellous part is that the Owner is the single

exception to a general sense of comradeship and jollity amongst all of us.

Expedition base camps are often hotbeds of small clique gossip and complaining about the current leadership. Scott was fortunate in ending up with only one such complaints-clique and, since their Scott-sniping sessions nearly always took place in the stables around the blubber fire, where Oates prepared bran mash for his charges, the atmosphere inside the hut did not suffer from the hostile murmurings of the disgruntled few.

As a result many of their anti-Scott bickerings did not surface until the bitter dossier of the bereaved Mrs Caroline Oates (including correspondence between her, Debenham, Atkinson and Meares), decades after the death of her son, was made available to scholars. Meares told Mrs Oates that her son had been 'disgusted' at Scott's leadership, whilst Oates stated that there was 'no love lost' between Meares and Scott. The occasional snide comment by the stable clique was sometimes overheard. Ponting mentioned that Scott and he both heard Meares tell Oates that Scott should buy himself a 'shilling book on transport'. Through the long dark winter Oates, Meares and Atkinson bonded and brooded around the stable stove.

Scott seemed largely unaware of this malignant tumour, which was just as well as he could have done little about it short of falling in line with every whim that issued from the stable. As it was, he tried to avoid confrontation with Oates whenever he could.

Both Meares and Oates were to an extent outsiders to the norms of Royal Navy and university life. Their hut companions, all quick-witted academic debaters from various universities, included Wilson, Nelson, Wright and Taylor, all from Cambridge, Cherry-Garrard from Oxford, Debenham from Sydney and Simpson from Manchester. On many an expedition I have seen how an innate feeling of inferiority can blunt communication between two people. The middle-class Dartmouth mid-

shipman, Scott, probably recognised his social superior in the upper-class Essex squire with his slow Old Etonian drawl, just as Oates may have sensed that his own modest intellectual level and dyslexic disabilities put him at a disadvantage to the quick-thinking, clear-minded Scott.

Oates was supremely and rightly confident in his knowledge of horsemanship and may not have liked to acknowledge that Scott's common sense and razor-sharp powers of observation had sometimes found chinks in his equine armour, as over building storm shields for the ponies or on the matter of the missing *hesterskos*.

During the depot trip Cherry-Garrard had commented: 'One evening we watched Scott digging crumbly blocks of snow out on the Barrier and he built a rough wall windward of his pony. We viewed this with distrust and saw little use in it. But later we were convinced by personal experience what a boon these pony walls could be.' Soon everyone, including Oates, was copying Scott.

The matter of the snowshoes had registered with both Scott and Oates. Scott saw it as proof that he must watch Oates carefully in future to ensure such a costly and basic oversight did not recur and Oates saw Scott as a meddler in *his* fiefdom. He wrote home, '. . . I think I have a fairish chance [of inclusion in the final Polar party], that is if Scott and I do not fall out as it will be pretty tough having four months of him, he fusses dreadfully . . .'

Scott's fussing eventually persuaded Oates to take with the pony gear in future two types of snowshoe or *hestersko*, a racquet-type for soft snow and a tough canvas hoof-bag for ice. Such perceived interference by Scott into Oates's domain provoked many a hostile comment to 'Dear Mother'.

'From what I see,' Oates moaned, 'I think it would not be difficult to get to the Pole provided you have proper transport, but with the rubbish we have it will be jolly difficult and means a lot of hard work.' And again: 'Scott wants me to stay on here

another year but I shall clear out if I get back in time for the ship which I hope to goodness will be the case. It will only be a small party to remain next year. Scott pretends at present he is going to stay but I bet myself a fiver he clears out, that is if he gets to the Pole. If he does not and some decent transport animals come down in the ship, I have promised him I will stay to help him have another try but between you and me I think if he fails this time he will have had a pretty good stomach full.' Another time he declared: 'Myself, I dislike Scott intensely and would chuck the whole thing if it were not that we are a British expedition and must beat these Norwegians. Scott has always been very civil to me and I have the reputation of getting on well with him. But the fact of the matter is that he is not straight, it is himself first, the rest nowhere.'

Every now and again, Oates seemed to realise that his tirades might not be entirely fair to the object of his dislike. Then he would add little riders to the effect that he was 'having a "first class" time with the expedition', and 'please remember that when a man is having a hard time, he says hard things about other people which he would regret afterwards.' He also told his mother not to 'think from what I say that Scott is likely to endanger anyone, it is quite the reverse.'

Scott remained happily unaware of the depth of Oates's paranoia and wrote many a kind comment to Mrs Oates about her son. He had no inkling that Oates might not wish to stay on a second year. From the outset in Lyttelton, when Oates had smuggled extra fodder on board (some at his own expense), to his great bravery, strength and determination in saving his ponies during the hurricane, to his non stop focus on and skilled care for each animal through the long, cold winter, he excelled in every way. He organised a personal handler for each pony and 'taught them how to exercise and cope with their charges' unpredictable, often vicious moods, choosing for himself the most aggressive pony, Christopher, who bit and kicked at anyone who came near him. What a shame that Oates could not

sublimate his natural tendency to disloyalty and to carp about his superiors.

Meares, like Oates, would not have enjoyed Scott's comments on his own area of expertise. Scott, soon seeing that the dogs, after some initial working in Antarctica, were not being adequately fed by Meares, made the point at once, adding later: 'Meares is excellent to a point, but ignorant of the conditions here. One thing is certain, the dogs will never continue to drag heavy loads with men sitting on the sledges; we must all learn to run with the teams and the Russian custom must be dropped. Meares, I think, rather imagined himself racing to the Pole and back on a dog sledge. This journey has opened his eyes a good deal.'

Despite his forthright criticism of Scott, it was however Debenham who also wrote that the group's general harmony was due to 'the genius of Scott in exercising just the right amount of discipline with a minimum of formality'. Even Oates said: 'We got on very well together and there was none of the quarrelling which usually accompanies a winter where a number of men are confined together in a dark hut.'

Oates was not alone in yielding to the common temptation to complain about a leader. A few hundred miles north-west of Cape Evans, Scott's other science group of six, under the leadership of Lieutenant Victor Campbell, were having their own personality problems. The chief protesters there consisted of Navy surgeon George Levick and scientist Raymond Priestley. Levick wrote: 'Priestley and I are really good friends. I am, I think establishing an ascendancy over Campbell, which has been a good thing in many ways, as I am gradually getting him out of many of his fads. He is not a bad chap but hopelessly out of place as a leader, being much too self-conscious and lacking most sadly in guts.' He added: 'I feel rather a beast sometimes when Priestley and I get away together and crab him to each other, whilst all the time he and I remain outwardly friendly.'

Meanwhile, a few hundred miles to the east of Cape Evans,

Amundsen's men were dividing into two bitter cliques. Bjaaland wrote that his colleagues Johansen and Prestrud were told they would not to go the Pole because they might get together to cause trouble and bring about the failure of the venture.

In the mid 1970s I carried out a number of polar expeditions with just two companions, Oliver Shepard and Charlie Burton, who were best friends. They could easily have formed a clique and three would have become a crowd. Both were natural leaders of men in their own right, not 'yes' men, and both disliked being told what to do. When they disagreed with my orders, as they frequently did, they did so separately and openly, avoiding the behind-the-back murmurings that constitute the most poisonous ingredient which even a short expedition can suffer. I had been lucky to choose two individuals without malice.

Soldiers are educated to appreciate that the best leaders are those who first learn to accept the principles of loyalty to other leaders. The British Antarctic Survey (BAS) and most other such Antarctic working communities understand the sense of this tenet of leadership. Dr Phillip Law, the famous Director of Australia's DEA Antarctic Division, their equivalent of BAS, wrote, in the 1980s: 'Nothing is so important as the appointment of a first-class leader and nowhere are the qualities of leadership subjected to more gruelling tests than at an Antarctic station . . . One quality is fundamentally essential to any team. It is loyalty. A man must be loyal to the expedition, loyal to his leader and loyal to himself. Some men are naturally loyal; some are fundamentally antagonistic, critically outspoken and disloyal.' Dr Law also observed: 'It was made clear to all our men that to back up their leader when they agree with him is no test of loyalty. It is when they disagree with him that they must stand behind him.'

Oates, Meares and Atkinson would have scored poorly on Dr Law's ratings. Atkinson was small and punchy, a keen boxer like Oates. He became, by seniority of rank, the *de facto* base leader at Cape Evans during the second winter there. In Scott's

absence he decided to change the routine as little as possible. Meares is a more clearly defined character than Atkinson. Of him Debenham wrote: 'Meares is the wanderer of us all and with all the faults and virtues of such men. China, Siberia, India, anywhere "ot and unwholesome" is his hunting ground and he has already tired of this place. He's a good chap, but I liked him more before he got tired of the Antarctic.'

On 22 May Scott and five men walked the five miles north to Cape Royds and slept in Shackleton's old hut there. The sea ice was still unsafe in places. They carefully examined everything in the hut and gossiped about each member of Shackleton's group. 'It was interesting,' Wilson recorded, 'to see the remains of this party's life here and their various corners in the hut.'

Wilson was, as usual, in charge of the seal cull, as vital as ever in fending off scurvy. His knowledge of anatomy was suited to the task of killing and then flensing the carcasses. Likewise, at the northern party's base 500 miles to their north-west, surgeon George Levick found himself appointed chief butcher. His com rade Raymond Priestley wrote that they were not yet used to killing the appealing creatures and that even Levick, used to wielding a scalpel, found his first kill unpleasant. 'The old bull lay sound asleep, grunting a little as if he was dreaming. I heard him give a sigh of contentment as I stole up to him. Raising the iron bar high over my head, I brought it down across his nose, and as he lay stunned, ran in with a grand hunting knife about 10 inches long which I bought in Christchurch, and lifting up his flipper, ran it right into his heart. The blood spurted out by the gallon, & I had killed my first seal.'

A fortnight later Scott's birthday was celebrated amidst the usual festoons of sledge flags, bunting and good cheer. Outside the hut two aspirant king dogs, suitably named Peary and Cook, tried to kill each other and Tryggve Gran, after forcing them apart, settled to discussing his sometimes awkward position in a hut mainly full of Britons whilst his perfidious countryman Amundsen was parked predatorily just over the horizon. Repairs

and modifications of all sledging gear went on throughout the winter. The two motorised sledges had completed many hours of work on hard blue ice between the ship and the hut when unloading and the wooden rollers of their looped tracks had been shredded, three hundred in all. This would not have happened in soft snow but Day, not suspecting such damage, had only brought thirty spare rollers. By an ingenious adaptation of the crankshaft of a petrol engine into a makeshift lathe, he managed to manufacture roller replacements over many hours of hard work. In 1979, unloading our ship in Antarctica prior to our crossing journey, all our steel sledges were cracked through their upright stanchions. Working inside an ice cave over the ensuing five months of winter, and remembering Bernard Day, I completed Heath Robinson repairs, which just lasted our own 1,800 mile journey.

Scott noted that, during the winter, Evans and Crean worked on the sledges, Gran on the skis and that general attention was paid to overhauling *finnesko* boots. 'But indeed the whole time we are thinking of devices to make our travelling work easier.' Whilst this was going on Amundsen's men were likewise engaged and, despite their far superior polar expertise and easy access to advanced specialist ski outfitters in Kristiania (Oslo), they were having as many problems as the Cape Evans men. Both Teddy and Taff Evans, over the winter, modified various types of boot for use with skis and crampons with, ironically, a greater degree of success than Amundsen, possibly because of the different demands of manhauling. Gran tested the new gear. 'The ski bindings,' he said, 'proved to be a success. They held the foot steady in the mukluks without pinching and made it easy to turn.'[1] Scott's team used *finnesko* boots made by Lapps, who have tiny feet; so Scott had ordered custom-made boots with quantities of senna grass to pack around the toe-end of socks. On taking boots off at night, the senna grass had to be shaken to rid it of ice from frozen perspiration. The long thigh or knee fur boots used by Amundsen's dog-drivers were inappropriate

for manhaul, owing to the sweat caused by the far greater exertion involved.

Scott had learnt on his 1902 expedition that only sleeping bags made from the winter coat of reindeer were reliable. He had obtained in Norway as many of the winter-coat bags as were available. Once wet, summer-coat skins shed their hairs. Three-man bags were very clumsy but in extreme cold they were warmer than one-man bags.

The tents of green Willesden material had been made by John Edgington. These were pyramid-shaped, nine feet long and supported by six poles. In the 1980s we were still using a slightly modified version of the same model, still the best available anywhere, from the same manufacturer, Black & Edgington of Greenock. Wilson wrote of theirs: 'We were using a lined tent which was an invention of Sverdrup's in his last expedition, and we found it a great boon for it undoubtedly made one more comfortable in camp at the low temperatures.'

Most of the Cape Evans men took exercise when the weather allowed. Some skied or walked a lot, usually in the immediate vicinity of the hut, and many played football or ice hockey. Taylor noted: 'Scott was playing just behind me . . . grinned cheerfully when I said I was too winded! The blizzard nearly blew the ball off the ice.' Oates was a keen active player, so an old Boer War leg injury was obviously not then affecting him. Games continued even at −20°C and below, with twenty-five-knot winds. Gran had played for Norway, whereas the Russian Omelchenko had never seen a football before. I well remember playing cricket at the South Pole in 1981 at −42°C and in full polar clothing.

The scientists had their own work by day and by night. Simpson monitored his complex instrument array and sent up balloons attached to instruments, Atkinson searched for parasites and bacteria in his fish-trap victims. Wright studied ice and snow, Nelson took depth soundings, and Taylor studied rock samples taken from the dry valleys, with their original locations

plotted on his survey charts. Gran and Debenham spent six days holed up by the weather after a snap visit to Hut Point to collect a fossil collection Debenham had left there. By the hut they found a dog, lost by Meares a month before, with his jowls covered in seal gore. This husky, Mukaka, gamely helped the two men haul their 300-pound sledgeload back to Cape Evans, where he had to be diplomatically reintroduced to the others because any brief absence can turn a dog into a complete stranger to be attacked and mauled by the pack.

The atmosphere in all parts of the hut, the 'complaints' clique excepted, was congenial at all times and, according to Cherry Garrard, there was never any want of conversation. In the main section, Scott sat at the table's head but everyone else sat where they chose. 'If you felt talkative', Cherry-Garrard wrote, 'you might always find a listener in Debenham; if inclined to listen yourself, it was only necessary to sit near Taylor or Nelson; if on the other hand, you just wanted to be quiet, Atkinson or Oates would probably give you a congenial atmosphere.'

Writing about Scott, Cherry-Garrard observed.

Scott, who always amazed me by the amount of work he got through without any apparent effort, was essentially the driving force of the expedition: in the hut quietly organizing, working out masses of figures, taking the greatest interest in the scientific work of the station, and perhaps turning out, quite by the way, an elaborate paper on an abstruse problem in the neighbourhood; fond of his pipe and a good book.

He was eager to accept suggestions if they were workable, and always keen to sift even the most unlikely theories if by any means they could be shaped to the desired end: a quick and modern brain which he applied with thoroughness to any question or practice or theory. Essentially an attractive personality, with strong likes and dislikes, he excelled in making his followers his friends by a few words of sympathy or praise; I have never known anybody, man or woman, who could be so attractive when he chose.

Sledging he went harder than any man of whom I have ever heard. Men never realized Scott until they had gone sledging with him.

His was a subtle character, full of lights and shades. He was certainly the most dominating personality in our not uninteresting community: indeed there is no doubt that he would carry weight in any gathering of human beings. But few who knew him realized how shy and reserved the man was, and it is partly for this reason that he so often laid himself open to misunderstanding.

Cherry-Garrard was well aware that he would be thought to be exaggerating. 'If then I say that we lived this life for nearly three years, from the day when we left England until the day we returned to New Zealand, without any friction of any kind, I shall be supposed to be making a formal statement of somewhat limited truth. May I say that there is really no formality about it, and nothing but the truth.'

One man did strike a different note in his summary of hut life. Scott had never allowed himself to become one of the lads or part of the family. If there was to be one big happy family under his wing, he would prefer the position of amiable but slightly austere patriarch. Frank Debenham expressed this by observing: 'We are, with the exception of the Owner, a very happy family.' Debenham continues: 'Captain Oates is a good friend . . . Griff [Taylor] is not getting on too well . . . He is rather selfish in small matters and his few ungentlemanly habits rather jar on the collection of real gentlemen we have here . . . I shall have to share a cubicle with him and he is not a pleasant cabin mate. Trigger Gran, the Norwegian, is another great disappointment. Very generous and kindhearted he is too youthful in mind . . . In laziness, untidiness, morals and appetite he is a marked contrast to all the rest of us and suffers accordingly.'

Scott's opinion of Gran varied from month to month, ranging from noting that he was lazy and guilty of posing during the unloading, to being impatient when pony leading, even regretting that he had brought Gran during the enforced wait at Hut

reasonable progress: the Norwegians' dogs' feet would be damaged and the men's heels frozen.

On 25 June, three days after Midwinter's Day, Scott took Wilson aside. For months the two men had discussed a special winter journey to Cape Crozier. Only in the depths of winter when long sledge journeys were considered suicidal could the zoological grail of a living Emperor penguin embryo be sought. Cape Crozier in winter was a must, therefore, and Wilson had long since persuaded Scott to let him go. Two volunteers, Bowers and Cherry-Garrard, would travel with him. Wilson said of Scott's warning that day: 'He also impressed upon me the necessity of bringing back my two companions unhurt from Cape Crozier for the southern journey.' This may or may not have indicated Scott's hopes at that time of taking all three men on his Pole team.

Scott was rightly uneasy about losing three of his best men when, in the coldest, darkest time of year, Wilson, Bowers and Cherry-Garrard set out on their five week quest to Cape Crozier. But he knew the Emperor quest was one of Wilson's main reasons for having joined the *Terra Nova* expedition and both men had intended to have their base at Cape Crozier, close by the Emperor colony's site. Wilson thought of the quest, should it succeed, as potentially one of 'the biggest scientific breakthroughs of the 20th century, by proving the link between dinosaurs and birds'.

Once Scott saw that Wilson's mind was made up, he made the best of it by suggesting the journey also be used as a trial of gear and food, especially the relative merits of different portions of fats, proteins and carbohydrates when eaten under extreme stress. Scott recorded various equipment modifications. 'Another new departure is the decision to carry eiderdown sleeping bags inside the reindeer ones. With such an arrangement the early part of the journey is bound to be comfortable, but when the bags get iced, difficulties are pretty certain to arise. Day has been devoting his energies to the creation of a blubber

stove, much assisted of course by our experience gained at Hut Point.'

On 27 June the three men set out into the Stygian darkness for their 140-mile round trip towing two nine-foot sledges, in tandem, with a total load of 750 pounds. Dogs, they had concluded rightly and as Amundsen was soon to discover, would not cope well with midwinter conditions. At the last minute, realising the enormous weight they would have to haul, they agreed to leave behind the additional weight and bulk of skis. Scott saw them off. 'This winter travel,' he wrote, 'is a new and bold venture but the right men have gone to attempt it. All good luck go with them!'

On the second 'day' out, hauling the sledge from the sea ice up to the Barrier, Cherry-Garrard took off his mitts briefly to gain a better hold of the ropes. All his fingers were nipped within sixty seconds, causing inch-long blisters full of frozen liquid, a painful condition, which I know well. This was the start of what Cherry-Garrard called 'the weirdest bird nesting expedition that has ever been'. It spurred the writing, some years later, of Cherry Garrard's book *The Worst Journey in the World* which over the twentieth century was several times voted the best travel book ever written. I will give only a glimpse of the three men's experiences over the thirty-six days of their journey.

At night Cherry Garrard's damaged fingers leaked pus, which froze by day. He was in permanent pain, heightened when doing the simplest task such as tying up a lace or sledge strap. At night all three men suffered excruciating leg cramps. Their bags collected moisture each time they camped: Cherry Garrard's bag started out weighing eighteen pounds and ended up at forty-five pounds. Their clothes became less and less insulative as the fibres filled with ice. The tent's inner lining provided warmth but trapped moisture and increased in weight from thirty five pounds to sixty. They gained more sledge weight in ice than they lost in the rations and fuel they consumed.

The temperature on the Barrier, beneath Erebus, dropped to

WINTER JOURNEY 1911

44°C during their second night out, to 49°C the next night, and –51°C after a week.

Wilson approved of his companions. 'They are the best of our new sledging lot,' he recorded. He enjoyed the aurora displays, the mock moons and the vertical shafts of the lunar cross, caused by temperature inversion. Cherry-Garrard's teeth split from the cold and his spectacles, fogging up, turned him blind. He wrote: 'Antarctic exploration is seldom as bad as you imagine, seldom as bad as it sounds but this journey beggared our language. No words could express its horror.' But worse was to come. The thermometer on 6 July dropped to –60°C, a freezing fog so dense they could hardly see their ski tips. It took four or five hours in the morning just to dress, cook, pack and load the sledges.

Their clothes froze like suits of armour as soon as the blubber stove was put out and retained whatever shape they froze in. One morning just after exiting the tent Cherry-Garrard stopped to look sideways for some fifteen seconds and when he tried to turn his head back he found the neck of his hood had frozen solid in looking sideways. It took him half an hour of hard manhauling to get the hood warm enough to unfreeze sufficiently for him to look ahead again. After that they all made sure to maintain the best posture for hauling as soon as they stepped outside the tent.

Matches, taken from the outside dry cold into the moist atmosphere of the tent with the stove alight, became sodden and useless. The extreme cold, together with new snow blown about by blizzards, produced surface snow crystals as rough and abrasive as sandpaper. Hauling became well nigh impossible, so they had to relay, completing three miles for every mile of progress. One day they managed only one and a half miles in eight hellish hours of manhaul.

Cherry Garrard wrote: 'I for one had come to that point of suffering at which I did not really care if only I could die without much pain.' It was the darkness and the low temperature that

made it insufferable. The fog then became so thick that they could no longer relay since they could not see their footprints back from sledge to sledge and so, again, they dragged both sledges together over the glue-like surfaces. At last, after nineteen nightmare days, they came to the gap by the Knoll and pitched their tent in a snowy hollow. Wilson had always known they would need to stay here for some days to locate, reach and work in the Emperor colony and so, as planned, they built a hut from rocks by the light of the waning moon.

Setting off with ice axes, crampons and an alpine rope, they struggled between ice cliffs and rock outcrops, their route often blocked by gaping crevasses and chaotic masses of tumbled ice boulders. They could hear the distant trumpeting of Emperors but their way to the colony was always barred by some obstacle or other and, fearing the moon's disappearance, they just made it back to their shelter. Next day they zigzagged a perilous new route down the cliffs to the penguins' beach. To be caught there in darkness without shelter would mean likely death by exposure so they rushed to find warm eggs. Bowers fell through weak sea ice and wet his socks, which froze solid. They wrapped their spoils in their inner clothes and took three fat Emperors too for a blubber supply, their only source of light and heat.

Again they just made it back to their hut before darkness and the arrival of a snowstorm. That night their stove spat burning blubber into Wilson's eye, causing him great pain. Over the next forty-eight hours the wind rose to Force 10 and blew their tent away, along with the mitts, socks and other gear stowed inside. Their refuge began to fill with snow sucked into the void by the sheer power of the wind. A pipe on their homemade blubber stove melted at the solder joint, rendering it useless, so they had to cook as best they could using their primus lamp. Then their canvas roof was sucked off the hut's rock walls and the three men lay in their freezing bags buried in drift. To eat was impossible, except during a brief lull in the blizzard.

After forty-eight hours of ultimate misery they managed to

cook pemmican while remaining in their bags and then, to their huge relief, Bowers located their tent blown some 500 yards down the hill. Their situation, with no workable blubber stove and only a single can of primus oil, was still dire so, reluctantly, they gave up further egg collecting and headed back towards Cape Evans. Their route in the darkness took them too far east and into a crevasse field. Bowers, at one point, dangled helplessly down one dark abyss until the others managed to heave his harness up with their blistered hands. The nightmare continued for two weeks with non-stop pain from the raw sores on their fingers, for all their blisters had long since burst and new skin did not grow in the cold.

On 1 August they arrived back at Cape Evans to find that only three of the eggs contained suitable embryos, not enough for useful analysis back in London, so the success of the main aim of the journey remained in doubt. For several weeks all three men hobbled about on frost-damaged feet but only a day after their return Scott noted: 'Wilson is very thin, but this morning very much his keen, wiry self – Bowers is quite himself today. Cherry-Garrard . . . still looks worn. It is evident that he has suffered most severely . . . Bowers has come through best . . . Never was such a sturdy, active, undefeatable little man.'

Comparing the effects of the three differing ration menus the men had eaten, Scott was able to formulate special rations, with Wilson's help, for the extreme cold expected on the high polar plateau. He called these Summit Rations and, following the Cape Crozier test, they contained a far greater fat content than any previous polar ration. Cherry-Garrard's menu had proved most effective since, despite his extreme debilitation compared with the other two, he had lost only one pound compared with Bowers' two and a half pounds and Wilson's three and a half pounds. This slight weight loss and the fact that no permanent frost damage occurred even to Cherry-Garrard's fingers was proof that, however uncomfortable in such extreme tempera tures, the clothing and bags would be more than adequate for

the Pole journey to come. All three men had many suggestions to improve different items of equipment and these were effected over the next two months. The journey had proved extremely worthwhile by way of a trial, even though the Emperor enigma was to remain unsolved. Their eggs did eventually end up with a specialist at Edinburgh University after many months spent misplaced by indifferent professors at the London Natural History Museum. They did not, however, provide conclusive proof that feathers developed from scales.

Later that winter Atkinson wandered around disorientated for five hours and was found by a search party with lanterns, already badly damaged in one hand. Atkinson knew that Scott would have been worried sick by his absence and was pleasantly surprised when he did not receive the expected paternally delivered volcano. 'It was all my own damned fault,' he told Cherry-Garrard, 'but Scott never slanged me at all.'

In August the twilit hours gradually increased until, on the 25th, the sun's rim was first glimpsed, along with an outbreak of champagne, song and merriment. Debenham noted: 'Everyone was out enjoying the return of the light and the Owner I saw, shouting to and playing with the dogs like a 2 year old.' Omelchenko, the Russian groom, long convinced that the auroral lights were evil, was overjoyed with their disappearance. He had been leaving precious cigarettes out in the snow to propitiate these spirits of winter. Gran celebrated with a can of wild duck, which he had borrowed from Shackleton's old supplies at Cape Royds. He placed the can on a primus to unfreeze it but half an hour later, 'suddenly there was an explosion, and millions of particles of tin-plate flew round our ears.'

With the sun's arrival, Scott at Cape Evans and Amundsen in the Bay of Whales each developed spring fever. Scott forced himself to be patient. A note he penned to a New Zealand friend summed up his feelings. 'I am fully alive to the complication of the situation by Amundsen, but as any attempt at a race might have been fatal to our chance of getting to the Pole at all, I

decided long ago to do exactly as I should have done had Amundsen not been down here. If he gets to the Pole, he is bound to do it rapidly with dogs, but one guesses that success will justify him, and that our venture will be "out of it". If he fails, he ought to hide! Anyway, he is taking a big risk, and perhaps deserves his luck if he gets through – but he is not there yet! Meanwhile, you may be sure we shall be going the best we can to carry out my plan.'

14

The Dangerous Glacier

Teddy Evans, a man small in stature but not in ego, was determined to reach the Pole. He sensibly recognised that manhauling ability would count highly when Scott came to choose his final team and Evans believed that skiing ability helped in manhauling. Gran wrote that the 'utmost thing on his mind was to become the expedition's best conditioned skier. Thus every day he wanted to compete with me. Of course he was motivated by a desire to qualify for the last trek to the Pole. Evans was clear that, as the second in command, should he have a chance to be with his leader, he must have better technical and physical qualifications than the others.' Evans approached Scott in August 1911 with the suggestion that he, Gran and Petty Officer Forde make an early spring journey out to Corner Camp to check that the depot was in good order and to clear it of snowdrifts. Scott's response, since he thought the plan unnecessary but presumably could find no good reason for refusing his second-in-command's request, was: 'If you people want to suffer, for Heaven's sake, Go!' The trio did in fact perform a useful task for the depot had drifted over and proved difficult to find. On the way back the highly competitive Evans pushed them to the limit covering thirty-four miles in a single twenty-four-hour stretch.

Scott himself wanted to escape from camp on any pretext. He hated inactivity and thrived on physical toil. He chose his companions for his spring outing: the scientist Simpson and two powerful sledgers, his old friend Taff Evans and his rising star Bowers. His stated aim was to check the rate of flow of the Ferrar Glacier by noting the current location of ice stakes placed there by Wright the previous autumn. This group covered 175

miles in ten days dragging 180 pounds each. Temperatures dropped to –40°C, despite coastal rather than Barrier conditions. Simpson's face was covered in frost blisters and the last day's travel included twenty-one miles manhauling into the teeth of a cutting headwind. Bowers described the trip as a picnic, which showed he was already fully recovered from the Crozier penguin journey, and Scott noted that his erstwhile storekeeper was a positive wonder. 'I never met such a sledge traveller.' If Bowers had not already figured in Scott's mind as one of his prospective Pole sledgers, his choice was now probably assured. Taff Evans, who was as ever a tower of strength on this trip, was another likely choice for the Pole team. Scott described the Ferrar Glacier foray as 'a remarkably pleasant and instructive little spring journey'.

On 1 September, two weeks before Scott's outing, Cecil Meares and Demetri Gerof went to Hut Point with all the dogs and one week after them, forty miles to the east, Roald Amundsen, too impatient to wait for more suitable temperatures and ignoring the dire warnings of his number two, Hjalmar Johansen, set out for the Pole on 8 September 1911 with seven men and all his best dogs. Only a week later, after sledging at temperatures down to –56°C, he was back at his base with his men in disarray, with serious damage to the feet of both men and dogs and accusations against him of cowardice. Five dogs had frozen to death.

The morning after the Norwegian team's return from this false start, Amundsen wrote: 'At the breakfast table . . . Johansen found it suitable to utter unflattering statements about me and my position as leader for our enterprise here. It was not only our return yesterday that he found indefensible in the highest degree, *but* also much else I had taken the liberty of doing as leader in the course of time. The gross and unforgivable part of [Johansen's statements] is that they were made in everybody's hearing. The bull must be taken by the horns; I must make an example immediately.' Amundsen quelled his mutiny by

banishing the two main troublemakers from his Pole team. Scott was never to suffer from such an internal revolt for three reasons: his selection of personnel, the expedition's basic framework of discipline which even his non-naval scientists understood and, mainly, because he never subjected his men or his animals to such plainly foolhardy travel. Wilson had been allowed his winter journey and Teddy Evans had asked to travel on the Barrier (at the same time as Amundsen's fiasco, but only for a distance of about fifty miles and hence of very limited real risk. These and other examples of accidents under Scott's overall leadership, including the final tragedy, at no point rival Amundsen's direct stupidity, which riled some of his men into near mutiny in the spring of 1911.

Although Amundsen's ruthless reaction crushed further rebellion he never forgave Johansen and humiliated him back home in Norway, which may well have contributed to his subsequent suicide. In the days after his false start he decided to postpone his next attempt to set out until the middle of October. As a result of bad weather, he did not actually start until 19 October, only twelve days before the British left their base. The interim month was a time of bitterness and tension in the Norwegian hut.

Six weeks before the British departure date, on 13 September 1911, Scott gave out his sledging plans, the result of many hours closeted with his chief planner and administrator, the ever-cheerful Bowers. Using a hand-drawn map on the supper table, he addressed the crowded room and pointed out the three main stages to the Pole — the Barrier, the glacier and the plateau. 'The whole journey there and back,' he said, 'is about 1,530 geographical miles, longer than any sledge journey ever yet made. Since Shackleton's figures are our best guide, I have laid these prospective plans upon data taken from his book . . . On this calculation the whole journey will be 144 days. I repeat that our plans are laid as though Amundsen does not exist.'

Although Scott did not have much confidence in the motorised

sledges, he planned that they should set out fully loaded a week before the main party, just in case they proved to be of use. Neither was Scott relying on the ponies or the dogs to be of use after they reached the Beardmore Glacier – he planned on manhauling alone from that point. Three teams of manhaulers would set out, each comprising three or four men. After a fortnight one unit would return and after a further two weeks the second would leave the last unit alone to make for the Pole.

Across the Barrier the plan was that ten ponies would tow a 550-pound load each and, as they tired, would be shot and used for food. The final two ponies would be shot on the thirty-fourth day out. Scott was hoping that the two dog teams would tow their loads as far as the base of the glacier and that skis might also be useful up to that point. Ten years previously he, Evans and Lashly had lasted for thirty-five days on the plateau with some difficulty. This time Scott was planning a stay of seventy five days. 'I don't know whether it is possible for men to last out that time, I almost doubt it.'

Scott added many minor details. He also indirectly praised Oates by mentioning that the ponies were in a much fitter condition than those taken on the depot trip the previous summer and that the improved fodder had greatly strengthened them. The manhaul rations, much improved by Bowers and Wilson since the Crozier winter journey, had been divided into Standard or Summit Rations, the latter designed to cope with the greater demands of the extreme cold haulage expected on the plateau.

If the expedition did not reach the Pole and the Norwegians failed as well, there would be a second attempt the following year using mules. This had been recommended by Oates after the previous year's depot-placing trip and Scott had immediately ordered them from India. The men would not carry pony whips. If need be they would use the reins, and the ponies would wear snow shoes. They would be cleanly shot before they suffered more than might be expected had they remained in Manchuria as haulage beasts and none would spend more than thirty-four

days out on the ice. Scott had learnt on the depot trip that his ponies would suffer if they set out on a date suitable to race the Norwegians so, this summer, they would be travelling only in the sort of weather they could cope with back home in Manchuria.

Scott had already tried dogs in Antarctica where nobody had ever used them before for any distance greater than a ten-mile sea ice trip. On his first journey in 1903 with Wilson and Shackleton, when their dogs fell by the wayside, the three men nonetheless covered nearly 900 miles. His next journey, manhauling with Evans and Lashly, was another huge and unprecedented success, including thirty-five days spent on the high plateau. On the *Nimrod* expedition, Shackleton had almost made it to the Pole by manhaul and with ponies but without a single dog. When Shackleton wrote about that remarkable journey he made clear that the horrific crevasses of the Beardmore Glacier, the same route Scott would have to tackle, were utterly unsuited for dogs or ponies. Scott had already watched almost his entire dog team drop into a single crevasse. How much worse then for a dog team on this crevasse-ridden, 120-mile long, 9,000-foot-high glacier which lay ahead? And what did the greatest polar writer of all, Cherry-Garrard, a serious critic of Scott's methods, think of Scott's decision not to use dogs on the Beardmore? 'I do not believe it possible to take dogs up and down, and over the ice disturbances at the junction with the plateau . . . but the best thing you could do with dogs in pressure such as we all experienced on our way down would be to drop them into the nearest chasm. If you can avoid such messes well and good: if not, you must not rely on dogs, and the people who talk of these things have no knowledge . . . If Scott was going up the Beardmore he was probably right not to take dogs.'

Once Scott knew that manhaul was to be the most likely means to achieve success he was proud to use it and not afraid to tell the world of his men's manhauling prowess. Many of today's expeditioners strive for purist achievements that are 'unsupported' by modern transport. Messner's great solo Everest

ascent without oxygen or Sherpa aid made him more proud than many of his previous triumphs using all available aids.

So Scott's Pole plan was evolved out of common sense and, democratically, he asked for a critical response from his men, the majority of whom were scientists with analytical minds and not afraid to speak out. They had, after all, spent the entire winter in heated debate at the same table as Scott. They were neither 'yes' men nor Royal Navy 'yes, sirs'. Doubtless there must have been incidental queries from the usual quarters, the pessimists and the perfectionists, but given the chance to air their views not a soul spoke out. The Scott–Bowers planning had been thorough, conservative and based on the most solid model available, the *Nimrod* journey.

What interested the men most about Scott's plan was the list of participants. Ten pony leaders, including Scott, would set out from Cape Evans on 1 November, along with the dogs under Meares and Gerof, a week after the motor party consisting of Bernard Day and Bill Lashly under Teddy Evans's command. Apart from Day, Meares and Gerof any of the others might end up in the final push to the Pole, depending on their fitness at the time. The pony leaders were named as Scott, Wilson, Bowers, Oates, Atkinson, Wright, Cherry-Garrard, Taff Evans, Crean and Keohane. Scott had spent a great deal of time picking his key men. Throughout the long winter he had made notes of the good and bad points of each individual to add to his initial impressions from his time in *Terra Nova*. Generally his judgments proved sound but he was not infallible, as events would soon prove.

Scott could now only wait for November temperatures when he could safely allow the ponies on to the Barrier. He knew that Amundsen, his dogs able to face colder, windier conditions, was likely to set out much earlier. Scott's two great personal weaknesses, his impatience and his black dog moods, attacked him at this time, not helped by a number of minor setbacks. Three of his men were incapacitated, Forde with frostbite,

Clissold with various injuries after falling off an iceberg whilst posing for a Ponting photograph, and Debenham from a football knee injury. One of the dogs died of an unknown sickness, which could easily infect the others, and when the two motor sledges set out on 24 October 1911 an axle casing split. 'It is trying,' Scott wrote, 'but I am past despondency.'

It did not help Scott that, whether or not his Pole attempt succeeded, the expedition was deeply in debt. He had raised enough money to reach Antarctica, just, but he knew that debts and interest on debts were mounting back in London. He had already ploughed all his personal savings into the venture. When *Terra Nova* called he would be away on the ice but she would take his mail back home for him, and to assure his bank manager that he was doing his best, he called everyone together in mid-October and, explaining the expedition's serious deficit, asked if those who could would agree to forgo their pay for a whole year. The response was immediate and generous, enabling Scott to sign a formal indemnity note releasing the expedition office from paying a number of salaries, including his own.

Six days before the Pole team set out Kathleen, back in London, had a nightmare. 'Rather a horrid day today. I woke up having had a bad dream about you, and then Peter came very close to me and said emphatically "Daddy won't come back", as though in answer to my silly thoughts.'

If Scott was himself having bad dreams it was probably about the motors. Bernard Day did manage to fix the split axle case and late on 24 October Teddy Evans's two motorised sledge teams set out from Cape Evans towing three tons of stores. 'Hooper accompanied Lashly's car,' Teddy Evans wrote, 'and I worked with Day . . . Many doubts were expressed as to the use of the despised motors – but we heeded not the gibes of our friends.' Scott had told Evans that he would be happy enough if the motors could be coaxed at least as far as White Island. The four men were determined to give it their all. The track chains skidded about with little traction on the hard sea ice,

averaging but one mile an hour. Evans noted that before the final breakdown 'the motors advanced the necessaries for the Southern journey 51 miles over rough, slippery, and crevassed ice and gave the ponies the chance to march light as far as Corner Camp – this is all that Oates asked for.'

Herbert Ponting travelled for some while with the motors to photograph and film Teddy Evans's group. Afterwards he wrote: 'No praise could be too great for the persistence with which Day and Lashly struggled with these motors. Once, they worked all night – in a temperature of 25°F below zero, in a stiff wind and, regardless of frostbites and chills, they dismantled one of the engines, and substituted for a broken connecting rod the only spare they had with them.' He concluded: 'Knowing in what respects Scott's motors failed, and why, it would now be possible to build machines that would work satisfactorily in the Antarctic. To the memory of Scott must therefore be given the honour due to a pioneer of motor traction in the Polar Regions, for he used it with a certain measure of success.'

Tryggve Gran later noted that the motor sledges were not regarded as a failure on the expedition but, on the contrary, as a considerable success. Cherry-Garrard, who survived the expedition and went on to serve in the First World War, added: 'The general design seemed to be right, all that was now wanted was experience. As an experiment they were successful in the South, but Scott never knew their true possibilities; for they were the direct ancestors of the "tanks" in France.'

Seventy-eight years later, I crossed Antarctica with two friends along the approximate line of the Zero Meridian, ending up at Hut Point. We used three small open snowmobiles with air-cooled 2-stroke engines, each towing a 1,000-pound sledgeload. These were the direct descendants of Scott's prototypes and they enabled us to complete the first crossing of Antarctica that did not approach the Pole from opposite sides of the continent.

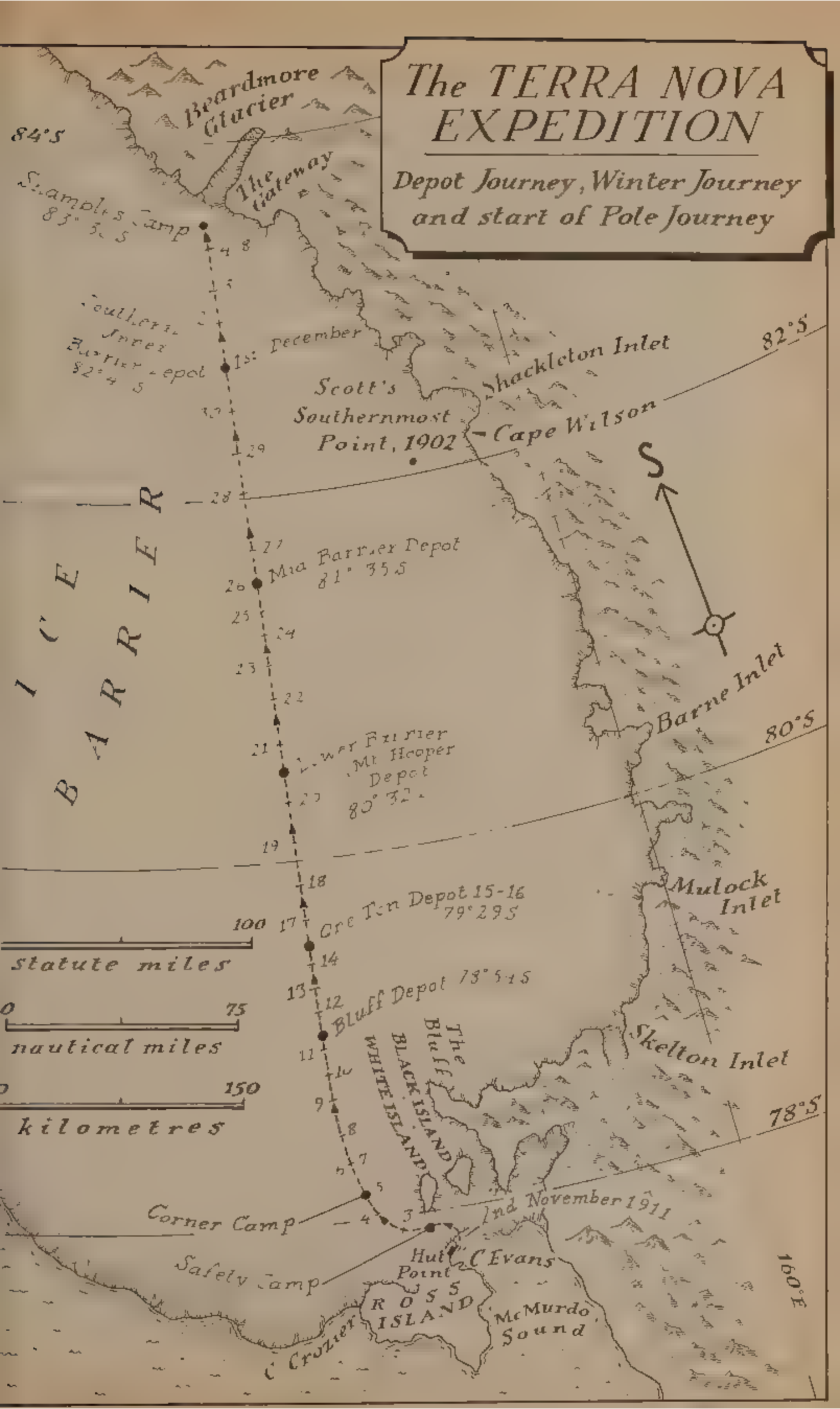
When the machines would go no further, on 2 November 1911, Teddy Evans and his men re-packed 740 pounds of motor borne

supplies onto a manhaul sledge and continued south, laying a trail for the ponies and dog teams that would follow. Every three miles they built snow cairns as markers. Given any sunlight, such markers are highly efficient, as they act as reflectors over many miles and are often more effective than thin black poles. In a whiteout neither the cairns nor the markers will show up, unless you bump into them by chance.

The main expedition groups set out as planned on 1 November. Ten ponies followed Teddy Evans's southerly trail, each led by one man and hauling a sledgeload apiece. Halting at Hut Point someone remembered they had forgotten to pack the Union Jack donated by the Queen, so Scott used the landline telephone he had installed in the winter to call Gran at Cape Evans. The Norwegian skied over the sea ice and gave Scott the flag. Neither man missed the irony involved. They shook hands and Scott said, 'You're young, you've got your life before you. Take care of yourself. God bless you.'

By 4 November they were onto the Barrier, following Teddy Evans's trail, and all went well. In due course they came to first one and then the other motorised sledge, deserted and forlorn in the wide white horizons, but they plodded on through the sunless haze without perspective. The ponies varied in speed and wide gaps opened between them. In whiteout conditions no man could even see the trail. Bowers, on one occasion, straining his gaze ahead, thought he saw a herd of black cattle approaching but soon found they were only pony droppings. Attempts to fit the two types of *hestersko* were foiled by the ponies, who found them irksome. Luckily, following the trodden trail, they did not seem to flounder, as had their late colleagues the previous year.

The men wore their warm and smooth-soled *finnesko*, comfortable and effective so long as no great traction was required. Attempts to use skis when leading horses on halters were unsuccessful because the swish of the ski-blades spooked the animals and nobody wanted to be run over by a bolting horse or by the heavy sledge that it towed.


The TERRA NOVA EXPEDITION
Depot Journey, Winter Journey and start of Pole Journey
Beardmore Glacier
84°S
The Gateway
Scamp's Camp
83° 5. S
Southern Journey Barrier Depot
82° 4. S
15th December
Scott's Southernmost Point, 1902
Shackleton Inlet
82°S
Cape Wilson
S
ICE BARRIER
Mid Barrier Depot
81° 35 S
Barne Inlet
80°S
Lower Barrier Mt Hooper Depot
80° 32 S
Cairn Depot 15-16
79° 29 S
Mulock Inlet
100
statute miles
0
75
nautical miles
0
150
kilometres
Bluff Depot 78° 51 S
The Bluff
BLACK ISLAND
WHITE ISLAND
Skelton Inlet
78°S
Corner Camp
Safety Camp
1st November 1911
Hut Point
C Evans
ROSS ISLAND
McMurdo Sound
Crozier
160°E

No land was visible for days, not even White Island or Minna Bluff as they plodded on over the Barrier where sky and snow merged into a single pall of whiteness. They travelled by night for the benefit of the ponies. The temperature hovered around zero Fahrenheit for summer had arrived. Bowers noted: 'While the sun is shining we have an excellent little sundial – an idea of Captain Scott's. You set the shadow to the time and there you are – it is the simplest device imaginable and useful in many ways besides being the best thing to steer by.' But most of the time the settled weather that was normal at that time stayed away and Bowers added on 13 November: 'The weather was about as poisonous as one could wish; a fresh breeze and driving snow from the E. with an awful surface . . . I have never seen such snow down here before – large soft flakes; it makes the surface very bad for the sledges.'

Scott's moods swung up and down with the weather and the snow surface and he was not the only one. Cherry-Garrard noted: 'It is curious to see how depressed all our diaries become when this bad weather obtained, and how quickly we must have cheered up whenever the sun came out. There is no doubt that a similar effect was produced upon the ponies.' There was no spare fuel to make water for the ponies but they had all been trained to eat snow during the winter. Scott wrote: 'When eating snow he [Chinaman] habitually takes too large a mouthful and swallows it; it is comic to watch him, because when the snow chills his inside he shuffles about with all four legs and wears a most fretful, aggrieved expression: but no sooner has the snow melted than he seizes another mouthful.'

Because the ponies had differing speeds, Scott started out from camp each day with the slowest first. On the same principle Scott had told Meares and Gerof to stay for several days back at Hut Point before coming on to catch up with the ponies. This would save a good deal of dog food and some rations. Meares arrived far earlier than Scott had hoped, on 7 November 1911, having travelled in blizzard conditions that had the pony group

camped and tentbound. There were many reasons for this. Huskies' eyes have nictitating eyelids that cope easily with even horizontally blown snow, but ponies have no such mechanism. The dogs could also follow a trail without having to see it, especially one as scent laden as that of Scott's pony group.

Although Scott was annoyed that by arriving a lot earlier than needed Meares would waste precious dog food, he was also extremely impressed by the dogs' performance to the extent that he told Cherry-Garrard: 'It is satisfactory to find the dogs will pull the loads and can be driven to face such a wind as we have had. It shows that they ought to be able to help us a good deal.' He added that his previous attempts at dog-driving had obviously not got the best from his teams and that, maybe, Meares could be used beyond the base of the Beardmore. At that stage he saw this as an option should he fall badly behind schedule.

At this time, despite the mostly foul weather, the ponies were all setting a far better pace, some twelve miles a day, than during the depot-laying trip. Oates noted: 'Scott told me today he was very pleased with the way the ponies were going and was kind enough to say he owed me a lot for the trouble I had taken. I must say the ponies are going now better than I expected.' Oates's pony, Christopher, was a veritable devil and could not be stopped from camp to camp. Only Oates could deal with him and only by keeping going all day without even a lunch halt en route. Scott wrote: 'The Soldier thinks Chinaman will last for a good many days yet, which is an extraordinary confession of hope for him . . . if they pull through well, all the thanks will be due to Oates.' Oates, more debilitated than the others, thanks to the added exertion required to deal with Christopher, wrote: 'if only these wretched old cripples of ours can stick it and we get all the stuff to the glacier I think we shall do the trick . . . Meares said he was surprised how well the ponies were going which is rather amusing considering he was responsible for buying the old screws.'

No land was visible for days, not even White Island or Minna Bluff as they plodded on over the Barrier where sky and snow merged into a single pall of whiteness. They travelled by night for the benefit of the ponies. The temperature hovered around zero Fahrenheit for summer had arrived. Bowers noted: 'While the sun is shining we have an excellent little sundial — an idea of Captain Scott's. You set the shadow to the time and there you are — it is the simplest device imaginable and useful in many ways besides being the best thing to steer by.' But most of the time the settled weather that was normal at that time stayed away and Bowers added on 13 November: 'The weather was about as poisonous as one could wish; a fresh breeze and driving snow from the E. with an awful surface . . . I have never seen such snow down here before — large soft flakes; it makes the surface very bad for the sledges.'

Scott's moods swung up and down with the weather and the snow surface and he was not the only one. Cherry-Garrard noted: 'It is curious to see how depressed all our diaries become when this bad weather obtained, and how quickly we must have cheered up whenever the sun came out. There is no doubt that a similar effect was produced upon the ponies.' There was no spare fuel to make water for the ponies but they had all been trained to eat snow during the winter. Scott wrote: 'When eating snow he [Chinaman] habitually takes too large a mouthful and swallows it; it is comic to watch him, because when the snow chills his inside he shuffles about with all four legs and wears a most fretful, aggrieved expression: but no sooner has the snow melted than he seizes another mouthful.'

Because the ponies had differing speeds, Scott started out from camp each day with the slowest first. On the same principle Scott had told Meares and Gerof to stay for several days back at Hut Point before coming on to catch up with the ponies. This would save a good deal of dog food and some rations. Meares arrived far earlier than Scott had hoped, on 7 November 1911, having travelled in blizzard conditions that had the pony group

camped and tentbound. There were many reasons for this. Huskies' eyes have nictitating eyelids that cope easily with even horizontally blown snow, but ponies have no such mechanism. The dogs could also follow a trail without having to see it, especially one as scent-laden as that of Scott's pony group.

Although Scott was annoyed that by arriving a lot earlier than needed Meares would waste precious dog food, he was also extremely impressed by the dogs' performance to the extent that he told Cherry-Garrard: 'It is satisfactory to find the dogs will pull the loads and can be driven to face such a wind as we have had. It shows that they ought to be able to help us a good deal.' He added that his previous attempts at dog-driving had obviously not got the best from his teams and that, maybe, Meares could be used beyond the base of the Beardmore. At that stage he saw this as an option should he fall badly behind schedule.

At this time, despite the mostly foul weather, the ponies were all setting a far better pace, some twelve miles a day, than during the depot laying trip. Oates noted: 'Scott told me today he was very pleased with the way the ponies were going and was kind enough to say he owed me a lot for the trouble I had taken. I must say the ponies are going now better than I expected.' Oates's pony, Christopher, was a veritable devil and could not be stopped from camp to camp. Only Oates could deal with him and only by keeping going all day without even a lunch halt en route. Scott wrote: 'The Soldier thinks Chinaman will last for a good many days yet, which is an extraordinary confession of hope for him . . . if they pull through well, all the thanks will be due to Oates.' Oates, more debilitated than the others, thanks to the added exertion required to deal with Christopher, wrote: 'if only these wretched old cripples of ours can stick it and we get all the stuff to the glacier I think we shall do the trick . . . Meares said he was surprised how well the ponies were going which is rather amusing considering he was responsible for buying the old screws.'

That same day, 13 November 1911, a few hundred miles to the south-west, Amundsen's men came to the southern extent of the Barrier and made a 'marvellous discovery' right on the axis of his advance. With remarkable good fortune, by heading south from the Bay of Whales, he had chanced directly on the foot of the Axel Heiberg Glacier, which offered a steep pathway south and up to the polar plateau. The gods smiled doubly on him because this glacier was sixty miles further south than the Beardmore, which meant 120 miles less to be spent on the dreaded heights of the plateau. Amundsen had set out sixty miles and twelve days ahead and was now some 300 miles further south than Scott.

On 15 November Scott's men, knowing nothing of the Norwegians' stroke of luck, pushed on to One Ton Depot where they rested for a day and lightened the pony loads by dropping off bundles of seal liver for consumption on the return trip. Now the strong ponies towed 580 pounds, the weak ones 400 pounds and each dog team 800 pounds. Scott was now able to review his plans, based on the performance of the various teams over the 130 miles from Hut Point. In another nine days the first pony would be shot, Scott told Oates, and the last at the foot of the Glacier. No attempt would be made to take horses onto the Beardmore.

Scott was increasingly anxious as the days of bad weather meant lagging behind the key indicator of likely success or failure, the record of Shackleton's journey. Frank Wild, who had been in *Discovery* and *Nimrod*, had given Scott Shackleton's daily progress chart and this became Scott's bible. So long as he could keep ahead, or at least abreast, of the schedule set by Shackleton, there was a chance of success. By late November, in constant fog, they were some six days 'in the red' and Scott was not a happy man. For the key last stretch of the Barrier everything depended on the ponies, so Scott was constantly and understandably questioning Oates, who reacted badly to what he considered to be backseat driving. 'Scott realises now what

awful cripples our ponies are,' he wrote, 'and carries a face like a tired seaboot in consequence.'

Scott acknowledged the ponies' unsuitability in a letter to Kathleen. 'Just a note from the Barrier to say that I love you . . . Everything is going pretty well for the present though we had a bad scare about the condition of the ponies last week. The animals are not well selected. I knew this in New Zealand, though I didn't tell you. That they are going well now and bidding fair to carry us through the first stage of our journey is due entirely to Oates. He is another treasure.'

On 21 November, at 80°32'S, the pony group caught up with Teddy Evans and his three manhaulers, who had laid the trail ever since abandoning their motor sledges. Teddy, always competitive like Scott, had forced a powerful pace with the result that he arrived early and had to wait for six days eating up precious food while doing nothing, at the point he had himself stipulated as the rendezvous. To avoid boredom he and his men had built a fifteen-foot-high cairn beside their camp.

From now on the expedition advanced towards the Beardmore in five little groups, setting out at intervals from each camp: first the manhaulers under Teddy Evans, the navigator; then the three pony groups; and finally the dogs. Even Scott called the cavalcade a somewhat disorganised procession. On 24 November, and according to plan, the first men turned back, a single small sledge with Bernard Day and Frank Hooper. Scott sent with them instructions for Simpson, in charge at the base: 'ponies doing fairly well. I hope we shall get through to the Glacier without difficulty but to make sure I am carrying the dog teams further than I intended at first – the teams may be late returning, unfit for further work or non existant . . . In case [they] are unable to [carry stores to One Ton Camp] it will be necessary to organize a man hauling party to undertake it.' This message shows that Scott was fully prepared to be as flexible in changing his original plans as was necessary to adapt them to the ever-changing weather and surface conditions.

With Day and Hooper on their way back to base, everyone else pushed on into a seventeen mile per hour headwind after shooting Jehu, the weakest of the ponies. 'Meares,' Scott noted, 'has just come up to report that Jehu made four feeds for the dogs. He cut up very well and had quite a lot of fat on him. Meares says another pony will carry him to the Glacier.' Charles Wright wrote that he and other pony drivers thenceforward watched Meares with suspicion lest his eyes next alighted meaningfully on their particular charge.

Bowers realised, as did Wright, that the considerable amount of fat revealed on the dead Jehu, the weakest of the ponies, showed that he had been fully capable of working a good deal further towards the glacier. The ponies were clearly being shot to plan to provide dog food or to maintain plenty of fodder for the survivors and not because they were struggling to keep going. However, Bowers, who so cared for the ponies that he had willingly risked his own life for them the previous summer, was pleased that they now met their ends without suffering. 'A year's care,' he wrote, 'and good feeding, three weeks' work with good treatment, a reasonable load and a good ration, and then a painless end. If anybody can call that cruel I cannot either understand it or agree with them.' On 28 November they shot Chinaman. Oates said by way of an obituary: 'He was a game little devil and must have been a goodish kind of pony 15 years ago.'

The next day the mist banks rolled away. After 370 miles of often featureless Barrier gloom and a month of wordless plodding to the crunch of hoof and boot, they were rewarded by a breathtaking panorama. The triple-peaked Mount Markham towered above them, rising 14,000 feet into a clear blue sky. Cutting obliquely across their course, a series of black headland cliffs disappeared into the far distance to the west and east. 'Altogether things look much better,' Scott wrote, 'and everyone is in excellent spirits.'

They ate Chinaman that night. His erstwhile leader, Charles Wright, recorded that his pony died of old age precipitated by

a bullet. He expressed himself proud to have saved the animal for so long from becoming dog meat, but was now happy to eat him. They made 'pony hoosh' and found it sweet and good, though tough. Because their cooking fuel was rationed they ate the meat semi raw, which would have ensured a maximum Vitamin C content, although they did not know it at the time. 'Hoosh' was their name for their daily stew into which pretty much everything was thrown from biscuits, raisins, curry paste and pemmican, to cocoa powder.

At their camp east of Mount Markham they were four miles beyond Scott's 1902 'farthest south'. Now only Shackleton's group had ever travelled the southerly route they would follow. In 1902 Scott, with some help from dogs, had taken fifty-eight days to reach this point and Shackleton, with only four ponies but far better weather and surfaces, had taken twenty three days. This time Scott had covered the distance in twenty-nine days and so was still six days behind schedule. Nonetheless they were at the 83rd parallel, only 420 miles from the Pole, and Scott wrote: 'everything looks well if the weather will only give us a chance to see our way to the Glacier.'

On 1 December, Oates shot his own pony, the fiendish Christopher, who moved at the moment of execution and careered around the camp one last time causing mayhem before Oates could despatch him. The horsemeat butchery was the job of the dog-drivers who, being the fastest movers, had time on their hands. By now everyone could see how the dogs, inferior though they were to Amundsen's Greenland huskies, were superior to pony or manhaul power; at least on the crevasse-free parts of the Barrier. Bowers noted that the chances of Amundsen and his 120 dogs having beaten them were looking good.

Wilson's pony Nobby had by this point allowed snowshoes to be fitted to his hooves and Scott wrote: 'There is no doubt that these snow-shoes are *the* thing for ponies.' The next pony to be shot was Victor. Bowers, his devoted leader, was upset and critical. '[Victor] did a splendid march and kept ahead all

day, and as usual marched into camp first, pulling over 450lbs. easily. It seemed an awful pity to have to shoot a great strong animal.' Scott's plan of reaching the glacier with the last one of two ponies still in haulage had worked well. The animals, so often criticised as poorly chosen, had done just as well as any others could have, given what was expected of them.

More of their meat should have been preserved and more carefully buried at the depots to avoid deterioration by sunlight. This was the task of Meares and Gerof once the pony group had left each day. There is no way of knowing quite how diligently Meares followed Scott's orders regarding the pony meat. Charles Wright and Cherry-Garrard both grumbled that more of the pony meat should have been stashed at the foot of the *Beardmore* but they also acknowledged that such laments were all very well with the benefits of hindsight. Even the cautious and meticulous Bowers, in charge of rations, said nothing at the time.

Still led by Teddy Evans, the expedition began to cross undulating ice ridges up to twenty-five feet high. To their east the chaotic outflow of the Beardmore Glacier was clearly visible spilling out onto the Barrier in a series of heavily crevassed waves. Ahead could be seen a rounded hill feature, strewn with boulders, called Mount Hope, which marked the only passable ramp from the Barrier onto the Glacier and had been named by Shackleton the Gateway. In one more half day's march they would cross the treacherous shear-crack zone between Barrier and glacier, which could only be done in good visibility. Cherry Garrard wrote: 'It was important that we should have fine clear weather during the next few days when we should be approaching the land. On his previous southern journey Scott had been prevented from reaching the range of mountains which ran along to our right by a huge chasm. This phenomenon is known to geologists as a shear crack and is formed by the movement of a glacier away from the land which bounds it.' Shackleton had stumbled upon the only possible route onto the Beardmore

Glacier and with great boldness had then found his way up its 120-mile, 9,000-foot ascent, riven much of the way by some of the largest impassable crevasse fields and icefalls in Antarctica.

At this point, when Scott least needed it, bad weather set in. Blizzards are to be expected but not, as one twenty-first-century US atmospheric scientist, Dr Susan Solomon, put it to me, 'real humdingers at *that* time and in *that* place'. On 3 December Scott and Bowers, on skis, nosed their way forward in nil visibility. They managed ten miles before camping in a blizzard. Scott wrote, 'The pony wall blew down, huge drifts collected, and the sledges were quickly buried. It was the strongest wind I have known here in summer.' The temperature rose rapidly and both men and ponies were soon sodden with slush underfoot. Bowers, swinging the thermometer, found to his disbelief a recording of 0.6°C.

Scott was depressed. 'What on earth does such weather mean at this time of year? It is more than our share of ill-fortune.' Oates noted: 'I think we shall get to the Pole now, but I think there is a very good chance of the Norskies getting there before us.' The blizzard continued for four days and nights: a time of cold, wet misery for men and animals. Teddy Evans wrote: 'Another blizzard started, which tore our chances of any great success to ribbons – it was the biggest knock-down blow . . . to date.'

And what of Amundsen? While Scott's men waited out the wet blizzard, the Norwegians had already ascended their chosen glacier. They first named it Folgefonni and later the Axel Heiberg, after a sponsor, and found it a very different place from the Beardmore as described by Shackleton. The Axel Heiberg has since been negotiated by a New Zealand team in 1961–62, led by Wally Herbert (British) using dog teams, and by an Anglo-Norwegian team in the 1980s, led by a scientist, Monika Kristensen. Neither group had troubles with crevasses, unlike those teams, including my own and Reinhold Messner's, which have

since 1912 travelled the Beardmore. The Axel Heiberg icefalls, though steeper than the Beardmore's, are easier to circumvent and Amundsen met good weather and clear visibility at all times when having to find a way around dangerous ice obstacles rather than merely heading south through fog.

Scott had to wait for his four-day blizzard to clear so that he could find his way across the lethal crevasses of the shear-crack. But because Amundsen was already up on the plateau, he had moderate weather, nothing like Scott's: elevation is everything in this region for the storm in question was what scientists call 'upslope'. It pushes towards a mountain and runs out of steam after a short climb. The Norwegians were well out of reach of Scott's blizzard.

On 8 December, the fourth day of the blizzard, Scott grew seriously worried about fodder for the horses, of which there was just enough for one more day, and for the men who that morning started to consume the special Summit Rations intended for use only after they had reached the glacier, which was still nine miles to the south. The wind at last seemed to lessen in power, so Scott roused the men. To reach their sledges they had to dig down through four feet of drifted snow. To see whether a full load could be dragged through the morass of heavy wet snow, Teddy Evans and his group tried to haul four men sitting on their sledge. With skis they could shift the load only a yard at a time. Without skis, they merely sank to their knees.

Then they tried to haul a load behind Wilson's pony, Nobby, and he sank to his belly. Wilson felt that the ponies could go no farther and Teddy Evans, although he said nothing, noted in his diary: 'I think it would be fairer to shoot them now, for what is a possible 12 miles' help? We could now, pulling 200 lb per man, start off with the proper man hauling parties and our total weights, so why keep these wretched animals starving and shivering in the blizzard on a mere chance of their being able to give us a little drag? Why, *our* party have never been out of

harness for nearly 400 miles, so why should not the other eight men buckle to and do some dragging?'

Oates, on the other hand, told Scott he was sure the ponies could manage another march and reach the Gateway despite the evil surface. So, on 9 December, the sodden gear was loaded, Bowers and Cherry-Garrard went ahead to break a trail and the rest followed as best they could.

On this last pony march each leader gave his animal half of his own biscuit ration for the day. Cherry-Garrard wrote:

There was not one man there who would willingly have caused pain to a living thing. But what else was to be done — we could not leave our pony depot in that bog. Hour after hour we plugged on: and we dare not halt for lunch, we knew we could never start again. After crossing many waves huge pressure ridges suddenly showed themselves all round, and we got on to a steep rise with the coastal chasm on our right hand appearing as a great dip full of enormous pressure . . . For two hours we zig-zagged about . . . Scott joined us . . . Every step we sank about fifteen inches . . . Meanwhile Snatcher was saving the situation in snow-shoes, and led the line of ponies. Snippets nearly fell back into a big crevasse, into which his hind quarters fell: but they managed to unharness him, and scramble him out.

At some point Scott decided to scout parallel with the chasm and they at last came to a crossing place. Slowly but surely the ponies dragged their loads up to a point only two miles short of the top of the Gateway ramp. At this place, according to Cherry Garrard: 'The horses could hardly move, sank up to their bellies, and finally lay down.' A grim Oates despatched the weary animals with five quick bullets. They named the place Shambles Camp. Somewhere up at the top of the Axel Heiberg Glacier, Amundsen shot twenty-two of his dogs and called the site the Butcher's Shop.

Scott had hoped to reach the Gateway with the last pony or ponies at least six days earlier. He knew that at this point

Shackleton had tried to push on with his one remaining pony, Socks. Without warning the pony had disappeared into a hidden crevasse very nearly taking his sledge leader, Frank Wild, with him. The vital sledge was rescued but only just. Shackleton wrote: 'We lay down on our stomachs and looked over into the gulf but no sound or sign came to us; a black bottomless pit it seemed to be.' Three days later Shackleton reached the sheer blue rippled ice above the line of drift snow from the Barrier and then his sledges slid with ease. Scott's blizzard had dumped deep snow much further up the glacier so, at a time when he should have made the very best progress, and in mid-summer, the curse of the blizzard's residue stayed with him.

Could Scott have foretold the likelihood of such weather? The only available record of conditions in that area was Shackleton's and he had benefited from mostly good weather and surfaces around the glacier's base. US atmospheric scientist Dr Susan Solomon wrote:

A wet, warm blizzard of such extended duration with winds in excess of fifty miles per hour has not yet been observed in eight years of December data at [one] nearby automated weather station . . or in fourteen years of December data at [another] . . . The longest and windiest storm recorded by modern instruments in this region of the Barrier occurred in December 1995. It lasted about two days and displayed peak winds of about forty [statute] miles per hour. But Scott and his men were tent-bound while the blizzard dumped heavy snow for four full days and they estimated the wind speed at up to eighty miles per hour. Scott and his men were the victims of bad luck in this exceptionally severe and prolonged storm, which must have been due to a tongue of warm, wet air from the ocean that pushed unusually far across the Barrier.

Scott the fatalist soon emerged; all was not lost. Now was the time for manhauling. Apart from a four-day deficit of Summit Rations and a few days' lag behind the optimal schedule,

all his plans were going fine. He attributed this state of affairs entirely to Oates.

Wilson exclaimed, 'Well! I congratulate you, Titus.'

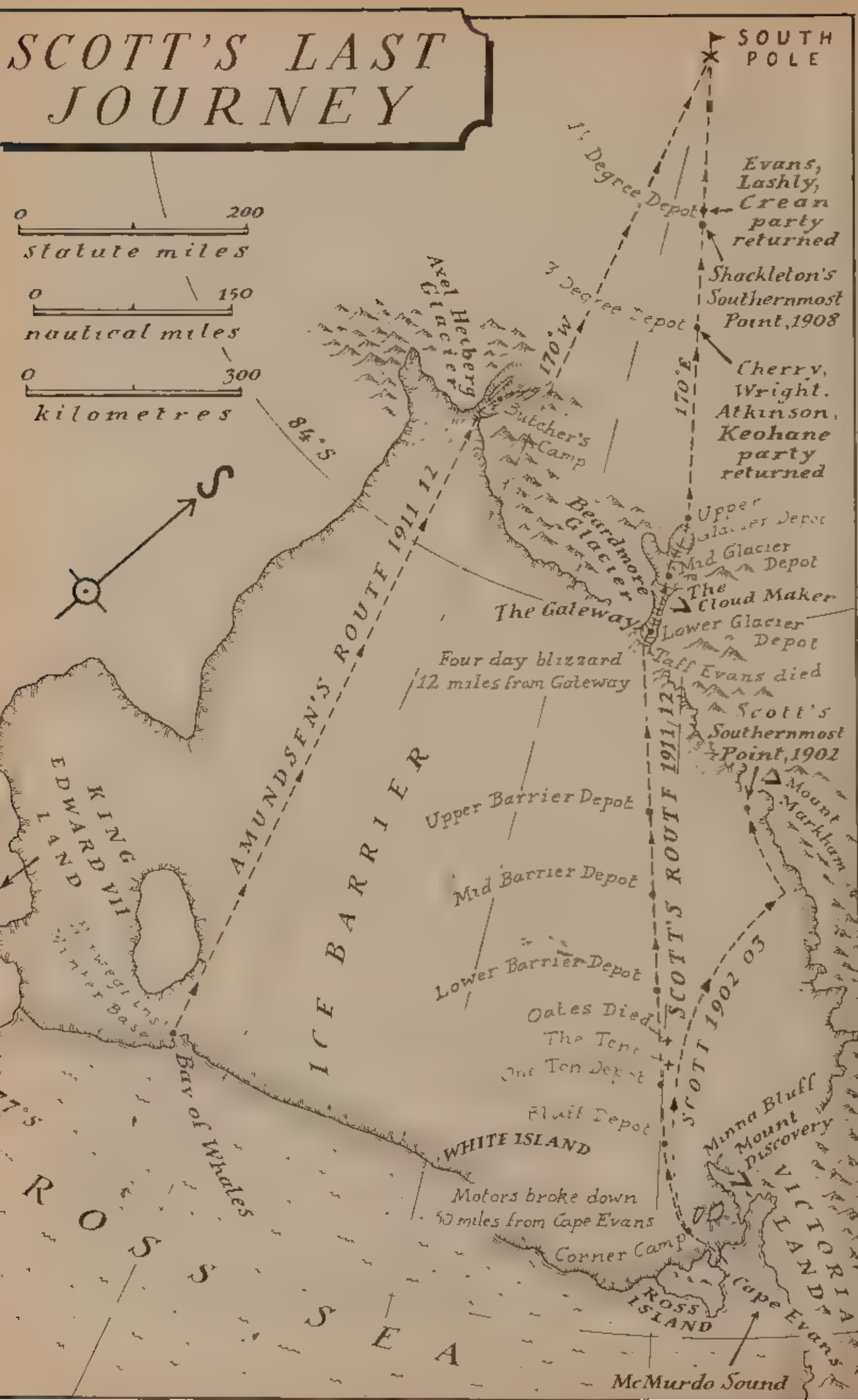
'And *I* thank you, Titus,' said Scott.

From that moment, with the ponies gone, Oates's diary lost its carping, bitching note against his leader.

At the top of the Gateway's snow ramp on 11 December 1911, they made a cache, the Lower Glacier Depot, and from here Scott sent the dog teams back. Their extra help, in towing their loads for some 145 miles and two weeks longer than planned, had helped make the overall Pole plan viable, despite the wet blizzard. They were seven days behind Scott's schedule.

But two weeks extra to the south meant two weeks extra on the return journey too so Meares and Gerof did not arrive back at Cape Evans until 5 January, not 10 December, as originally planned. In order to make up extra rations for the two dog-drivers, everybody had saved one biscuit per day for some time. Meares also agreed that they would make do without a lunch halt meal on their way back. Morally this was a handsome gesture, but calorie-wise the dog drivers were still better off than the manhaulers and, had Meares delayed his departure from Hut Point by several days, as in Scott's original plan, he would have had those days of man and dog rations to hand to help cope with the extra mileage. Additionally, according to scientist Charles Wright, Meares overfed his dogs too early in the journey which of course affected the amount of dog food available for the return journey. Wright noted angrily that Meares, a fortnight ahead, had obviously panicked and taken more than his allotted food ration from the depots, despite the easier work of dog-driving.

Scott's Summit Rations gave each manhauler a daily total of 4,500 calories. A study by Dr Mike Stroud, one of Britain's top experts in stress nutrition, showed in the 1990s that Scott's men (and Shackleton's group as well) almost certainly used over 7,000 calories per day during their manhauling travel. The base for


SCOTT'S LAST JOURNEY
0 200
statute miles
0 150
nautical miles
0 300
kilometres
SOUTH POLE
1° Degree Depot
Evans, Lashly, Crean party returned
Shackleton's Southernmost Point, 1908
3 Degree Depot
Cherry, Wright, Atkinson, Keohane party returned
170° W
170° E
Axel Heiberg Glacier
Butcher's Camp
84° S
Beardmore Glacier
Upper Glacier Depot
Mid Glacier Depot
The Cloud Maker
Lower Glacier Depot
The Gateway
Four day blizzard 12 miles from Gateway
Taff Evans died
Scott's Southernmost Point, 1902
Mount Markham
AMUNDSEN'S ROUTE 1911 12
SCOTT'S ROUTE 1911 12
SCOTT 1902 03
ICE BARRIER
Upper Barrier Depot
Mid Barrier Depot
Lower Barrier Depot
Oates Died
The Tent
One Ton Depot
Bluff Depot
KING EDWARD VII LAND
Winter Base
Bay of Whales
WHITE ISLAND
Motors broke down 50 miles from Cape Evans
Corner Camp
Minna Bluff
Mount Discovery
VICTORIA LAND
ROSS ISLAND
Cape Evans
McMurdo Sound
ROSS SEA

Mike's scientific programme was a series of polar manhaul expeditions of which he was a member over a nine-year period. When I manhauled across the Antarctic continent with Mike in 1993 his meticulous measurements showed that over a sixty-eight-day period (of our ninety three-day journey), we burned up a daily average of well over 7,000 calories and lost forty-four pounds of bodyweight. During our glacial ascent from sea level to 10,000 feet, we burned more than 11,000 calories every day. This was 5,500 calories more than we were eating. (The human body cannot absorb more than 7,000 calories in twenty-four hours, no matter how many calories are being burnt.) Our energy use far exceeded any measurements previously reported in scientific literature. For example, levels measured on the Tour de France, one of the world's hardest endurance sporting events, show that the top riders use only about 8,000 calories per day. A typical runner might use 2,500 calories to complete a four-hour marathon.

We manhauled loads that started out at 485 pounds each and towed them, with no tent-days, for ninety-three days. Scott manhauled for a total of a hundred days (not including tent-days) and his sledgeload per man was around 180 pounds most of the time. Scott's sledges were often more difficult to haul because his sledge runners were less efficient than our modern versions. He sometimes skied and sometimes walked, as we did. Overall his calorific deficit would probably have been very similar and equally as devastating as our own.

When Scott set out from the Gateway, his men were fit from pony-leading and would have been in top physical shape, apart from Teddy Evans and Bill Lashly (and to a lesser extent Atkinson), who had manhauled for over 300 miles already. Scott may well have suspected that these three men should not be among those he selected for the final Pole push. From the Gateway the expedition began the Glacier ascent as three teams of four men with 500 pounds per sledge. They were:

Scott	Teddy Evans	Bowers
Wilson	Lashly	Cherry-Garrard
Oates	Wright	Crean
Taff Evans	Atkinson	Keohane

Any hopes Scott may have nursed that once on the glacial ice the slow torture of heavy snow haulage would disappear were immediately dashed. The deep drift left by the blizzard coated the blue-green ice enjoyed by Shackleton. Scott's men experienced the trudging through-mud or climbing-hills-of-soft-sand type of nightmare brought to grim reality. Instead of having to wear cramponed boots to keep their grip on bare ice, the men sank knee-deep gasping for breath. Instead of the sliding metal rumble of runners gliding over ice, there was only the heavy silence of reluctant yard by yard resistance of sledgeloads sunk to their crossbars in wet snow. These truly awful post-blizzard conditions coincided with the heaviest loads, which were bulky so that the sledges frequently capsized.

Wilson noted: 'Couldn't have gone a mile in this on foot hauling without ski.' Cherry-Garrard added: 'The starting was worse than pulling as it required from ten to fifteen desperate jerks on the harness to move the sledge at all.' At one point they managed only half a mile in nine hours of heartbreaking toil, constantly stopping to heave the sledges onto one side so as to scrape balled ice off the metal runners. 'I have never seen a sledge sink so,' Bowers wrote, 'I have never pulled so hard, or so nearly crushed my inside into my backbone by the everlasting jerking with all my strength on the canvas band around my unfortunate tummy.'

Bathed in perspiration the manhaulers stripped to their underwear. Their goggles fogged up so they removed them and many suffered the agonies of snow-blindness attacks. Cherry-Garrard wrote that: 'our tea leaves, which had been boiled twice and would otherwise have been thrown away, relieved the pain if tied into some cotton and kept pressed against the eyes.' Bowers

had 'been enduring the pains of hell with my eyes as well as doing the most back-breaking work I have ever come up against . . . By sticking plaster over my glasses except one small central spot I shut off most light and I could see the points of my ski, but the glasses were always fogged with perspiration and my eyes kept on streaming water which cannot be wiped off on the march as a ski stick is held in each hand; and so heavy were our weights that if any of the pair slacked a hand even, the sledge stopped.' The sun's ultra-violet rays, reflected off the snow, burnt not only their corneas but also any exposed skin, especially their lips which cracked and bled. Their faces became pocked with blisters and scabs.

The tick of the polar summer clock was not merely some convenient indicator of progress: it was the countdown to certain death or narrow survival, and Scott's best way of checking his ongoing status against that clock was Shackleton's progress chart which Frank Wild had given him in the shape of Wild's own diary records of that journey. Scott's key Barrier depots were now in place but, to be sure of a safe return before the killer conditions of winter caught him in the open, he must catch up with the Shackleton schedule.

Scott luckily possessed a rare characteristic, which separated him from most people, the ability to drive himself and his men beyond normal limits of endurance. Shackleton and Peary shared this force, as did Livingstone and Columbus. Cherry Garrard described it in Scott as 'the immense shove of the man'. Scott led them on remorselessly, eleven and sometimes twelve hours a day. He was, at nearly forty-three, one of the oldest there but his energy seemed limitless. He was annoyed by any delay and impatient with any team that could not keep up.

Over the years of manhauling in the Arctic and Antarctic I have found that the best people for any expedition where success depends upon competing against the clock (imposed by the short travel season) are the most naturally competitive individuals. The act of competing, sledge against sledge, hour after hour,

day after day, can cause hostility between team members but that is a small price to pay when set against success. The faster and longer a team travels each day, the shorter the period taken to reach the goal. So, although more calories are expended by the greater effort, the shorter the time spent away from base. The fewer days anticipated for a journey, the less food taken, the lighter the sledges, the quicker the journey. In the end the key to such journeys is speed and the best way to go faster is to foster competitive rivalry within the team.

As with everything in life it is easy to overdo things. Manhauling speed may be two miles an hour on flat blue ice, but only half a mile a day in bad pressure ice or deep soft snow. Sometimes the best speed is a steady plod maintained hour after hour with minimal or no rest stops, but at others, for instance when navigating a crevasse field in good visibility, it may be best to race to reach safe ground before a fog envelops you.

At least two of Scott's team were, like him, natural competitors, who hated to be bested physically. Bowers was one and Teddy Evans, sometimes, was another. As the three sledge teams inched their tortuous way up the thirty-mile wide, 9,000-foot-high Beardmore Glacier, a personal race involving stamina and willpower was being played out.

The first team to lag behind and keep Scott waiting was that of Teddy Evans. Scott wrote: 'Evans' party could not keep up, and Wilson told me . . . that Atkinson says that Wright is getting played out and Lashly is not so fit as he was.' In his tent that evening, Scott asked Teddy Evans what was wrong. Evans naturally pointed out that his team had been manhauling for 400 miles further and five weeks longer than the pony leaders on the same rations. Scott knew and understood this, so he offered to take some of the weight off Evans's sledge but Evans was proud and declined the offer.

Scott had written to his wife from Cape Evans after one particularly hard manhaul journey that he was holding his own. He must have felt proud and relieved that, after ten years since

Discovery, days spent on board ships or at desks, he could still keep up with younger, stronger men. It is easy for a critic to huff and puff that Scott drove his men to exhaustion. They assume he had a reasonable alternative. He could have gone more slowly but that would have been to court failure, even given good conditions on the return journey.

The strongest of the manhaulers, Bowers, thrived on the competition with Scott. He wrote: 'Captain Scott got fairly wound up and went on and on . . . my breath kept fogging my glasses, and our windproofs got oppressively warm and altogether things were pretty rotten. At last he stopped and we found we had done 14¾ miles. He said, "What about fifteen miles for Christmas Day," so we gladly went on - anything definite is better than indefinite trudging.' On one occasion Bowers's notes show much glee at beating Scott. 'Scott fairly legged it, as I expected, and we came along gaily behind him. He could not understand it when the pace began to tell more on his heavy team than on us . . . Of course we need not have raced, but we did, and I would do the same thing every time.' To his mother Bowers wrote: 'one gets down to bedrock with everybody, sledging under trying conditions. The character of a man comes out and you see things that were never expected. You get to know each other inside out and respect some more and, unfortunately, some less. I think more highly than ever of our leader . . . [and less highly] of "Teddy" Evans.'

At about this time one or two others also became critical, at least in their diaries, about Teddy Evans's performance. Cherry-Garrard's notes for 14 December include a grumpy comment: 'Wright wanted to push Teddy Evans down a crevasse. When we dropped the oil cans down we never heard them reach the bottom. It is a pity he didn't.'

They passed the 84th parallel. Only 360 miles to go.

Roald Amundsen and his five men reached the Pole that day with the maximum temperature a mild 2°C. They spent three days there ensuring the precise location of the Pole, for they

knew the British would be hard on their heels. 'Scott will be here sooner or later,' Amundsen told his men. 'If I know the British rightly they will never give up once they have started, unless forced by something beyond their control. They are too tough and stubborn for that.'

If at that point Scott had known the Pole had been reached by the Norwegians, would he have given up? No one will ever know but to have done so would have been the height of stupidity for the chances of Amundsen suffering a fatal accident on his return journey were high.

Many years later, expedition groups from around the world, still searching for physical challenges, would remember two things. Amundsen was first to reach the Pole towed there by dog power, and Scott was first by pure manpower. The US scientific station subsequently erected at the Pole is called the Amundsen Scott South Pole Station in recognition of two great and very different achievements.

On 17 December, still going well, Scott laid the Mid Glacier Depot. He had abandoned the route taken by Shackleton by moving away from the shelter of the cliffs. He believed there would be more disturbed ice there than out in mid-glacier. Parallel with the high ramparts of the Cloudmaker, a magnificent mountain usually wreathed in clouds of its own home-made weather pattern, Scott's men negotiated wave upon wave of ice ridges, hauling their loads up one side, then sliding at speed down the other. All around them grinned the mouths of huge crevasses. Not at all a good place for dogs, they may well have reflected with gratitude.

A further snowstorm interrupted their progress but luckily not for long and the hard ice continued, in places so brittle that their boots broke through the surface crust and jarred their legs and backs as they dropped to the hard ice eight inches below. The crampons that Taff Evans had fashioned worked well and helped them gradually to catch up on their ghostly pacemaker, Shackleton. Every evening Scott carefully compared his distances

and times against the diary that Frank Wild had lent him, with Shackleton's knowledge, for this very purpose.

One of the Scott-critics' favourite lines is that Scott sat Scrooge-like in his tent each night comparing his progress with that of his 'old enemy, Shackleton'. This depiction of Scott's rationale in his constant progress checks combines with the, in my view, unfounded myth of enmity. Teddy Evans noted: 'Of course, we had Shackleton's charts, diaries and experience to help us. We often discussed Shackleton's journey and were amazed at his fine performance. We always had full rations, which Shackleton's party never enjoyed at this stage.' Such comparisons are natural. Amundsen was enormously pleased and wrote in his diary 'RECORD' on the day that he passed Shackleton's most southerly point, and Shackleton himself had constantly checked his progress against his own reference point, the Southern Journey of 1902 he had made with Scott and Wilson. His diary included remarks like: 'and this latitude we have been able to reach in much less time than on the last long march with Captain Scott.'

After 17 December, Scott's daily mileage increased to thirteen and later twenty three miles. They began to catch up. At 2,000 feet above sea level Scott noted: 'Our lips are very sore. We cover them with the soft silk plaster . . . We get fearfully thirsty and chip up ice on the march, as well as drinking a great deal of water on halting.' Keeping close to the glacier's centre, Charles Wright wrote that Scott, gazing up at the great glacier, made the wry comment that somebody would have to be the first to fall through one of the many wicked-looking crevasses and that, very soon thereafter, Scott himself did just that.

Despite the need to make distance and not waste a minute of the day, Scott – unlike Amundsen – had a science programme to complete and needed to survey the glacier accurately wherever visibility allowed. '[Teddy] Evans and Bowers,' he wrote, 'are busy taking angles; as they have been all day, we shall have material for an excellent chart.' At 5,800 feet, the shoulder of

the Plateau gradually became visible. Here Cherry-Garrard recorded a huge mass of pressure and noted that the Mill Glacier was both vast and severely crevassed. 'There also', he wrote, 'seems to be a big series of ice-falls between Buckley Island and the Dominion Range, for the centre of which Scott is going tomorrow.'

They were increasingly relieved to see no tracks indicating the Norwegians had preceded them, for they assumed Amundsen would have chosen the Beardmore route. On 20 December, at 6,500 feet, they reached the 85th parallel and were only three days behind Shackleton. This was the point at which Scott had to choose which sledge group to send back – a daunting task since nobody appeared openly keen to return. Scott wrote: 'I dreaded this necessity of choosing – nothing could be more heartrending.' At this point, 300 miles from the Pole, he had the pick of his entire team to choose from and none seemed to be harbouring any injury.

The suggestion of critics that Oates was at this time limping from his old Boer War wound is not borne out by any even third-hand evidence. He did, however, make an ominous diary entry at that time: 'my feet are giving me a lot of trouble. They have been continually wet since leaving Hut Point and now walking along this hard ice in frozen crampons has made rather hay of them, still they are not the worst in the outfit by a long chalk.'

Scott made his selection decisions clear to nobody until the last moment. According to Cherry Garrard's memory years later, he had told Wilson that it was a toss up between Cherry-Garrard and Oates but, things being close, he would take the older man. Scott knew that many polar men had done well when middle-aged. Admiral Peary, first claimant to reach the North Pole, was fifty-two years old, but he used dogs to pull his sledge. Sir Vivian Fuchs, leader of the first crossing of Antarctica, was fifty but he travelled in a vehicle cab. Scott himself was nearly forty-three. Cherry-Garrard was disappointed at the news that he must turn

back. He had not expected it and he enjoyed manhauling. After digesting the unwelcome news: 'I said I hoped I had not disappointed him, and he caught hold of me and said "No – no – no," so if that is the case all is well. He told me that at the bottom of the glacier he was hardly expecting to go on himself: I don't know what the trouble is but his foot is troubling him, and also, I think, indigestion.'

Next to go was Charles Wright, also a young man. Only a few days before Wilson had learnt from his fellow doctor, Atkinson, that Wright was 'getting played out' and he had passed this on to Scott. Back at Cape Evans in the early sledging days Scott had written: 'One of the greatest successes is Wright. He is very thorough and absolutely ready for anything. Like Bowers he has taken to sledging like a duck to water and although he hasn't had such severe testing, I believe he would stand it pretty nearly as well. Nothing ever seems to worry him and I can't imagine he ever complained of anything in his life.'

When Wright heard the bad news that he must turn back, he was wild with anger. He was convinced that both he and Cherry-Garrard were far fitter than Teddy Evans their sledge-leader. He recorded that Scott had been hoodwinked by his second-in-command who only hauled hard when he was being watched. Wright was furious.

Certainly, if Scott, as latterday critics suggest, had wanted to ensure Teddy Evans did not go to the Pole, he would have turned him back at this stage. But Wright and Cherry-Garrard were seemingly weaker than Evans, and both refrained from openly denouncing their sledge-leader as the slacker they clearly believed him to be.

Scott recognised Wright's extreme disappointment and tried to make the young Canadian feel better by stressing that he would be the only navigator all the way back to Cape Evans. Wright, in his turn, had noted the previous day that Atkinson was also near to the end of his tether. Scott may have noticed this too or maybe the fact that Atkinson, as a doctor, would be

more useful back at Cape Evans was the deciding factor. He was also to go back and in fact appeared relieved at this outcome. He had hoped that his friend Oates would be chosen to go back too, Oates having given him the impression of someone 'who knew he was done — his face showed him to be and the way he went along.' Wishful thinking, perhaps, and Oates himself certainly thought otherwise at the time.

The fourth and last man selected to go back was Patsy Keohane, the chunky petty officer from Cork, who took the decision philosophically saying only: 'Sorry to part with old Crean.'

At the Upper Glacier Depot on 21 December 1911, they laid and marked the last cache before the plateau, changed the groups about and reloaded the sledges. Now that Scott had a clearer idea of his likely return date he gave Atkinson new orders regarding the dog teams. By then Scott must have learnt that Cecil Meares was considering returning in *Terra Nova* and, if he did, only Gerof would remain as a really competent dog-driver. He told Atkinson to 'bring the dogs southwards later in the season to meet up with the polar party'.

On the last night, Cherry Garrard wrote: 'We had a long talk with the owner in our tent . . . He seemed a bit afraid of us getting hung up, but as he said we had a splendid navigator . . . He also thanked us all heartily for the way we had assisted in the Journey and he should be sorry when we parted.'

Wright wrote, having seen no signs of Amundsen on the glacier, that they were very optimistic about their overall chances of pole priority and that everyone seemed fit – untainted by scurvy. They turned back from 8,000 feet above sea level and 283 miles from the Pole.

15

The Black Flag

The eight remaining men covered more than ten miles in eight hours. Scott was pleased that his choice had proved right, for Teddy Evans moved well with his new team of Bowers, Lashly and Crean. 'We have weeded the weak spots . . .' Scott noted. 'To-morrow we march longer hours, about 9 I hope.' They were all on skis most of the time now and using two ski sticks each. They marked each lunch stop with a single snow cairn and each night stop with two. This was to help find their depots.

To avoid the worst upper glacier icefalls experienced by Shackleton where the plateau ice, like water on the lip of the Niagara Falls, began its downward flow, Scott headed west at 90° to Shackleton's route. For a while this proved a successful tactic but there was no escaping all the crevassed areas. 'As first man,' Scott wrote, 'I get first chance, and it's decidedly exciting not knowing which step will give way . . . we are practically on the summit and up to date in the provision line. We ought to get through.' They were pulling 190 pounds each now and they needed to go too fast to be ultra cautious. On 22 December, according to Scott, the crevasses were 'as big as Regent Street'. Scott used his knowledge of ice formation to try to plot a route through the majestic chaos, 'a confusion of elevations and depressions', he called it.

In 1993, the first time I had to pick a route through these same icefalls of the upper Beardmore Glacier, I noted my impressions in my diary: 'The horizons which now opened to us were awesome; a sprawling mass of rock and ice locked in creeping motion.' I had plotted a complex route through or between the nastiest of these features but of course I was 'cheating' in that I used maps

and air photographs. Scott had no such help nor did he know that the route he took would not end in some dread cul-de-sac.

Teddy Evans later wrote his impression of the expedition's progress just prior to Christmas, marvelling at 'the pace of them, the speed of pitching and striking camp, never a second wasted; and how both teams swung together, keeping step, each endeavouring to outpace the other and with every appearance of perfect health. But,' he adds, 'a close observer, a man trained to watch over men's health, over athletes training, perhaps, would have seen something amiss.' Evans wrote this some years after the event, when trying to cast back in his memory for the first symptoms of weakness in the Pole party. He may have given rein to his imagination for though they were gradually weakening, owing to their daily calorific deficiency, there is no hint in the diaries of the other seven men of any threatening ailments beyond Oates's sore feet.

On 23 December the horizon levelled at last in every direction and Scott wrote: 'I trust this may prove the turning-point in our fortunes.' They marched fifteen miles and climbed 800 feet in eight hours, towing twelve weeks of food and oil. On Christmas Day 1911, again achieving fifteen miles, they celebrated with a special feast, including plum pudding which neither Wilson nor Scott could finish; definitely not symptoms of malnutrition.

They had travelled for fifty-five days but only some one hundred and forty miles had yet involved manhaul. They ate the Summit Rations, as tested by Cherry-Garrard on the Cape Crozier winter journey, including eight ounces of butter, twelve of pemmican and twelve of biscuit daily. The three Crozier men had towed 235 pounds each at the outset and, after conditions of extreme cold throughout their journey, returned after thirty-five days, having lost only an average of two pounds in bodyweight. This is fairly convincing proof that neither the modern-day critics of Scott's rations nor Teddy Evans's suggestion that 'something was amiss' could have applied to anybody but the two men, Bill Lashly and Teddy Evans himself, who had by

then already manhauled an extra 400 miles on Standard not Summit Rations.

That day was Bill Lashly's forty-third birthday. He was a few months older than Scott and the grand old man of the party. To celebrate, he tumbled into a fifty-foot-deep crevasse. 'Rather a ghastly sight,' he noted, 'when dangling in one's harness.'

The following day involved finding a way through singularly nasty icefalls. Scott, navigating, wrote: 'One cannot allow one's thoughts to wander as others do, and when one gets amongst disturbances, I find it is very worrying and tiring.' The strain caused him to snap at Bowers, who somehow managed to break the last hypsometer thermometer they carried in order to tell their altitude, a key part of their survey programme and their ability to re-locate depots. Bowers had recently let his pocket watch lose time. Debenham later said: 'the cause of the watches stopping was [often] forgetfulness, in spite of the last word from tent to tent at night being "wind watches".' Luckily Scott's own watch was still accurate since the precision of their navigation depended on the accuracy of their time-keeping.

Had I been Scott I would not have been at all happy with Bowers, the official navigator, because, without accurate Greenwich Mean Time, it is impossible to work out accurate longitude. At or near the Pole this could mean circling round and round hopelessly confused because all lines of longitude converge at 90° so, since time and longitude are temporal and geographical measurements based on the same principle, a loss of twenty-six minutes to a watch-wearer close by the Pole would only represent a few short steps. At the Pole, after all, you can walk around the world in a second. On the way back north from the Pole, as the meridians grow further apart, Bowers' chronometer inaccuracy would be ever more damaging to navigational accuracy (at the Equator each sixty seconds of chronometer error would represent an error of one nautical mile). On Nansen's most famous north polar journey, both he and his sole companion, Hjalmar Johansen, forgot to wind their watches. This

was a potentially deadly disaster for they could no longer tell where they were. Somehow Bowers had been careless with his watch and now he had allowed the hypsometer to break. Only a saint would have ignored such clumsiness with two vital instruments and Scott was never in line for canonisation. Bowers recorded that he: 'got an unusual burst of wrath in consequence, in fact my name is mud just at present. It is rather sad to get into the dirt tub with one's leader at this juncture.'

The question could be asked, why no spare hypsometer? Scott's method, like Shackleton's, of keeping sledge weights down was to pare away every single non vital item. In 1993 I did the same; I took no toothbrush to cross the continent. A hypsometer, though relatively light in itself, has to be protected in a sturdy and bulky box. Scott at Cape Evans had to provide enough such instruments to supply each lone sledge group, not just his own, in addition to his two expeditions still working on the Ross Sea coast. Of course he could have carried two of every key item such as a theodolite on each sledge but overall weights would mount very quickly that way and you have to draw a line somewhere when manhauling, with no dogs to drag your loads.

For five days the two teams, free at last from the ever present danger of crevasses, sped competitively over the high plateau at an altitude of between 9,000 and 10,000 feet. A sinister note had sounded again in the diary of Oates a few days earlier on 26 December. For the second time he worries in the secrecy of his diary pages about his health. This time he noted: 'The back tendon of my right leg feels as if it has been stretched about 4 inches. I hope to goodness it is not going to give trouble.' Oates hauled from just behind the leader and navigator, Scott, and did not let on about his leg trouble. Perhaps fortunately for him, Scott's focus was on the other sledge team which had begun to slow the overall progress. Oates noted: 'Scott is very annoyed about the other team's sledge. They must have had a cruel time this week . . . they had a dreadfully heavy day arriving in camp

¼ hour after us . . . Poor devils, they are having a cruel time of it. They have a lighter load than us, but their sledge must have something the matter with it.' Either the sledge loading or its runners or its manhaulers were to blame. Or a touch of all three.

Bill Lashly, like Teddy Evans, was far more debilitated than the majority, but like any normal human being in such circumstances, he would be hoping that 'the others' were fading as fast as he was. I know the feeling well.

Trying to pin down the cause of the other group's slower pace, Scott switched places with Teddy Evans and immediately found the other sledge more difficult to pull than his own. Suspecting that Lashly might be a weak link, he then switched him with the powerful Taff Evans. This improved matters but not enough to convince Scott of the basic cause so he switched the entire teams around and everyone then agreed that there was a problem with Teddy Evans's sledge not his team. They checked the runners but these were in good shape. They talked things over and reached the conclusion that Teddy Evans's crew had done up some or all of the sledgeload straps too tightly, thereby forcing the runners out of kilter.

This must have been irritating for Scott since Teddy Evans's men had sledged for long enough to have sorted such a basic problem out for themselves. Evans admitted as much for he wrote: 'Captain Scott came into our tent and told us that we had distorted our sledge by bad strapping or bad loading. This was, I think, correct, because Oates had dropped his sleeping bag off a few days back through erring in the other direction and not strapping securely – we meant to have no recurrence and probably racked our sledge by heaving too hard on the straps.'

On the Barrier, the horses had provided each man with a distraction, as had the scenery and the crevasses of the glacier. But now the lofty desolation of the polar plateau, devoid of any feature, forced the men in on their own thoughts and weaknesses. Each minute and hour seemed an eternity as ever repeated anxieties gnawed at the mind and the dull throb of frostbitten toes

or fingers vied at each step with the sharper pain of underwear tugging at raw groins. Despite the effects of the altitude, the British were now averaging thirteen miles a day by manhaul on the plateau to the Norwegians' fifteen miles a day with dog teams.

At camp on 31 December Scott was at last able to record: 'We have caught up Shackleton's dates.' There was still no sign of Norwegian tracks, so hope was high in the hearts of the eight Britons. They could not know that Amundsen that very evening and a hundred miles to their east had passed them on the 87th degree of latitude as they raced back north to the Barrier.

That night Scott laid the first of the plateau caches, Three Degree Depot, 180 miles from the Pole. From here on, speed and light loads were vital. Due to the prevalence of sastrugi on this part of the plateau, it is often easier to walk than to ski when manhauling. When Mike Stroud and I manhauled the same route in 1993 we often found progress easier off ski than on, even though we towed heavier loads. Scott needed his second team under Evans to travel on for another three days before turning back and, to speed them up, the only weight he could remove from their sledge without some adverse side effect was to leave their ice-axes, alpine rope, skis and sticks at Three Degree Depot, a saving of eighty pounds. Only sixty miles later, at 88°, Scott was to leave all his own group's skis and sticks at the next depot, but then the surface altered radically so he went back to retrieve them. Scott had written earlier: 'It is difficult to know what to do about the ski: their weight is considerable and yet under certain circumstances they are extraordinarily useful.' Another problem in such rough sastrugi areas is that sledges are forever capsizing and anything breakable, like skis or sticks strapped to their tops, are likely to be broken. For many miles on the Beardmore in 1993 Mike Stroud used skis and sticks whilst I used none and found that I could haul faster than him, although normally on the flat he was the faster skier.

Because the cache at the Three Degree Depot allowed lighter

sledge-loads, Scott's plan to convert both twelve foot sledges into lighter ten-foot versions could go ahead. Taff Evans and Tom Crean had practised this modification but not at 9,000 feet and at –23°C. They completed the job efficiently but at the cost of Taff Evans damaging his hand. One record suggests that he re-opened or aggravated an existing wound, others that he suffered a new and deep cut. Either way he hid the injury with complete success from all the officers, probably because he was hugely keen to reach the Pole and knew that, if injured, he would be sent back.

As soon as the re-building of the sledges was done they all retired to their two tents. For the first time the tent to be used for the Pole was fixed with a double liner and Teddy Evans was invited in to celebrate the New Year. The petty officers, three good friends, did likewise in the less cramped space of their own tent once they had finished with the sledges. There was clearly no tense atmosphere between Teddy Evans, Oates, Scott or the other two as they rested and drank tea. Even Oates was chatty and relaxed. Teddy Evans wrote: 'He told us all about his home, and his horses . . . He talked on and on, and his big, kind brown eyes sparkled as he recalled little boyish escapades at Eton . . . At length Captain Scott reached out and affectionately seized him in the way that was itself so characteristic of our leader, and said, "You funny old thing, you have quite come out of your shell, soldier! Do you know we have all sat here talking for nearly four hours? It's New Year's Day and 1 am!"'

The next day, Teddy Evans's group set out on foot. He recorded that Scott 'and his team never got near us, in fact they actually lost ground'. On 2 January 1912, still on foot, he wrote: 'Did 15 miles with ease, but we were now only pulling 130 lb. per man.' On 3 January all Scott's carefully laid plans came to a critical point. Ration-wise he must now, less than 150 miles from the Pole, finish off the carefully planned pyramid system that he had pioneered in Antarctica.

When Everest was first climbed in 1953 the leader John Hunt

gradually whittled away his ace climbers and his Sherpas until, one leg from the top, he was left with a group of his fittest men. He selected Edmund Hillary and Tensing Norgay but nobody, including Hunt, would have been able to predict until that moment of choice who would figure in that final team. Hunt had his favourites, no doubt, and he may well have hoped that others would have been best placed when the moment came. Last minute changes might even have forced him to change from a two-man to a three-man summit team.

Similarly, Scott retained the absolute right to select anybody for his Pole team from the entire company of *Terra Nova*, provided only that they wished to go. Throughout his time on board the ship, during his early sledge travels and through the long Cape Evans winter, he had made numerous entries in his private diary; pencil sketches of various individuals, some flattering and others pretty rude. Slowly and methodically he was choosing his Pole men. By the time of the 1911 depot-laying trip Scott had narrowed his choice down to all those he took with him as pony leaders and one or two of the men he had to spare from the science journeys being completed at that time.

Many Scott observers say that he must have chosen all the final Pole men just before Christmas 1911, when ascending the Beardmore, because he wrote their five names and ages on the flyleaf of the new notebook that he started to use on 22 December 1911. This is in reality no proof at all, since notes written on flyleaves are not necessarily chronological. He may just as well have made that note on that page weeks after making his selection.

On 10 December, and well up the Beardmore, Scott had to decide who to send back out of the twelve men still present. By then he had already noted in his diary: 'P.O. Evans, of course, is a tower of strength, but Oates and Wilson are doing splendidly also.' This is a fairly late indicator of where Scott's focus was then fixed and can be added to an earlier clue. As soon as the polar winter of 1911 was ended and Scott, raring to go, had set

off in mid-September on his Ferrar Glacier jaunt, he had, from everybody available, selected Petty Officer Evans and Bowers. Simpson had gone too but only for a specific scientific purpose. Scott's comments, noted after that excessively cold journey, had included: 'the greatest source of pleasure to me is to realise that I have such men as Bowers and P.O. Evans for the Southern journey. I do not think that harder men or better sledge travellers ever took the trail. Bowers is a little wonder.'

Just before the start of the polar journey, but still at Cape Evans, Ponting had arranged with Scott to film life in a polar tent. Scott had selected Taff Evans, Wilson and Bowers to feature in that film. The known clues to Scott's thinking would therefore suggest that the final shortlist for the Pole team would include himself, Oates, Wilson, Bowers and Taff Evans.

Scott chose his team on one main criterion and that was his burning desire to reach the Pole, complete certain science work en route, and return to Cape Evans as quickly as was humanly possible. It has been suggested, based on a single second hand comment (reported years later by Cherry Garrard and attributed to Wilson), that Scott said he wanted the Army represented at the Pole. But there is no other written evidence that he wished his Pole group to be broadly representational of the Forces and the lower ranks and so included a token soldier and a token petty officer.

Scott needed above all a good navigator to back up his own well-tested skills. He had used both a sextant and a theodolite in 1903 and did so with a thorough knowledge of the subject. I have spent many years in the polar regions using both instruments and can attest that navigators do not get rusty and they can quickly pick up where they left off, rather like riding a bicycle. The best available navigator by far was Bowers, who was also the highly professional keeper of the expedition's meteorological records. That alone was enough to ensure that Bowers accompanied Scott to the Pole whoever else was chosen.

The next most important component on Scott's list was

somebody with sound medical or at least first-aid knowledge so, even if Wilson had not been Scott's great friend, soul-mate and like Bowers a powerful manhauler, he would have been chosen.

At this point Scott's selection process is no longer so straightforward. As a manhauler with many polar journeys sharp in my memory, I can put myself in Scott's *finnesko* and ask myself what attributes I would have recruited once the key posts of leader (Scott), navigator (Bowers) and medico (Wilson) were in place. There is but a single clear answer and that is *pulling power*, sheer enduring strength. Who, out of Scott's remaining candidates, would fit this requirement best? Teddy Evans and Lashly? Because of their sterling work with the motorised sledges and the resulting extra 400 miles of manhauling, their bodyweight and strength had indisputably dropped well below that of the remaining options, Oates, Taff Evans and Tom Crean, so I would eliminate them both.

There are those who argue that Scott had other reasons for sending back Teddy Evans. These include a conspiracy theory that Scott plotted Teddy Evans's removal from the Pole team list by putting him in charge of the motors. Scott wrote a letter to his New Zealand-based administrator describing Teddy Evans as 'a thoroughly well-meaning little man, but a bit of a duffer outside naval work, and unsuited to be his second-in-command'. Nothing here precludes Teddy Evans's suitability for the Pole team, since a well meaning duffer can make a great manhauler. Teddy Evans later wrote of receiving Scott's orders to turn back: 'I felt very sorry for him [Scott] having to break the news to us, although I had foreseen it – for Lashly and I knew we could never hope to be in the Polar party after our long drag out from Cape Evans.' And Bowers recorded: 'Poor Teddy – I am sure it was for his wife's sake he wanted to go. He gave me a little silk flag she had given him to fly on the Pole . . . but he had buoyed himself up with the idea of going.'

Of the three remaining choices, there was little to choose

between them. All three were powerful but the largest and heaviest were Taff Evans and Oates at whose side Scott had already pulled all the way up the Glacier. Tom Crean, though as loyal to Scott as was Evans and for just as long, was not in Scott's opinion as powerful as the other two. So, by a narrow margin, he must go back. Tom Crean never bore a grudge and his biographer, Michael Smith, wrote in 2000 that almost sixty years after Crean's own death his two daughters recalled that they had never heard their father speak a bad word against Scott.

Scott's dilemma was now reduced to a choice between two men, both of whom were powerhouses with whom he worked well. The obvious answer was to take both.

Did Scott ever suggest that the Pole group could consist of more than four men? There is no proof of this but again there is a powerful clue. Although his tents were designed to take four men and his sledges were normally towed by four men, there is a monochrome sketch by Wilson, drawn shortly before the team left Cape Evans in November 1911, which clearly depicts *five* men on skis hauling a laden sledge (see fourth picture section). The angles of each man's pull and the lengths of the tow ropes are clearly shown in this sketch, as though in a diagram. Wilson virtually never drew hypothetical scenes or indeed any fictional, imaginative subject matter. He concentrated on real, detailed images only, so why draw this five-man group at all if he had not been discussing it with Scott?

Exactly when Scott decided to take five men rather than four is not something clarified by his diary or any other record. I suspect he waited until the last moment before making up his mind but that he had long since worked out that five was a workable option and had discussed it with Wilson at least as early as the time of Wilson's sketch of five manhaulers on one sledge. There is but one clear advantage to five over four men to a sledge and that is the mathematical fact that far more pulling power is available without a corresponding increase in weight. Such heavy items as the tent, the sledge, the navigation and

medical gear do not increase, so their weight is shared more easily by five rather than four manhaulers. Also, from a safety point of view, Bill Lashly, an engineer with first-hand crevasse experience, believed that a five-man sledge group was optimal for bad crevasse conditions.

There were of course many adverse features to five men in a team, the most obvious being the confined space of the standard four-man pyramid tent. Henrik Ibsen once wrote: 'A home is where there is plenty of room for five, although among enemies it seems cramped for two.' This well describes the testing conditions in a cold tent with too many inmates but Scott was focussed on success and, if a certain degree of discomfort was necessary to achieve that end, so be it.

Rations for the Pole group and the other returning group would not be affected. If an extra man had been added (by parachute!) to the expedition after the depots were laid, then there would have been a deficiency, but Scott added no one, he merely shuffled the rations between two different groups, his and that of Teddy Evans. Of course Evans's group had the extra nuisance, on the few occasions when they reached a depot, of taking only three-quarters of their original allotment of food and fuel, but this was hardly an onerous task, bearing in mind that there were sixty mile gaps between depots.

Set against the weight of an extra pair of skis on the sledge, the squash in the tent, and more time spent cooking, the benefits of taking both Oates and Taff Evans were quite clear to Scott. As they are to me. The two factors Scott did *not* know about as he made his final choice were the cut hand of Taff Evans and the state of Oates's foot. Taff Evans knew that success at the Pole would bring him the key to his retirement dream, ownership of a public house in Swansea. He probably thought his hand would heal and would not impede the general progress. Since everyone wore gloves most of the time it was not difficult to conceal such a wound from Dr Wilson. Evans kept his hand covered and Oates, with no visible limp, hauled powerfully at all times.

At no point in any reference to Oates or by him, during the expedition, was his old war wound or a limp mentioned prior to the day of Scott's final selection. Oates's diary complains about his stretched tendon and that the cold can open up old war wounds but, on the glacier, Oates complained only about his *right* leg whereas his original bullet wound was in his left. So Cherry-Garrard was quite wrong to assert that 'the foot which went must have been on the leg wounded in Africa.'

Wilson made no written comment, when selected, but must have been pleased at his inclusion in the Pole team. Only three weeks before, he had written: 'whether I shall have the good fortune to be considered strong enough to be one of the final 4 or not - why, I don't know. No one knows yet who they will be.' Like the others, Wilson accepted the fact that Scott would, when the time came, present his choice as a *fait accompli*, not open to discussion.

So, on 3 January 1912, Scott named his four choices: Wilson, Bowers, Oates and Taff Evans. A doctor, a soldier, a marine and one other naval man. His old mentor Clements Markham, that great enthusiast of Royal Navy expeditions, would no doubt have found his eyebrows twitching.

Four days before making his final selection, when Scott had told Teddy Evans to dump nearly 100 pounds of gear they would not need, such as ice-axes and ropes (because no more crevasses would occur according to the Shackleton records) and their skis (because heavy sastrugi were forecast by Shackleton), Bowers' skis were left behind. This suggests that Scott was not planning to take a fifth man at that point. It does not suggest that Bowers would not be chosen because the ski boot attachments manufactured by Taff Evans were easily adjustable and transferable from person to person. Bowers could easily have taken spells on somebody else's skis.

The Team chosen, Scott gave various messages to Teddy Evans to take back to Cape Evans. One, for Meares, updated his previous three instructions on what he wanted the dog teams

to do. This last order cancelled the previous ones: Meares was to come out and meet Scott between 82° and 83° on the Barrier at some time towards the middle of February.

Oates too gave Evans a letter for his mother confessing: 'I am afraid the letter I wrote from the hut was full of grumbles but I was very anxious about starting off with those ponies.' He added: 'If anything should happen to me on this trip, which I don't think likely, ask for my notebook. I have written instructions on the fly leaf that it is to be sent to you but please remember that when a man is having a hard time he says hard things about other people which he would regret afterwards.'

Teddy Evans, Bill Lashly and Tom Crean followed Scott's group for a few miles towards the Pole to check that their five-man arrangements worked well. Then on 4 January 1912 they said their farewells.

'I'm afraid, Teddy,' Oates said to Evans, 'you won't have much of a slope going back, but old Christopher is waiting to be eaten on the Barrier when you get there.' Teddy Evans gave three cheers as Scott's men headed away to the south. There were still no signs of any Norwegian tracks, the sun was 'warm' and the sky was blue.

So how did the new five-strong team work?

Bowers wrote: 'Our party were on ski with the exception of myself: I first made fast to the central span, but afterwards connected up to the toggle of the sledge, pulling in the centre between the inner ends of Captain Scott's and Dr Wilson's traces. This was found to be the best place, as I had to go my own step.' Scott noted. 'Bowers has a heavy time on foot, but nothing seems to tire him.' And, 'It is wonderful to see how neatly everything stows on a little sledge, thanks to Evans. I was anxious to see how we could pull it, and glad to find we went easy enough. Bowers on foot pulls between, but behind, Wilson and myself; he has to keep his own pace and luckily does not throw us out at all.' Six days later Scott added: 'Nothing comes amiss to him, and no work is too hard. It is a difficulty to get him

into the tent; he seems quite oblivious of the cold, and he lies coiled in his bag writing and working out sights long after the others are asleep.'

Bowers carried on walking with minimal complaint, no apparent slowing down of the others on their skis and no damage done to his performance. He remained the strongest of them all, skis or no skis. I know well how long-legged folk (like myself) feel hard done by when watching shorter, stockier built individuals powering their sledgeloads. For thousands of polar miles I have competed, on and off skis, against Mike Stroud, who has legs that are far shorter and far more powerful than mine. Bowers complained just as much (as did Mike Stroud) about the disadvantages of short legs!

Only two days after taking a fifth man into his tent, Scott stated that cooking times increased by some thirty minutes daily and thus used a lot more fuel. That is, from my experience, an excessive time and can only have been due to an unsettling of the group's tent routine. As Scott's group grew accustomed to their new five-man regime and learnt the best ways of coping with the extra man they would very soon have compensated and, at most, would have added ten minutes per day of extra boiling time. The proof of this is to be found in careful study of the expedition's Meteorological Register (3 November 1911 – 12 March 1912) found in Scott's death tent and kept meticulously by Bowers. Exact timings of each camp and lunch halt are logged, as is the daily mileage which, with five men in the tent and on the harness, actually improves dramatically overall.

Three days into the journey Scott wrote: 'Our food continues to amply satisfy. What luck to have hit on such an excellent ration! . . . we are very comfortable in our double tent . . . the sleeping-bags remain in good condition . . . It is quite impossible to speak too highly of my companions.'

They marched on into the unknown reaches of the plateau. Each man wrapped and trapped within himself and silently cursing his sores. The sun never rose nor set but when their day

began its orb lay over their left shoulders, then moved with agonising slowness until, at midday, they trod upon their own body shadows aimed, like the reverse ends of five compass needles, at the Pole. After noon, and ever more slowly it seemed, their shadows swung around as the sun crept inch by inch towards their right or western shoulders.

'The marching is growing terribly monotonous,' wrote Scott. Their burnt lips cracked and bled, cooked by ultra violet rays and riven by the wind. 'I could not tell,' wrote Bowers, 'if I had a frostbite on my face now as it is all scales, so are my lips and nose.' And 'it is more tiring for me than the others, as I have no ski. However as long as I can do my share all day and keep fit . . .' Wilson, the painter, recorded his impressions: 'The worst wind-cut sastrugi I have seen . . . covered with a growth of bunches of crystals exactly like gorse . . . Ice blink all round . . . hairy faces and mouths dreadfully iced up on the march . . . and often one's hands very cold indeed holding ski sticks.'

When Cherry Garrard wrote, years later, of his long dead comrades, he could tell from their diaries that, on the plateau, they were full of hope with their goal a mere week's travel ahead and with every chance that they would be the first men in the world to reach the end of the world. 'I heard Scott discuss,' Cherry-Garrard noted, 'the possibility of returning in April; and the Polar Party had enough food to allow them to do this on full rations.' Again he stated: 'The Polar Party of five men had according to our rations plenty of food either on their sledge or in the depots. In addition they had a lot of pony meat.'

On 6 January at 10,500 feet they came on unusually bad sastrugi fields, 'a sea of fish hook waves' that made travel on skis impossible. Next day showed no improvement and their skis, when sledge-loaded, were at constant risk of breakage. Scott decided to cache the skis, then the terrain eased so he went back to collect them. They only lost an hour but Scott had learnt his lesson and wrote: 'I must stick to skis after this.'

Amundsen had made the same mistake when heading for the

Pole when he left all his crampons behind at a depot. 'Without them,' he later wrote, 'climbing on sheer ice is supposed to be practically an impossibility. A thousand thoughts raced through my brain. The pole lost, perhaps, because of such an idiotic blunder?'

On 7 January Scott was dismayed to learn that Taff Evans 'has a nasty cut on his hand . . . I hope it won't give trouble.' Wilson noted: 'Evans who cut his knuckle some days ago at the last depot – a week ago – has a lot of pus in it tonight.' In 1993 I was fortunate that my co-manhauler in Antarctica, Mike Stroud, was a doctor who understood how to deal with 'polar pus'. I remember one evening watching him operate on a swollen abscess on his own foot. I wrote at the time: 'I watched with intense admiration as he gave himself two deep injections of Xylocaine anaesthetic and then plunged a scalpel blade deep into the swelling with diagonally crossed incisions. Pus poured out of the wounds and the swelling visibly decreased. Mike then bandaged up his heel and packed away his medical kit. I am not sure whether or not he felt faint but I certainly did.'

On 8 January, waiting for a blizzard to die down, Scott wrote: 'Evans' hand was dressed this morning, and the rest ought to be good for it . . . Evans, a giant worker with a really remarkable headpiece. It is only now I realise how much has been due to him. Our ski shoes and crampons have been absolutely indispensable . . . He is responsible for every sledge, every sledge-fitting, tents, sleeping-bags and harness . . . Now, besides superintending the putting up of the tent, he thinks out and arranges the packing of the sledge.' This last comment would indicate that Evans's knuckle wound was not yet bad enough to prevent him handling frozen gear and lashing straps.

Debenham once described Scott's energy: 'Scott had two phrases for good marching and when he said "Let's leg it" or "I think we'll step out a bit today" you knew you were in for something unusual in the way of making distance, regardless of weather or any other obstacles.' At this point on the plateau

with his four strong colleagues Scott really 'legged it'. On 9 January they reached 88°25', only ninety-five miles from the Pole, and Scott noted 'RECORD' in his diary; 'beyond the record of Shackleton's walk. All is new ahead.' Three years before to the day, and after an epic journey, Shackleton, Wild, Marshall and Adams had turned back at about this point and Shackleton noted: 'We have shot our bolt . . . Whatever regrets may be, we have done our best.' They had beaten Scott's previous record, of which Shackleton had been a part, by nearly 400 miles. To get this far they had taken huge risks with their limited rations and with the weather but their luck had just held out.

Years later Shackleton described Scott as 'the most daring man I ever knew'. They were clearly both daring men who took carefully calculated risks but Scott, in carrying on all the way to the Pole, was taking far less of a risk than Shackleton took in reaching his 'farthest south'.

As Shackleton had once trod south into an unknown land, so now it was Scott's turn. Shackleton had described the feeling: 'It falls to the lot of few men to view land not previously seen by human eyes . . . No man of us could tell what we would discover in our march south.' Scott kept up the pressure but the snow surface grew worse and worse. 'I never had such pulling,' he wrote; 'all the time the sledge rasps and creaks . . . can we keep this up for seven days? . . . None of us ever had such hard work before.'

On 10 January, despite 'being chary of leaving stores on this great plain', they built a depot, ninety-one miles from the Pole, of a week's rations and anything else they felt they could risk leaving, a hundred pounds in all. For four days, despite their lighter load, they struggled to make good mileage over a dismal surface of blown crystals.

In *The Worst Journey in the World* Cherry-Garrard points his finger at crystals as being the manhauler's greatest enemy. 'Time after time,' he wrote, 'in the diaries you find crystals – crystals – crystals: crystals falling through the air, crystals beard-

ing the sastrugi, crystals lying loose upon the snow. Sandy crystals, upon which the sun shines and which made pulling a terrible effort.' Some forty miles from the Pole, on 12 January, the diaries begin to show signs of a new discomfort. Scott noted: 'At camping tonight everyone was chilled and we guessed a cold snap, but to our surprise the actual temperature was higher than last night, when we could dawdle in the sun. It is most unaccountable why we should suddenly feel the cold in this manner; partly the exhaustion of the march, but partly some damp quality in the air.' And two days later Scott wrote: 'Again we noticed the cold; at lunch to-day . . . all our feet were cold, but this was mainly due to the bald state of our finnesko. I put some grease under the bare skin and found it made all the difference. Oates seems to be feeling the cold and fatigue more than the rest of us, but we are all very fit.'

'My pemmican,' Oates wrote on 15 January, 'must have disagreed with me at breakfast for coming along I felt very depressed and homesick.'

That day, on the verge of triumph, they set off in high spirits. Scott noted: 'It is wonderful to think that two long marches would land us at the Pole . . . It ought to be a certain thing now, and the only appalling possibility the sight of the Norwegian flag forestalling ours.'

At this point the five Britons were sure they stood a fine chance of priority at the Pole. The Norwegians must either be behind them or perhaps had suffered some mishap that had forced them to turn back. Otherwise, since all longitudes converged on 90° South, where were their tracks? The Norwegians, they were assuming, had followed the Beardmore route as they had.

The average temperatures plummeted 18° that last week, heralding the end of the short summer at the Pole, but, in the comparative warmth of their congested little tent, their minds were for once not on the cold for in two short days they should become the first human beings to reach the South Pole. On the morning of 16 January they marched a good, strong seven and

a half miles. 'We started off in high spirits,' Scott wrote after the noon theodolite shot which confirmed there were but eighteen miles to go, 'feeling that to-morrow would see us at our destination.' At about 2 p.m., on a long downhill stretch and under a cloudless sky, they saw mock suns with great horizontal halos. They were going well.

At 4 p.m. or thereabouts the sharp-eyed Bowers looked up and told the others he thought he could see a cairn. Their hearts must have experienced that awful tug of dread . . . could somebody be ahead of them? But Bowers said it might merely be the sun's rays glinting on oddly angled sastrugi. With their hearts in their mouths, I imagine, and not daring to hope, they went on. All eyes must have been fixed on the dread object ahead in the desperate hope it would prove merely a mirage.

'Soon we knew,' Scott wrote, 'that this could not be a natural snow feature.'

The 'cairn' coalesced into a black speck and then, smashing all their hopes and dreams, into the blackest of black flags. They reached the flag and saw beside it the drifted over but still detectable signs of rumpled snow, where a camp site had been, with the disturbance marks of sledge and ski and paw. 'This told us the whole story,' Scott wrote. 'The Norwegians have forestalled us and are first at the Pole. It is a terrible disappointment, and I am very sorry for my loyal companions.'

Wilson noted: 'The age of the tracks was hard to guess – but probably a couple of weeks, or three or more . . . We camped here and examined the tracks and discussed things.' Bowers wrote to his mother: 'I am awfully sorry for Captain Scott who has taken the blow very well indeed. We now head for home. You will be glad to hear I have been to this spot I am sure.'

The Norwegian trail and theirs were now conjoined but, hoping maybe that Amundsen had somehow missed the Pole itself – his navigation instruments just might have broken (for hope springs eternal) – the Britons took many sun shots and, in Wilson's words, took their own bee-line for the Pole. They

camped and, constantly checking positions on 17 January, marched on different bearings, often into the teeth of a Force 6 wind at −30°C. 'The coldest march I ever remembered,' Wilson wrote. '. . . It was difficult to keep one's hands from freezing in double woollen and fur mits . . . it was a very bitter day.'

The sun came out between banks of driving crystal-haze and Bowers took sun altitude shots when he could. 'From Amundsen's direction of tracks,' Wilson wrote, 'he has probably hit a point about 3 miles off . . . but in any case we are all agreed that he can claim prior right to the Pole itself. He has beaten us in so far as he made a race of it . . . We have done what we came for . . . and as our programme was made out.' The cold wind that day gave Oates, Evans and Bowers frostbitten noses and cheeks and Evans's hands were bad enough to cause an hour's delay. They took ten exposures on one roll of film at the Pole. 'Mighty cold work,' Scott wrote. Bowers took elaborate theodolite readings with many arithmetical calculations. The figures were worked out by Scott and Bowers at their final Pole position of 89°59'14". They left the British flag there.

When the Pole mathematics were scrutinised a year later by Debenham they were found to contain an error 'of ± 30" [800 yards] at most'.

Scott's oft quoted words, 'Great God! this is an awful place and terrible enough for us to have laboured to it without the reward of priority', compare with those, thirty-three days earlier, of Amundsen's colleague Bjaaland, 'We have attained the goal of our desires and the great thing is that we are here as the first men; no English flag waves.' The Norwegians named the polar plateau after their King Haakon VII, unaware that Shackleton had already christened the place after his own king, then they killed and ate one of the dogs that had taken them there. In mid-summer the Norwegians had perfect weather at those times when it mattered most. Amundsen's men reached the Pole on 14 December 1911 but, three weeks later, the icy tendrils of winter were already stirring to greet Scott's arrival there. The

Norwegian diaries after the Pole are filled with such comments as 'ideal sledging', 'beautiful weather' and 'eight days of sunshine'. Amundsen's expedition to the Pole, planned specifically as a race, was a bold and professional venture with a fine share of good luck and was as successful as any dog driven journey in history. But decades later, the next men to descend the Axel Heiberg Glacier, a New Zealand team under Briton Wally Herbert, using dogs, wrote, 'Amundsen had taken only two photographs and neither photograph showed the icefalls. He had made no maps, left no route sketches. We had no choice but to rediscover a route down the Axel Heiberg.'

Scott's expedition, as successful as any manhaul expedition in history, coincided with uniquely bad weather, was not planned as a race, though it was forced too late in the day to try to compete, and achieved a hugely valuable survey and science programme. Despite having sixty miles further to travel overall and 120 miles further in the debilitating altitude conditions of the plateau, despite the demands of manhauling and the bad timing of the blizzards, Scott's men had taken only twenty days longer to reach the Pole than the best ski and dog experts in the world. They had come second in such a race but how, given the success of Amundsen's overall deception, could it have been otherwise?

In the tent that the Norwegians left near the Pole Scott found a letter addressed to him by Amundsen:

Dear Captain Scott,
As you are probably the first to reach this area after us, I will ask you kindly to forward this letter to King Haakon VII. If you can use any of the articles left in the tent please do not hesitate to do so. With kind regards. I wish you a safe return.
Yours truly
Roald Amundsen

The discarded items referred to included a pair of mitts which Bowers appropriated. Amundsen was sensible in leaving this

note for he and his men could easily die on their return journey; crevasses are no respecters of persons, not even of successful pole-seekers. Gran later wrote: 'Neither, at this seriously meaningful time, did Scott express bitter feelings towards Amundsen. On the contrary, he expressed admiration for the effective way the Norwegians had executed the feat.' Bowers, who had done his last long stint of 'wretched manhauling' without skis, wrote: 'I am glad to say I am fit and strong . . . Of course none of us are as strong as we were, and one feels inexpressibly weary at the end of a long march if the surface has been heavy. A good meal and a night's rest, however, and you are as fit as ever. Our ration is an excellent one . . . We have got here and, if ever a journey has been accomplished by honest sweat ours has.'

But the journey was only half-accomplished. It was as well that none of the five men could see into the future.

16

Intimations of Tragedy

'Well, we have turned our back now on the goal of our ambition,' Scott wrote on 19 January 1912, 'and must face our 800 miles of solid dragging – and goodbye to most of the day-dreams!'

So they turned north for Cape Evans or, if they were fast enough, *Terra Nova*, which arrived in the Ross Sea the same day they reached the Pole. Both Scott and Amundsen were keen to get their news to the nearest cable-head and both thought they stood the chance of doing so before the other.

Only a Norwegian tent greeted Scott's arrival at the Pole but, from October 1956, a station was permanently manned there. When I visited the Pole huts with Mike Stroud in 1993 I set up a beacon which bleeped our position straight back to Britain by satellite. We arrived there at 6 p.m. on 16 January and, as we crossed the Pole itself, we were immediately at 6 p.m. on 17 January, gaining an instant twenty-four hours in time just as Scott had precisely eighty-one years before to the day. We stayed at 90° South for one hour in our tent: most of the Pole station inmates were asleep. The windchill factor was suitably –90°C. I altered my compass setting's magnetic variation in readiness for our onward journey to the Beardmore Glacier. Scott's navigator, Bowers, would have done likewise but with a different setting since the magnetic pole is always on the move.

Mike, as part of his research programme, weighed us both on his saucer-sized scales. Stripping naked in a four-foot-high, ice-cold tent, to stand on one leg on tiny scales, was briefly humorous until Mike proclaimed that I had lost forty-four pounds in weight, twenty-five per cent of my bodyweight, in the

last sixty-eight days' travel and now had near zero body fat to provide me with insulation against the cold. His own status was similar as, no doubt, was that of Scott's men. We depend on our body fat for our insulation, unlike other primates who rely for their warmth on their fur. We had often felt cold en route to the Pole but never anything like the real cold we experienced after the Pole on the long, long journey to reach and then descend the Beardmore Glacier.

Only three days out from the Pole, Scott observed: 'I think Oates is feeling the cold and fatigue more than most of us.' Oates wrote: 'One of my big toes has turned black. I hope it is not going to lame me for marching.'

That was on 20 January, the same day that my own toes, in the same place but all those years later, began to blister badly. I can identify with Oates as I recall the torture of squeezing my feet into my boots. The normal highlight of the day of porridge gruel and coffee at breakfast 'were ruined by having to count down the minutes to execution, the moment when I must gingerly draw my socks over the mess of my feet. As the textile hairs brushed against the open nerve ends of the damaged areas, I would grind my teeth together. Then came the unyielding pressure of the boots themselves and the beginning of the twelve-hour ordeal during which I would have only one thing in mind; the moment of release from the boots.'

The plateau had not treated me well. Mike described me thus: 'He did look old, thin and haggard. Perched upon his bony buttocks, his long legs stretched in front of him were worse than mine, and they ended in those horribly damaged feet. His face was ravaged, almost ancient and hooded lids covered eyes that were somehow dulled. His features were puffed and doughy, and his lips were still scabbed and broken in places. The frost had left its mark. His ears were blistered and beneath one eye was a raw patch where he'd pulled off glasses while they were still frozen on. His hair, thinning a little before we started, was now falling out in tufts.'

Wilson wrote: 'Our hands are never warm enough in camp to do any neat [sketching] work now the weather is always uncomfortably cold and windy.' The ceaseless southerly wind blew at Force 4 to 6 all day with an average temperature of -21°C. At first they saw many of the Norwegians' marker cairns, smaller than their own, but soon the two trails diverged. Snow-drifts already covered sections of their tracks and blowing snow formed a haze so their own marker cairns were often only visible from less than a mile away. All eyes searched constantly for the reassurance of their outward trail, for their vital depots which, in such featureless and undulating wastes, could otherwise be missed with fatal consequences.

Whenever, at local noon, Bowers could see the sun he stopped to establish its altitude and work out their latitude. This sounds simple but some of my coldest polar moments have been spent with a theodolite. If you breathe the sighting glass mists over with frost. If your eyebrow touches metal it becomes stuck to it. If your bulky clothing brushes against the tripod, the bubble levels need careful re-aligning.

Whenever the mainly southerly wind was strong, but not too strong, the five men used their tent floorcloth and a makeshift mast, such as a ski, to provide a sail to help them with the sledge. This was just as well because the dreaded sand-like crystals which made manhauling hell lay everywhere on the polar plateau. With Force 6 winds the men sometimes had to drag the sledge sideways to prevent overturns when sailing. They managed daily totals of sixteen miles and more, their best so far, but Evans's hands deteriorated further with five of his fingertips badly blistered.

Now that they were heading north Scott had a difficult choice to make. He had normally chosen to time his travel hours, when heading south, so that, in the middle of his day, the noon sun was behind him and his shadow therefore pointed due south. To achieve the opposite effect he would now have to switch twelve hours to 'night-time' travel which would avoid being

dazzled by the sun. However, much as Scott would have preferred the night-travel option, he knew that every ounce of warmth must be used to the full, both to conserve body heat and to benefit from the better glide of the runners, and this demanded 'day time' movement. Furthermore, any day-to-night travel switch (usually accomplished by gradual changes over a period of a week, not by halting for twelve hours of precious time) would be accomplished not long before they reached the edge of the plateau where the crevasses began.

Wilson, more prone than the others to suffer from snow-blindness, partly because of his sketching duties whenever rock features needed recording, noted on 25 January: 'Marched on foot in the afternoon as my eyes were too bad to go on on ski . . . Had $ZnSO_4$ and cocaine in my eyes at night and didn't get to sleep at all for the pain.' Bowers used Wilson's skis. When the haze of blowing crystals hid the cairns and all signs of their trail were obscured, it was easy to panic. Although it caused delay, they would often unharness and fan out until, to their great relief, somebody found a scrap of the old trail between drifts. Despite such halts, the dazzle, the ever colder conditions, and with one of the men marching ski-less, they nevertheless clocked up some spectacular distances on the plateau – nineteen and a half miles, nineteen miles, eighteen miles. They averaged fourteen miles a day manhauling to Amundsen's fifteen miles a day with dogs. Amundsen travelled in temperatures averaging ten degrees warmer, yet still his men complained of the bitter cold. They were not having to drag their sledges, thus risking sweating, so they could and did wear animal furs with their vastly superior insulative qualities.

Mike and I, in 1993, hauled far heavier loads than Scott's men so we sweated, even at −51°C, and wore even thinner cotton clothes than did Scott's party. Like them, the colder it became the faster we had to haul to keep our blood circulating. In such circumstances the last thing you want is one of your team holding you up because even the briefest halt or slow down

will render your body hypothermic in double quick time.

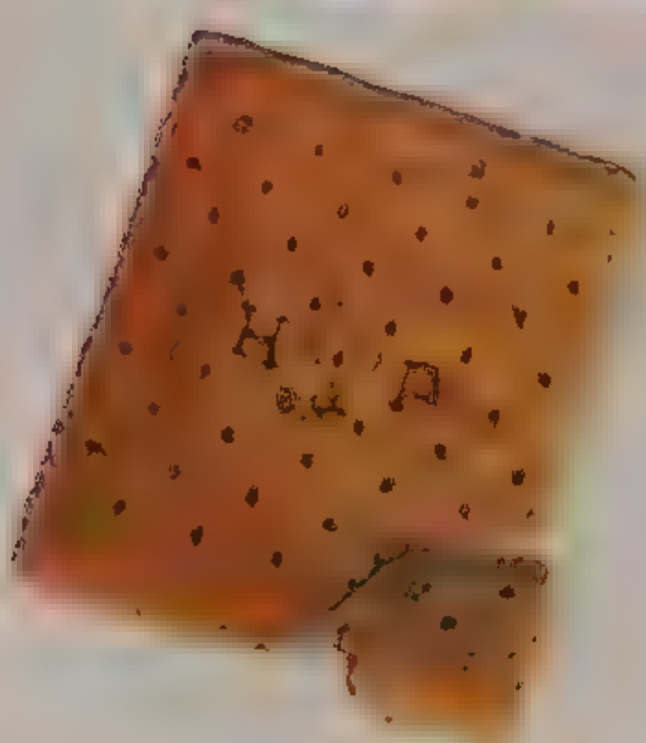
Unfortunately, Scott's team, with the Pole less than a week behind them, already had two time bombs ticking. On 23 January Scott noted that Evans was far from well and that 'I think Wilson, Bowers and I are as fit as possible under the circumstances. Oates gets cold feet. One way and another, I shall be glad to get off the summit!' As early as 23 January Scott wrote: 'There is no doubt Evans is a good deal run down – his fingers are badly blistered and his nose is rather seriously congested with frequent frost bites. He is very much annoyed with himself, which is not a good sign.' And, seven days later: 'Evans has dislodged two finger nails tonight; his hands are really bad, and to my surprise he shows signs of losing heart over it.'

Since the last pony meat the team had eaten over six weeks before, they had not taken any Vitamin C (not that vitamins were then understood), so even small wounds would heal very slowly. Evans may well have refrained from touching the all but raw pony meat anyway for he was a fussy eater. Back in March 1911, on a minor sledge trip, Debenham had noted 'For supper we had seal liver fried in blubber, excellent. Evans was averse to tasting it as the slightest taste of blubber offends him.' Evans's blubber aversion would also have applied to eating seal meat all through the previous winter, putting him in a more vulnerable position to such threats as scurvy.

Because Amundsen's route was longer on the Barrier and shorter on the plateau, his men travelled at altitude for less time and mileage than did Scott's group. Manhauling at altitude is a killer. Of the few dozen scientists who work at the South Pole station, about one every year is evacuated back to sea level because of altitude problems, in extreme cases even cerebral oedema, a swelling of the brain. Shackleton's men spent much less time on the plateau than Scott's, but enough to suffer from standard altitude problems such as severe headaches, nose bleeds and oxygen shortage. All of Scott's men may have been affected by the altitude because the thin air at 10,000 feet near the Pole

22-23. Scott's birthday dinner at winter quarters, Cape Evans, 6 June 1911. At the same time a hundred miles to the east, Amundsen's camp was established on the precarious seaward edge of the Ross Ice Shelf. This base might easily have broken off the mother shelf and floated out the sea, as indeed happened in May 2000.

24–25. Ponting made sure of taking good custom-posed shots of Scott's men with sponsored goods by way of quid-pro-quo. Nothing had changed by the 1970s when I had to take photographs of equipment for well over a thousand sponsors against a polar backdrop.



26. This biscuit, currently on tour of British museums, cost me nearly £4000 at auction to save it for the nation, only to discover it almost certainly came from Cape Evans, and not from the tent where Scott and his men died, as claimed in its auction provenance.

17–18. Scott's prototype tracked snow vehicle in 1911 and, in 1982, its descendant with which we completed the first crossing of Antarctica and the Arctic Ocean via both Poles.

29. Bowers' photograph of the polar party manhauling their still heavy load on the polar plateau with about seventy-five nautical miles to go to the Pole.

30. Mike Stroud and I use skis to tow 500-pound loads each at the start of our 2,380 kilometre, ninety-five day crossing of the Antarctic continent. On many days we found it easier to travel without skis due to difficult snow/ice conditions.

31. Scott's men probing a crevasse; all three men are separately harnessed to their sledge to minimise the dangers.

32. In 1979 we travelled through 900 miles of intermittent sastrugi. Those in this photograph average two feet high, with the furrow between each 'wave' approximately six feet. When traversing such areas it is often best to manhaul without skis.

33. The sketch by Edward Wilson which indicates that long before setting out Scott contemplated taking five, not four, men on the final Pole Journey.

34. At the South Pole, a photograph taken on 18 January, 1912. l–r: Wilson, Scott, Evans, Oates and Bowers.

35–39. 'Taff' Evans (top left) died first on the glacier. Not long afterwards Oates (top centre) could no longer carry on. Only eleven miles from their main re-supply depot, Wilson (top right), Bowers (bottom left) and Scott died in their tent. The date of their death is generally accepted as 29 March 1912, the date of Scott's last diary entry, but no one can know for sure, and it is possible that Scott may have survived until the 30th.

40. The men of *Terra Nova*, on hearing of the tragedy, erected this cross at the top of Observation Hill, above Hut Point, in memory of their dead friends. It stands there today.

has the same effect on humans as 13,000 feet on equatorial mountains. Dehydration is one such effect, caused by increased respiration and the dry atmosphere. On the plateau Scott's men received half the oxygen supply they would inhale on the Barrier. Their bodies would crave oxygen as their pulses raced and they gasped for breath.

Amundsen's top skier, the national champion of Norway, Olav Bjaaland, declared on the plateau: 'I wish to God we were down on the ice-shelf. Here it is hard to breathe and the nights are as long as the Devil.' Amundsen himself noted: 'The asthmatic condition in which we found ourselves during our six weeks' stay on the plateau was anything but pleasant.'

Wilson wrote: 'Thin air, low pressure and oxygen deficiency reach a point, at about ten thousand feet, above which even well-fed, fit humans will be affected by altitude "sickness". It is best not to exert yourself but, if you must, you will find every movement is an effort.' A dog driver exerts far less energy than a manhauler and the latter constricts his breathing each time he hauls and jerks on his chest harness. In 1993, at 11,000 feet on the plateau, with our by then 350-pound loads frequently jamming in deep sastrugi ruts, Mike Stroud and I felt we must give up. Mike summed up our feeling of helplessness in the face of the ceaseless bitter wind, the severe dehydration, the bitter cold and the vast distances still to cover as: 'We are running on empty.'

First Shackleton, then Amundsen, then Scott – all had to face their time on the plateau and none of them enjoyed it. Scott's group suffered the severe effects for longer and in colder conditions but they pushed on and still kept to their schedule.

Finding depots, where no land features exist to mark them, depends on a fair degree of luck as well as the ability to direction find. The luck factor consists of good visibility and minimal blizzards creating drifts that bury tracks. Amundsen marked some of his depots laterally with poles at one mile spaces for ten miles to the west and to the east. I always used three-foot-high minimum snow-block piles. Scott's men built double cairns at

each night camp and a single one each lunch camp. However, when a blizzard arrives at just the wrong moment, there is no way anybody will find either a cairn or a marker pole without actually bumping into it. All tracks, even freshly made ones, will be invisible in a whiteout, so there is little point in taking the extra time and trouble laying out long lines of numbered marker poles. It may sound impressively efficient but in practice it is usually a waste of time – and time is not readily available when manhauling.

Scott located all his depots and never ran out of food whilst still able to travel. On the Beardmore Glacier descent Scott was twice entangled in major crevasse fields and once had difficulty locating a depot. But he found it without having to turn back. Amundsen, on the far shorter and steeper Axel Heiberg Glacier, seriously missed his bearings twice and missed one of his glacier depots completely, having to send two of his men back to collect supplies when well past the missing depot. However well an expedition marks its outward depots, there will always be great anguish on the return journey through dangerous terrain, since death awaits any team who fail to find a depot.

On 29 January Wilson caught his ski on a rut and bruised his leg badly close by the depot where they had last seen Teddy Evans's team. His leg became swollen and painful, so Wilson went on without skis, lending his to Bowers as he had some days previously. Bowers picked up his own skis from the depot on the last day of January. There were many deeply cut sastrugi that day so Oates and Evans found the going easier without skis. Only Scott skied all day but the group covered twenty-two miles that day. In 1993 some of our best distances were likewise covered when we walked, although we were both accomplished skiers. This makes a mockery of many Scott critics who suggest the causes of his tragedy stemmed largely from lack of ski training and from Bowers having to walk, delaying the others.

In the tent Wilson continued his medical care of the others. He noted that: 'Titus' toes are blackening and his nose and

cheeks are dead yellow. Dressing Evans' fingers every other day with boric Vaseline – they are quite sweet still,' he added, referring to a lack of the sickly dead-meat odour which emanates from gangrenous flesh. On an Arctic journey in the 1980s I was woken one morning by Mike Stroud telling me I must get to a hospital soonest as the tent smelled of gangrene. He was right and, a week later back in Europe, I had a skin graft from my thigh to replace the missing flesh on my frostbitten foot.

Mike's hands suffered in a similar way to Taff Evans's a week after we had left the Pole in 1993 and I can understand why Evans was anything but cheerful since I had watched how Mike suffered. At the time I wrote. 'Mike's hands had gradually deteriorated since his mitt problems just before the Pole: . . . three of the main finger blisters had burst, the dead skin falling away to reveal raw stumps like red sausages. He continued to handle our evening cooking and turned down my offer to help . . . What pained him most, it seemed, was the removal of his mitts for their wool sometimes stuck to the raw finger flesh.'

As the British approached their Three Degree Depot 180 miles from the Pole in the last days of January 1912, Amundsen returned to his base on the Bay of Whales and, fearing Scott might have somehow overtaken him, quickly headed north aboard *Fram* to be sure to reach a cable-head to tell the world of his triumph. He spent the rest of his life an aloof and bitter man, constantly in search of new triumphs. He fell out even with his closest friend and most loyal supporter, his brother Leon, and fought a long and caustic court battle with him. He never forgave Hjalmar Johansen for his brief revolt in Antarctica and humiliated him to the end. Scott did not of course know that the Norwegians had returned to their base. As far as he was concerned they may well have died in Antarctica. At no point on their own journey, following their successful attainment of the Pole, could the British assume that the Norwegians would survive, any more than that they themselves would make it back to Cape Evans.

Despite Wilson's leg, a subsequent injury to Scott's shoulder and the ongoing troubles of Oates and Evans, the group made exceptionally good progress through early February. On 4 February they reached the rim of the plateau and saw the black specks of rocks ahead, the Beardmore Glacier's upper markers. After seven weeks of unrelieved featureless ice, rocky outcrops were a wonderful sight. 'It is like going ashore,' Scott wrote, 'after a sea voyage.'

Wilson noted: 'Since the last depot we have been having extra food . . . and we are grateful for it.' But also: 'Evans' fingers suppurating, nose very bad and rotten looking.'

Until 5 February, one third of the way down the glacier, progress had been swift. Then came a sudden halving of daily distances as Scott recorded that Evans was losing his strength. After three days threading their way through the crevassed ice-fields of the Beardmore's southern defences, they reached their Upper Glacier Depot. Here they found a note from Teddy Evans who had reached that point without any trouble and at a progress rate almost as fast as their own. Bowers, the rations maestro, was upset when he found they were short of one day's biscuit ration.

Wilson, charged by the absent geologists with collecting certain rock and fossil samples from the Beardmore, began to hanker for rock-hunting forays. On 8 February he sent Bowers off to collect dolerite rock from a nearby outcrop and, on the 9th, all but Evans went out from a camp they made beneath Mount Buckley to locate samples. For a while they rested in the rare warmth of a windless day. 'Coal seams,' Wilson noted, 'at all heights in the sandstone cliffs and lumps of weathered coal with fossils, vegetable . . . got some splendid things in the short time.' Scott wrote: 'It has been extremely interesting . . . Wilson, with his sharp eyes, has picked several plant impressions, the last a piece of coal with beautifully traced leaves in layers, also some excellently preserved impressions of thick stems, showing cellular structure.'

Despite their rest, which, as Scott pointed out, was good for Evans, they travelled for some part of every day on the glacier. On 10 February, with two full days of rations on the sledge, they needed to reach their Mid Glacier Depot in under three days. They did not anticipate any trouble finding it because it lay at the junction of three backbearings from major mountain features. From their rest camp they aimed towards the towering heights of the Cloudmaker but, with twenty-five miles to go to their food cache, Scott's normally intuitive pathfinding abilities deserted him and the British descended into an icy version of hell. Some excerpts from Scott's diary, coupled with three from other diaries of later attempts to negotiate the same chaotic passage, may give an idea of this devil's own labyrinth.

On the evening of 10 February Scott noted: 'We have two full days' food left . . . if the weather doesn't clear by to-morrow, we must either march blindly on or reduce food.' In fact this period of two or three days was, according to Cherry Garrard, the only period on the plateau or the glacier when Scott's group did not have 'their full, or more than their full ration'.

In 1993 Mike and I had by this stage, although badly malnourished like Scott, reduced our food to half rations to extend our remaining travel range. Scott could, of course, have done this so his position over the next two days was not as desperate (and thus arguably irresponsible) as might appear.

Once again, Scott's harshest critic was himself. He wrote on 11 February: 'The worst day we have had during the trip and greatly owing to our own fault.' He is referring to the difficult struggle his team experienced in a very dangerous icefield. Of course, since he was navigator, any route which led to trouble was his fault but, in this very same area, the world's most skilled mountaineer later made far worse errors. Reinhold Messner, the great Italian climber of the 1970s and '80s, a past master at threading a way through the worst icefields in the world, wrote on the Cloudmaker icefield in the 1990s: 'You look around and see only crevasses. On a surface of several square kilometres,

nothing but upthrust glacier ice and you are in the middle of it with no obvious way out. A false route description given me . . . made us angry. After five hundred metres I believed I had found a fairly safe route. We struggled to the left. We found no way out. This cost a great deal of effort. Like blind men we had run into the middle of the abysses and holes, into a labyrinth of ice towers and crevasses which were more than two hundred metres deep.'

Scott wrote: 'There were times when it seemed almost impossible to find a way out of the awful turmoil. The irregular crevassed surface giving way to huge chasms closely packed and most difficult to cross.' Messner, when close to the Cloudmaker, like Scott, wrote: 'We go two miles to get one mile north. From above we have no view of the route. We try to reach the middle of the Beardmore by crossing side-streams. We go three hours with crampons on bare ice and come to a widely shattered ice-fall marked on no map. We get stuck. We go back. In part the crevasses are so big one could put a church inside.' Messner had seen air photos of the Beardmore. He had the best available maps of the main danger areas, yet he became hopelessly entangled in the constantly changing crevasse fields together with his German colleague, Arved Fuchs, Germany's most celebrated polar traveller. Scott of course had no maps. He was being harsh on himself to write 'greatly owing to our own fault'.

In 1981, navigating the first recorded descent of the Scott Glacier, east of the Axel Heiberg, I lost my map and experienced for a short while the true impact of pathfinding through an unknown icefield.

After twelve horrendous hours, Scott found a way out. 'It was a test of our endurance on the march and our fitness with small supper. We have come through well,' he wrote. On 12 February they found marks of their outward trail, which cheered them, but then 'by a fatal chance we kept too far to the left . . . arrived in a horrid maze of crevasses and fissures. Divided councils caused our course to be erratic after this, and finally, at 9 p.m.,

we landed in the worst place of all . . . we decided to camp after a very short supper and one meal only remaining in the food bag. We *must* get there to-morrow . . . Pray God we have fine weather to-morrow.' At this point, in Scott's position, I would have switched to half-rations. Perhaps he did.

Next day, still in mist, they at last reached the northern edge of the crevasse field and, constantly checking their bearings from the dimly perceived bulk of the Cloudmaker, came upon their depot flag and their vital supplies. A note left there by Teddy Evans suggested that his group had also had trouble finding a way through the Cloudmaker area. Scott promised himself he would in future keep a tighter control on their rations, saving a reserve in case of another such emergency. He also noted, of his companions: 'Bowers has had a very bad attack of snow-blindness, and Wilson another almost as bad. Evans has no power to assist with camping work.'

The comment made by Scott whilst lost in the crevasse zone that most interested me was 'Divided councils caused our course to be erratic.' After many experiences of navigating in complex, hazardous regions over the years I made the choice that I would never ask for other opinions. This may sound dogmatic or conceited or both but I had total confidence in my navigating abilities and no confidence in anybody else's and democratic indecision can be lethal. Scott's chief navigator, Bowers, had written of Scott as they ascended the Beardmore a month earlier: 'Scott is quite wonderful in his selections of route, as we have escaped excessive dangers and difficulties all along . . . He avoids the sides of the Glacier and goes nowhere near the snow: he often heads straight for apparent chaos and somehow, when we appear to have reached a cul de sac, we find an open road.'

This praise of Scott's navigational abilities referred to his ascent of the Beardmore but coming down the glacier was very different. During the time of 'divided councils' Wilson grumbled in his diary that they: 'plunged into an icefall and wandered about in it absolutely lost for hours and hours' . . . 'We ought

to have gone west of the big hump' . . . 'and we should have missed all today's trouble.' And again: 'We again had a forenoon of trying to cut corners. Got in amongst great chasms.' If Wilson had but tried the options that he favoured, he would have found things less simplistic than he thought. As Cherry-Garrard wrote: 'One of the great difficulties of the Beardmore is that you saw the ice-falls as you went up and avoided them, but coming down you knew nothing of their whereabouts until you fell into the middle of pressure and crevasses, and then it was almost impossible to say whether you should go left or right to get out.' As Shackleton's friend Frank Wild once wrote of the Beardmore icefields. 'It was such an awful place, exactly like a rough sea in appearance.'

After their escape from the Cloudmaker icefields on 13 February 1912 and coming close to the mountains at the glacier's edge, Wilson spent an hour collecting rocks whilst the others went on ahead to their next camp site. He found at this point samples in which were embedded fern like fossil leaves. Altogether Wilson and Bowers collected a total of thirty-five pounds in rock samples to be carried over 400 miles on the sledge.

Shackleton, when he was on the glacier three years earlier, had done likewise. In the light of the horrific experience both groups were later to suffer, was it sensible to spend possibly critical hours and energy collecting and dragging the extra weight of these rocks? If the human cost was great, so was the scientific value of the samples. One of Wilson's Permian leaf fossils was later found to be *Glossopteris*, the plant characteristic of the southern hemisphere continent which provided geologists with their first proof that Antarctica was a part of the ancient super-continent of Gondwana during the Permian Period some 250 million years ago. If the extra weight of thirty-five pounds in rocks, which included this key fossil, had critically affected Scott's chances of survival, the question 'Was it worth it?' would be a more valid one. Although it is vital to keep sledgeloads to an absolute minimal weight as a general principle, a thirty-five-

pound weight factor shared by three or four manhaulers will not make the difference between life and death.

By 16 February, Scott's men were travelling slowly through thick mist but very close to their last cache on the Beardmore, the Lower Glacier Depot. Taff Evans, according to Wilson, 'collapsed – sick and giddy and unable to walk even by the sledge on ski, so we camped.' Oates, critical by nature, wrote: 'It is an extraordinary thing about Evans. He has lost his guts and behaves like an old woman or worse.' '[He] is quite worn out with the work and how he is going to do the 400 odd miles we have still to do I don't know.' 'We could not possibly carry him on the sledge.' Scott noted: 'Evans has nearly broken down in brain we think. He is absolutely changed from his normal self-reliant self . . . perhaps all will be well if we can get to our depot to-morrow fairly early but it is anxious work with the sick man.'

With food for one day only and ten miles from the depot, Scott could not afford further delay. Evans was allowed out of the sledge traces and plodded along in the tracks of the others, gradually losing ground. At first Evans had trouble fixing his ski-bindings with his bloody, bandaged, hyper-sensitive fingers. Hardly surprising. Each subsequent delay to re fix them must have made him feel ever more frustrated, impotent and desperate. At the next halt, there was no sign of Evans, so they all went back for him. 'We found him,' wrote Oates, 'on his hands and knees in the snow in a most pitiable condition. He was unable to walk and the other three went back on ski for the empty sledge and we brought him into the tent where he died at 12.30 am.' Scott's description ran: 'I was first to reach the poor man and shocked at his appearance; he was on his knees with clothing disarranged, hands uncovered and frostbitten, and a wild look in his eyes. Asked what was the matter, he replied with a slow speech that he didn't know . . . He showed every sign of complete collapse . . . he was practically unconscious, and when we got him into the tent quite comatose. He died

quietly . . . It is a terrible thing to lose a companion in this way, but calm reflection shows that there could not have been a better ending to the terrible anxieties of the past week . . . what a desperate pass we were in with a sick man on our hands at such a distance from home.'

They left Taff Evans on the ice and no diary mentions details of his burial. Any lingering without hard exertion to keep warm would quickly lead to hypothermia. Either you pull hard or you put the tent up. You do not linger to cover a body which will anyway soon be naturally drifted over in snow. Scott was meticulous in his attention to religious ceremony and both Bowers and Wilson were deeply religious. Prayers would certainly have been said over Taff Evans's body but every minute spent standing around would have been a minute too long.

A few hours later they found their depot without difficulty. Next day they passed by the Gateway and crossed the great shear-crack with no problem in good visibility. At Shambles Camp, where they had shot their last five ponies, they dug up as much of the buried horse meat as they could find, some of which they ate immediately, and felt much stronger than they had for many days.

Why, they all wondered, had Evans, the most powerful man of them all, died so quickly and for no known reason? Historians and medical experts have been wondering and theorising ever since. Both Scott and Wilson, who watched his slow deterioration closely, believed that his demise had much to do with a severe fall he had suffered two weeks before his death. Their diaries record that he fell into crevasses twice in one day; once only as far as his waist (so he could hardly have hurt his head) but the second time may well have involved a knock on the head which, they believed, had concussed him and caused his subsequent out-of-character and enfeebled personality change. He may, they thought, have suffered some form of brain haemorrhage.

The trouble with any such theory is the lack of any record

of a specific head injury to Evans. Scott notes: 'Wilson thinks it certain he must have injured his brain by a fall.' This suggests some fall unwitnessed by the others. But in that community, when everybody was clustered about the sledge, there was little chance of anyone falling unnoticed. The only other record is a footnote in the posthumously edited version of Scott's diary which refers to Evans's mental state as 'the result of concussion in the morning's fall'. This seems based entirely on the editor's imagination. If Evans had suffered from cerebral oedema, an unknown condition at the time, he need not have suffered from any fall, nor would descent to near sea level necessarily have resolved the condition. Expert nutritionist Dr A. F. Rogers, after meticulous studies of the background to Evans's death, concluded: 'The diet consumed by members of Scott's Last Expedition was deficient in calories and vitamins. It contained no Vitamin C . . . at all. The probable cause of death of Chief Petty Officer Edgar Evans, R.N., was a mild head injury insuf ficient to cause concussion but which caused a subdural haemorrhage in a scorbutic subject and resulted a fortnight later in fatal secondary brain stem haemorrhage.' Another medical expert, Canadian Dr R. C. Falckh, theorised in 1986 that Evans is quite likely to have died of anthrax contracted from the ponies during the winter.

Taff Evans was a Petty Officer who had always found it easy to get on with the 'officer class', be they Scott and Bowers, or scientists like Debenham. He was a cheerful, self-confident extrovert with a wealth of anecdotes. He had shared many a tent with the scientists and many a night in the same sleeping bag with Scott. It is not a foregone conclusion therefore, as some have suggested, that he felt alone and cut off by his social 'superiors' and that this hastened his physical decline.

Failure to be first at the Pole may well have meant more to him than it did to the others, including Scott, because financially his future was far more dependent on a reasonable level of fame, at least in his native Wales. It is possible this did contribute to

his lack of resistance and depressed state, but Evans was by nature a cheerful extrovert so this seems unlikely. Also, Scott made a pertinent diary note on 23 January that would suggest strongly that Taff's despondency stemmed from the very date of his cut hand at which point Pole priority still seemed possible. Scott's precise words were that Evans 'hasn't been cheerful since the accident.' I know well how the least finger injury makes itself painfully felt every waking moment of the day on a polar journey and Evans's sliced knuckles would have made him anything but cheerful from the start, especially since his were the jobs of sledge stowage and tent erection which require extensive, dextrous hand work in the cold, often only possible without outer mitts.

The expert most likely to make an accurate assessment, as a doctor, nutritionist and manhauler who has long studied Evans's death causes, would in my opinion be Dr Mike Stroud, now a senior lecturer in the much respected Institute of Nutrition at Southampton University. He has written many learned papers on such topics as 'energy expenditure during long periods of endurance exercise with inadequate energy intake'. He has himself nearly died on two occasions from hypothermia/hypoglycaemia. He wrote me a note in 2003:

The causes of Evans's death will by its very nature always continue to be speculative. The problem is that you will never be able to quantify the potential contributions from:

a) Vitamin deficiency: scurvy and others.
b) Frank starvation: ie sheer weight loss: our data suggests that this must have been significant.
c Hypoglycaemia hypothermia. these are both relevant to the Evans case. Weight loss and hypoglycaemia together would have added to the environmental risk.
d) Some other cause such as the head injury theory.

Scott's scientist Raymond Priestley echoed Cherry-Garrard's repeated opinion that Scott's men had sufficient food at all times

up to and beyond the date of Evans's death and that their rations' energy value was sufficient to keep them going. Despite the lack of Vitamin C, which we now know was absent from their rations, they had not travelled for long enough without it to have developed the main symptoms of scurvy. Priestley wrote: 'Wilson . . . knew the symptoms of scurvy from personal experience; was a conscientious and scientific observer, and did not suggest that visible signs of scurvy had appeared.' It takes three months and more for the disease to develop but Scott's men had consumed Vitamin C from lightly boiled pony meat two and a half months prior to Evans's death.

Teddy Evans did nearly die of scurvy on his return journey from the Pole but nothing can be deduced from this. Priestley wrote that Teddy Evans, who manhauled much longer than most of his colleagues, 'is not a reliable criterion from which to argue about the state of health of his companions.' He had been away 'in the field' without Vitamin C for at least a month longer than all the others.

A great many Scott critics have suggested that Taff Evans suffered energy loss greater than the others simply because he was a bigger man. Cherry-Garrard was also a proponent of this theory. He wrote: 'He was the biggest, heaviest and most muscular man in the party. I do not believe that this is a life for such men, who are expected to pull their weight and to support and drive a larger machine than their companions, and at the same time to eat no extra food. If, as seems likely, the ration these men were eating was not enough to support the work they were doing, then it is clear that the heaviest man will feel the deficiency sooner and more severely than others who are smaller than he.'

My own opinion on this is the result of many months spent manhauling in competition with my long-time colleague, Dr Mike Stroud. I am a far bigger, heavier man than Mike yet, after ninety five days of extreme manhauling with the same calorific intake, I ended up with far less loss of muscle (which is the key

factor, not bodyweight) than did Mike. Mike Stroud recorded that my lean tissue loss was 4.3 kilograms to his 6.5 kilograms, so my isometric strength in key muscles ended far greater than Mike's although, at the outset, he was the stronger. Much as I would love to play the card that, being bigger, I should have more food, I simply cannot prove it. One reason for this, as Mike Stroud found from his research, is that a small man, pulling a sledge of equal weight to a big man's sledge, has to work at a higher energy intensity. This principle would hold good when both such men were hauling a single sledge.

Taff Evans's body will have moved several miles out onto the Barrier over the past ninety years and will never be found. If it were, however, modern forensics might well be able to ascertain the real reason for his death. He strove hard all the way and Scott, not knowing of his injury, nor suspecting his decline, could not have chosen a stronger manhauler.

Scott had reason to be pleased with the expedition's progress the day after Evans's death. That will sound callous from an emotional viewpoint but I am talking of four people living in fear of their lives. With any one of them slowing the others their group chances of survival were cut from good to remote. In such circumstances the death of somebody suffering hugely and bound to die within a few days must be a relief. To pretend otherwise would be hypocritical and Scott was honest in his reaction. 'The absence of poor Evans is a help to the commissariat,' he wrote and added, 'if he had been here in a fit state we might have got along faster.'

On such a journey there was no hope for anyone who could not keep up. Their chances of survival depended on maintaining a certain basic speed, not possible if they had physically to drag any one of their number on the sledge. All they could do was to hope Evans could keep up on skis whilst they dragged his food and belongings ahead of him. Had Scott been the weak person at that point, the same rules would have applied. Scott summarised the situation: 'I take this opportunity of saying that

we have stuck to our sick companions to the last . . . In the case of Edgar Evans . . . the safety of the remainder seemed to demand his abandonment, but Providence mercifully removed him at this critical moment.' At Shambles Camp on the Barrier on 18 February 1912, they discarded their old sledge in favour of a new one left there previously which they loaded with all their gear, including the thirty-five pounds of rocks, plus enough pony meat to last them eight days, and their rations which included those of the dead Evans.

How were their chances, as viewed in their tent on the night of 18 February at Shambles' Camp?

They had come through seven weeks at high altitude on the plateau, a record and an unknown factor when Scott had first laid out his plans. They had then descended the glacier in good time and were back on the Barrier ahead of schedule. Gran later summarised their situation: 'The way to their meeting place (with the dog teams) was not impossibly long. They were fairly tired but healthy. On the Barrier they might encounter higher temperatures and winds helpful to their sledge sail.' Looking back, the initial long haul out from Cape Evans with the heaviest loads and the gradual elimination of the ponies had gone to plan, as had the desperate haul up the glacier to 10,000 feet. The bitter cold, constant winds and debilitating altitude effects of the plateau were behind them, as were the nightmare icefields of the Beardmore. Of the great 1,600-mile challenge, only 400 miles with a single comparatively light sledgeload remained. With the benefit of pony meat to boost their health and ample rations in hand, they were surely justified in believing that the worst was over and that the odds of a successful return were still in their favour?

Cherry-Garrard, with his intricate knowledge of the expedition, summarised their outlook thus: 'They had just picked up one week's food for five men: between the Beardmore and One Ton were three more such depôts each with one week's food for five men. They were four men.' The distance to One

Ton Depot was 240 miles so they had four full weeks of food to cover 240 miles which entailed an average of 8.6 miles per day on full rations (but they could extend their rations by saving the Evans ration). On the flat surface of the Barrier at sea-level with a light sledgeload 8.6 miles per day was less than the fifteen miles per day average they had maintained on the plateau and upper glacier (and less than the average which Teddy Evans's three-man team had achieved on their return journey over the Barrier, despite having to tow Evans on their sledge for six days).

Scott's plans had been based on a 144-day journey and they had taken 112 days so far. To stay on schedule, they had thirty-two days left to cover the 348 nautical miles to Cape Evans (assuming no help from the dog teams). On this basis they must average 10.9 miles per day for thirty-two days to keep to Scott's plan, an average far less than for their journey so far. Four hundred miles of Barrier lay ahead of the four men and, by the simple mathematics of food, time and distance, the journey looked eminently possible. Survival was within their grasp.

17

The Greatest March Ever Made

On 19 February 1912, as Scott's men set out across the Barrier, Tom Crean arrived alone at Hut Point. Atkinson was there and with growing apprehension listened to Crean's story. After an exciting but speedy descent of the Beardmore Glacier with Teddy Evans navigating in fine style, he and Bill Lashly had been alarmed by Evans's rapid decline, most probably caused by scurvy. From One Ton Depot they had towed the apparently dying lieutenant for six days, on the sledge, as far as Corner Camp, where Lashly stayed with him and Crean trekked on alone, a remarkable achievement, for thirty-five miles to Hut Point. Atkinson and Gerof rescued Evans and took him to Hut Point where Atkinson slowly coaxed him back to life.

When Crean's news spread to everyone at Cape Evans, there were many questions. What of Amundsen? Evans's men had seen no sign of the Norwegians before they turned back on the plateau. This was great news. What of Scott? He had taken five not four men on to the Pole with plenty of rations. They should make it, Crean thought, as all five were strong men and very fit.

Gran's first reaction on hearing how well everyone had taken to skis was: 'They have taken the skis to the Pole, hurrah!' But, when he saw the physical state of Teddy Evans and, to a lesser extent, Crean and Lashly, he was not so happy and wrote: 'but from what I had heard it became clear to me that the prospects of our five-man polar party were not so bright as most of the members of the expedition imagined. Evans' frightful return journey was a pointer to what Scott and his men would be bound to undergo.'

*

Back in February 1911, when the expedition had first made camp at Cape Evans, Scott had sent Victor Campbell and five men off with the ship to explore another area. After their chance discovery of the Norwegians in the Bay of Whales, and return to McMurdo Sound, they had been dropped off at Cape Adare. Ten months later, in December 1911, *Terra Nova* picked them up again and repositioned them at another coastal spot to geologise. They expected the ship would come back to collect them in a couple of months. After landing Campbell's team, *Terra Nova* tried to embark another group of geologists from the west side of McMurdo Sound. Sea ice prevented the pick-up, so this group (Taylor, Debenham, Gran and Forde) made their own way back around the coast to Cape Evans.

In late February 1912 *Terra Nova* picked up the gravely sick Teddy Evans from Hut Point, as well as eight men from Cape Evans who needed to leave the expedition rather than stay for a second winter. The ship also landed eight mules and some extra dogs that Scott had ordered in readiness for a second attempt on the Pole should that be necessary. The men leaving Antarctica were George Simpson, Herbert Ponting, Griffith Taylor, Raymond Priestley, Bernard Day the motor engineer, Robert Forde, Thomas Clissold the cook, Omelchenko and Cecil Meares.

Scott's critics like to say that Meares left the expedition a year early because he was in a huff with Scott for making him travel on to the glacier with his dog-teams, which was far further than originally intended. All records, however, indicate that Meares had to return to Britain to sort out the affairs of his father to whom he was devoted and who had just died.

Atkinson had intended, when he, Cherry-Garrard, Wright and Keohane had returned to Cape Evans from the Beardmore, that he would head back south to help Scott with Gerof and the dogs on 20 February. But, on 19 February, after Crean's arrival, Atkinson had to use the dogs to bring back the near-dead Teddy Evans. As the only doctor, Atkinson decided to stay with Evans.

Any sensible expedition leader, like any Army officer briefing his men before an operation, will expect to have to alter his original orders and react to changing circumstances. Scott was no different. As the Pole journey unrolled and as parts went faster or slower than predicted, so he told his messengers, the successive return-groups, what his updated requirements were regarding the dog teams. He naturally expected his *last* orders, those sent back with Teddy Evans, would be faithfully actioned by his deputy back at Cape Evans. These last orders, which were delivered correctly by Teddy Evans to Atkinson, specified that the dogs, under Meares or Atkinson, should come out as far as 82° or 83° and beyond the Mount Hooper Depot point. These were clear, sensible orders, which, if actioned, would plainly have allowed Scott's group and the dog teams to have met up at or near the Mount Hooper Depot in early or mid-March.

With Meares gone, Atkinson, a doctor, concentrated instead on trying his utmost to save Teddy Evans's life and he succeeded. The task of sending the dogs to meet Scott's returning party in mid-Barrier devolved onto Charles Wright, who had dog driving experience and was a good navigator. Simpson, however, was adamant that since he would be leaving in the ship, the expedition's meticulous meteorological programme must be taken over by Wright. This left only Cherry-Garrard, whose dog-driving and navigational skills were at best limited, to take Gerof and the dogs to meet Scott in mid-Barrier as he had requested. Sadly nobody at Cape Evans appreciated the slow progress and damage the cold weather was causing Scott's men.

Should they have been alerted by Teddy Evans's condition, as Gran later suggested, into a full scale rescue effort? Atkinson was well aware of the symptoms of scurvy. He saw that Lashly and Crean were symptom-free and he knew that they, like Scott's team, had consumed more seal meat than Evans. Teddy Evans was clearly a one off scurvy case, due to his extra sledging exertions prior to the Pole journey.

For the dogs to be usefully active in the mid Barrier region they would need food cached at One Ton Depot, a job Scott had originally detailed to be done by Meares. Because Meares had returned to Cape Evans much later than expected, and had then left in the ship, this task was left undone. On 25 February 1912, Cherry-Garrard and Gerof left Hut Point with full loads of dog food, twenty-seven days of rations for themselves and two weeks of rations for Scott.

Terra Nova had to leave Antarctica in early March. After several attempts she was unable, owing to sea ice, to pick up Campbell's little group, who would have to survive in an ice cave living off seal meat for a year. On Ross Island eleven men under Atkinson, the new leader, waited anxiously for the return of Cherry-Garrard, Gerof and Scott's men from the Barrier. As far as they knew Scott was still on or ahead of his original 144-day schedule. If Scott's group, who started from Shambles Camp on 19 February, could average thirteen miles per day (less than their average at high altitude on the plateau) over the 240 miles to One Ton, they would meet Cherry-Garrard there between 3 and 10 March.

The first day out was not auspicious for the Pole team. The surface conditions were bad but Scott consoled himself in his diary that their ominously low mileage, only four and a half miles that day, was due to a late start and the heavy drift just off the coastal rim of the Barrier. 'I sincerely trust,' he wrote, 'it is only the result of this windless area close to the coast and that, as we are making steadily outwards, we shall shortly escape it.' But the next day they only travelled seven miles and he noted: 'Same terrible surface . . . our sledge and ski leave deeply ploughed tracks which can be seen winding for miles behind.' They camped for the night of 20 February at the site of the four-day 'wet' blizzard that had so delayed their outward journey. Here they searched for more buried pony meat but found none. Scott wrote: 'Terribly slow progress but we hope for better

things as we clear the land. As usual our trials are forgotten as we camp and good food is our lot.'

22 February saw them approaching a depot in poor light. The wind had at last picked up so they raised their sail and increased their pace. Blown snow covered all tracks and obliterated the line of cairns for a while, but Bowers' sense of direction brought them to the depot and Scott wrote: 'Bowers' wonderful sharp eyes detected an old double lunch cairn, the theodolite telescope confirmed it, and our spirits rose accordingly. Tonight we had pony hoosh so excellent and filling that one feels really strong and vigorous again.' They covered over eight miles in seven hours without their sail, a pace which was certainly hopeful. They found the Southern Barrier Depot and dug up the head of Oates' recalcitrant old pony Christopher. Oates wrote: 'Dug up Christopher for food but it was rotten.' Christopher's revenge! Shackleton's men ate rotten pony meat and suffered diarrhoea. All the standard rations at this depot were in order but for a shortage of cooking fuel owing to evaporation. '[We] shall have to be *very* saving with fuel,' Scott wrote, 'otherwise have ten full days' provisions . . . and shall have less than seventy miles to go.'

After the Lower Barrier Depot they pulled clear of the coastal strip, where surfaces seemed to remain deep and sticky whatever the temperature, and started to achieve the good daily distance which Scott had counted upon when formulating his original 144-day plan, averaging eleven and a half miles per day.

The planned allotment of fuel for the return journey was two thirds of a gallon for eight days, the estimated time taken to cover each sixty-three-to-seventy-mile depot-to-depot stretch, allowing for two full days of bad weather. But the expected march rate was twelve miles per day, so six days between depots was the norm and was achieved by both the teams that returned before Scott's group, neither of whom reported fuel loss at the depots. The fuel allowance was generous, therefore, and planned to provide a surplus.

There have been many subsequent theories as to why Scott's cans leaked. On the *Discovery* expedition Scott's cans had cork bungs. These leaked, especially when sledgeloads were jolted and overturned, so by 1911 Scott had switched to using metal screw tops, seated on leather washers. Expeditions by Peary and Amundsen in the Arctic had experienced the same trouble and both men later used silver solder around the caps and along the can seams to prevent fuel loss. To solder over a fuel can lid is certainly a step I would try to avoid since the act of cutting it open in extreme cold conditions and with heavy mitts would be just one more devil-factor at the moment when hands are at their coldest.

An Amundsen can was located at the base of the Axel Heiberg Glacier fifty-eight years later and had lost no fuel. On the other hand, glaciologist Dr Charles Swithinbank used US-made four-gallon metal jerrycans on his own scientific missions to Antarctica and, in 1962, he once opened such a can at one of his caches and found that the can, 'full to the brim with cooking fuel when we left, was unaccountably empty. We looked carefully for any hole in the can, but found none. Fortunately we carried a reserve.' These US jerrycans are used for various fuels all over the world and are normally leak-proof.

Of all Scott's depots, only three, all on the Barrier, suffered from fuel shortage and not all the cans were affected. In no case was there any apparent damage to the can or its cap. Cherry-Garrard later studied the mystery in depth. He observed that a wooden case containing eight standard oilcans was dug out of a deep snowdrift at Cape Evans. This case had been there untouched for over a year. When opened it was discovered that three of the tins were full, three empty, one a third full and one two-thirds full. The only explanation must have been, Cherry-Garrard believed, that some of the caps' leather washers, shrinking and cracking in response to temperature changes, had allowed the fuel to evaporate, especially at times of warmer temperatures.

Cherry-Garrard commented that such evaporation could be avoided or minimised by stacking oil cans as deep as possible at the base of snow-covered depots and well away from the sun's rays. Scott's men, ignorant of the danger from the sun, used to leave the red oilcans on the top of each depot cairn to help make it as conspicuous as possible.

When Gran later visited One Ton Depot he found rations smelling of cooker fuel, although the fuel cans were stacked on snow well above the rations. This appeared to indicate that, at least on this occasion, pressurised seepage rather than evaporation must have taken place. The hot summer sun could have caused such seepage by vapour expansion in any can not fully topped-up and where extreme cold temperatures had cracked its lid washer the previous winter. Some cans probably also leaked from less than perfectly soldered seams.

But what Gran did not know was that the man detailed to manhaul the rations to One Ton had taken rations and fuel already soaked and damaged at Cape Evans. This only became clear to me on reading a later note by Cherry-Garrard in 1929. '[Simpson] told me that during the recent "Antarctic" dinner at the Cafe Royal, Hooper told him . . . that the rations and paraffin tins were damaged: and the rations were soaked with paraffin . . . That he (Hooper) said "We can't take the food and tins out like this". To which Nelson replied that "they had been told to take them out and they must do so!"' This would suggest that the tins may have been damaged off the ship or stacked badly in full sunlight at Cape Evans, not at One Ton. It is also a fine example of how the diary of one witness in 1913 can be contradictory to another sixteen years later. In 1911, food and fuel cans were hand-soldered and were never one hundred per cent reliable. Modern machine methods solved the problem, but too late for the *Terra Nova* expedition.

Annoying though the fuel shortage must have been to Scott's party, it did not by itself cause any starvation, thirst or deadly conditions; only an additional discomfort. They had to exercise

fuel economy by using their cooker only when preparing their meals and never merely for warmth but they ate exactly what they would have eaten with more fuel. They would however (as had been the case up on the plateau) have been suffering from the slowly accumulating effects of dehydration through insufficient fluid intake. At no point of the journey was the fuel calculated to provide heat for drying out clothes so the depot fuel shortage did not affect the state of their clothing in any way.

On 25 February, free of the clogging coastal effect on their sledge runners, Scott's men fell back into the fine swinging ski rhythm they had developed on the plateau. Bowers had at that time kept pace at his own walking speed, but now he too was on skis and no match for Scott, Wilson and Oates. Scott addressed this point in a critical manner which upset the tough little Scotsman.

Scott, the leader, knew that their only hope lay in making maximum distance whenever on the move. Pulling a sledge in deep or clinging snow does not involve technique because skis cannot be made to glide, but manhauling on skis does involve synchronised rhythm with each man achieving his maximum 'pull' at exactly the same moment, as in a rowing-boat. Scott described this as 'we are getting into better ski drawing again. Bowers hasn't quite the trick.' He naturally tried to point this out to Bowers, who, equally naturally, was dismayed for, as always, he was trying his best. Scott knew this and added: 'I never doubted his heart.'

Scott's attempts to have his team swing together must have worked for they managed twelve miles that day, despite the temperature dropping below –20°F for the first time; an ominous sign. They were now in the region well away from the coast and almost out of sight of even the highest mountains. Here was a place they should expect helpful winds from the south, as had Teddy Evans's team a few short weeks before. 'Oh! for a little wind,' Scott wrote on 25 February. But when the winds came they were mostly from the north and cut into the skin of

their cheeks and noses. 'Sky overcast at start,' Scott wrote, 'but able to see tracks and cairn distinct at long distance . . . Very cold nights now and cold feet starting march . . . We are doing well on our food, but we ought to have yet more . . . The fuel shortage still an anxiety . . . Wonderfully fine weather but cold, very cold. Nothing dries and we get our feet cold too often.'

Then suddenly, the temperature plunged with a vengeance. From 25 February onwards their thermometer recorded –20°F, from the 27th 30°F and, only five days later, –40°F. On the 28th Scott wrote: 'The sun shines brightly but there is little warmth in it . . . Splendid pony hoosh sent us to bed and sleep happily after a horrid day.' There were no complaints about the effectiveness of their sleeping bags.

'Cold night . . . with north-west wind, force 4,' Scott noted on the 29th, 'luckily Bowers and Oates in their last new finnesko, keeping my old ones for present . . . The oil will just about spin out . . . [given good weather to the next depot] and we arrive with 3 clear days' food in hand. The increase of ration has had an enormously beneficial result.' Despite the strong northerly winds against them, they still managed their daily minimum. Even at these extreme temperatures, with the vicious wind in their face and the constant worry of losing circulation in their feet, the four men forced their way north.

With cold feet came cold hands and the temperature inside Scott's tent at night would differ only by a degree or two from that outside. Writing a diary demands fingers unprotected by mitts and, by February, there would have been few fingers left between Scott's men that were not painfully split about the cuticles and nails or raw from burst frost blisters. As early as 25 January Bowers had made his last diary entry, Oates on 24 February and Wilson on 27 February. Scott, amazingly, kept going for another month and Bowers maintained the meteoro logical records meticulously well into March. Survival in extreme cold is a matter of looking after yourself at all times and, as with the principles of hibernation, doing as little as is strictly

necessary. Writing a diary does not qualify under that heading.

Well over ninety-nine per cent of people have no comprehension of what it is like to be really cold. A great many in the third world have experience of hunger and thirst but, luckily for them, they have not experienced the deathly cold that comes with the loss of all body fat in the wind driven, bitterly cold wastes of the polar regions. I have met folk who live in Canada or Minnesota and laugh at the cold. 'Oh,' they exclaim, 'I was working at −40°C last year and it was easy.' As like as not these polar veterans experienced their 'cold' wearing adequate clothing, with full stomachs, eighteen per cent body fat insulation, good health and a nice warm house to return to.

On the Barrier, in similar conditions to Scott's men but a lot nearer to his base, Shackleton wrote of suffering from anemomania, literally wind madness. His colleague, Eric Marshall, carefully monitored their body temperatures and found them to be 2°F under normal. This is a highly vulnerable state to be in. Marshall wrote: 'All nearly paralysed with cold.' Shackleton agreed. 'The end is in sight,' he said. 'We are weakening rapidly.'

In 1993 Mike Stroud and I had manhauled for over ninety depot-less days and reached the same spot as Scott's men on the Barrier, where the mountains of the coast at last disappear. At that point, I wrote: 'New kind of chisel-hard, hoarfrost surface . . . It is now horribly body-cold. I feel as though naked . . . I have to clasp my arms around my torso and jump [to avoid freezing]'. With the sun shining down on us, Mike stumbled and fell over with hypothermia. Like me, and like Scott's men, his body had lost all vestiges of protective fat and he was completely vulnerable to the ever-plummeting windchill. Of our chances of making the last 290 miles to Hut Point, Mike then wrote: 'In the ten hours that was the most we could manage, we made only twelve miles. Despite sledges of half the weight with which we had started . . . It was the end of the brief Antarctic summer . . . Even the hauling could no longer drive the chill from our bones. The cold lay heavily in our bodies and weakened us as

effectively as venom. We had been crushed by the vastness of our journey, sapped by the weight of our loads, and now our muscles were poisoned by the ice.'

At this point, if our modern communications instruments had ceased to work, we would have died on the Barrier within two or three weeks. Scott had no such instruments but, unlike us, he did have a thin lifeline of depots all the way to Hut Point and he did have every reason to expect a relief team with dogs at some point in mid Barrier. He had predicted reaching Hut Point by the end of March. On 1 March, with 240 miles to go, he would need an average of only eight miles per day to keep to his plan. That evening he wrote: 'very cold last night minimum -41.5°[F]. We did 11½ yesterday and marched 6 this morning . . . the weather is wonderful. Cloudless days and nights and the wind trifling [but we are] horribly cold. For this lunch hour the exception [with] a bright and comparatively warm sun. All our gear is out drying.'

March 2 was a day of reckoning, a day of chilling warnings of what might lie ahead. The only diary still recording events by then was Scott's. 'Misfortunes,' he wrote, 'rarely come singly.' At the Middle Barrier Depot they again found a shortage of oil. 'With most rigid economy it can scarce carry us to the next depôt (71 miles away).' The weather changed too, the blue skies clouding over, dark and forbidding as the temperature hovered at −40°C and, worst of all, Oates announced, to his companions' horror, that his feet were in a bad state.

'Titus Oates,' Scott wrote, 'disclosed his feet, the toes showing very bad indeed, evidently bitten by the late temperatures.' Since Oates had first commented in his diary, a few days after reaching the Pole, that one of his toes was black, eight weeks had passed, during which neither he nor any of the others had ever commented on him limping, nor even that his toes were becoming worse. Nonetheless Oates must have suffered the pains of hell every time his feet thawed out in the comparative warmth of his sleeping bag.

In 1993 I suffered the same problem, except that in my case, also from the Pole and down the Beardmore, only four of my toes were badly bitten, not all ten. Mike Stroud wrote, when we reached the Barrier, '[Ran] could no longer bear the torment without reaction. The swelling on the right foot was now punctured by a deep hole, red, angry, inflamed with pus, and the black and swollen toes of both feet were demarcated by a vivid red line at the base where good tissue fought against the infection. The stench of rotting flesh was added to our already evil body odours.'

Oates now took one and a half hours to fit his frostbitten, hypersensitive feet into his frozen *finnesko* in the mornings, valuable time lost to progress. Wilson slit these hide boots apart to help ease the pain. If my 1993 Antarctic experience taught me a new meaning for the word *cold*, it did likewise with *pain*. I realised how lucky I had been for fifty years of experiencing comparatively little pain. Broken bones and teeth, torn-off digits, frostbite and chronic kidney stones had seemed unpleasant at the time. But, those nights in Antarctica, I knew real pain for the first time.

Oates somehow managed to stay harnessed to the sledge and to keep pulling. On 3 March they did ten miles a day, then a little over nine miles on 4 March, despite the unremittingly cold temperatures, the ever greater drag of the snow crust and the adverse winds. Scott wrote: 'We are in a *very* queer street since there is no doubt we cannot do the extra marches and feel the cold horribly.' Again: 'the wind at strongest, (and from the best quarter), powerless to move the sledge. When the light is good it is easy to see the reason. The surface, lately a very good hard one, is coated with a thin layer of woolly crystals, formed by radiation no doubt. These are too firmly fixed to be removed by the wind and cause impossible friction on the runners. God help us, we can't keep up this pulling, that is certain. Amongst ourselves we are unendingly cheerful, but what each man feels in his heart I can only guess.'

The absence of the once powerful sledger Taff Evans made no difference to the fact that, compared with the time taken by the last two sledge teams to cross the Barrier, Cherry Garrard's and Teddy Evans's groups, Scott's once vaunted team was advancing like snails. The cause was not the thirty-five pounds of rock samples, nor the pony meat they had taken on board, but purely the difference in surface conditions.

Teddy Evans's team had but three men to pull their load yet they had kept up a pace which would have seen Scott safely through to One Ton Depot. And that was so despite Evans's scurvy attack. Even when Crean and Lashly were dragging Evans along on the sledge, they still managed ten miles a day. What ailed Scott's men, their strength assured by ample rations and replenishment Vitamin C from the pony meat, was not their own lack of pulling power but the crucial effect of the colder temperatures on the snow as each day passed by.

In the immediate vicinity of the coast, where Barrier met land, the surface was bad for all the groups, whatever the temperature, but once clear of land, the sandy crystal surface caused by the cold grasped and clung only to Scott's runners for he had come to the Barrier a little too late to cope with a rogue year. Was this his fault? Of course, for his plan should have been foolproof.

The best climbers in the world have died on Everest because, despite their skill, they have had to make their ascent during the brief annual climbing season and, if a severe storm strikes, they will die no matter how good their plan. To have a foolproof plan in such circumstances involves planning not to make the attempt at all. If no ship ever left port to cross an ocean for fear of the unseasonable rogue monster wave, then no skipper would be blamed for a sinking. What is now certain, since the publication of *The Coldest March* by United States atmospheric scientist Dr Susan Solomon in 2000, is that Scott's group were unlucky enough to experience the year of the rogue wave.

Scott's original 144 day plan was based on a meticulous weather chart compiled by expert meteorologist George Simpson,

later the Director of the Meteorological Office in the United Kingdom. Dr Solomon stated that Simpson's estimate of the behaviour of the Barrier weather was 'stunning in its accuracy'. Charles Wright, who worked under George Simpson at Cape Evans, wrote that Scott's group had been anticipating warmer temperatures as they descended the glacier. He was certain that the unexpected cold weather was the main reason for their death and he pointed out that Simpson's report (in 1926) confirmed that nobody could have forseen such weather at that season.

'Simpson's three-volume treatise summarising the meteorological findings of the expedition was published after many years of painstaking analysis, long after Scott was dead. In completing the preface to his great labour in 1919, Simpson wrote: "Over and over again as point after point was cleared up I have longed to be able to show the result to Captain Scott, for there was hardly a problem of Antarctic meteorology which we had not discussed together." ' But Simpson could not have predicted that extraordinary weather would strike in March 1912, at exactly the time when Scott's party had to make reasonable progress between the Barrier depots in order to survive.

The freak weather began at the end of February in fits and starts and was recorded in Bowers' log until 19 March. Minimum temperatures day after day were 40°–50° colder than those that Teddy Evans's returning group had experienced on the same route only a month before. The extreme cold froze the blood in fingers and toes and made every action painfully slow. Records now show that almost every daily temperature they logged was between 10° and 20° colder than in an average year. United States weather recording machines along Scott's Barrier route show that, over a fifteen-year period, only one year rivals the severity of the 1912 temperatures.

As the extreme cold set in Scott's daily distances dropped farther and farther behind those of the other two returning parties, even of scurvy-ravaged Teddy Evans's. Once clear of

the mountains and out on the open Barrier, Scott had expected a following wind to fill the sledge sail. This had worked well for the other two returning groups, as it had for Shackleton in 1908. But the unseasonal cold snap killed the expected southerly winds. One weather-related problem added fatally to another: the frozen limbs, the painfully slow time taken to make and break camp, the lack of wind and the killer factor of the snow condition. Scott wrote: 'Not the least glide in the world,' and, 'on this surface we know we cannot equal half our old marches, and that for that effort we expend nearly double the energy.' The loose new snow crystals that formed as the temperatures fell acted as a brake on the sledge runners, just as they had on the high plateau a few weeks earlier and just as they do in today's scientific studies of the physical properties of snow.

What Scott's men would have achieved in a normal year, indeed in nine out of any ten years, on the Barrier is not difficult to calculate. Oates would have carried on a great deal farther than he did, certainly well beyond One Ton, until needing to be pulled (as Teddy Evans was) on a sledge. The toes and feet of Scott and Wilson would not have frozen at standard temperatures, possessing new *finnesko* as they did. Even without southerly winds they would have continued to achieve the fifteen miles per day average they were previously managing and which had been performed by the other two groups at that stage. At such a rate they would have reached One Ton on 4 March when Cherry Garrard was there. He did not leave until 10 March. For the last 130 miles to Hut Point an average of only six miles per day would have seen them safely home.

The new meteorological records demonstrate unarguably why Scott could not in 1912 have foreseen such exceptional weather. It had seemed perfectly safe to Simpson to travel on the Barrier until the end of March. American scientists in the 1990s have established beyond doubt that March 1912 saw abnormally cold and unrelenting temperatures on the Barrier at exactly the time and place where Scott's men slowed and died. For three straight

weeks temperatures were 10°C below average, conditions which have been repeated only once in the last thirty-eight years.

The response of the ignorant critic, who has never mounted an expedition, is: 'Oh, but surely he should have expected the worst and not been surprised by a bad winter.' I have planned expeditions in hot and cold deserts based on likely weather behaviour patterns but always hoping to avoid the catastrophe of a hurricane, major sandstorm or flood. Scott was hit by just such a freak event, before which his team's ongoing progress was at a rate that would have taken them safely home.

On 3 March, 103 miles to the north of Scott, Cherry-Garrard and Gerof reached One Ton Depot and made camp. Two days later, not knowing this, Scott wrote:

Our fuel dreadfully low and the poor Soldier nearly done. It is pathetic enough because we can do nothing for him; more hot food might do a little, but only a little, I fear. We none of us expected these terribly low temperatures, and of the rest of us Wilson is feeling them most; mainly, I fear, from his self sacrificing devotion in doctoring Oates' feet. We cannot help each other, each has enough to do to take care of himself. We get cold on the march when the trudging is heavy, and the wind pierces our worn garments. The others, all of them, are unendingly cheerful when in the tent. We mean to see the game through with a proper spirit, but it's tough work to be pulling harder than we ever pulled in our lives for long hours, and to feel that the progress is so slow. One can only say 'God help us!' and plod on our weary way, cold and very miserable, though outwardly cheerful. We talk of all sorts of subjects in the tent, not much of food now, since we decided to take the risk of running a full ration. We simply couldn't go hungry at this time.

Through the next two dark and pain-filled days Oates somehow kept his place at the traces and the group managed nine and a half and then six and a half miles, which took them to within eighty miles of Cherry-Garrard, Gerof, the dogs and plentiful supplies of food and fuel. On 6 March, with Oates still

manhauling and six and a half miles done, Scott wrote: 'If we were all fit I should have hopes of getting through, but the poor Soldier has become a terrible hindrance, though he does his utmost and suffers much, I fear.' Next morning Scott added: 'One of Oates' feet *very* bad this morning; he is wonderfully brave. We still talk of what we will do together at home . . . One feels that for poor Oates the crisis is near, but none of us are improving . . . We are only kept going by good food . . . I should like to keep the track to the end.'

Only six and a half miles were achieved on 7 March, the day that, from Hobart cable-head, Amundsen announced his triumph to the world.

On 6 March, Scott wrote: 'Poor Oates is unable to pull, sits on the sledge when we are track-searching . . . He makes no complaint, but his spirits only come up in spurts now, and he grows more silent in the tent.' Then, on 8 March, a significant entry. 'Have to wait in night foot gear for nearly an hour before I start changing, and then am generally first to be ready. *Wilson's feet giving trouble now*, but this mainly because he gives so much help to others.' That lunchtime they camped only eight and a half miles away from Mount Hooper Depot, the last provisions cache before One Ton Depot, past the Barrier's mid-point and a place where they could reasonably expect the dog teams to be waiting, or at least for them to have stocked supplies.

In London Kathleen Scott was uneasy after hearing Amundsen's victory news. Her little son Peter said to her, 'Amundsen and Daddy both got to the Pole. Daddy's stopped working now.' Kathleen wrote that she was lonely: that the young people didn't care and the old people didn't feel. When Nansen heard the news, he was, as his personal diary clearly shows, anything but happy but, in public, he praised and congratulated Amundsen.

In Antarctica, as their likely plight became more apparent, Scott and his companions must have thought increasingly of their only hope of salvation from Cape Evans: the dog teams.

On 7 March, Scott wrote: 'We hope against hope that the dogs have been to Mt. Hooper; then we might pull through. If there is a shortage of oil again we can have little hope.' On 10 March, after reaching that depot, Scott wrote: 'Oates' foot worse. He has rare pluck and must know that he can never get through. He asked Wilson if he had a chance this morning, and of course Bill had to say he didn't know. In point of fact he has none. Apart from him, if he went under now, I doubt whether we could get through. With great care we might have a dog's chance, but no more . . . Poor Titus is the greatest handicap . . . Poor chap! it is too pathetic to watch him: one cannot but try to cheer him up.'

The reason for Scott's pessimism in this entry was the discovery at the Mount Hooper Depot that the dogs had never arrived there. Not only did the cache show no signs of restocking but even the standard provisions that did await them were less than expected. In such circumstances I would have felt close to despair. The provisions left by the previous return groups were less than the amount planned by Bowers, either due to others having taken more than their share of the provisions, or due to further seepage. Scott noted bleakly: 'Shortage on our allowance all round. I don't know that anyone is to blame. The dogs which would have been our salvation have evidently failed. Meares had a bad trip home I suppose . . . It's a miserable jumble.'

There are two ways of looking at this 'miserable jumble'. One is that Scott was entirely to blame for not anticipating correctly every eventuality over the entire 1,600-mile journey. The other is that he had to make his plans using likely estimates for his own and three other separate groups as best he could and it only needed a touch of bad luck to throw out of kilter whatever plans he made. Cherry-Garrard summed up Scott's dilemma. 'To estimate even approximately at what date a party will reach a given point after a journey of this length when the weather conditions are always uncertain and the number of travelling days unknown, was a most difficult task . . . A week one way

or the other was certainly not a large margin. A couple of blizzards might make this much difference.'

Scott's original 144-day plan was rightly pessimistic and allowed for surplus provisions to cope with slow progress. The person at Cape Evans responsible for whatever relief Scott might eventually need was Atkinson because his senior, Teddy Evans, was by then nearly dead with scurvy. Atkinson had originally expected Scott's return date to be at the end of March, or even early April. He knew that Scott did not originally plan to be relieved by the dog teams, but that the dog teams were required to position more provisions at One Ton Depot. But this original plan, like all the best laid plans of mice and men, was surely liable to alter and Atkinson had received Scott's clear last set of orders from Teddy Evans. Atkinson was a surgeon in the Royal Navy. He was a sensible, thinking man, not an automaton. He did not obey orders that made no sense, nor did the scientists with him at Cape Evans.

The fact that Scott had clearly stated his preference that the dogs should be used as little as possible so that they could be conserved for the next year's sledging programme would not override their use to save lives at risk. To suggest otherwise might protect the reputations of those accused of not doing enough to save Scott's men but it would also suggest great stupidity.

What orders did Atkinson give Cherry-Garrard? They were verbal and only Cherry Garrard ever wrote them down. He did so years later, by which time he was already feeling unfairly blamed for not doing enough to save Scott's men, including his great friends Wilson and Bowers. There is a possibility that Cherry-Garrard may have interpreted his orders from Atkinson in a way that would excuse his decision to wait at One Ton Depot rather than to venture on further south to Mount Hooper Depot or beyond. He remembered his orders as requiring him 'To travel to One Ton Depot as fast as possible and leave the food there.' The next order was: 'If Scott had not arrived at

One Ton Depot before me I was to judge what to do.' Cherry-Garrard then added two further points, which are not orders *per se* but were clearly meant as guidance by Atkinson to help him judge what to do. One point was that 'Scott was not in any way dependent on the dogs for his return,' the other that he had given 'particular instructions that the dogs were not to be risked in view of the sledging plans for next season'.

When Cherry-Garrard and Gerof arrived at One Ton Depot on 3 March, with all the dogs in good condition, they unloaded the Pole party's stores and waited there as long as Cherry Garrard felt they sensibly could. Gerof was sick, dog food was strictly limited and for four days the weather remained too bad to travel. 'On the two remaining days I could have run a day farther south and back again, with the possibility of missing the party on the way. I decided to remain at the Depot where we were certain to meet.'

Although there was no spare dog food, Cherry Garrard could have gone southwards along the line of cairns to the Mid-Barrier Depot (as Scott's last and so most pertinent message, via Teddy Evans, had clearly requested). The potential to do this lay in Cherry Garrard's ability to kill dogs for dog meat but he chose not to do so on the grounds that, as far as he knew, Scott had plenty of provisions and was probably still ahead of schedule. After all Teddy Evans had last seen Scott at 87° 32' S, ahead of schedule and going strongly for the Pole. Also Scott had made clear his wishes to retain the dogs for future work. Cherry-Garrard wrote: 'My orders on this point were perfectly explicit; I saw no reason for disobeying them.' The 'orders is orders' syndrome.

It might be argued that Cherry-Garrard was over-complacent about Scott's status, since he was witnessing the extreme temperatures of the Barrier that autumn and knew they were far lower than those predicted by Simpson upon which Scott's travel plan was based. But, as revealed by Cherry-Garrard's physical collapse upon his return to Hut Point, he was himself in a feeble

state, having participated in the polar support group to the upper reaches of the Beardmore and other demanding journeys. His inner instincts would, subconsciously at least, have warned him against further southerly travel in those inhuman conditions. And his only companion, the dog-aware Gerof, was showing signs of an alarming illness, including semi-paralysis. Yet was not Cherry-Garrard's duty to do all he could, using his own initiative to help Scott's team? He could go further by killing some of his dogs.

After all, Cherry Garrard's inner voice must surely have nagged, whether they had reached the Pole or not, one of Scott's team might have suffered an injury, causing delay to the others who would thus need extra supplies at least as far back as the mid-Barrier depot. So, kill a dog or two and go on south for a few days? A risk worth taking, surely, just in case his good friends were in trouble? Scott's orders regarding the retention of dogs for the 'next season's sledging programme' were made when he planned to make another Pole attempt if the first one failed. He would also need dogs for various scientific journeys but he was expecting new dogs and mules in *Terra Nova* before then. Cherry-Garrard could well have argued that, since there was a good chance anyway that no second Pole attempt would be needed, he could clearly kill some of his dogs to give all possible help in case Scott's men were in trouble.

Cherry-Garrard did, after all, appreciate that Scott's own orders were not written in stone. He wrote: 'In this sort of life orders have to be elastic: and Scott's were. They were compli cated, elastic and excellent.'

Long after Scott's death the men who might have been able to save him lived on and many reached positions of prominence. All of them, naturally, presented their memories of Scott's demise and the reasons for it from a personal point of view. Scott's defence relied only on those letters and diaries he wrote as he died slowly and horribly with the bodies of his close friends lying frozen beside him.

Cecil Meares left Antarctica not knowing whether or not the Pole team might sorely need his expertise with dogs. If I had been him, when he later heard of Scott's end, I would have felt misgivings about my early departure. Perhaps he did, for he felt the need for self-justification and, together with Oates's mother, the need to find fault with Scott. Cherry-Garrard could have gone looking for Scott beyond One Ton Depot without the need to kill dogs if Meares had, as Scott had asked, made a journey to lay out dog food at One Ton.

Why didn't he? Because, it is said by Scott critics, he had been made to take his dogs onto the Beardmore, 140 miles further than originally planned, and so had returned to base too late to make the dog food journey. This is questionable for he was back at base by 5 January and, even allowing a two-week rest, he could have set out to One Ton by 20 January. This would have given him plenty of time to do a round trip to One Ton and still be back at base by mid-February, and able to catch the ship.

So was Meares to blame or Atkinson or Cherry-Garrard in any way? Or should we revert to the standard response . . . Scott, as leader, was at fault whatever the various factors? One viewpoint to consider must surely be that of Cherry-Garrard, biased though it may be, for he spent forty years worrying about the issue.

Why did Cherry-Garrard feel he should not kill dogs and carry on south for a few days using his initiative? He may have known he was dangerously weak. His journal comments: 'A few days after reaching Hut Point, I collapsed and was very ill.' He was very reliant on Gerof, the Russian dog-driver, of whom he wrote: 'He went so far as to say his right side was useless.' Later, back at Hut Point, he wrote: 'I get back to Hut Point and save Demitri's life.' But then he adds: 'Demitri immediately recovers. Atkinson considered he had been malingering.' A year later Cherry-Garrard added: 'On our arrival in New Zealand Demitri stated to the Press that he had wished to go on from One Ton but that I had prevented him.' After the Second World

War, when Cherry-Garrard was mentally unstable, he wrote as late as 1948: 'Now I know that Scott's taking on the dogs 300 extra miles . . . 3 extra weeks made it impossible that his original order could be carried out.' But he could have known that from Scott's clearly worded order to Simpson sent back with Bernard Day in 1912.

Some *Terra Nova* survivors believed that Meares had been ready at Cape Evans to take his dogs to re supply One Ton as ordered when he had seen the ship arrive in the bay and so stayed at base. The 'ship' turned out to be a mirage. Cherry-Garrard put this to Simpson in 1938 who replied: 'That's quite possible . . . I would not altogether blame Meares; he wanted to get home and did not want to miss the ship. And of course there was no fear of a disaster then.' Cherry-Garrard noted:

I am afraid it is becoming clear that the not laying of this depot by Meares was more or less deliberate. I have always had a feeling that Meares let the whole show down in some rather indefinite way: I have also had the feeling that he got off very lightly . . .

Meares proved himself a coward when he refused to go down the crevasse which Scott told him to do on the Depot Journey. Some of Scott's decisions not to take dogs to the Pole may have been really that he knows that Meares was not much good!

As we now know he [Meares] took some of the food of the 3 returning parties from the depots or depot. Then, not having taken out the most urgent rations, which was done by a manhauling party, he failed to take out anything else, including the dog food.

Years later Charles Wright was clear that Meares should have been sent and not Cherry Garrard. Meares and Gerof had arrived back at base with the dogs on 5 January, so they were well rested when Cherry Garrard set out, despite their staying with Scott for 140 miles further than was originally planned. There are many individuals involved with what Scott termed a 'miserable jumble' and all have produced their own versions of what prompted their action or inaction at the time. Scott did

not apportion human blame nor did he accept it. He identified instead a series of unpredictable mishaps, the chief of which was the freak weather that defied Simpson's meticulously worked predictions.

On 10 March, the last day of Cherry-Garrard's vigil at One Ton, a blizzard struck Scott's men and forced them to camp after travelling only a few hundred yards. Oates still hauled away on his half-dead feet. If a miracle had whisked him away to Britain that very day, his feet would have been amputated but his legs probably saved. Scott wrote: 'Titus Oates is very near the end, one feels. What we or he will do, God only knows. We discussed the matter after breakfast; he is a brave fine fellow and understands the situation, but he practically asked for advice. Nothing could be said but to urge him to march as long as he could.'

When the blizzard cleared on the 11th they marched nearly six miles, a mileage below the rate that might avoid death for them all. Oates still did his bit in the traces at −38°C but that day his fingers froze to a condition of uselessness, at which point, like Taff Evans before him, he became a true liability to the others. He was now more burdensome than the thirty-five pounds of rock samples, for they did not use up provisions nor cause hours of delay. That day Bowers decided he could no longer make the great effort required to continue the meticulous meteorological records he had kept since the start of the expedition. Wilson's physical state had deteriorated to the point where, at the end of the day, he could not bend down to detach his ski-bindings. On the 12th Oates was 'not pulling much', but they again managed seven miles with 'the cold intense . . . Not a breath of favourable wind'.

Scott worked out that, with travel hours cut down by the long delays spent nursing Oates, fingerless for dressing or even feeding himself, they could at best make six miles per day and they had food for six days: so they might just manage thirty-six miles. One Ton Depot was forty eight miles away. An overlap

of only twelve miles without provisions sounds little enough but, in such conditions, it would be likely to kill the four men.

At this stage, even the tightest lipped Briton might have been excused for contemplating available options for a more dignified exit. To wait in the tent for a lingering death might take many nightmare days and nights, watching one another perish inch by inch, but always with the hope, however faint, of the approaching howl of dogs sent out from Cape Evans. Death on the trail, and they *say* death is painless in the snow, might sound beguiling to those who have not tried it, but I for one would choose it as a very last resort.

Each of Scott's sledging groups carried in their medical box enough opiate tablets to provide each man with a quick way out, should life become unbearable. Scott wrote: 'I practically ordered Wilson to hand over the means of ending our troubles to us so that any one of us may know how to do so. Wilson had no choice between doing so and our ransacking the medicine case. We have 30 opium tabloids apiece and he is left with a tube of morphine.'

On 13 March they woke to find a strong wind blowing from the north with a temperature close to −40°C; a windchill factor of over −90°C. They sensibly stayed in their tent most of the day, each with the means to die in his pocket. For men who preferred to defecate in a blizzard *outside* the tent, rather than face embarrassment within, each must have decided they would sooner swallow-and-die out in the snow rather than subject their comrades, cheek by jowl, to their death throes. The first person to contemplate such thoughts must surely have been Oates, whose world was, and long had been, filled not with mere pain but with agony such as few people will ever experience.

A surge of renewed hope arrived on 14 March, along with a long awaited southerly breeze, such as should have predominated on that part of the Barrier. God knows how they prepared Oates even to don his outdoor gear, or how they broke camp and stowed their sledge, but they did and at −42°C at noon,

they made good another few miles before the wind veered round and forced them to camp. Wilson was in a bad way so Scott and Bowers erected the tent by themselves. Inside the tent Scott, the only diarist, wrote: 'Truly awful outside the tent. Must fight it out to the last biscuit.' He was obviously not contemplating his opium but what were the others' thoughts on suicide?

Wilson, a man of the strictest moral principles, was strongly against something which was contrary to the Ten Commandments, which accounts for his reluctance to hand out the opium. But he had changed his philosophy on the ethics of such sledging dilemmas over the years. In the early stages of the *Terra Nova* expedition he had told Taylor, who asked, 'What are we to do if one of the party breaks his leg?', that 'you will have to make a more or less permanent camp . . . and wait there until you are relieved, or until the leg is usable again.' But, a decade before, after the *Discovery* voyage, Wilson had told a journalist that, according to an old code of honour among polar explorers, anyone who fell sick on a journey and so caused a grave risk to his companions should 'walk out'.

Bowers was perhaps the most straightforward of the group, as morally bound as Wilson and intensely loyal. He had said he was 'Scott's man to the last', and he clearly meant it. No opium for Bowers. Yet he had, during the darkest days of the Crozier winter journey, discussed the matter with Cherry-Garrard, who later wrote: '[Bowers] had a scheme of doing himself in with a pick-axe if necessity arose, though how he could have accomplished it I don't know: or, as he said, there might be a crevasse and at any rate there was the medical case. I was horrified at the time. I had never faced the thing out with myself like that.' Cherry-Garrard did, however, later resolve his own philosophy on the subject for he wrote: 'if you break your leg on the Beardmore you must consider the most expedient way of committing suicide, both for your own sake and that of your companions.'

Ponting later wrote of the same question he had put to Oates

at Cape Evans in 1911. What should a man do if injured and a burden to his mates? Oates had emphatically replied that a pistol ought to be carried and that 'if anyone breaks down he should have the privilege of using it.'

Did Scott feel that Oates should take his opium to help the others stand a faint chance of survival? If so, when did Scott start to feel that way? There is absolutely no proof one way or the other of Scott's thoughts on the topic and only he could have known what conflicting thoughts and hopes went through his mind in those long desperate days and nights of suffering, of despair, then hope and again further despair. It has been suggested that from the very moment Scott found the Norwegian flag at the Pole his morale plummeted and he contemplated a glorious suicide rather than a glum return. If so, why did he rush back so far and, for most of the way, so fast?

Bowers wrote to his mother: 'Our sick companions have delayed us till too late in the season which has made us very short of fuel and we are now out of food as well.' He clearly believed that, had Taff and Oates plunged into crevasses rather than lingered on, the survivors might have made it. But this observation, shared elsewhere by Scott, does not constitute a philosophical statement on suicide.

After 14 March Scott began to make his diary entries only intermittently and with confused dates. There is nothing written on the 15th but for 16 or 17 March Scott noted:

Lost track of dates . . . the day before yesterday, poor Titus Oates said he couldn't go on; he proposed we should leave him in his sleeping-bag. That we could not do, and we induced him to come on, on the afternoon march . . . he struggled on and we made a few miles. At night he was worse and we knew the end had come . . . He slept through the night before last, hoping not to wake; but he woke in the morning – yesterday. It was blowing a blizzard. He said, 'I am just going outside and may be some time.'

He went out into the blizzard and we have not seen him since.

That was on 16 March. Gran, who later searched for Oates's body, wrote: 'That day a terrible storm ensued. The Barrier stood boiling and the temperature was around –40°C. In the evening Oates crawled out of his sleeping-bag and used his remaining strength to force himself out of the tent door. Scott let him take this desperate step. To stop Oates would have been to engage in torture, and commit an inconsiderate action toward Wilson and Bowers.'

Oates left his split *finnesko* behind. With useless fingers he would have been unable to untie the lashings of the door funnel or 'force himself out of the tent door'. Somebody must have done it for him. With a blizzard outside the bunched up 'door' material would have been carefully lashed and the ties frozen into a hard knot, difficult enough to untie with fit fingers. Once Oates was outside, those inside would have tied the door back up instantly to exclude blown snow and loss of any warmth that might be trapped within the tent.

In the blast of the blizzard, seeing nothing, smelling nothing and hearing only the wind roar, Oates would not have been able to complete the simplest of acts with his 'frozen meat' hands, with or without mitts. Even the taking of opium tablets from pocket to mouth would have been impossible. If he did take his tablets he must have done so in the tent unnoticed, or at least unremarked on, by the others. He may have wished to undo his clothing to die more quickly but even that would have been beyond the power of his fingers. Within the space of ten minutes it is likely that his physical sufferings would have died away as nerve endings froze from the extremities to the core. Thought processes too would have fallen fast into oblivion as the mind and the spirit of Titus Oates left Antarctica, bound perhaps for the stables of Gestingthorpe in Essex. He was thirty-two years old.

Not long before he left the tent he turned to the man who had cared for him so well for so long, Wilson, and asked him to give his diary to his mother; also, when Wilson could, to

assure her that her son had loved her to the last. Wilson wrote to Mrs Oates, in his diary, but by way of a letter.

This is a sad ending to our undertaking. Your son died a very noble death, God knows. I have never seen or heard of such courage as he showed from first to last with his feet both badly frostbitten never a word of complaint or of the pain. He was a great example. Dear Mrs Oates, he asked me at the end, to see you and give you this diary of his – You, he told me, are the only woman he has ever loved.

Scott also wrote a letter to Mrs Oates, praising her son's great qualities. In his diary he noted: 'We knew that poor Oates was walking to his death . . . the act of a brave man . . . We all hope to meet the end with a similar spirit, and assuredly the end is not far.'

Two hours after Oates had left the tent, they roused themselves, for the wind must have dropped, and they toiled a few more tortuous miles, carrying Oates's sleeping bag and *finnesko* to the cairns which marked the next pony camp site. Here they left them as well as their camera and theodolite, now useless, unlike the thirty-five pounds of rock samples which were considered to be of great value, especially by their collector Wilson. On 18 March the three men hauled their load to within twenty-one miles of One Ton but during the day Scott lost all feeling in three or four of the toes of his right foot. Self-critical, as usual, he put this down to neglect but it did not stop the group doing a fine march of ten miles the following day, reaching to within eleven miles of One Ton when stopped by another blizzard. Without the delaying factor of Oates, their distance travelled had increased.

Bowers wrote to his mother on or about 22 March: 'I am still strong and hope to reach this one [the depot] with Dr. Wilson and get the food and fuel necessary for our lives. God alone knows what will be the outcome of the 22 miles march . . . but my trust is still in Him and in the abounding Grace of my Lord

and Saviour whom you brought me up to trust in and who has been my stay through life . . . There will be no shame however and you will know that I have struggled to the end.'

Wilson wrote to his wife on about 22 March also. 'Birdie and I are going to try and reach the Depôt 11 miles north of us and return to this tent where Captain Scott is lying with a frozen foot . . . I shall simply fall and go to sleep in the snow . . . All is for the best to those that love God, and oh, my Ory, we have both loved Him with all our lives . . . We have struggled to the end and we have nothing to regret. Our whole journey record is clean . . . The Barrier has beaten us though we got to the Pole.'

The plan for this two-man foray, described in Scott's diary on 21 March as a 'forlorn hope', was short-lived and, a day later, Scott wrote: 'Blizzard as bad as ever Wilson and Bowers unable to start – to morrow last chance – no fuel and only one or two of food left - must be near the end. Have decided it shall be natural – we shall march for the depôt with or without our effects and die in our tracks.' At this point all three men were planning to make a dash for the depot.

There is no clue at all as to why they made and then abandoned these two plans, but in such a position wild ideas chase one another through your head. Just when one seems best, the weather outside the tent changes and another course of action seems preferable. With no fuel left on 21 March, for the first time and with extreme low temperatures everywhere except inside their sleeping bags, they must all have realised they could not make another day's sledging. There was nothing to drink save snow, which further depleted their remaining body core warmth. They had reached that point where their ability to haul their laden sledge for the twelve hours minimum to reach One Ton was no longer viable.

Wilson, or more likely Bowers, who was clearly stronger than Wilson, probably suggested trying for the depot with the sledge empty apart from their sleeping bags. The tent was their heaviest item. Scott, who could not go fast with his dead foot, could stay

in the tent whilst they tried to race the sledge to the depot, collect food and fuel and race back. Scott would indeed have felt this a 'forlorn' plan, but did not hold out against it. The two men then dashed off their farewell letters to their loved ones whilst waiting for the wind to die.

But the wind did not die and so Wilson and Bowers very sensibly stayed put. Both had already recognised in their letters that a tentless journey in such conditions would likely prove a suicide mission. Wilson, six days before, had been too weak to help Scott and Bowers erect the tent and found it difficult even to undo his own skis. On 21 March, or the 22nd, he wrote to his parents that, 'two of the 5 of us are already dead and we three are nearly done up.' Wilson's spirit may have been willing to try for One Ton but his physical state would clearly have rendered such an effort unlikely to succeed.

Nonetheless an attempted foray to One Ton by Bowers alone might have proved worthwhile in principle, since the dog teams might have been waiting there, intending to go no further, as Cherry Garrard had been twelve days earlier. The wind blew constantly from the west-south-west, so their sail would not help. And this wind continued to blow for several more days. Whilst it blew, light ski and sledge tracks could quickly disappear overnight, so Bowers and Wilson both stayed in their bags. If they were all going to die, they might as well die together. If they died outside, as Oates had, with the tent on their sledge, nobody would find their bodies and nobody would ever know if they had reached the Pole.

Scott's diary comment of 22 March (or the 23rd), that all three of them would go on to the depot together and die on the trail, thus came to nothing and from that day on they would have eaten nothing and slaked their thirst only with snow melted in their mouths. Imperceptibly, inside their bags, life would have ebbed away.

On 27 March Atkinson and Keohane manhauled out onto the Barrier in a last-ditch attempt to locate the Pole party. They

gave up on 30 March and turned back to spend another winter at Cape Evans. They were both fit and healthy men with fresh equipment and, most important, unhindered by severely frost-damaged fingers or toes, yet they could not last more than thirty-five miles on the Barrier.

There is no question in my mind, after thirty years, on and off, of travel in polar blizzards, that neither Bowers nor Wilson (with or without Scott) would have survived the prevailing conditions for more than a few hours without a tent during the likely period of the blizzard, 21–23 March. So they lay in their sleeping bags with only their own ever-decreasing body heat to keep them alive. Without food or fuel they would weaken rapidly so that by the time the wind lessened to what Scott, on 29 March, described merely as 'a continuous gale', they would have been too frail to set out.

Ever since reaching the Barrier a month earlier the fuel shortage had meant drinking less than was advisable and dehydration has a seriously weakening effect that is cumulative. The longer you lie in a freezing tent listening to the wind outside, the more difficult it can be to rouse yourself to face the elements, even to sit up in your bag, let alone to struggle with the door lashings which bring down showers of frost shavings from the tent lining and set you biting your lips to prevent you screaming as your raw-ended fingers touch the material and blood stirs in your damaged feet.

There is no evidence that the three men ever looked outside the tent again after 23 March. They had no need to defecate for they would by then be starving and dehydrated.

If Bowers had wished to continue alone and had been strong enough, he would have done so. He was loyal to Scott but he was every bit his own man. Just as Crean skied on alone to save Teddy Evans so too would Bowers, had he believed there was the faintest chance of saving Scott and Wilson. The previous year, when adrift on the floes, Bowers had ignored Scott's pleas to leave the ponies and save himself. Only when he could see

that there was no hope for the ponies did he obey orders and seek safety.

There is also no evidence to suggest that either Bowers or Wilson stayed in the tent owing merely to some self-sacrificing loyalty to Scott, nor that he would have wanted them to. All that is known is that the three men died together in their tent without heat, food or water. Scott's last diary entry was on what he believed to be 29 March, at which time his thinking was still crystal clear and his writing rock solid.

Every day we have been ready to start for out depôt 11 *miles* away, but outside the door of our tent it remains a scene of whirling drift. I do not think we can hope for any better things now. We shall stick it out to the end, but we are getting weaker, of course, and the end cannot be far. It seems a pity, but I do not think I can write more. R. Scott

In all his expedition diaries Scott often mixed 'I' with 'we' when referring only to himself, so this hardly serves as a clue as to whether, on 29 March, he was alone or not. Either way he was the last to be keeping a diary.

That Scott should have had the mind and the strength to think and write clearly for at least six or seven days in such circumstances, after all food and heat were finished, shows above all, to repeat Cherry-Garrard's words, 'the immense shove of the man'. His last written words reflect his ongoing worry that he was leaving the dependants of the expedition's dead without means. 'Last entry. For God's sake look after our people.'

He was clear in his own mind that the disaster, which killed his companions and was about to kill him, was his fault because the expedition was his project. In a letter to Wilson's widow he wrote that her husband had expressed 'never a word of blame to me for leading him into this mess'. All his adult life Scott had worried about his ongoing ability to earn enough to keep his mother, sisters and, more recently, his wife and son living well. Now he felt responsible too for the dependants of 'our

people'. He did not have a rock-solid religious faith like Bowers and Wilson, but he seems to have believed more strongly than your average agnostic that there was a God whom he invoked in his last plea for the care of those left behind.

The person most likely to know exactly why the three men died was the naval surgeon who eight months later found their bodies, Atkinson. He stated unequivocally that none of the bodies showed visible signs of scurvy. 'Ah,' say the Scott detractors, 'but he would say that, wouldn't he, in order to save the expedition's good name!' At the time scurvy was the sign of a badly managed voyage.

If Atkinson's official report is discounted as inaccurate by those determined that scurvy killed Scott's men, how do they account for the fact that Wilson, the most scrupulously honest man on God's earth, never once described symptoms of scurvy in any of the five men before or after the Pole? On the *Discovery* expedition Wilson noted each and every scurvy symptom in Scott, Shackleton and himself.

'But,' say those that believe that scurvy killed Scott's men, 'Teddy Evans had it, so why not the others?' Evans himself explained that apparent anomaly by pointing out that for seven weeks prior to the team's departure from Cape Evans he had been involved in survey work and depot-laying trips, during which he ate sledge rations, whereas the others had, at base, eaten fresh meat daily.

Back in England, old *Discovery* hands corresponded about the *Terra Nova* expedition. They remembered Scott, Wilson and Shackleton returning from their far shorter Southern Journey raddled by scurvy. 'I would bet one hundred to one,' Skelton wrote to Hodgson, 'on the scurvy business being the primary cause.' Scurvy was an easy answer but, on the evidence, the wrong one. Evans had completed 400 more miles of manhauling than the men of the Pole group. He also stated clearly that Scott, Wilson and Bowers had died of 'exposure and weakness'.

Charles Wright, who observed the bodies, was convinced that they had perished from the twin causes of starvation and the cold. Roald Amundsen, studying Scott's expedition over a year later, wrote: 'Scott and his companions died on the way back from the Pole, not because they were broken by our earlier arrival, but on account of hunger, because they were not in a position to obtain sufficient food.'

Nutritionists have for many years tried to find out if Scott's rations may have weakened his men. The results of Mike Stroud's analysis of our 1993 manhaul experience show that we did not consume enough calories and that we were on a starvation diet, as were Scott's men. Both we and they would have taken more food if we could have but simple logistics prevented us from doing so. Mike summarised his opinion of Scott's rations as vitamin deficient, containing too much protein and, like ours, energy inadequate. His rations, more substantial than those of Shackleton in 1908, would nonetheless have been more adequate for the journey had he not run into freak weather conditions on the Barrier.

One known deficiency in the Summit Rations (not recognised at the time) resulted from the daily loss of 400 calories by the altitude difference between the plateau and sea-level where the Crozier ration trials took place. Another suspect was vitamin deficiency. In Scott's day, neither he nor anyone else understood the science of vitamins. Unfortunately for him, vitamins were discovered soon after his death and a generation of specialists seized upon Scott to demonstrate their newborn vitamin deficiency theories without full access to the *Terra Nova* facts. Successive generations then grew up believing that scurvy or other vitamin deficiencies killed Scott.

Once Scott's men reached the base of the Beardmore, having achieved excellent distances to that point (Taff Evans's delay notwithstanding), they consumed plenty of undercooked pony meat containing enough Vitamins B and C to have saved them from scurvy or pellagra, another likely vitamin-deficiency

disease. If the Pole team had travelled for four months without fresh meat, some of them may have then begun to suffer the first symptoms, but this did not happen. Food was only responsible for the death of Scott's men through its absence at the end. They really did die through a combination of starvation, dehydration and exposure and would have done so a lot more quickly in conditions of extreme desert heat. Every ounce of food, but for 'a little sugar and a small bag of tea leaves', had been used up long before death came to the three men.

Did they die by their own hand through taking opium or morphine? Dr Atkinson's report stated: 'I can testify certainly that they all died natural deaths. This I can do on the facts. I don't think men ever died a nobler death.' Cherry-Garrard was told in 1930 that, when the medical chest of Scott's group was investigated, 'the morphia and opium tubes were found empty and that the hypodermic syringe was full'. This would indicate that Wilson had not injected himself and that all the pills had been handed out to the individuals. Neither Wilson nor Bowers favoured suicide, which they considered a mortal sin, and Scott's manner of death was by no means indicative of a peaceful opiate-inspired exit. When Gran saw Scott's body he wrote: 'It was a horrid sight . . . It was clear he had had a very hard last minutes. His skin was yellow, frostbites all over.'

On 18 March Scott wrote: 'We have the last *half* fill of oil in our primus and a very small quantity of spirit - this alone between us and thirst.' Yet he was still alive and using his diary eleven days and nights later, since his last diary entry was dated 29 March. Twelve letters he had written were found either on the floor of the tent beside him or within the body of his diary. Some of the letters were written at lunch-stops during the days before the final camp; one was dated 16 March, another 24 March, but most have no date. For eight terrible days, almost as dark inside the frosted double lining of the drifted tent as during the eight sunless nights, anyone who survived lived on without food or liquid, heat or light.

Is it possible, without speculation, to learn anything of what happened between them in their living tomb before the last of them died?

When Scott wrote his letter to James Barrie over a number of hours, even days, the three men were all still alive. His words give a clue as to their interaction as they lay awaiting death. Far from considering their mission had failed, they were rightly proud of their unique manhaul achievement. 'We have done the greatest march ever made and come very near to great success . . . We are in a desperate state, feet frozen, etc. No fuel and a long way from food, but it would do your heart good to be in our tent, to hear our songs and the cheery conversation as to what we will do when we get to Hut Point. *Later* – We are very near the end, but have not and will not lose our good cheer.'

Scott's letter to his wife was written in stages, at first at lunch-stops when still travelling and, later, over the nine days in the tent. One isolated sentence in mid letter reads: 'You must understand that it is too cold to write much.' In another letter he notes: 'Excuse writing: it is 40°F and has been for nigh a month.' He talks about their son Peter:

I had looked forward to helping you bring [Peter] up . . . Make him interested in natural history if you can . . . I must write a little letter for the boy if time can be found, to be read when he grows up. The inherited vice from my side of the family is indolence – above all he must guard, and you must guard him, against that. I had to force myself into being strenuous, as you know I had always an inclination to be idle. My father was idle and it brought much trouble.

He talks about Kathleen remarrying.

You know I cherish no sentimental rubbish about re-marriage. When the right man comes to help you in life you ought to be your happy self again – I wasn't a very good husband, but I hope I shall be a good memory. Certainly the end is nothing for

you to be ashamed of . . . I shall try to write more later – I go on across the back pages . . . I have written letters on odd pages of this book. Will you manage to get them sent . . . Dear, you will be good to the old mother . . . also keep in with Etty and the others . . . I haven't time to write to Sir Clements, tell him I thought much of him, and never regretted his putting me in command of the 'Discovery'.

When Bowers and Wilson had fallen asleep and, debilitated by starvation, dehydration and exposure, their hearts stopped beating, Scott was left alone. He was forty-three years old, the age of today's top long-distance endurance racers, so it makes medical sense that he outlasted all the younger men.

Today's polar trophies go to those who reach their goals by the toughest means, unsupported by outside contrivances, be they dogs or snow-machines. Scott, on this basis, had achieved more than Amundsen. In the latter half of the twentieth century great geographical challenges were taken on, first by the 'easy' way, using every means available, and then by the difficult purist route. Thus Everest, in the 1950s, was climbed by a mass assault with teams of Sherpas and oxygen cylinders and, in the 1980s, by that toughest of all climbers Reinhold Messner, alone and aided by nought but his own physical power and iron will.

One of Amundsen's great Pole team, Helmer Hanssen, said: 'It is no disparagement of Amundsen and the rest of us when I say that Scott's achievement far exceeded ours . . . Just imagine what it meant for Scott and the others to drag their sleds themselves, with all their equipment and provisions to the Pole and back again. We started with 52 dogs and came back with eleven, and many of these wore themselves out on the journey. What shall we say of Scott and his comrades, who were their own dogs? Anyone with any experience will take off his hat to Scott's achievement. I do not believe men ever have shown such endurance at any time, nor do I believe there ever will be men to equal it.'

For decades Scott's own countrymen appreciated what he and his men had done, even though nobody could really grasp the enormity of their achievement without going to hell and almost back as they had. So far you have read about Scott and what happened to him. He left behind his reputation, as each of us will, and what follows traces the twisted path of what happened to that reputation.

18

The Legacy

Atkinson, left in command of the thirteen men remaining for a second winter at the Cape Evans base, expected Scott back from the Pole by 27 March 1912 and by the end of the month, when there was still no sign of him, Atkinson and his men began to fear the worst. And not just for Scott, since Victor Campbell's five-man team, cut off by ice when *Terra Nova* had tried to collect them, was languishing somewhere along the barren, hostile coast to the west with no hut and only six weeks' food to last through the winter.

When travel again became possible Atkinson had to decide which group to search for first. Campbell's men might have survived in an ice cave if they had killed enough seals, but Scott's group must surely be dead on the lifeless Barrier or deep down a Beardmore crevasse. Atkinson had manpower enough only to mount one search journey at a time and, putting the decision to the vote, he found that all but one of his men were keen to search for Scott first. Campbell could travel back, given reasonable luck, and a shipborne search remained a possibility whereas, if Scott was never found, all records of his journey would be lost forever.

The decision made, Atkinson settled down to run Cape Evans on the lines laid down by Scott. The packing-case wall between officers and men stayed where it was and camp routines were not changed. The Australian Frank Debenham noted that once again it was Crean who kept up the spirits in the dwindling mess deck section of the hut, adding: 'This second year the scenery has lost much of its beauty to us, the auroras are cheap and the cold rather colder – companions rather too well known

– [but] I am a peaceable man and seem to get along with most people.'

There were others, touched by the aurora that winter, who showed the first chinks in their armour. Their extreme experiences had begun to unhinge them. In Campbell's cave, wallowing in blubber filth, Petty Officer George Abbott suffered a gradual mental breakdown and, at Cape Evans, Cherry-Garrard began in subtle ways a slow descent into a void of gloom and bitterness that would last his lifetime and include periods of partial insanity. Nonetheless, the book that he later wrote would partly shape Scott's image-to-be. That winter, beside so many empty bunks and ever alert to the ghostly sound of *finnesko* on ice outside the door, Cherry-Garrard brooded. Could he have, should he have, gone further than he did to look for Scott?

He was often irritated by Scott's replacement as leader. Atkinson could do no right. Cherry-Garrard was angry when asked to collect seal meat. He wrote: 'It is all I can do not to speak out sometimes . . . There is not a dangerous or hard job which has ever been done down here that I have not done depôt journey, ponies on the sea ice, winter journey, southern journey, unloading ship, dog journey to south work till an inevitable breakdown which has given me such hell this winter as I hope never to suffer again.'

When the time to travel came again in November Atkinson set out along the old cairn line over the Barrier with ten of the others and enough provisions hauled by the eight mules and all available dogs to take them to the top of the Glacier and back. Their only aim was to ascertain the fate and find the records of their leader and their friends.

Eleven miles beyond One Ton Depot, on 12 November 1912, Canadian Charles Wright veered right for he had glimpsed something odd in the snow which turned out to be the tip-off. He had seen the tip of Scott's tent just showing above a drift. They dug out the tent and the nearby sledge with great care. Thomas Williamson, who had been with Scott in *Discovery* and *Terra*

Nova, noted: 'I shed a few tears and I know the others did the same. It came as a great shock although we knew we should meet this sort of thing . . . I felt I could not look . . . but when at last I made up my mind I saw a ghastly sight . . . Captain Scott's face and hands looked like old alabaster, his face was very pinched and his hands terribly frostbitten . . . Their sufferings must have been terrible . . . We called the place Sorrowful Camp.'

Charles Wright recorded that Atkinson read aloud passages from Scott's diaries which summarised what had happened to the Pole Party; how they had reached the Pole on 18 January only to find the Norwegians had been there on 17 December by way of a different glacier; how Taff Evans and later Titus Oates had died. Atkinson had then said prayers and read a lesson from the Burial Service. Cherry-Garrard noted in his own diary: 'and there with the floor cloth under them and the tent above we buried them in their sleeping-bags – and surely their work has not been in vain.' One by one, each of the men knelt in the entrance of the death camp. Cherry-Garrard wrote: 'That scene can never leave my memory.'

Searching the clothes of the dead men for their diaries and chronometers, they had to move Scott's frozen arm. Outside, Gran heard a noise. 'It was something breaking,' he wrote. 'It was Scott's arm.'

They noted that the tent had been well-pitched and nothing inside was disorganised. They took away all that they could for the dead men's next of kin and the rock samples for geological analysis. Amongst the items from the tent listed by Atkinson were all the opium tablets and a phial of morphine. They also took 'the records on which Scott's reputation would rest, his notebooks and the two rolls of film that Bowers had exposed. Gran sketched a diagram in his diary of how the bodies lay and sent it a year later to Kathleen. In it he notes that only Wilson's head was by the door end of the tent; the opposite description to Cherry-Garrard's of the death scene. Either man may have

been wrong but Cherry-Garrard had spent many a dark time in such a tent with Bowers, Scott and Wilson.

They built a twelve-foot snow cairn by the tent, the cloth walls of which they lowered over the three bodies. They sang 'Onward Christian Soldiers', Scott's favourite hymn, and then searched to the south for Oates. They found his sleeping bag but no signs of his body. They left a cairn where he may have died with a cross and a note saying: 'Hereabouts died a very gallant gentleman, Captain L. E. G. Oates of the Inniskilling Dragoons. In March 1912, returning from the Pole, he walked willingly to his death in a blizzard to try and save his comrades, beset by hardship. This note is left by the Relief Expedition of 1912.' Cherry-Garrard signed this note.

For him Scott's diary was of tragic import for it revealed Scott had been a mere sixty-three miles from One Ton Depot on 8 March when he, Cherry, was waiting there. In three days he could have reached them with the dogs. If only he had known! Now that he did know, the implications would haunt and unhinge him until his own death in 1959.

Gran, known to Oates as 'the Norskie', skied back to Hut Point wearing Scott's skis to be sure that they went *all* the way. He wrote on the journey back: 'I think of Scott, I think of Amundsen. I have learned that something called friendship exists. I have come to know men willing to sacrifice themselves for their country and for their convictions.'

Better news awaited the eleven men on their return to Hut Point for Campbell's group had found their own hazardous way back, alive if not exactly kicking. In 1913 *Terra Nova* came back. Teddy Evans, fully recovered and as bouncy as ever, was on board as a passenger. He yelled down from the deck: 'Are you all well?' When he and the ship's crew learnt that all was far from well, their shock and later their sorrow killed their mood of happy anticipation. The flags and bunting came down and the ship's carpenter, Francis Davies, built a nine-foot-high memorial cross. This was erected on Observation Hill, which

today overlooks the American polar metropolis of McMurdo station on one side of its promontory and the New Zealand-run Scott Base on the other. The names of the five dead men are inscribed on the cross, along with words from Tennyson: 'To strive, to seek, to find and not to yield.'

On 12 February, back in New Zealand, Atkinson sent cables from Timaru to the relatives of the dead and to the Central News Agency in London with which the expedition had an exclusive contract. Next day the Lyttelton harbourmaster came to the ship and the men discovered the impact of their news on the waiting world. Cherry-Garrard wrote: 'We landed to find the Empire – almost the civilized world, in mourning. It was as though they had lost great friends.'

Scott's mother and sisters had now lost the third and last man of their family, their beloved Con. Kathleen did not hear the news along with the rest of the world for she was at sea on her way to meet Scott when he returned, as expected, to Lyttelton with *Terra Nova*. She had no idea that she was already a widow of eleven months' standing. Early in March the previous year the media had briefly mistaken Amundsen's victory news and the London headlines had screamed: 'Scott at South Pole. Brilliant Victory.' Messages of congratulations had poured in to Kathleen, even after her heart had sunk a day later with the amended news that, as far as the triumphant Amundsen knew, Scott had not reached the Pole. There had been no suggestion that Scott was in trouble, but Kathleen had remained uneasy.

An *Evening Standard* reporter who attended the memorial service held at St Paul's Cathedral for Scott and his men wrote, '[I doubt if St. Paul's] ever contained a congregation so profoundly moved as that which gathered there today.' The crowd at St Paul's for their memorial service was greater even than that for the *Titanic* dead the previous year; 1,340,000 copies of a special edition of the *Daily Mirror*, a record, were sold. The reporter continued that in reporting the event he could not forget 'one who is still ignorant of the frightful tragedy, that hapless

woman, still on the high seas, flushed with hope and expectation, eager to join her husband.' Her ship's captain finally received the wireless message on 19 February and handed her the news of the tragedy. Her outward display of strength over the months ahead masked a very real anguish.

In New Zealand Atkinson handed her all Scott's journals and a batch of his letters to her. Back home she became Lady Scott on the grounds that Scott, like Shackleton before him, would have been knighted, in his case as Knight Commander of the Bath. She wrote in her private diary: 'All these long weary days . . . always only his pain – his mental agony boring into my brain . . . all the different aspects of it come to me one by one. How one hopes his brain soon got numbed and the horror of his responsibility left him, for I think never was there a man with such sense of responsibility.' She took her own responsibility to him seriously. Although she married again, she remembered Scott's hopes for their son Peter that he should become interested in the outdoor world. By the time Peter himself died in 1989 he had become a world famous evangelising conservationist and had helped save many wildlife species from extinction.

One of Scott's last letters was headed 'Message to the Public'. This gave his thoughts on the reasons for the disaster and ended:

We are weak, writing is difficult, but for my own sake I do not regret this journey, which has shown that Englishmen can endure hardships, help one another, and meet death with as great a fortitude as ever in the past. We took risks, we knew we took them; things have come out against us, and therefore we have no cause for complaint, but bow to the will of Providence, determined still to do our best to the last. But if we have been willing to give our lives to this enterprise, which is for the honour of our country, I appeal to our countrymen to see that those who depend on us are properly cared for.

Had we lived, I should have had a tale to tell of the hardihood, endurance, and courage of my companions which would have

stirred the heart of every Englishman. These rough notes and our dead bodies must tell the tale, but surely, surely, a great rich country like ours will see that those who are dependent on us are properly provided for. R. Scott

The country responded to this blatant plea for a fund for the bereaved by raising the sum of £75,000 (£3.4 million). After grants had been made to the relevant dependants, the residue was used to publish the scientific results and to found the Scott Polar Research Institute in Cambridge, which today is an undisputed world centre of polar research. Frank Debenham was its founder and for many years its director.

The messages of respect or sympathy included one from Robert Peary, the United States explorer: 'They died like Englishmen, fighting against the most abnormal conditions, and meeting their death after a dogged struggle worthy of the highest traditions of their profession.' And, reported in the *Daily Mail*, 'It is a splendid tragedy – a splendid epic, written like many another British epic dotted over the globe in a language which every creed and race and tongue of man can understand.' US Presidents past and future, Theodore Roosevelt, Wilson and Taft, added their condolences and Germany's great polar explorer Wilhelm Filchner wrote: 'The scientific notes and observations that have been saved promise to yield a valuable contribution to our knowledge of the Antarctic, in the exploration of which Great Britain has taken a prominent part. This fresh sacrifice will be painfully felt beyond the Channel and throughout the world.'

The greatest of French polar explorers, Dr Jean Charcot, wrote in *Le Matin*: 'Scott has conquered the Pole. The public, ill-informed, will say that he reached his goal only second; but those who know Amundsen and Shackleton, I am sure, among the first – will say that it was Scott who opened the road to the Pole and mapped out the route; and a halo of glory, shedding a reflecting glow upon his country, will surround his name.' He added: 'Scott would not turn aside from his scientific programme

. . . It is quite another thing with Amundsen. He is not a scientist. He is rather bent on setting up a record. If one wishes to pronounce the one greater than the other, the preference must go to him who surrounds this magnificent result with the greatest number of discoveries and scientific observations.'

Amundsen, lecturing in the United States, wrote: 'I am unwilling to believe the report is true. I was reported to have perished, so was Shackleton. Scott was a brave man, one whose first thought was for the safety of his men. He took no thought of his own danger or comforts. I am grieved beyond measure at the report.'

The celebrated Swedish explorer Sven Hedin added: 'Immortal glory rises round the name of the greatest Antarctic explorer of all times. He has reached his goal. He has served his science. He has sacrificed his life. He has honoured his country again. As in Franklin's days, England has conquered the first place in a desperate fight for knowledge, and in the pantheon of heroic deeds the British nation may be proud of such sons.'

A more down-to earth Norwegian comment came much later from Tryggve Gran: 'No polar explorer of historical stature has escaped blunders. Nansen, Peary, Amundsen, Shackleton, Ross, Borchgrevink – all of them messed up one way or the other, and others followed them, but they were able to overcome their mistakes. Scott was the unlucky one. His false step brought him a catastrophe, but also glory.' 'In the history of the great voyages of discovery these two (Scott and Amundsen) will always stand side by side so different in character, so alike in their indomitable courage. They belong among the ranks of men like Leiv Eriksson, Columbus, Magellan, Stanley, Livingstone, Peary and Gagarin. We Norwegians have always felt ourselves closely bound to Great Britain. Robert Falcon Scott strengthened the links tighter than ever before.'

Polar explorers from France, Norway, Australia and the United States subsequently honoured Scott by naming prominent Antarctic features that they discovered after him, eight place names in all.

At home Shackleton seemed genuine in his ongoing praise of his erstwhile leader. On first hearing of the Norwegians' triumph, he had told the press: 'I would not in any way detract from the merit of Amundsen's achievements for he has accomplished a brilliant march. But Scott's is a much bigger expedition and he had a great deal of general scientific work to do.'

The media were not interested in the scientific aspects of the Scott tragedy. For them the event would sell hundreds of thousands of newspapers worldwide. They would ensure that Scott and his men, especially Oates, became national, if not international, symbols. 'Nothing in our time,' declared the *Manchester Guardian* in February 1913, 'has touched the whole nation so instantly and so deeply as the loss of these men.' Fleet Street was still realising the benefits of hugely increased circulation figures from the *Titanic* disaster only ten months before. Here was another equally heroic saga. The papers ran and ran the story from every conceivable angle. They were filled with it for at least two weeks and still printing related enlargements, commentary and letters six months later. Reporters hounded the three-year-old Peter Scott and a full page colour photo was printed of him sitting naked by the sea looking innocent and forlorn entitled 'Portrait of Master Peter Scott'.

The Educational Council had Scott's story read in schools to 750,000 schoolchildren, many of whom are alive today. A few teachers, either through ignorance or enthusiasm, told their charges that Scott had been first to reach the Pole. This was quickly seized on by the Norwegian press. The public responded to the whole saga with a national outpouring of grief, not as spontaneously as that which ninety years later followed the death of Diana, Princess of Wales, but on as personal a level. Scott's death was a year old by the time it became public knowledge and there was no television to dramatise the event, yet the impact was still large.

The story was not of a victory but of courage in adversity, the true stuff of legends. The main images were Oates stumbling

from the haven of the tent into the icy blast to die for his friends, and of Scott, Bowers and Wilson lying in the tent for up to eight days with no food or water at −40°C, yet refusing the opiate option.

Of course it helped that they had died. Tales of martyrdom spring only from death. Mawson mounted a hugely ambitious Antarctic expedition immediately after the Scott, Shackleton and Amundsen epics. His story was one of great success in terms of geographic and scientific discoveries, as well as personal bravery against huge odds. But he missed out on lasting fame, even in his native Australia, partly because he went on to die naturally in old age; not advisable from a PR point of view.

The Scott story broke in February 1913, a year before the Great War, and at a time of singular national gloom. The 'unsinkable' *Titanic*'s sinking had emphasised Britain's waning prowess. Dismay and self-doubt were everywhere on display. The story of Scott's men served to bolster confidence when it was most needed. A country which could produce such men should hold its head high. For a time the story of their deaths banished from the front pages all such depressing topics as Trades Union power, coal strikes, suffragette militancy, Home Rule for Ireland, the threat of a socialist People's Budget and German imperialism.

It was, of course, all a matter of interpretation by the media. The papers told their readers how to view Scott. Not as a polar amateur beaten by a professional rival, not as a hugely successful scientific co-ordinator, not as a great leader and explorer, but above all as a man who could inspire his countrymen to triumph over adversity, including death. Such was the power of the press. By the 1880s sensationalism rather than accuracy was the key to selling newspapers. Henry Stanley, the 'journalist explorer' who travelled to Africa to find Dr Livingstone, summed up the situation by saying that accuracy was no longer wanted because the public preferred action and adventure to the often less titillating truth.

By the 1890s, just before Scott first appeared on the scene, explorers were in demand as public speakers in British theatres and concert halls. Society lionised them and bought their latest books. Children's books about explorers proliferated. Early photographers joined expeditions hoping for fame, and advertisements for everything from soup to shoes featured explorers' portraits, as did collectors' cards in cigarette packets. The public had become hero-hungry.

When in 1908 Scott was planning to head south again, the Arctic, as we have seen, had become a battleground between two great US explorers, Peary and Cook. Each was backed up by a newspaper sponsor; Commander (later Rear Admiral R. E.) Peary and the *New York Times* versus Dr Frederick Cook championed by the *New York Herald*. When in 1909 Cook claimed the Pole a year before Peary, their respective newspapers declared open war.

When news of the Scott tragedy broke, the world media were ready and waiting. This was a story with *all* the right ingredients. As United States historian and editor Beau Riffenburgh cynically commented, had Peary and Cook not fought each other's claims or had Scott lived, there would have been far less interest in all three. As it was their relevant press coverage ensured them a mythic status, which would endure for a century, maybe more. 'And certainly,' in Riffenburgh's words, 'for the vast majority of the newspapers in the United States and England, this kind of ennoblement . . . and its consequent sensationalized story was far more important than a scientific result or the conquest of some unknown land.' And so, when Scott died in 1912, having reached the South Pole, he became revered worldwide, eclipsing for a while the fame of Shackleton, who died in 1922 having failed to achieve the Pole or his other major goal, the crossing of Antarctica, but whose popularity was to peak again when the next century celebrated his *Endurance* journey.

Heroes on pedestals of popularity have long been prey to the

professional character assassin and, once they are dead, they can be attacked at will without fear of litigation and thus without need to worry overmuch about historic reality. Within days of *Terra Nova*'s arrival in New Zealand on 13 February 1913 and the news of Scott's death, rumours began to circulate. The vultures of the press had discovered a corpse and they sensed that there must be bad smells. These included mention of a row between Scott and Teddy Evans.

As early as 15 February a *Daily Mail* reporter wrote:

Commander Evans, in an interview with me, firmly declined, 'speaking as a naval officer,' to be drawn into any discussion of 'the wicked rumours and conjectures' which have been in circulation.

'I don't want to give a defence,' he said, 'where no defence is needed. As to the allegations of dissension in the party, I went against the doctor's advice to the Antarctic to see Scott through. Does that look like dissension?'

Regarding 'the shortage of fuel, for which I cannot account,' mentioned in Captain Scott's diary, Commander Evans stated that the depots were untouched by the supporting parties on their return northward after accompanying the Southern Party part of the way to the Pole. There was evaporation of the oil owing to the leather washers of the tins, and as supplies were cut so fine, this made a considerable shortage.

Commander Evans characterised the rumours that Petty Officer Evans went mad as cruel, scandalous, and without foundation. Petty-Officer Evans behaved admirably.

Captain Scott left instructions that no search parties should leave the base to look for him.

Commander Evans declares that it was humanly impossible for the base party to save Scott and his comrades.

All the members of the expedition describe the rumours of dissensions and of the tapping of depots as 'dastardly lies' emanating from irresponsible people.

Some members of the expedition state that in consequence of the

wild and baseless stories which have been circulated, they quite expect that a searching inquiry into the whole expedition will be ordered.

Lord Curzon, the President of the Royal Geographical Society, requested just such an inquiry in order to clear the dead Scott's name. It never took place but critics of Scott have been conducting their own investigations ever since, many of which today are still based on unfounded rumours produced from thin air back in February 1913. These include the stories that Oates's feet had dropped off before he died, that Taff Evans had been dragged for many miles insane on a sledge, and that sixty-one members of the team had died.

One myth, which fooled me for two years, was that of Scott's last biscuit. A collection of Scott memorabilia was to be auctioned in 2000 and I was asked to help with the bidding by the Antarctic Heritage Trust to keep the items in Britain. The cheapest item in the auction catalogue was described as 'a biscuit found in Scott's tent', so I agreed to bid for it by phone. The bidding went mad, fuelled by foreign collectors, and the biscuit finally cost me just under £4,000. Some of the other items fetched over £60,000. The biscuit never reached my home, where we keep dogs, but was preserved and kept by the National Maritime Museum at Greenwich.

Fascinated as to why, dying of starvation, Scott's men had not eaten this last biscuit, I made enquiries as to its provenance. In December 2002, Scott's daughter-in-law, Lady Philippa Scott, told me she had found a suitcase long kept by her husband, Sir Peter Scott, in a London bank which had been left him by Kathleen Scott and which contained the 'Scott relics'. These must have been taken from the death tent by Atkinson and given to Kathleen. One of the items was a solitary sledge biscuit. Checking through the reference books I found an entry on page 90 of *South: the Race to the Pole*, a National Maritime Museum 2000 publication, which stated: 'It is well known that Scott,

Wilson and Bowers were almost out of food when they died, only a single bag of rice and one or two biscuits being reclaimed from their tent.' I checked with the book's author, who said the origin of this information was a book by Professor Robert Feeney of the Department of Food at the University of California. In February 2003, I heard from Professor Feeney, who wrote: 'Unfortunately I cannot help you with a reference for the phrase you requested . . . In my book there was no such phrase. The editors [of *South*] added many pictures and a new table. Maybe they added the phrase.'

So I probably paid nearly £4,000 for a biscuit that came back from Scott's *Terra Nova* belongings but not from his tent. I had fallen for one of the many Scott myths and (in studying his story, private letters, numerous files in museums and private collections and 112 relevant books) I have discovered a great many more myths of a far more damaging nature, most of them promulgated by just one man, ex-journalist Roland Huntford, but believed today by millions worldwide.

Back in 1913 the *Terra Nova* survivors and friends formed a committee to handle publicity and finances. Teddy Evans was a major player under the chairmanship of Lord Curzon, the venerable Royal Geographical Society President. They gave Scott's journals to the editor of his *Discovery* book, Leonard Huxley, an erstwhile schoolmaster, to prepare for publication. Contrary to another rumour, there is no proof of interference by Kathleen with the editing process. Cherry-Garrard, already smarting from gossip that he could have saved Scott, wrote: 'The Committee (Curzon) meant to hush everything up. I was to be sacrificed.' He suspected that this book committee had instructed Huxley to whitewash Scott. If such instructions ever existed, Huxley hardly obeyed them, for the finished work, *The Personal Journals of Captain Scott*, was released (as speedily as possible) in 1913 and contained a great many self critical comments by Scott, some of which would probably have been removed had Scott edited the journals himself, as he intended.

The original private journals are on display at the British Museum, with copies available to the public, so it is not difficult to compare the original with the Huxley edited version.

Over a period of thirty-five years I have written several books about my own expeditions, based largely on my own private diaries. I recorded for myself every raw impression of each fresh experience, mood and observation, which would include my letting off steam about my colleagues at times, when I was frustrated, upset or merely depressed. During one expedition in the Arctic in the mid-1970s, I made critical notes about the men travelling with me to help select those most suitable for a major expedition I was planning. When I later used that diary as the basis for my book *Hell on Ice*, I edited out my more acerbic comments on team members. If I had died and my diary had been edited by a third party, I would certainly have wanted him/her to make just such cuts in the text and I would not describe such editing as whitewashing.

Leonard Huxley did edit out many, probably seventy, such personal remarks by Scott, but retained most of Scott's self-criticism, which forms the basis of much anti-Scott commentary up to the present day.

To my mind Scott overdoes his own self doubt, almost indulging in self-flagellation. Cherry-Garrard wrote: 'he had a habit of self-criticism.' Before leaving England in 1901 he wrote to Nansen as though to a father confessor with his innermost thoughts of his own inadequacy: 'I am distinctly conscious of want of plan I have a few nebulous ideas centreing round the main object, to push from the known to the unknown, but I am quite prepared to find that such imaginings of inexperience are impracticable and that hasty and possibly ill-conceived plans must be made on the spot. Thoughts such as these cannot but show me how very much I am removed from the illustrious men who have led successful polar ventures hitherto.' Once his expeditions had set out, Scott's diary became his father confessor, as indeed it had been since he was a teenager, and his

day-to-day notes often accentuate his black moods. Scott was under contract to write a book, as are most leaders of major expeditions, so of course he intended to use the notes but not as they stood. Huxley would appreciate that and would need to second-guess the dead Scott as he did his editing work. Cherry-Garrard summed up the situation accurately: 'Scott's diary, had he lived, would merely have formed the basis of the book he would have written.'

I have noted some of the self-deprecating passages with which Scott damned himself and which Huxley chose not to edit. They point to a very poor whitewash job, if such was indeed the Curzon Committee's intent. Such passages include: 'Not a single article of the outfit had been tested; and amid the general ignorance that prevailed, the lack of system was painfully apparent in everything'; 'It is already evident that had the rollers been metal cased . . . they would now be as good as new. I cannot think why we had not the sense to have this done'; 'Cooking for five takes a seriously longer time than cooking for four, perhaps half an hour on the whole day. It is an item I had not considered when re organising.' These are all disarmingly honest and absolutely damning comments, which Scott would surely not have repeated, had he done his own final editing. His diary notes were not, I believe, written for posterity without the initial editing he must have intended.

In his dual biography of Scott and Amundsen, Huntford claims that '[Scott's] instincts were to evade responsibility and shift the blame', ignoring the many official diary entries where Scott shoulders the blame, often in my opinion wrongly, for much that goes wrong. Ponting, in the winter of 1911, asked Scott if he had started on a book. 'He said he would leave that until he got home and his Journal was to be used merely as notes, to be elaborated later into his official account.' Having used up all his own savings, Scott's main hope of paying off expedition debts rested on producing a narrative at the journey's end, firstly for the press and then for a book.

Until a few miles from One Ton Depot, and certainly up to the point he reached the Mount Hooper depot, there was always a very real hope of relief, as requested, from the dog-teams. So, until then, Scott would have carried on with his diary as an *aide-memoire*, pure and simple. Only when death became a near certainty in the last two weeks could he have written his words direct for posterity and by that time he was concentrating on his letters: there is very little in the diary itself at that point. All that was important to him was summarised in his Message to the Public, which he must have written whilst he still had the power of clear and rational thought and fingers that could firmly grasp a pencil to produce sharp legible script.

Scott had been trained since a teenage midshipman to keep meticulous and consistent naval logs, he read a great deal and his prose was neither complex nor contrived. He wrote wonderful English under awful circumstances.

Scott critics later deplore 'the ossification of Scott as supreme national hero [that] was already under way, brilliantly choreographed by him from his deathbed'. They accuse him of writing his last letters whilst 'looking over his shoulder at an unseen audience, concerned more with his reputation than his actions', of starting to 'sculpt out his post expedition image in his journal entries', and of 'preparing his alibi . . . to seek immolation in the tent . . . to snatch a kind of victory out of defeat'. The self-critical entries already referred to make a mockery of such theories. In the secret tribunal of his mind Scott allowed himself no mercy. His restless and critical nature shows through honestly in his death notes, as though demanding critical controversy in the years to come, not 'ossification as a national hero', nor 'concern with his reputation'.

The *Terra Nova* book, *Scott's Last Expedition*, Huxley's edited version of Scott's diaries, remains a classic and a truly absorbing read nine decades on. When it was published the British, like many other nations, were threatened by the immense power and naked aggression of Germany, at a time when aerial

bombardment and new machine guns meant enhanced killing potential. Thousands of individuals would be required, a year after they heard of Scott's death, to walk forward into a hail of bullets. Scott's story helped to inspire such individuals. A German war propagandist would surely have preferred Scott and Oates alive rather than the powerful figures of inspiration they were in death.

Herbert Ponting lectured about the expedition for ten months before the war. His films of the *Terra Nova* venture were copied and sent to France to be seen by over 100,000 officers and men. The Senior Forces Chaplain thanked him: 'The intensity of [your story's] appeal is realised by the subdued hush and quiet that pervades the massed audience of troops while it is being told. We all feel we have inherited from Oates and his comrades a legacy and heritage of inestimable value in seeing through our present work.' That work included 16,000 men killed in a single day and hundreds of thousands maimed. Subsequent British cynics forget all those of their countrymen in two world wars who needed help and found it through the examples of their contemporary heroes, such as Scott and his men.

As thousands of heroes were dying daily on the Western Front it might well be thought that all memories of Scott's tent would vanish like some long ago theatrical event, fine at the time but forgotten. But the Scott story was not merely some extension of the original war jingoism, the Rupert Brooke quotes, or the voice of the schoolboy who rallies the ranks. Scott and Oates provided real strength and an image of the human ability to endure, which lonely men could and did summon up to fight their inner fear and weakness. As Cherry-Garrard later wrote just before the Second World War: 'Birdie . . . died in a tent on the Great Ice Barrier twenty-six years ago . . . Since then ten million men have been killed . . . and you might have thought that the cumulative tragedy of it all would have swamped what they did. But there is something in this story which lives through unimaginable miseries and horrors; partly as an example, as I

believe: and partly as a help. And this is a time when decent sane men and women want help.'

Everyone has their breaking point but, as Cherry-Garrard wrote: 'That was the glory of those men whom we found lying in that tent; they never broke.' When Kathleen's papers were filed after her death in 1947, they included sheaves of letters from soldiers thanking her dead husband for his example that had so helped them in their hours of need.

As a high profile survivor of *Terra Nova*, Cherry-Garrard too received many letters for many years and not just from soldiers. 'They say deeply moved – it is an inspiration,' he wrote. 'They write from the ends of the earth: from hospitals and operations and great trials – that the story of these men has helped.' 'I have heard discussions,' he added, 'of their failure. The same men would have discussed the failure of Christ hanging upon the Cross: or of Joan of Arc burning at the stake . . . [but] I know, and you know, that by the more important standards of success and failure they never failed . . . The world is full of the efforts of human beings to leave something behind them when they die . . . yet [Scott and his men] have left something behind – in men's minds.'

Tryggve Gran said, emerging from the death tent: 'They died having done something great : how hard must not death be having done nothing.'

Scott's popularity only proved lasting, say his detractors, because the government used his story as war propaganda to encourage cannon fodder to 'die as Scott had', covering up any blemishes. Roland Huntford, for instance, introduces his book *Scott and Amundsen* with a Liddell Hart quote: 'It is more important to provide material for a true verdict than to gloss over disturbing facts so that individual reputations may be preserved. This at once suggests to the reader that Huntford is a scrupulous investigator about to reveal disturbing truths about Scott long suppressed by the Establishment.' Not only was no officially-inspired monument to Scott ever raised in London at

that time but no government document has ever been found by generations of searchers suggesting any government-inspired initiative to use Scott to help gird up the nation's loins. When Scott's journals were published, no Ministry of Propaganda reprinted thousands or even hundreds of copies to distribute. No London early version of Goebbels sent *Terra Nova* survivors far and wide to lecture to the troops.

Because Scott and his men became emblems of national pride and motivation to millions throughout the years of slaughter in the Great War, certain details of Scott's death were highlighted and treated with reverence. One such was the fact that Scott himself died last. To me it matters little who died first or last of these three brave friends, but I hate to see history crudely distorted just for the pleasure of pulling down a hero from his pedestal.

Six men looked at the frozen bodies when the death tent was discovered and some clues to the last days of Scott, Bowers and Wilson can be gleaned from their written memories. Gran wrote: 'Captain Scott lay in the middle, half out of his sleeping bag, Bowers on his right, and Wilson on his left but twisted round with his head and upper body up against the tent pole. Wilson and Bowers were right inside their sleeping bags. The cold had turned their skin yellow and glassy, and there were masses of marks of frost-bite. Scott seemed to have fought hard at the moment of death, but the others gave the impression of having passed away in their sleep.' William Lashly noted that: 'it looked very much like Captain Scott being the last survivor, it must have been a dreadful time for him to wait for death.' Charles Wright had noted in his journal that, on opening the tent, they found the three bodies of Scott, Wilson and Bowers and they agreed that Scott must have died last with his arm over Wilson's body and his diary beside him.

Tom Crean made a specific point. 'When I entered *I found Wilson and Bowers were tied up in their bags, but poor Scott was not, proving that he had died last and been able to fasten*

up the bags of the others. They had all died as proper English gentlemen, although they were given the necessary medicine with which to take their own lives if they so desired.' The practical Crean, who had always helped Taff Evans and Bill Lashly design and modify all the sledging gear, knew the details of the sleeping bag ties, some of which could not be fixed from inside. To him, therefore, the fact that these ties had been fastened on the bags of Bowers and Wilson was proof that Scott died last. Crean wept and later said of Scott: 'I must say I have lost a good friend.'

Cherry-Garrard wrote: 'Bowers and Wilson were sleeping in their bags. Scott had thrown back the flaps of his bag at the end. His left hand was stretched over Wilson, his lifelong friend . . . Near Scott was a lamp formed from a tin and some lamp wick off a finnesko. It had been used to burn the little methylated spirit which remained. I think that Scott had used it to help him to write up to the end. I feel sure that he had died last – and once I had thought that he would not go so far as some of the others. We never realized how strong that man was, mentally and physically, until now.' Atkinson, the doctor, writing the official report, noted: 'Captain Scott had died last, and had died when partly out of his bag with his arm resting on Doctor Wilson [who] had died quietly in his bag, and was asleep when he passed away . . . Lieutenant Bowers had evidently also died in his sleep. Extensive cold had caused their death and also lack of food.'

Only Cherry-Garrard noted that Bowers, on Scott's right, lay with his feet to the door, unlike the other two. Since Bowers was famous for his snore and for weeks had climbed in and out of the tent for navigation purposes, he had probably been sleeping that way round for months. To confuse the issue Gran drew a sketch of the death scene showing Wilson not Bowers with his feet to the door. But Cherry-Garrard is more likely to be right. He wrote: 'I went over Bill's body . . . [It] was dreadfully hard to feel and it was most difficult to locate the chronometer in his vest pocket next the skin quite terrible.'

In an undated note to Mrs E. A. Wilson, Scott wrote: 'If this letter reaches you, Bill and I will have gone out together. We are very near it now and I should like you to know how splendid he was at the end – everlastingly cheerful . . . His eyes have a comfortable blue look of hope . . . I can do no more to comfort you than to tell you that he died as he lived, a brave, true man – the best of comrades and the staunchest of friends. My whole heart goes out to you in pity.'

There can be little doubt from this letter, and the fact that he started but did not finish some letters to his close family, but that Wilson died before Scott. To Bowers' mother Scott wrote: 'I write when we are very near the end of our journey, and I am finishing it in company with two gallant, noble gentlemen. One of these is your son. He had come to be one of my closest and soundest friends . . . As the troubles have thickened his dauntless spirit ever shone brighter and he has remained cheerful, hopeful and indomitable to the end. The ways of Providence are inscrutable, but there must be some reason why such a young, vigorous and promising life is taken. My whole heart goes out in pity for you.'

From this it would seem as though Bowers too died before Scott, but we cannot be sure just from this evidence since, like newspapers which prepare the obituaries of the famous long before they die, Scott may have done likewise, although hardly so if he believed there was the ghost of a chance of his dying before the others.

To his friend, the *Peter Pan* playwright James Barrie, Scott wrote: 'We have had four days of storm in our tent and nowhere's food or fuel. We did intend to finish ourselves when things proved like this, but we have decided to die naturally in the track.' This would suggest, given they had been stormbound since late on 19 March, that Scott wrote this when Bowers and Wilson were still alive, on 24 March. His last diary entry was dated 29 March.

One detail of the death tent suggests that Bowers might have

survived Scott, which led to questions being raised about everyone's truth. Charles Wright found a message written on the back of one of Scott's letters, in Bowers' handwriting, saying: 'The diary of Wilson is to be found in his satchell and in the instrument box are 2 of his sketchbooks. H. R. Bowers.'

When in 1979 Scott's main detractor Roland Huntford sought out this note and could not locate it, he invented a conspiracy theory that the Scott Polar Research Institute in Cambridge had 'suppressed' it. In 2003, I, in my turn, approached the Institute and a friend of mine went there to find the elusive note. After much investigative help from Bob Headland, the Chief Archivist, the relevant letter was found in a frame but with the Bowers note on the invisible side. The ancient frame was taken apart and there, sure enough and unsuppressed, was Bowers' scribble on the back of Scott's letter. The letter had no date but had been written by Scott inside his diary, then torn out, prior to his writing several others, one of which notes: 'we are pretty well done four days of blizzard just as we were getting to the last depôt.' An indication that it was written, like the Barrie letter, on 24 March, when all three men were still alive.

When three men survive in a tent for many days, they do not all sleep at the same time. Once, in 1981, I was forced to stay in a three-man pyramid tent on the plateau and 200 miles from the Pole for seventeen days and nights. None of us was frostbitten and we spent most of that interminable time in our sleeping bags. What I remember most is how time lost all meaning. You would wake to find the others sleeping: each of us soon developed different sleeping patterns. Add the pain of frostbite, extreme cold, starvation and dehydration and the most likely scenario would have been that Wilson, near the end, asks Bowers – perhaps at a time when Scott was asleep – to make a note to the effect that his, Wilson's, papers were to be found in the instruments box on the sledge. Bowers would have reacted by reaching across to the sleeping Scott's pencil and diary and inscribing Wilson's message therein (neither he nor Wilson was

keeping diaries or weather records, so neither would have had pencils or paper to hand). It is more likely that Bowers would make the note at the time Wilson asked him to than some days later.

Soon afterwards, Wilson dies. At some later point, Bowers dies. Then Scott writes the letters to their next of kin. He eventually hastens his own death by half-opening his sleeping bag to lose the protection of his last faint body warmth. If, when Scott did this, Bowers had still been alive and sufficiently able to make and sign the Wilson note in firm handwriting, he would surely, being the deeply religious man that he was and devotedly loyal to Scott, have also laid Scott's body in a dignified position, closed his eyes and placed his outstretched arm at rest. Bowers' scribble merely adds to the evidence that Wilson died first: it has no bearing on the existing evidence that Scott died last.

What exactly constitutes failure depends upon how you or I wish to define such an artificial concept. If all your life you strive for a goal, whether it be finding a cure for cancer or running a mile in three minutes, have you failed if some other human, three weeks before you, also finds the cure or runs the mile? Did Scott fail because, like Mallory on Everest, he died without returning to base? Hardly. Before setting out he stated to the press: 'We may lose our lives. We may be wiped out.' Shackleton and Amundsen were to die on ventures that failed. Amundsen on an air rescue mission for a crashed Arctic balloonist, and Shackleton of a heart attack on a voyage back to Antarctica. Scott died on one of his expeditions having successfully reached his goal. Scott's 1940 biographer, George Seaver, put Scott's expedition work into context.

Scott himself wrote: 'It might be said that it was James Cook who defined the Antarctic Region, and James Ross who discovered it.' Seaver adds: 'But it was Scott who penetrated it.' *Terra Nova* survivors did not see their venture as a failure. Charles Wright stated that the expedition had been a triumph over adversity, with the men succumbing to bad weather and

bad fortune but not to their own weakness. Cherry-Garrard said: 'Scott's reputation is not founded upon the conquest of the South Pole. He came to a new continent, found out how to travel there, and gave knowledge of it to the world: he discovered the Antarctic and founded a school. He is the last of the great geographical explorers.'

In 1938 Louis Bernacchi wrote,'Owing to the great discoveries of Ross, Biscoe, Balleny, Weddell, Scott, Shackleton, Mawson and other British explorers, we now own a silent empire in the extreme south, the territorial rights of which are likely to be of high importance in the future, just as similar rights in the extreme north have proved valuable to Canada and to Soviet Russia. Our title to our Antarctic Dependencies must not in the future be questioned by an unfriendly Power.'

Scott was one of the long list of British explorers who could have given Britain territorial rights to the South Pole. Fortunately, political ambitions gave way to scientific interest and, by the late 1950s, fifty-two research stations were manned all around the Antarctic continent by some twelve countries. Scott, who successfully liaised with German and Swedish scientists and tried to persuade Amundsen to do similar work with him, would have been pleased at the way things have worked out. He showed the way to such co-operation.

With Skelton, Day and Barne, Scott pioneered the design and early trials of tracked snow vehicles, which eventually proved far superior to dogs for work in Antarctica and which helped defeat the German armies by the introduction of British tracked 'tanks' in 1917, only five years after Scott's tracked machines so nearly proved successful on the Barrier.

Ironically, perhaps, of all the nations operating in Antarctica including the Norwegians, the British were the last to give up using dog teams alongside tracked vehicles. I remember my 1981 expedition's ski-plane flying two husky bitches from a British base to mate with New Zealand dogs 1,600 miles away to avoid interbreeding in two of the continent's last four working teams.

Equally ironic must be the fact that, in the twenty-first century, modern expeditions vie with one another to complete journeys of physical toil. Journalists who castigate Scott for using men rather than dogs will in their very next article belittle a modern polar traveller for seeking any outside help beyond his or her own unaided manpower. Scott would either be amused or bemused.

In 1993 Mike Stroud and I manhauled across the Antarctic continent with no outside support. Dogs could not have done that journey without resupply, so we proved that humans are more efficient self-contained transport systems than dogs. But, *vis à vis* the relative performances of Scott's men and Amundsen's dogs, our achievement proves nothing because both their groups used depot systems and such outside support gives dogs the edge over men.

When the Second World War came so swiftly after the slaughter of the First, Cherry-Garrard's *The Worst Journey in the World* was listed by the National Book Council in London as recommended reading for troops. He received many letters once again, saying how the story of Scott and Oates had helped men face danger and fear through that later war. Britain did not win World War II by herself but, in the summer of 1940, she did stand alone to save the rest of Europe from falling to the Nazis. Goebbels' propaganda was strident and compelling but the British held firm because they still believed in themselves and they still had values of the sort exemplified by the likes of Scott. His achievement was that, through what he did and how he wrote about it, he touched the imagination of his country, as did Churchill, and helped his countrymen to achieve their finest hours.

Scott never planned the manner of his death but when it had become inevitable he was determined to face it head on. 'After all,' he wrote in the frozen tent, 'we are setting a good example to our countrymen, if not by getting into a tight place, by facing it like men when we were there.'

Jeremy Paxman, in his 1998 book *The English*, says: 'Cer

tainly, the war and its immediate aftermath are the last time in living memory when the English had a clear and positive sense of themselves.' After that epoch, Paxman suggested, and up to the present: '*any* public display of national pride is not merely unsophisticated but somehow morally reprehensible . . . No one stands for "God Save the Queen" anymore.' Paxman goes on to quote Orwell. 'In left-wing circles it is always felt that there is something slightly disgraceful in being an Englishman, and that it is a duty to snigger at every English institution, from horse-racing to suet puddings.' Orwell could have added Scott to his list, except that he was writing in 1948 and Scott had not yet become a target. Such was the simple strength of his message that Scott had retained a position of respect with the majority of the public and, the same year that Orwell wrote of suet puddings, Ealing Studios brought out their massively popular *Scott of the Antarctic* with John Mills in the title role, an epic still remembered with emotion by the over-sixties.

Scott's reputation had stood proud through two World Wars and would remain so for another three decades. But Britain was changing her attitude to her past and it took one man alone to sow the seeds that, to many minds, metamorphosed Scott from hero to fool.

19

The Last Word

Why write about debunkers at all? Why feel compelled to attack lies told about dead men? Why attack a highly successful biographer who has wrongly and with deliberate malice ruined a dead man's once fine reputation? Is it because I am obsessed or feel personally aggrieved, as though it were me, not Scott, under attack? Should an interviewer pose these questions, I would have to give an honest answer which is that I have no interest in debunkers *per se* and fully understand why the reputations of the well-known dead should be inspected and discussed. T. E. Lawrence has, for instance, received as bad a mauling as Scott over the past half century but I have no argument with his debunker, Richard Aldington, as I have no great experience of desert warfare. If Aldington cleverly manipulated the truth about Lawrence, I would not be well qualified to spot and denounce his defamations. I am not obsessed with Scott any more than with Shackleton or a dozen other such high-level polar pioneers. Nor am I obsessed with Scott's main detractor, Roland Huntford. My interest lies in applying my specific experiences and knowledge to right what I know to be wrong.

When I told Wally Herbert, Britain's greatest living polar explorer, who wrote a biography of Robert Peary, that I would be writing this book he responded: 'I must warn you, from my own unpleasant experience, of the dangers of getting involved in historical controversy. It is the egos of those historians and journalists on both sides of the debate that this [Peary] controversy is all about. The practicalities of travelling across the polar pack are simply ignored. I have learnt the hard way that those who do not want to hear will not listen. No matter what

your polar credentials are, the hacks will spit at you in print – indeed they delight in doing so for it makes them feel important. You'll be in for a bruising experience. They will personally attack you in order to discredit your opinion. So, is it worth it?'

I think so.

The debunking of the famous, past and present, has been going on forever and in every land but, given an international debunking challenge trophy, I think the British would do well. We treat it as a skill and publishers will pay top rates for a reasonably convincing demolition job on even a mediocre 'celeb' providing their legal department, in these litigious times, has rid the book of all non-provable defamations. The big debunking book is assured of high sales figures in Britain because denigration is part of our national character, along with talking ourselves down and, another aspect of the same tendency, our love of feeling 'up against it'. Huge military victories are never debated with such gusto as narrow escapes where a few Brits turn the tables on superior forces. Dunkirk, Agincourt and Rorke's Drift are fine examples.

One motive for debunking is political. In 1698 radical Whig politicians who wished to 'purify' Oliver Cromwell's image commissioned the writing of a brilliant forgery purporting to be the memoirs of one of his generals. This book successfully fooled everyone until the late twentieth century. A single book misled even the most erudite historians for three centuries. The grandfather of twentieth-century British debunking is Lytton Strachey, who at about the time of Scott's death left Cambridge and started writing a collection of condensed exposes of famous Victorians. His targets included the public school system, imperialism, liberalism, and the sort of religious evangelism that assured men and women of heavenly grace in the trenches because God hated the Hun. The subjects of Strachey's *Eminent Victorians* included such icons of the day as Gordon of Khartoum and Florence Nightingale. 'Everyone knows the popular conception,' Strachey

wrote, 'of Florence Nightingale. The saintly, self-sacrificing woman . . . the Lady with the Lamp . . . the vision is familiar to all. But the truth was different.' This was shocking indeed to the Establishment of his day but the book would now merely be seen as ultra-mild and wittily cynical.

If Strachey was a punchy little terrier nipping at venerable trouser-legs, he set the pattern for a succession of Rottweilers. His advice to future biographers was: 'It is not [the biographer's] business to be complimentary, it is his business to lay bare the facts of the case, *as he understands them*.' Strachey shunned direct interviews, straight chronological storytelling or research confined to the shelves of libraries. 'If the biographer is wise,' he wrote, 'he will adopt a subtler strategy. He will attack his subject in unexpected places; he will fall upon the flank, or the rear; he will shoot a sudden, revealing searchlight into obscure recesses, hitherto undivined. He will row out over that great ocean of material, and lower down into it, here and there, a little bucket, which will bring up to the light of day some characteristic specimen, from those far depths, to be examined with a careful curiosity.'

Another rationale for debunking, perhaps the simplest of all motives, is finding someone else to blame. Successive representatives of the Fletcher Christian and William Bligh families, down the generations, have indulged in this. The struggle to adjust their forebears' reputations still goes on. It started with Christian's first cousin, the then Lord High Chancellor of England, who used his influence to paint the actually humanitarian Bligh as a sadist of the worst order, thereby justifying cousin Christian's mutinous behaviour. Later, as was to happen with Captain Scott in the film *The Last Place on Earth* (and with William Wallace in *Braveheart*), the movie industry became involved and persuaded the world that a whole new set of dramatic 'facts' which emanated from the relevant scriptwriter's imagination, were historical events. By the 1930s Bligh was established worldwide as a brute and Fletcher Christian as a hero figure played

successively by Errol Flynn, Clark Gable and (a slim) Marlon Brando.

The scale of human suffering in the First World War demanded that blame be allotted. The war produced a hundred thousand heroes and, since somebody had to take the blame for all the slaughter, a hundred new villains too, all of them ripe for the penetrating attentions of Rottweiler reincarnations of Strachey, many as yet unborn when the war ended. The standard suspects for the carnage were lined up; some were politicians but most were the likes of Haig and his generals, all of whom, it seems, were unintelligent and vain, whereas their German counterparts were good to their troops and shrewd to boot. The fact that they lost and the British side won is explained away by Uncle Sam's arrival (albeit only to fight for the last three months of a five-year war). Never let it be said that historic facts get in the way of a determined denigrator.

Another handy candidate to blame for the horror of it all was, of course, the British class system: eggheaded Ruperts leading flocks of yokels to certain death on feudal lines. Most of the generals were peers, of course, as at Balaclava, and just as senselessly suicidal, with their lives. Forget the fact that, alone of the armies, the British had an ex-ranker as their overall boss and an officer corps far more socially elastic than the French or Germans. The post-traumatic shock of a million dead prevented a balanced verdict. Myths were established that soon became facts. Radicals blamed imperialism and the class system. Cynics rubbed the public's noses in the pointlessness of it all, especially when Hitler popped up a short while later.

Focus on who to blame for the First World War was diffused by the Second but returned with a vengeance in the 1960s with a plethora of books, plays and films, stressing futility and incompetence, like *Oh! What a Lovely War*, which, for most of Britain, became the reality of the Great War. Or, perhaps, it summarised more accurately a quite different reality, the mood of the British in the 1960s and their readiness to soak up whatever facts the

media fed them. If Grandad who was actually there, in the trenches, shook his head at the telly and suggested that no, it wasn't like that, then poor Grandad's memory must be at fault because TV documentaries do not lie.

Dr Gary Sheffield, former Secretary General of the British Commission for Military History, recently said on BBC *Timewatch* that the image of the 1914–1918 British Army being 'lions led by donkeys' is misleading. The facts were that 'against a background of revolutionary changes in the nature of war, the British army underwent a bloody learning curve and emerged as a formidable force. In 1918 this much maligned army won the greatest series of victories in British military history.' To offer such an evidence based statement, which flew in the face of all those popular myths established by generations of debunkers, was to court the angry response which Sheffield duly received from various viewers.

By the 1970s there was a growing trend for biographies written with character assassination as their main motive. To gain a lucrative contract with your publisher, especially for a first biography, you had to produce a real killer, a principle that still holds good. Here are a couple of random examples. In 2002 a critic reviewing the reviews of Fiona MacCarthy's book on Byron wrote that it was a 'sad comment on our culture', that a major biography such as this 'has little to say about what made Byron a great poet', while 'devoting several hundred pages to proving that he was a closet homosexual'. Another critic, reviewing reviews of a biography of the author Anthony Burgess by Roger Lewis, quoted Philip Hensher: 'It's some time since I read a book so exhilaratingly lacking in human charity as this one. [The book may] grow less and less convincing through the sheer volume of insult [but it is] deplorably enjoyable.' The critic went on: 'His book is not so much a conventional biography as a hostile and extended critique of the novelist both as a person and as a writer [which accuses him along the way of] sado masochism, reckless parenting, tightness with money . . . it's true

that character assassination does make for livelier copy than hagiography, but what's entertainingly malicious in a short article becomes tedious at book length.'

Both Byron and Burgess were of course dead and could refute nothing that MacCarthy and Lewis cared to write about them. Such writing may be summed up as a supreme form of cowardice. The great advantage, for the dedicated debunker, in attacking the reputation of a dead target figure is, of course, that you can make up as many vaguely believable lies as you like and, though you may deeply offend surviving relatives, there is nothing they or anybody else can do about it.

Captain Robert Scott's biographers have been many and varied. I give a list of most of them at the back of this book. But we can already see that by the 1970s the time was ripe for a massive Scott debunk. The mood of the seventies scorned anyone seen as an old-style hero, in particular a Briton with a stiff upper lip. Character assassinations had become major sellers. Scott-debunkers would benefit enormously from the fact that the socially acceptable moral and value standards of Victorian society were so utterly different from what is politically correct and fashionable thinking today. These two ways of thinking are almost unrecognisable so it is very easy to present individuals like Scott as representative of much that is politically unacceptable today and to forget that he must be judged only as a human being of his times. None of us, after all, would want to be posthumously measured up against a totally inappropriate set of values, yet that is exactly what Scott's modern detractors have done.

During the years after the expedition various books were written, by Teddy Evans, Priestley, Cherry-Garrard, Taylor and Ponting. Clements Markham also wrote about Scott's polar achievements and all six books were 'polite' about him.

Cherry-Garrard published his famous book *The Worst Journey in the World* in 1922, ten years after his abortive attempt to relieve Scott. This was not a biography of Scott but an exciting

story about the *Terra Nova* venture, told by Cherry-Garrard but heavily influenced by his friend and neighbour George Bernard Shaw and his wife Charlotte. Neither Cherry-Garrard nor George Bernard Shaw were interested in religion; both hated war but loved literature and the act of writing. They spent many contented hours together at their country homes wandering their grounds and discussing Scott. Shaw decided that he disliked Scott, whom he had never met, intensely, but he enjoyed the company of Scott's widow Kathleen.

In a letter to Kathleen, Shaw described his input in persuading Cherry Garrard to expand *The Worst Journey* beyond a mere description of events and to discuss personalities, especially Scott's: 'I never met Con, and had only a derived personal interest in him through you. He was only a figure in a tragedy for me: I had no idea what manner of man he was. Cherry's book brings him to life and makes him therefore much more interesting. But bringing a hero to life always involves exhibiting his faults as well as his qualities. Cherry describes Con as he was without criticising him. But I, of course, make criticisms.'

Shaw had a penchant for stirring trouble between his various friends and he did his best to create sparks between Kathleen and Cherry Garrard for a while after *The Worst Journey* was published. For thirty-six years Cherry Garrard chewed over the minutiae of the *Terra Nova* expedition with Shaw until the old man died, still clear-headed, at ninety-two. Until the end, Shaw continued to impress on Cherry-Garrard how *he* was not to blame. Scott's death, Shaw opined, was entirely self-inflicted.

Shaw's imagination worked many a new angle into all aspects of the long ago tragedy, even suggesting to Cherry-Garrard that Scott had abandoned Taff Evans and had later sat staring at Oates until he left the tent, forced by his leader to commit suicide. This was a typically George Bernard Shaw piece of mischievous fiction which did little harm at the time but would later be added to the anti-Scott mythology as hard fact. Shaw labelled Scott as the 'most incompetent failure in the history of

exploration', an opinion which was reflected in a long updating 'postscript' that Cherry-Garrard added to his 1951 re-issue of *The Worst Journey*.

In the end Shaw himself tired of or at least recognised some of his own less endearing traits. He wrote of his own cynicism: 'you chaff and sneer and taunt them for not doing the things you daren't do yourself. And all the time you laugh! laugh! laugh! eternal derision, eternal envy, eternal folly, eternal fouling and staining and degrading, until, when you come at last to a country where men take a question seriously and give a serious answer to it, you deride them for having no sense of humour, and plume yourself on your own worthlessness as if it made you better than them.'

Cherry-Garrard lived most of his life haunted by the death of his colleagues and was very fortunate in his late marriage to a girl, many years his junior, who cared for him loyally through long years of illness, depression and periods of psychotic delusion, shot through fortunately with patches of contentment and enthusiasm. Whether Shaw's friendship really helped him is not clear.

In 1928 Gordon Hayes, a Worcestershire vicar who had studied at Cambridge and had, as his full time hobby, an avid interest in polar history, produced the first constructive criticisms of Scott's Pole journey. He complained to Dr Hugh Mill (a past friend of Scott and a huge fan of Shackleton) during a ten-year correspondence that of all the *Terra Nova* survivors who had said they would help his Scott research, only Ponting and, to a lesser extent, Priestley had done so. His attack on Scott included the points that he should have used dogs, was a bad planner and organiser, travelled too late in the season, was inclined to depression, suffered from and died of scurvy and that the *Terra Nova* research repeated the *Discovery* work.

Debenham summarised the Hayes book: 'His whole criticism . . . reads perilously like a vast expansion of the words "Scott was a fool not to use dogs and that it was faulty organisation

not to have done exactly as Amundsen did."' Yet of Amundsen Hayes merely noted: 'We must now summarize the obvious criticism of Amundsen's enterprise. This, to be perfectly frank, is its uselessness.' Four years later Hayes wrote another book about Antarctic exploration, *The Conquest of the South Pole*, which was uncritical of Scott and said of him: 'Captain Scott must have been a man after God's own heart, for his most noble quality was his unselfishness . . . [He was] both a sensitive and a modest man . . . noted for an iron determination and self-reliance. He was, at the same time, impulsive and temperamental, and thus had a varied and interesting character.'

Despite these relatively mild critiques by Hayes and Cherry Garrard, Scott's image remained that of an explorer of whom the British could be as proud as they were of Livingstone. The first approved biography of Scott, the proofs of which were read by Kathleen, was released in 1929, a fairly anodyne affair with new access to private letters between Scott and Kathleen. George Seaver in 1940, Frank Debenham in 1959, Harry Ludlam in 1965, Reginald Pound in 1966, and L. B. Quartermain in 1967 all added new aspects to the Scott story through original research into journals, letters and archives but nothing likely to cause Scott to stir in his tent. In 1974 a book by Peter Brent delved a touch deeper and tried to introduce a harsher judgment on Scott, more in tune with other biographers of the 1970s who by then were giving their subjects the full x-ray treatment. But still Scott retained his seeming immunity from the ever-circling literary vultures and would-be assassins.

In Norway even Nansen was to have his Arctic travels with Hjalmar Johansen scrutinised from a gay viewpoint and in 1974 Roald Amundsen's reputation received a severe jolting by a fellow Norwegian. Kåre Holt called his book *The Race* a novel but nonetheless the Norwegian polar establishment took grave offence. With a Norwegian debunker taking vicious potshots at national hero Roald Amundsen, the scene was set for Scott's long overdue assassination by a fellow Englishman. He was

about the only high-calibre hero still perched on his pedestal. Others, shot down almost monthly by the mid-seventies, included Albert Schweitzer, Winston Churchill and V.I. Lenin.

The year 1977 produced two interesting new Scott biographers quite likely to deal the death blow. Certainly David Thomson tried hard and was as critical as was possible within the constraints of retaining his own objectivity. He emphasised every possible flaw in Scott's performance and persona but, in my view, he failed successfully to ruin a dead man's reputation. Elspeth Huxley's Scott biography that year involved a good deal of new material and sold well. She scrutinised Scott with the eye of a shrewd and professional biographer with over thirty books to her name. In the end she decided that Scott was 'anything but the simple, straightforward sailorman . . . that he may once have seemed to be' but was a hero nonetheless.

Then in 1979 Roland Huntford's *Scott and Amundsen* was published. A year later, when I reached the South Pole for the first time, I spent four days there helping the denizens with the dish washing in their canteen. I chatted to many of the overwintering scientists and was interested to hear their views on various explorers, including Scott. They mentioned this new book. Did I know about it? Apparently the whole story about Scott the polar hero was a Brit imperialist plot and this Huntford guy had exposed it as such. I meant to buy the book on returning home but forgot.

In the mid-eighties I was reminded about it by an unusual source, Mrs Raisa Gorbachev, to whom I was making a presentation in Moscow. I did then buy the Huntford book and watched the video (of which more later). Both contained information that I found questionable but I enjoyed them purely as entertainment. The Huntford book was very well written, in the style of an exciting novel, and, not being well versed in polar history at the time, I was impressed by Huntford's lengthy acknowledgments and lists of reference.

In 1993 I manhauled across the Antarctic continent with Mike

Stroud and, in 1997, quite by chance, I saw the Central TV film again. This time it rang a very different bell.

My own experience as a polar explorer, leader and manhauler had deepened. Recovering from frostbite in 2000, I made detailed notes on the book and began to read all the books I could get hold of about Amundsen and Scott, some 112 in all. I became slowly aware of the magnitude of the change wrought to Scott's reputation – indeed this interpretation of Scott had spread so widely as to become the accepted view. Once my own polar work convinced me that there was something profoundly wrong in Huntford's book, I determined to try and return Scott to his rightful place in the history of exploration.

The reason this matters so much and the reason I've devoted so much time and effort to this quest is that up to this day *Scott and Amundsen* is used as *the* Scott reference book. New biographies of Scott, since Huntford's, use his quotes and text. He is generally accepted as the world's number one polar biographer and much of his book is now treated as history. (The extent of his research is considerable, though I was disappointed not to find a detailed note on sources at the back of the more widely read paperback version, *The Last Place on Earth*, which would enable the reader to check the exact origin of the quotations and assertions in the text.)

His image of Captain Scott in *Scott and Amundsen* has radically changed the world's concept of Scott. By the time a new edition of the paperback was published in 1999, Paul Theroux was writing in his introduction of Scott as 'insecure, panicky, humorless . . . a bungler . . . always self-dramatizing'. For a snapshot of Roland Huntford's attitude to his main protagonists, it is interesting to compare the index entries for Scott and Amundsen. Under 'characteristics' for Amundsen we have: 'animals, love of; leadership, capacity for; magnetism; modesty; physical fitness; rectitude, sense of; sensitivity; sexual reticence; short sight; single-mindedness; stoicism; vanity.' Scott's 'charactistics' entry reads: 'absentmindness; agnosticism; command, unsuitability

for; criticism, refused to accept; depression, bouts of; emotionalism; impatience; improvisation, belief in; inadequacy, sense of; insecurity; insight, lack of; irrationality; isolation; jealousy; judgement, defective; leadership, failure in; literary gifts; panic, readiness to; recklessness; responsibility, instinct to evade; sentimentality; vacillation.'

The question that I increasingly wanted an answer to was: how did Huntford manage to convince his readers that his version of Scott was the correct one?

Firstly, Huntford presented himself as a man with practical snow and ice experience, but shows his ignorance of polar regions with statements like: '[At] about −40°C . . . each breath burns like fire.' I have manhauled at −50°C and have never experienced this Huntford phenomenon. He writes too that Amundsen's man Stubberud, being a house-builder, knew how to dig large snow grottos 'without the risk of the roof collapsing'. Most expeditions that winter in Antarctica, including mine, dig such grottos to store gear or for work rooms. You don't need a house-builder.

Huntford wrote of Scott as 'incapable of the specialized interplay of arms, torso and legs [at] . . . the heart of cross-country skiing. [Scott] struggled awkwardly . . . squandering energy with every step . . . [He] was ill suited to bear the strains of Polar travel.' In fact Scott, over a succession of polar journeys, was to prove himself eminently well suited to polar travel and by far the best individual manhauler of the age. I have taught army teams to cross-country ski using the interplay of limbs that Huntford mentions and I have also manhauled heavy sledges for thousands of miles on skis. I can confirm that Huntford, for whatever reason, seems to have missed the point: good skiing techniques are utterly irrelevant to heavy manhauling.

Scott is castigated for his use of man-made clothing materials, not furs, even though polar experts know that manhaulers would be unable to move in furs. They would perspire too much. For manhauling, even at −50°C it is best if you wear lightweight

cotton clothes, otherwise your sweat is trapped and freezes on your skin as your body cools. Furs are only correct for dog drivers – the dogs are the ones exerting themselves. Huntford claims that Scott had no furs and that this explained some of his men's frostbite. But Amundsen suffered too, in spite of his fur clothes: 'My nose, lips, jaw and forehead are just a single sore.'

Huntford states: 'Scott forced the pace. He covered thirteen miles a day, not far short of Amundsen's fifteen . . . on the march for nine or ten hours, hauling heavy weights . . . Dragging 200 pounds per man up to 10,000 feet was inhuman enough.' It is not inhuman for a leader like Scott to set such a manhaul pace, it is standard practice and remains so today. Nine or ten hours is the norm. Two hundred pounds is a comparatively light load and 10,000 feet happens to be the average height of the polar plateau.

Huntford alludes many times to Scott battling with Shackleton as 'with an imaginary foe'. He suggests that Scott kept comparing his progress with that of Shackleton, 'the ghostly rival', in order to 'sneer' at Shackleton. Having completed many expeditions over terrain where some predecessor has been, I know that the most natural and satisfying activity each day is to compare progress with that of the previous traveller. This does not involve 'sneering', merely checking progress against some known yardstick. Polar explorer Vivian Fuchs said of Huntford's book: 'It is one man's interpretation, and his inexperience of the conditions he is writing about clearly makes him incompetent to judge them.'

Secondly, Huntford tapped into the mood for late twentieth-century *mea culpa* breast beating by Britons feeling guilty about their colonial past by directly relating Scott to that legacy. 'Scott,' he emphasises, 'came from a rich and mighty empire, albeit in decline; Amundsen from a small, poor country, with a sparse and scattered population.' Another plus for the Norwegian, since the British love the underdog! Huntford returns to his refrain,

that 'Scott personified the glorious failure which by now had become a British ideal. He was a suitable hero for a nation in decline.' He describes Amundsen as an upper-class Viking whose deeds were synonymous with Norway's emergence as an independent state and Scott as a middle class brewer's son personifying British national decline. The year 1870, two years after Scott's birth, he calls the 'start of the collapse of British power. If Scott's birth had been chosen as a symbol, it could scarcely have been better timed.'

Huntford emphasises matters of class. 'Scott had the nervous uncertainty of the ambitious middle class faced with a natural aristocrat' and again, 'The appearance of an upper-class captain of Dragoons in a middle-class enterprise was an interesting prospect.' Scott never writes of class matters but, in segregating his officers from his men, causes Huntford to write: 'Scott . . . ran her under Naval discipline with rigid segregation of officers and men.' There is in fact no evidence of rigidity. The hut's library, kept in Scott's room, was open to everyone, all games and sports were played together. Scott wrote that, apart from messing and sleeping in the winter hut, 'it is an advantage on such an expedition as ours that all should share the same hardships and, as far as possible, live the same lives.'

Thirdly, Huntford sometimes gets ahead of the evidence – as he has said, 'One has to interpret now and then.' In a BBC 'Nationwide' television interview he explained his description of Scott trying to force Oates out to his death as being based on his, Huntford's, 'intuition'. When Sara Wheeler interviewed him for her 1996 book, *Terra Incognita*, she asked if he ever hankered to go south, since his polar descriptions were so good. He replied: 'No. These are landscapes of the mind, you see.' So even his scenery descriptions are intuitive. In 1972, the *Times Literary Supplement*, reviewing his book on Sweden, commented: 'His book is interpretive rather than informative: a more dispassionate account might have been more convincing.' Wayland Young, in the magazine *Encounter*, wrote of *Scott and*

Amundsen that Huntford 'was satisfied, not by any documentary evidence, not even by a contemporary hint or allusion or expectation; he was satisfied by his own understanding . . . [This] is not the procedure of a scholar; to be satisfied by those means that a man long dead was a villain . . . is the procedure of a novelist.'

Fourthly, Huntford damned Scott in the eyes of his readers through selective omission. He quotes but rarely from the hundreds of diarists with good things to say about Scott in order to balance the quotes he frequently uses from the few critical diarists. In this book I use both.

Huntford announced to the Norwegian reviewers of his book that he had 'discovered that Scott had falsified his diary of the *Discovery* expedition. He altered his diaries. They later got lost. I found them with a branch of the family and was first to compare them with the published account . . . I am not alone to react against our historic cover-up, the dangerous myths we have invented to cultivate our glorious [English] reputation.' To *Aftenposten*, and referring to Scott's *Personal Journals*, Huntford admitted that these diaries had not been altered by Scott but that 'the establishment' covered up for Scott, 'and that is exactly what we suffer from in England.' Huntford adds: 'I have found more than seventy large omissions', mostly 'spiteful things [Scott wrote] about those he was responsible for'.

Already discussed in this book is the obvious reason for the seventy omissions Huntford refers to, all of which would have been made by Scott had he lived, since they were mostly his private notes, good and bad, about his men and never intended to go further. Huntford's pointed comments about explorers' use of their diaries often seems contradictory. He brands Scott as dishonest for omissions and for 'tampering with the record', in using much, but not all, of his diary material. Yet when Huntford gives examples of similar omissions in Amundsen's *The North West Passage*, he says Amundsen is 'selective' but 'in what he tells there is no tampering with the record'. Although

Huntford constantly uses Armitage's twenty-year-old anti-Scott mutterings, he says of an equivalent critic of Amundsen: 'This is reconstruction after brooding, and is unlikely to be the whole truth.'

Throughout his book, he almost entirely ignores the scientific aspect of Scott's expeditions which involved far more man hours of work and travel than his Pole journey travels ever did. Yet science was Scott's main purpose. His critic, Cherry-Garrard, makes crystal clear that the expedition's devotion to science was genuine. Cherry-Garrard, Scott and the rest also stated that their other main aim was to reach the Pole.

The thirty-five pounds of rocks Scott carried were, in Huntford's words, 'a pathetic little gesture to salvage something from defeat at the Pole'. If Scott and his men had been first at the Pole does Huntford believe they would have left the rocks behind? The British Museum (Natural History)'s official report on the expedition's research stated: 'The heroic efforts of the Polar Party [in collecting the rocks] were not in vain. They have laid a solid foundation; [which] . . . will stimulate their successors to provide material for the superstructure [of the continent].' Many decades later this material furnished scientists with their first proof not only of profound changes in the earth's climate but in its very shape and structure. Huntford further claimed that such rocks were unnecessary as Shackleton 'had already done most of the work'. In fact, Scott's specimens revealed the age of the Beacon Sandstone and the key to the origin of Antarctica, whereas Shackleton's did not.

Oates provides Huntford with his most potent ammunition and Huntford is clearly an Oates fan. On the other hand Huntford has openly stated that he 'can't *stand* Wilson', no doubt because Wilson is a very critical, very honest man whose comments on Scott are mostly favourable. Huntford mentions to readers of *Scott and Amundsen* that new material had fallen into his hands, including the last letters of Captain Oates, which had been unavailable to previous authors. He also told his pub-

lishers that this should be stated in the publicity material being sent out with the book. This suggests that *he* had unearthed the letters. In fact, the co-author of a proposed book on Oates, Sue Limb, had already been shown all these letters by Oates's surviving sister, Violet. All Oates's letters had been jealously guarded by his mother, Caroline, who had ordered them all to be destroyed on her death. Violet had secretly copied many of them just before their destruction and, because she liked Sue Limb, made them available to her in 1963. Frank Debenham, who had introduced them, wrote to her with key advice about Oates and his letters: 'you will have to depend more on circumstantial evidence, what he said and did, than what he wrote down. His character will only appear from his deeds and not from his words.'

Huntford seems to have ignored that advice, just as he ignored Oates's own advice when, recognising his own tendency to overcriticise, he wrote to his mother: 'please remember that when a man is having a hard time he says hard things about other people which he would regret afterwards.' Sue Limb, in her Oates book, took this to heart and wrote: 'Oates's hard comments about Scott are vital to an understanding of the situation. His regrets are no less important.'

Oates confided to Wilson in the death tent that his mother was the only woman he had ever loved. This love was more than reciprocated. Caroline Oates never recovered from the blow of his death. She slept every night in his bedroom, dressed for the rest of her life only in black and bitterly attacked those who wrote biographies of Oates, however favourable, including Stephen Gwynn and Louis Bernacchi. She hated Kathleen Scott and felt that Captain Robert Scott was the sole reason for her son's death, choosing to forget that Oates had joined Scott fully aware that he might die. Had not Scott said in public: 'We may get through, we may not. We may lose our lives. We may be wiped out.' For years Mrs Oates would invite Meares, Debenham and Atkinson to her London flat for dinner and grill

them about Scott. She prompted them with her belief that Scott had driven her son to 'the extremities of suffering'. Huntford adds: 'Mrs Oates . . . was perhaps going too far when she called Scott [her son's] "murderer".' He gives no reference for this phrase: it appears nowhere in the only collection of Mrs Oates's letters to be itemised in Huntford's source list. I checked with Oates's biographer, Sue Limb, who told me: 'I'm fairly sure I must have told Huntford [in 1978] that I had the impression that Mrs Oates considered Scott was responsible for her son's death, but asked him not to quote it.' Sue Limb was right to caution Huntford over this, as such second-hand quotes, apparently from the grief-bitter mother of Oates, were not exactly reliable.

The obsessive Mrs Oates, bitter and aggressive to the end, died alone aged eighty-three in her great country house with parts of every room swathed in black. She wrote that Atkinson had said: 'Captain Scott would be very rude and not behave well and then be very friendly and try to make it up.' She added that Meares had told her that 'there used to be great trouble and unhappiness. Captain Scott would swear all day . . . and the worst was it was not possible to get away from the rows.' Anger and blame are well recognised stages of grief. Judging from her diaries, Mrs Oates had no emphatic religious inclinations and would not have been likely to accept her beloved son's death in a spirit of Christian sacrifice.

Whether or not this old lady's memories were genuine recordings of comments from Atkinson and Meares, Huntford uses them as evidence that the *Terra Nova* expedition 'had evidently been in a state of demoralisation, not to say incipient mutiny'. On the earlier expedition's Southern Journey Huntford claims actual mutiny – 'This was the almost inevitable moment of mutiny' – using the Armitage tale of twenty years later, for which there seems to be no shred of evidence. Many such expeditions do cause enormous strain between members but, then and now, the time when such hostility is most obvious to

third parties is always the moment the expedition returns to civilisation. When Scott, Shackleton and Wilson returned to their ship, observed by well over a dozen keen diarists, all the evidence points to the fact that the three of them were getting on extremely well together. As does Shackleton's diary, which in no way supports Huntford's suggestion of friction (let alone mutiny) on the Southern Journey.

Other serious claims by Huntford for which there is apparently equally little evidence include the concept that the Navy would not have allowed any good man to go on the *Discovery* expedition as war was in the offing. So Markham was coerced into accepting a 'dull lieutenant with mediocre prospects' because there were no alternatives. War was fifteen years away and Scott was at that time recommended on his merits for promotion to captain.

Roland Huntford comments on the Meterological Office's report of *Discovery*'s work: 'The elementary error of confusing true and magnetic compass bearings had been made, and the wind observations were thus largely worthless.' What he does not report is that in 1904 the Meterological Office admitted that the mistake was theirs.

Huntford also claims: 'From the start he [Scott] had led Evans to believe that he would go to the Pole.' I can find absolutely no evidence for this. He also claims that Scott had decided to 'break Evans so as to ease the task of sending him back'. According to the Australian polar scientist Dr Philip Law: 'There is absolutely no justification for [this] statement . . . It is a despicable concoction.'

As we have seen, Huntford further claims Scott tried 'to force Oates out to his death' and on television offered his 'intuition' as evidence. With Oates dead, Scott is next accused of persuading Wilson and Bowers 'to lie down with him and wait for the end'. Wayland Young, Kathleen Scott's son by her second marriage, commented in *Encounter* that there was not a shred of evidence for the Huntford 'deduction'. It had been agreed that Bowers

and Wilson should leave Scott and try for the next depot if the weather eased . . . but it didn't.

Huntford introduced homosexuality and adultery by turning Markham into a leering old queen and Kathleen into a shameless adulteress involved in a Berlin hotel with Nansen during her husband's Pole trip. Both accusations were levied without, it seems, a vestige of hard evidence. Both the people he libelled were dead. Huntford damns Markham from the start, stating: 'Though married, with a daughter, Markham was a homosexual. He sometimes went south to indulge his proclivities safe from criminal prosecution. He liked earthy Sicilian boys.' Huntford draws this conclusion, he says, from Markham's own diaries. From Markham's innocent comments about a trip to Sicily with his wife, Huntford draws his lurid interpretation that Scott's patron must have been homosexual. Huntford has no source for this other than Markham's own diaries. But Markham wrote them fully aware that they would be donated to a learned society so open to inspection at a time when homosexuality was illegal and a taboo subject.

Huntford claims that Kathleen was a bi-sexual, a feminist, a calculating adventuress and on the shelf when Scott married her. In reality she was anti-feminist and, when Scott proposed, she was being hotly pursued by two well known suitors. He also claims that: 'Nansen and Kathleen Scott had been having a love affair . . . It was consummated in a Berlin hotel.' In Berlin Kathleen actually stayed with American friends and with her cousin, an attache at the British embassy there. Huntford also states that she marked in her diary when her periods were due at that time. This proves nothing since she made such entries all her life. He also states that Nansen wrote of looking at a sofa on which she had lain.

Nansen undoubtedly had very strong feelings for her; Huntford's main basis for the adultery charge are Nansen's letters to Kathleen hers to him do not survive. Nansen's letters are in the Cambridge University Library as well as two other

letters in which Kathleen convincingly denies any affair with Nansen. Writing to her son in 1938, she says of Nansen's letters: 'I think if anyone read *carefully* they would see it was *not* an affaire *à outrance* . . . I was a completely faithful wife – only I was not going to throw aside such a divine friendship . . . You know he was a very grand person. I am entirely proud of my friendship.' Huntford chose to ignore this evidence as it would have contradicted his allegation. Huntford denied to the press that he had ever read the letters: 'I seem to have missed the letters,' he said, despite having had them photocopied on 3 June 1976.

There are also allegations about Scott's own sex life. Huntford suggests that Scott went absent without leave from the Navy for eight months due to an affair with a married woman. 'But what happened at this time is obscure. Admiralty records are incomplete; they have almost certainly been pruned. There is the hint of an irregular trip home, the protection of a superior officer, and a cover-up.' Exact details of actual postings can be unclear but no more so in Scott's record than in that of any other officer. This seems to have led to Huntford's surmise that one such gap can only have been explained by an extra-marital affair. His point 'they have almost certainly been pruned' – suggests some kind of cover-up for which there is absolutely no evidence.

Huntford presses his case by his constant comparison with Amundsen. The reader soon forgets that Scott was not Norwegian and was responsive to a very different set of traditions. Sporting background skills and national constraints on the two men were as chalk to cheese. To present a dual biography as an account of two men on an equal footing, striving for the same goal for the same reasons, is a clever but ultimately artificial exercise, having little basis in reality - though it works well in making for a very readable book. Huntford portrays the whole event as merely a straight race between two adventurers. The true picture was summed up in 1985 by Dr David Drewry,

Chancellor of Hull University, who said: 'It would be simple-minded to regard this chapter of polar endeavour as a pure race.'

Did Huntford practise conscious deceptions to achieve his dramatic aim of completely changing the world's attitude to Scott? I can only present the evidence I have gained from my research and let readers of this book make up their own minds. His fellow biographer Elspeth Huxley frequently met Huntford in the Scott Polar Institute while researching her own biography. According to a record of a telephone conversation with Sir Peter Scott (now among the Scott papers in Cambridge), she said of Huntford: 'He was always spitting venom! I think he's crackers . . . [He was] animated by a burning hatred of your father . . . [and] he had this extraordinary kink . . . He was convinced that there was some scandal in his [Scott's] naval career and the last time I saw him I asked whether he had found it. He said, "No, but I shall."' Huxley also told him of Huntford's assertion that Captain Scott 'was the sort of man who would have been an Admiral if he had survived and sent thousands of men to their deaths in the first World War'.

For years before his book came out staff at the Scott Polar Research Institute would say to visitors: 'Oh, that's Roland Huntford. He's writing a great book about Scott.' Huntford wrote to the children and other relatives of the Scott team on the Institute headed paper imprinted with the name of Dr G. de Q. Robin, then Director of SPRI. I have a copy of one such letter sent to the nephew of Edward Wilson in November 1978 asking permission to quote from Wilson's diaries. SPRI's present Librarian has confirmed to me that 'Roland Huntford had no official position within the Institute and was simply a regular user of the Library and Archives. He had no right to use Institute headed paper.' Some of the recipients of these Huntford letters, assuming from the letterhead that SPRI was behind him, gave their permission. Wilson's great-nephew, Dr David Wilson, told me that when it became known that the letters were written on Huntford's initiative alone, it was too late. The hitherto good

relationship between some of the recipients and the Institute was already damaged: 'The result was that few of the polar families trusted researchers again; indeed some of the families placed strict controls upon their archives as the result.'

Huntford opened his long list of acknowledgments in the original edition of his Scott book by expressing his thanks to Dr Robin, the SPRI's Director. The Institute's reaction to the book was such that Huntford, for a time after publication, was not welcome there.

When Huntford first asked Peter Scott to let him see his father's private papers he wrote that his intention was: 'to achieve a dispassionate presentation of the evidence'. His words reassured Peter Scott, who gave him full access to the private papers in his home at the Slimbridge Wildfowl Centre. Huntford wrote to Peter Scott in March 1978, by which time he had finished the draft of his book, saying: 'May I take the opportunity of thanking you for your generous help.' Peter Scott wrote back: 'I'm glad that your book is now finished and feel sure that it will add usefully to the understanding of my father's character . . . I am ready, as I told you earlier, to permit publication of those documents . . . over which I retain publication rights. This is all in the spirit of our original conversation in which you assured me that your book was not going to be a debunking exercise.' The book was duly published with, in the acknowledgments, glowing thanks to Peter Scott which indicated that Captain Scott's own son fully approved of the book's contents.

Peter Scott immediately brought a court action against Huntford and issued a statement to the press: 'Mr Huntford came to me with an introduction from Messrs Hodder & Stoughton and, since they were also my own publishers and I had known them for some years, I naturally gave Mr Huntford both my confidence and access to papers of my father and mother on condition that his book would not be a debunking exercise, since so many writers seem nowadays to indulge in character assassination of our national heroes once they can no longer defend themselves

or seek redress. What he told me of his intentions only strengthened my confidence.' Peter Scott then read the book and found that Huntford 'had seriously and to my mind despicably maligned my father and also my mother in the way he dealt with the evidence I had made available to him . . . In his "acknowledgements", Mr Huntford "thanks" me for my help, which I regard as an insult.'

Huntford, through his lawyers, replied to Peter Scott's lawyers that his book did not contain debunking items that were unfair. Their response was: 'Apparently your client considers the book a fair biographical study and as such one to which our client would have given his approval and assistance, when he alleges bisexuality on the part of Sir Peter's mother, when he doubts her claims to virginity at the time of her marriage and when he refers in the most offensive terms to the alleged circumstances of Sir Peter's conception.' The court action was settled against Huntford, who agreed to pay costs and to apologise. Perhaps unsurprisingly there is no mention of this case anywhere in Huntford's current paperback edition.

Wayland Young wrote: 'I object to Roland Huntford's book as a son, because he maligns my mother and her first husband; as an owner of archives because I gave him access to them and he misused them; and as an (occasional) historian because he has dishonoured that essential calling and put its raw materials at risk, not only for himself but for others.'

After *Scott and Amundsen*, Huntford began to research another biography. On 20 November 1979 a letter from the then Director of the Royal Geographical Society appeared in *The Times*: 'you published a letter from Mr Roland Huntford in which he uses the Royal Geographical Society as his address . . . his letter was sent without any authorization from the Society . . . our past President, Lord Shackleton . . . assures me that neither has the Shackleton family commissioned any biography of his father.' Some years later, after the success of the Scott book, Huntford approached the family of Fridtjof Nansen,

another intended subject. Nansen's next of kin was Marit Greve, his granddaughter, married to Tim Greve, the author of a two-volume biography of Nansen and the Director of the Nobel Institute in Oslo. Tim Greve refused Huntford any access to the Nansen private papers; when he died in 1986, Huntford repeated his request, this time to his widow, and was again turned down.

Scott and Amundsen would always have been a partial book with a 'one note' attitude to Scott, very hurtful and painful to those involved in, or connected to, a great polar expedition, but it would have been of little importance had it not received so much coverage and if its influence had not been so lasting. A number of subsequent Scott biographers refer constantly to *Scott and Amundsen*, or praise Huntford's scholarship. *The Observer* voted the 2000 softback reprint of *The Last Place on Earth* their Paperback of the Week and their reviewer, Caroline Boucher, wrote a single sentence which summed up the reaction to Scott of hundreds of thousands of readers worldwide: 'Reading this book made my blood boil at the pig-headed arrogance of the man.'

On the other hand a more critical analysis did also emerge. Francis Spufford, author of *I May Be Some Time*, wrote: 'Huntford's assault on Scott was so extreme it plainly toppled over into absurdity.' The *Contemporary Review* observed: 'Huntford, a journalist rather than a trained historian, can be criticised for his mis use of evidence and subjectivity. His book cites an impressive range of source material, but in places the list flatters to deceive . . . His chief preoccupation was to write a good and controversial story for marketing reasons, as evi denced by his squeezing of certain material to fit his thesis.' Not surprisingly the *Polar Record* was equally unimpressed: 'An account by an admirer of Amundsen who appears to have a paranoid dislike of Scott . . . another "debunking" book typical of this age . . . If an unfavourable quotation is not available, the author disparages Scott by "reading between the lines" or if this is not possible, he uses his imagination to construct the thoughts

of Scott and his men . . . I refer to Huntford's determination to make the book readable, to embellish it with ideas unsupported by evidence.'

Tryggve Gran's daughter, Ellen McGhie, wrote to the *Daily Telegraph*: 'Huntford has seen fit to draw extensively, for his character assassination of Scott, on a diary published in Norway in 1915 by my father, Tryggve Gran. I recently translated this diary for the National Maritime Museum and it appears to have been dredged by Mr Huntford for anything that could conceivably be interpreted as derogatory to Scott and, by con textual manipulation, attributed to him opinions he did not express.'

Was Scott the 'horrid man' Huntford suggests, the inept, selfish risk-taker portrayed in his book? He does not sound like a character that any sensible person would follow on one, never mind on two, long polar expeditions. Yet the Huntford book converted millions into believing a negative image of Scott. I wrote to Huntford and asked if I could interview him for this book. He declined, saying: 'It is perfectly clear that we are on opposing sides.' I asked people whom I knew had worked along side Huntford in the SPRI archives over many years what they knew about him. Without exception, everybody I asked had the impression that Huntford's father was some English colonial gentleman given to romantic travels in pre-Soviet Russia, had married there and moved to Cape Town where Roland was born. The result was a young Englishman with romantic parentage. Huntford has told interviewers that 'my mother was Russian and my father was a colonial — but he spent, as far as I know, a lot of time in Russia. Before the Revolution.' He told Dr Charles Swithinbank, the Cambridge-based glaciologist, that 'his father was an Army officer and his mother was from Russia'. On the jacket flaps of his books we learn that he was born in South Africa in 1927, graduated from Cape Town University in 1947 and went to Imperial College, London. He took a post with the UN in Geneva in 1959 and was a journalist for *The*

Spectator. In 1961 he became *The Observer*'s winter sports correspondent in Scandinavia and the Alps, where he gained first-hand experience of Nordic skiing and of training and driving dog-sleds.

In the 1960s Huntford was taken on by the late Chris Brasher of *The Observer* as a sports correspondent and, later, as that paper's man in Scandinavia. He sent his publisher, for use on the Scott book cover, a photo of himself with a dog and sledge. He explained that the dog was his pet which he had trained to pull a sledge in a suburban forest. The author biography in the publicity brochure proclaimed, with Huntford's approval, that he was 'amply qualified to comprehend the subject of polar exploration', describing him as a 'linguist, cross-country skier, mountaineer and dog-driver'.

Apart from establishing that he wrote for *The Observer*, I failed to verify anything in the biography on his original book jacket. Then I discovered that Huntford had changed his name from Horwitch when he was thirty-two. His parents were a Lithuanian emigré named Sam Horowitz and the granddaughter of another Lithuanian émigré, Isaac Asherson, living in South Africa. Huntford broke with everything his father represented. His father was a mild man: he became a harsh critic. His parents were happy in South Africa. They were proud of their name and their heritage: he appears to have cut himself off from both.

When asked about his time at Imperial College Huntford replies: 'Oh, I left in disgrace . . . but that's another story.' He states: 'Quantum mechanics was my great interest. I was a bit fed up with London at that time, which is an emotion I've never quite lost.' When asked about his time with the UN Huntford replied that he acquired for them 'an abiding contempt and loathing'. What did he think about Sweden? His second wife, of over thirty years, is Swedish and he lived there for twelve years. The jacket blurb of a book he wrote about Sweden, *The New Totalitarians*, boasts that he makes the country sound

like 'the nearest example in the modern world to the societies envisaged by George Orwell'. Asked if, since he hates the likes of Scott, loathes the UN and detested the Swedish government, Huntford considers himself a rebel, he replied: 'Yes, you're right.'

When asked in 2002 about his current thoughts on Scott, he replied: 'I think he was a horrible man and a bully. A really horrid man. And the navy thought so too . . . his brother officers didn't like him. And the Admiralty didn't like him . . . he only got promotion through his family influence because his sister married the financial secretary to the Admiralty . . . And I believe he may have had syphilis which may have changed his personality.'

Leif Mills, the Anglo-Norwegian biographer of Frank Wild, told me he believed Huntford's motive in championing Amundsen was that: 'he fell into the trap of being more Norwegian than the Norwegians and that may explain some of his attitude to Scott.' He may have translated his admiration for Amundsen 'into unnecessary and somewhat unfair criticism of some of the English explorers'.

The former Librarian of the Scott Polar Research Institute, Harry King, said that Huntford, fresh from his years in Stockholm, wanted to smarten himself up in Scandinavian eyes by producing a hagiographic biography of Amundsen and, subsequently, another on Nansen. But his publishers told him the British public had no interest in Amundsen and he should therefore include Scott alongside the Norwegian.

The Scott of Huntford's book has now spread worldwide in movie format and is available in video form. It has become the popular truth. Dr Susan Solomon, viewing the video in the South Pole station television lounge, wrote: 'Once such seeds were sown, Scott's mistakes grew to assume legendary proportions, radically transforming the figures of all of the men of Scott's fatal expedition from heroism and tragedy to folly and even farce.' The script for that film, a Central TV production based

on Huntford's biography, was by Trevor Griffiths, a writer with a self-confessed political agenda. In his book *Judgement over the Dead* Griffiths says he first looked at Huntford's story purely in terms of its relevance to current political events – 'the present struggle', as he put it. 'Maybe one could feel the build-up to the Falklands in advance . . . some recrudescence of imperialist ideology . . . During the Falklands crisis . . . I have never seen so many Union Jacks and flagwaving and bullshit talking in my life . . . This was [all over again] the Scott myth and its proximity to the Great War.' Griffiths explained other aspects of the project: 'One has to be fairly factual . . . about what actually took place . . . We [needed our actors] to cohere as representatives of a class in action – an imperial class in action.'

The film was promoted around the world as 'a gripping 7-episode film drama series [which] tells the true story of that legendary contest and the men behind the myth'. As late as 2000 the video was still being shown at US science stations in Antarctica as a key part of the polar induction programme of the US National Science Foundation, and described as an important part of South Polar history! And yet this 'documentary' includes sequences of Markham fondling a pretty young Scott's knee, of Kathleen being carried naked to Nansen's hotel bed, of Atkinson telling the scientists to lie about Scott's death, of Scott using filthy language to his men. He was in fact well known not to use even mild bad language. When a similar film with a foul-mouthed Scott was shown in Norway, Tryggve Gran was still alive. He wrote to the film-makers saying: 'Scott never said anything like it . . . Scott was the last man in the world to use bad words.'

After the Central TV film the myth of Scott's self-serving incompetence continued to spread. Charles Lagerbom, a teacher who had visited Scott's hut by cruise ship, wrote an eminently readable biography of Henry Bowers, *The Fifth Man*. American Lagerbom's attitude shines through with prose like: 'the Empire's spastic evolution towards Commonwealth' and 'the glories of

imperialism and the British Empire were drilled annually into little heads: these manufactured little imperialists then grew up and kept the empire alive and strong.'

The year 1999 produced a rash of Scott-bashing books, included *The Rescue of Captain Scott* by Don Aldridge which also relies on Huntford. In reviewing this book, Judy Skelton wrote: 'The author tries to give his book every appearance of a scholarly work. It is packed with quotations, many from primary sources, each with a detailed reference to the original. Unfortunately the work is seriously flawed and cannot sustain this scholarly image. There are errors of fact and the majority of quotations I checked against original sources were found to be inaccurately reproduced, in a significant number of cases sufficiently so as to lay the author open to charges of deliberate misrepresentation.' While reviewer T.H. Baughman from the University of Oklahoma wrote of the Aldridge book: 'Too bad the tragedy of Antarctic historiography continues in the guise of works such as this one.'

The National Maritime Museum in Greenwich held a major public exhibition in 2000 celebrating Scott and Amundsen's South Pole journeys and brought out a book at the same time called *South the Race to the Pole*. The authors did not intend to be biased either way but, presumably for lack of time for original research, seem inevitably to have leant heavily on Huntford.

Two excellent books appeared in the first two years of this century, *Antarctica Unveiled* by David Yelverton and *The Coldest March* by Dr Susan Solomon, both producing new historical and scientific facts to clear away the myth that Scott was merely an incompetent complainer. American scientists in the 1990s have established beyond doubt that March 1912 saw abnormally cold and unrelenting temperatures on the Barrier at exactly the time and place where Scott's men slowed and died. For three straight weeks temperatures were 10°C below average, conditions which have been repeated only once in the last thirty-

eight years. According to Huntford, however, the weather in March 1912 around the time of Oates's death was 'not exceptionally low for the season of the year'.

Huntford and those of like mind tend to brand any book that is not entirely critical of Scott as sycophantic. No doubt they will write this book off on the same grounds. They will accuse me of wishing to identify with Scott. Nothing could be further from the truth. I would want to write about anyone whose life and work had been traduced as Scott's has been. As I have explained, my natural empathy is with Oates, at least up to the point where he joined *Terra Nova*.

Cherry-Garrard once wrote: 'It is difficult for those who have never been to the Antarctic to write about it.' To the best of my knowledge Roland Huntford has never been there, nor has he any experience of leading men, of survival in the cold or of organising a huge endeavour into the unknown.

I want to end my book with some words from those who knew Scott personally:

I loved every hair on his head. He was a born gentleman and I will never forget him.

Tom Crean

He was a thoroughly cheerful and good natured man, a trifle impatient at times.

Thomas Hodgson

Sound in his judgement and just in his criticisms he was always quick to appreciate and generous in praise.

Herbert Ponting

He wouldn't ask you to do anything he wasn't prepared to do himself.

Assistant Stoker Bill Burton

[Scott] had achieved something great for his country, for his family, and indeed [morally] for the whole of mankind . . . We Norwegians have always felt ourselves closely bound to Great Britain. Robert Falcon Scott strengthened the links tighter than ever before.

Tryggve Gran

He is thoughtful for each individual and does little kindnesses that show it.

Edward Wilson

Whether, having read this book, you believe me or you believe the denigrators' version of Scott is, of course, entirely your choice. Either way, Scott, Bowers, Wilson, Oates and Evans still lie frozen in the ice, as they have since the day their journey ended. They alone know the truth.

Appendix I Members of the *Discovery* Expedition, 1901–4

OFFICERS

Commander Robert F. SCOTT, RN	Leader (Director of Scientific Staff)
Lieutenant Albert B. ARMITAGE, RNR	Second-in-Command (navigator)
Lieutenant Reginald SKELTON, RN	Chief Engineer (photographer)
Lieutenant Charles W.R. ROYDS, RN	First Lieutenant (meteorologist)
Lieutenant Michael BARNE, RN	Second Lieutenant
Sub-Lieutenant Ernest H. SHACKLETON, RNR	Third Lieutenant (*invalided after first season*)
Sub-Lieutenant George F. MULOCK, RN	Third Lieutenant (Surveyor) (*replaced Shackleton in 1903*)

CIVILIAN SCIENTIFIC STAFF

Dr Reginald KOETTLITZ	Surgeon, botanist, entomologist
Dr Edward A. WILSON	Assistant surgeon, zoologist, artist
Louis C. BERNACCHI	Physicist and magnetician
Thomas V. HODGSON	Marine biologist
Hartley T. FERRAR	Geologist
Dr H.R. MILL	(*left ship at Madeira*)
Dr George MURRAY	(*left ship at Cape Town*)
Horace BUCKRIDGE	Laboratory assistant (*joined at Cape Town*)

SHORE PARTY CREW
(* *returned after first season*)

Warrant Officer James DELLBRIDGE, RN	Second Engineer
William HUBERT	Donkeyman
Ldg Stoker William LASHLY, RN	Chief Stoker (*trained in ballooning*)
Ldg Stoker Arthur QUARTLEY, RN	
Ldg Stoker Thomas WHITFIELD, RN	
Stoker William PAGE, RN*	
Stoker Frank PLUMLEY, RN	(*joined at Simonstown*)
Warrant Officer Frederick DAILEY, RN	Carpenter
Shipwright James DUNCAN	Carpenter's mate
Warrant Officer Reginald FORD, RN	Chief Steward
Lance Corporal Arthur BLISSETT, RM	Steward
Private Gilbert SCOTT, RM	Steward
Clarence HARE	Assistant Steward*
Henry BRETT	Cook*
Charles CLARK	Assistant cook and baker
Petty Officer 1st Cl. Thomas FEATHER, RN	Boatswain
Petty Officer 1st Cl. David ALLAN, RN	Assistant boatswain and quartermaster
Petty Officer 1st Cl. William MACFARLANE, RN	Quartermaster*
Petty Officer 1st Cl. William SMYTHE, RN	Quartermaster (*disrated to able seaman in New Zealand; rating restored 1903*)
Petty Officer 1st Class Jacob CROSS, RN	Assistant zoologist
Petty Officer 2nd Cl. Thomas KENNAR, RN	Acting quartermaster
Petty Officer 2nd Cl. Edgar EVANS, RN	
AB (Able Seaman) Arthur PILBEAM, RN	Leading seaman
AB James DELL, RN	

AB William HEALD, RN	*(trained in ballooning)*
AB William PETERS, RN*	
AB Thomas WILLIAMSON, RN	
AB James WALKER	
AB Frank WILD, RN	
AB Thomas CREAN, RN	*(joined at Christchurch)*
AB George CROUCHER, RN	*(joined at Simonstown)*
AB Ernest JOYCE, RN	*(joined at Simonstown)*
AB William WELLER	Dog handler *(joined at Christchurch)*
AB George VINCE, RN	*(joined at Simonstown; drowned after cliff fall in Antarctic, 1902)*
AB Jesse HANDLEY, RN	*(joined at Port Chalmers)*

OTHERS WHO DID NOT GO SOUTH

Hugh MILLER	Sailmaker *(discharged unfit in NZ)*
Job CLARK	Laboratory assistant *(discharged at Cape Town)*
Sydney ROPER	Cook *(discharged in NZ)*
Albert DOWSETT	Steward *(discharged in NZ)*
AB Henry BAKER, RN	*(deserted in NZ)*
AB Charles BONNER, RN	*(killed by fall from mast in NZ)*
AB John WATERMAN, RN	*(discharged with syphilis at Cape Town)*
AB John MARDON	*(discharged at Cape Town)*
AB James MASTERTON	*(discharged at Cape Town)*
AB Robert SINCLAIR	*(joined at Cape Town; deserted at Port Chalmers NZ after funeral of Bonner)*

Appendix II Members of the *Terra Nova* Expedition, 1910–13

SHORE PARTY
(* died on expedition)

OFFICERS

Commander Robert F. SCOTT, CVO, RN	Leader
Lieutenant Edward R.G.R. EVANS, RN	Second-in-Command
Lieutenant Victor L.A. CAMPBELL, RN	Leader of Northern Party
Lieutenant Henry R. BOWERS, RIM*	In charge of stores
Captain Lawrence E.G. OATES, (Army)*	In charge of ponies
Surgeon Edward L. ATKINSON, RN	Main party surgeon, paarasitologist
Surgeon Murray LEVICK, RN	Northern Party surgeon

SCIENTIFIC STAFF

Dr Edward A. WILSON*	Chief scientist and zoologist
George C. SIMPSON	Meteorologist
T. Griffith TAYLOR	Geologist
Thomas V. HODGSON	Marine biologist
Edward W. NELSON	Biologist
Frank DEBENHAM	Geologist
Charles S. WRIGHT	Physicist
Raymond E. PRIESTLEY	Northern Party geologist
Apsley CHERRY-GARRARD	Assistant zoologist

Cecil H. MEARES	In charge of dogs
Bernard C. DAY	Motor engineer
Lieutenant Tryggve GRAN, RNN	Ski expert
Herbert G. PONTING	Photographer (*returned after first season*)

SHORE PARTY MEN

Chief Stoker William LASHLY, RN	
Petty Officer 1st Cl. Thomas CREAN, RN	
Petty Officer 1st Cl. Edgar EVANS, RN*	
Petty Officer 1st Cl. Robert FORDE, RN	
Petty Officer 1st Cl. Patrick KEOHANE, RN	
Petty Officer 1st Cl. Thomas WILLAMSON, RN	
Petty Officer 1st Cl. George ABBOTT, RN	Northern Party
Petty Officer 2nd Cl. Frank BROWNING, RN	Northern Party
AB Harry DICKASON, RN	Northern Party
W. ARCHER, RN (Rtd)	Chief Steward
Thomas CLISSOLD, RN (Rtd)	Cook
Frank HOOPER, RN (Rtd)	Steward
Anton, OMELCHENKO	Groom
Demetri GEROF	Dog-driver

SHIP'S PARTY

(excluding men discharged before first voyage south)

OFFICERS AND SCIENTIST

Lieutenant Harry L.L. PENNELL, RN	Captain
Lieutenant Henry F. de RENNICK, RN	First Officer

Lieutenant Wilfred M. BRUCE, RNR	Second Officer
C.E.R.A. 2nd Cl. William WILLIAMS, RN	Chief Engineer
E.R.A. 3rd Cl. William A. HORTON, RN	Second Engineer
E.R.A. 2nd Cl. James WEBB	Third Engineer (*first voyage south only*)
Ldg Shipwright Francis E.C. DAVIES, RN	Carpenter
Asst. Paymaster Francis R.H. DRAKE, RN (Rtd)	Meteorologist
Dennis G. LILLIE	Biologist
James R. DENNISTOUN	In charge of mules (*first voyage south only*)

CREW

Alfred CHEETHAM, RNR	Boatswain
Petty Officer 1st Cl. William HEALD, RN (Rtd)	
Petty Officer 1st Cl. Frederick PARSONS, RN	
Petty Officer 2nd Cl. Arther BAILEY, RN	
Leading Seaman Arthur BALSON, RN	
AB William KNOWLES	(*first voyage south only*)
AB Joseph LEESE, RN	
AB William MACDONALD	
AB Mortimer McCARTHY	
AB William McLEOD	
AB Robert OLIPHANT	(*first voyage south only*)
AB James PATON	
AB James SKELTON	
AB Charles WILLIAMS	
OS Petty Officer John MATHER, RNVR	
OS P. BRADLEY	
OS W. COPP	(*first voyage south only*)

Stoker Petty Officer Robert BRISSENDEN, RN	Leading Stoker *(died in accident in NZ)*
Acting Leading Stoker Edward McKENZIE, RN	Leading Stoker *(after Brissenden's death)*
Leading Stoker Bernard STONE, RN	*(first voyage south only)*
Stoker 1st Cl. William BURTON, RN	
Fireman W. KELLY	*(first voyage south only)*
Fireman Charles LAMMAS	*(first voyage south only)*
Fireman Angus McDONALD	
Fireman Thomas McGILLON	
Steward W. NEALE	

Acknowledgments

My thanks to David Yelverton for his knowledge, advice and facts from his excellent book *Antarctica Unveiled*. To Celene Pickard and Robert Headland for their patience, expertise, time and interest. Likewise Pamela Stevenson. A thousand thanks to Gina Rawle for all the long hours and midnights of careful and tortuous work. To Philippa Harrison and Maggie Body for their unequalled expertise and dedication. To Rupert Lancaster for his professionalism and patience. As always my thanks to Ed Victor for making the book possible.

For reading and correcting the original text, as well as their time and knowledge:

David Wilson, Jonathan Shackleton, Judy Skelton, Sue Limb, Marit Greve, Geoffrey Hattersley-Smith, Philippa Scott, Ellen McGhie, Charles Swithinbank, Mike Stroud, Susan Solomon, Muriel Finnis, Ann Savours Shirley, Barbara Debenham, Gill Blenkinsop.

Also for the following publishers, authors and organisations for allowing me to use quotes from their books and resources: June Back, David Drewry, Marit Greve, Wally Herbert, Harry King, Charles Lagerbom, Katherine Lambert, Sue Limb, Ellen McGhie, Leif Mills, William Mills, Diana Preston, the Royal Geographical Society, Philippa Scott, the Scott Polar Research Institute, Judy Skelton, Michael Smith, Susan Solomon, Mike Stroud, Charles Swithinbank, Wayland Young (Lord Kennet), David Wilson and David Yelverton. Extracts from *Polar Journeys* by Robert Feeney reprinted by permission of the author; extracts from *Captain Scott – The Full Story* by Harry Ludlam reprinted by permission of W. Foulsham & Co. Ltd; extracts

from *The Worst Journey in the World* reprinted by permission of Angela Mathias; extracts from *A First-Rate Tragedy* by Diana Preston reprinted by permission of Constable & Robinson Ltd; extracts from *Birdie Bowers of the Antarctic*, *Edward Wilson of the Antarctic* and *Scott of the Antarctic* by George Seaver reprinted by permission of John Murray (Publishers) Ltd; extracts from *Terra Incognita* by Sarah Wheeler published by Jonathan Cape. Reprinted by permission of The Random House Group Ltd. To Philippa and Falcon Scott for allowing me access to their private papers.

Thanks to the following organisations who have been so helpful with their resources:

Bedford County Library; British Antarctic Survey (David Walton, John Hall, Chris Rapley and Nick Cox); Cambridge University Library; Dexcrest Ltd; Imperial College Archives; Minehead Library (Sarah Lander and Sue Rutt); Norsk Polarklubb; Royal Geographical Society; The Scott Polar Research Institute; The Captain Scott Society; Wootton Library, Bedfordshire.

Also for help, support, advice and time, all those below:

Anna Jacobson-Amundsen, Mary Bates, Gervase Belfield, Kelvin Boot, Chris Brasher, Juliet Brightmore, Lawson Brigham, Joyce Burnett, Martha Calderon, Peter Carter Ruck, Mike Curtis, John Deverell, David Drewry, Robert Feeney, Jill Firman, Karen Geary, Hermann Gran, Natalie Harrison, David Harrowfield, Tim Haskell, Wally and Marie Herbert, Don Hewitt, Justin Hobson, Kelly Jones, Mike Kantey, Harry King, Michael Kobold, Monica Kristensen-Solås, Katherine Lambert, Fergus Lawler, Mary Lynch, Lucy Martin, Angela Mathias, Hilary McEwan, Tom and John McGhie, Neil McIntyre, Peter Meadows, Roger Mear, Peter van der Merwe, William Mills, Sarah Newton, Greg Paterson-Jones, Lucia van der Post, Stephen Pritchard, Alan Rankin, Johnnie and Jacquie Rathfelder, Mike, Gemma and Kate Rawle, Anne and Arthur Rivett, Gary Rolfe, Juan and Daniel Romero, Frances Savić, Shirley Sawtell, Michael

Scott, Sergey Shevchenko, Michael Smith, Geoff Somers, Vernon Squire, Robert Stephenson, Mike Stroud, Robert Swan, Mike Tarver, Gordon Thomas, David Vaughan, Peter Wadhams, Mary Wakefield, Godfrey Waller, Graham Ward, Gritta Weil, Rolf Williams, Clive Woodman, Joanna Wright, Sian Wynn-Jones, Wayland Young and, finally, to my wife Ginny for putting up with everything when the book took over.

None of the above named necessarily support or agree with any of this book's text.

Every reasonable effort has been made to acknowledge the ownership of the copyrighted material included in this volume. Any errors that may have occurred are inadvertent, and will be corrected in subsequent editions provided notification is sent to the author. All attempts at tracing the copyright holder of *Scott of the Antarctic* by Elspeth Huxley and *Scott of the Antarctic* by Reginald Pound published by Weidenfeld & Nicolson were unsuccessful.

Picture Acknowledgments

Courtesy Antarctic Meteorological Research Center, Space Science and Engineering Center, University of Wisconsin-Madison: 23 (satellite image of the calving of icebergs in May 2000). © Corbis: 40 photo Ann Hawthorne. © Ranulph Fiennes: 25, 28, 32. © Howell, Fiennes, Stroud: 30. © Hulton Archive/Getty Images: 1. © National Maritime Museum, London: 26. © Royal Geographical Society: 2–22, 24, 27, 29, 34–39. Courtesy David M. Wilson: 33.

Bibliography

Aldington, Richard, *Lawrence of Arabia*, Collins, 1955

Aldridge, Don, *Rescue of Captain Scott*, Tuckwell Press, 1999

Alexander, C., *The Endurance*, Alfred A. Knopf, 1999

Amundsen, R., ed. R. Huntford, *The Amundsen Photographs*, Hodder & Stoughton, 1987

Anderson, V., *The Last of the Eccentrics*, Hodder & Stoughton, 1972

Armitage, Albert B., *Cadet to Commodore*, Cassell, 1925

Armitage, Albert B., *Two Years in the Antarctic*, Bluntisham Books, 1984

Bainbridge, Beryl, *The Birthday Boys*, Duckworth, 1991

Baughman, T. H., *Pilgrims on the Ice*, University of Nebraska Press, 1999

Bernacchi, L. C., *Saga of the "Discovery"*, Blackie & Son, 1928

Bernacchi, L. C., *To the South Polar Regions*, Hurst & Blackett, 1901

Bickel, Lennard, *Shackleton's Forgotten Men*, Thunder's Mouth Press, 2000

Bickel, Lennard, *Mawson's Will*, Stein & Day, 1977

Bowman, Gerald, *From Scott to Fuchs*, Evans Brothers, 1958

Brent, Peter, *Captain Scott and the Antarctic Tragedy*, Weidenfeld & Nicolson, 1974

Cameron, Ian, *Antarctica: The Last Continent*, Cassell, 1974

Cherry-Garrard, Apsley, *The Worst Journey in the World* (first pub. 1922), Chatto & Windus, 1951, Picador, 1994

Crawford, Fred D., *Richard Aldington and Lawrence of Arabia*, Southern Illinois University Press, 1998

Debenham, Frank, *In The Antarctic*, John Murray, 1952
Debenham, Frank, ed. June D. Back, *The Quiet Land*, Bluntisham Books, 1992
Dowswell, Paul, *True Polar Adventures*, Usborne, 2002
Dunnett, H. M., *Shackleton's Boat*, Neville & Harding, 1996

Evans, Edward (Mountevans), *South with Scott*, William Collins, 1952
Evans, Edward (Mountevans), *The Antarctic Challenged*, Staples Press, 1955

Feeney, Robert E., *Polar Journeys*, University of Alaska Press, 1997
Fiennes, Ranulph, *Mind over Matter*, Sinclair-Stevenson, 1993
Fiennes, Ranulph, *Hell on Ice*, Hodder & Stoughton, 1979
Fiennes, Ranulph, *To the Ends of the Earth*, Hodder & Stoughton, 1984
Fisher, M. & J., *Shackleton*, Barrie Books, 1957
Fuchs, Sir Vivian, *Of Ice and Men*, Anthony Nelson, 1982

Ganeri, Anita, *Perishing Poles*, Scholastic, 2002
Godsell, Philip H., *Arctic Trader*, Robert Hale, 1951
Gran, Tryggve, *The Norwegian with Scott* (first pub. 1915 in Norwegian), HMSO, 1984
Gran, Tryggve, *Kampen om Sydpolen* (50 Years Polar Remembrance), translated by Gordon Thomas, 1961
Griffiths, Trevor, *Judgement over the Dead*, Verso, 1986
Gwynn, Stephen, *Captain Scott*, Bodley Head, 1929

Hanssen, Helmer, *Voyages of a Modern Viking*, George Routledge & Sons, 1936

Hayes, J. Gordon, *Antarctica*, Richards Press (first pub. 1928)
Hayes, J. Gordon, *The Conquest of the South Pole*, Keystone Library, 1936
Heacox, Kim, *Shackleton the Antarctic Challenge*, National Geographic, 1999
Herbert, Wally, *A World of Men*, Eyre & Spottiswoode, 1968
Holt, Kare, *The Race*, Michael Joseph, 1976
Huntford, Roland, *Scott and Amundsen*, Hodder & Stoughton, 1979
Huntford, Roland, *The Last Place on Earth*, Atheneum, New York, 1986
Huntford, Roland, *Shackleton*, Atheneum, New York, 1986
Huntford, Roland, *The New Totalitarians*, Allen Lane, the Penguin Press, 1971
Huntford, Roland, *Nansen*, Duckworth, 1998
Huntford, Roland, ed., *The Sayings of Henrik Ibsen*, Duckworth, 1996
Huxley, Elspeth, *Scott of the Antarctic*, Pan Books, 1979
Huxley, Elspeth, *Peter Scott*, Faber & Faber, 1993

Jones, A. G. E., *Antarctica Observed*, Caedmon of Whitby, 1982
Jones, A. G. E., *Polar Portraits*, Caedmon of Whitby, 1992

Keir, David, *The Bowring Story*, Bodley Head, 1962
King, Peter, ed., *Scott's Last Journey*, HarperCollins, 1999

Lagerbom, C. H., *The Fifth Man – Henry R Bowers*, Caedmon of Whitby, 1999
Lambert, Katherine, '*Hell with a Capital H*', Pimlico, 2002
Lansing, Alfred, *Endurance*, Hodder & Stoughton, 1961
Lashly, William, ed. Ellis, *Under Scott's Command*, Victor Gollancz, 1969
Law, Phillip, *Antarctic Odyssey*, Heinemann, 1983
Limb, Sue, and Cordingley, Patrick, *Captain Oates: Soldier and Explorer*, Leo Cooper, 1982

Lopez, Barry, *Arctic Dreams*, Macmillan, 1986
Ludlam, Harry, *Captain Scott*, Foulsham, 1965

Markham, C., *Antarctic Obsession*, Bluntisham Books, 1986
Markham, C., *The Lands of Silence*, Cambridge University Press, 1921
Mawson, ed. F. and E. Jacka, *Antarctic Diaries*, Unwin, 1988
Mear, Roger and Swan, Robert, *In the Footsteps of Scott*, Jonathan Cape, 1987
Mill, H. R., *The Life of Sir Ernest Shackleton*, William Heinemann, 1924
Mill, H. R., *Siege of the South Pole*, Alston Rivers, 1905
Mills, Leif, *Frank Wild*, Caedmon of Whitby, 1999

Nansen, Fridtjof, *Farthest North*, Tandem, 1975
National Maritime Museum, *South, the Race to the Pole*, Cambridge University Press, 2000
Neider, Charles, *Edge of the World*, Cooper Square Press, 2001
Niven, Jennifer, *The Ice Master*, Macmillan, 2000
Norman, Andrew, *T E Lawrence, Unravelling the Enigma*, Central Publishing, 2001

Paxman, Jeremy, *The English*, Penguin, 1999
Ponting, Herbert, *The Great White South*, Duckworth, 1950
Pound, Reginald, *Scott of the Antarctic*, World Books, 1968
Preston, Diana, *A First Rate Tragedy*, Houghton Mifflin, New York, 1999

Riffenburgh, Beau, *The Myth of the Explorer*, Belhaven Press, 1993
Rose, Jonathan, *The Edwardian Temperament*, Ohio University Press, 1986
Royds, Charles, *Diary*, T. Roger Royds, 2001

Savours, Ann, ed., *Scott's Last Voyage*, Book Club Associates, 1975
Savours, Ann, *The Voyages of the Discovery*, Virgin Books, 1992
Scott, Robert Falcon, *Scott's Last Expedition* (Personal Journals), Universal-Tandem, 1973
Scott, Robert Falcon, *Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vols I and II, Smith Elder, 1905
Seaver, George, *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic*, John Murray, 1947
Seaver, George, *Edward Wilson of the Antarctic*, John Murray, 1950
Seaver, George, *Scott of the Antarctic*, John Murray, 1940
Shackleton, Ernest, *The Heart of the Antarctic*, Heinemann, 1932
Sheffield, Gary, *Forgotten Victory*, Headline, 2002
Simpson-Housley, Paul, *Antarctica*, Routledge, 1992
Smith, Michael, *An Unsung Hero Tom Crean*, Collins Press, 2000
Smith, Michael, *I Am Just Going Outside*, Spellmount, 2002
Solomon, Susan, *The Coldest March*, Yale University Press, 2001
Spufford, Francis, *I May Be Some Time*, Faber & Faber, 1996
Stewart, Douglas, *The Fire on the Snow* (radio play), Angus & Robertson, 1958
Strachey, Lytton, *Eminent Victorians*, Penguin, 1986
Stroud, Mike, *Shadows on the Wasteland*, Jonathan Cape, 1993
Stroud, Mike, *Survival of the Fittest*, Jonathan Cape, 1998
Swithinbank, Charles, *An Alien in Antarctica*, 1997

Taylor, Griffith, *With Scott: The Silver Lining*, Smith, Elder, 1997
Thomson, David, *Scott's Men*, Allen Lane, 1977

Wheeler, Sara, *Terra Incognita*, Jonathan Cape, 1996
Wheeler, Sara, *Cherry*, Jonathan Cape, 2001

Wilson, Edward, ed. Ann Savours, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition, 1901–4*, Blandford Press, 1975
Wilson, Edward, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition, 1910–12*, Blandford Press, 1972
Wilson, D. M. and Elder, D. B., *Cheltenham in Antarctica*, Reardon Publishing, 2000
Worden, Blair, *Roundhead Reputations*, Allen Lane, 2001
Worsley, Frank A., *Shackleton's Boat Journey*, Folio Society, 1975
Worsley, Frank A., *Endurance*, W. W. Norton, 1999
Wright, Charles S., *Silas*, Ohio State University Press, 1993

Yelverton, David E., *Antarctica Unveiled*, University Press of Colorado, 2000
Young, Louisa, *A Great Task of Happiness*, Macmillan, 1995

Notes on the Sources

SPRI – Scott Polar Research Institute
BAS – British Antarctic Survey
RGS – Royal Geographical Society

Oates's letters to his mother, Caroline Oates, are kept at SPRI, MS 1317.
Bowers' letters to his mother, Emily Bowers, are kept at SPRI, MS 1505.
Kathleen Scott's diaries are kept at the Cambridge University Library.
R.F. Scott's diary is at the British Museum, but SPRI have it on microfilm.
Most newspaper cuttings have been obtained from SPRI and BAS.

Where only an author's name is quoted the title of their book is detailed in the bibliography.

Chapter One: *Markham's Grand Design* [pp. 1–13]

1. 'I dislike Scott intensely', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, 11/28.10.1911
1. 'I am Captain Scott's man', Bowers, letter to Emily Bowers, 1.11.1911
1. 'he is one of the best', Bowers, December 1910, as quoted in Cherry-Garrard, p. 55
1. 'The Captain is a splendid leader', Bowers, letter to Emily Bowers, 27.10.1910

1. 'There is nothing', Seaver, *Edward Wilson of the Antarctic*, p. 266
1. 'He is thoughtful', Seaver, p. 84
1. 'I have known him now', Cherry-Garrard, p. lix
3. 'To have been born English', Paxman, p. 66
3. 'we happen to be', ibid, p. 66
3. 'Ask any man', ibid, p. 1
4. 'Should anyone possess', Preston, p. 11
7. 'dragged like ploughs', Mackinnon, C.S., *The British Man-hauled Sledging Tradition*, Dept. of History, University of Alaska
7. 'There will never be any more', ibid
12. 'the very best man', Pound, p. 19
13. 'I was much struck', Markham, *The Lands of Silence*, pp. 447–8

Chapter Two: *Torpedo Lieutenant Scott* [pp. 15 26]

15. 'we frequently robbed orchards', Munday, R., letter to Peter Scott, 4.6.1943, Scott family papers
16. 'His temper never lasted', Ludlam, p. 13
18. 'zealous and painstaking' and 'promising', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 25
18. 'intelligent and capable', ibid, p. 26
20. 'this slow sickness', Scott, diary entry between December 1889 and April 1890
20. 'a young officer of promise', Gwynn, p. 15
20. 'his romantic nature', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 31
21. 'on a bitter March morning', Pound, p. 20
21. 'precisely in the same position', Ludlam, p. 22
21. 'At present', Scott, letter to Kathleen O'Reilly, 3.8.1899, Provincial Archives, Victoria, B.C.
22. 'I was more than ever impressed', Markham, *The Lands of Silence*, p. 447
22. 'He is just the fellow', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 36
24. 'I was just sitting down', Markham, *Antarctic Obsession*, p. 13

24. 'had no urge', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 37
25. 'I felt that the', 'I have to feel', 'I undertook the expedition', Fiennes, *Mind over Matter*, pp. 24–6
26. 'relinquishing', Pound, p. 30
26. 'I have my eye on', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 52

Chapter Three: *Order Out of Chaos* [pp. 27–41]

28. 'wild professors' and 'howling cads', Markham, diary entries, February and March 1901, RGS Archives. CRM 1/14
29. 'I must have', Markham, *Antarctic Obsession*, p. 14
30. 'and we were friends' and 'if anyone, could bring', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 55
31. 'always followed in Arctic exploration', Markham, speech at the launch of *Discovery*, reported in *Dundee Advertiser*, 22.3.1901
31. 'The main object', Markham, *The Lands of Silence*, p. 452
32. 'England has not maintained' and 'it is abroad', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. I, p. 409
34. 'performed their contract' etc., Skelton, SPRI, MS 342/1 1
35. 'From a very early date', Lashly, p. 13
35. Wright, Charles, 'With Scott in Antarctica', *The Canadian Magazine*, 1974
37. 'I went to see Scott', Armitage, *Cadet to Commodore*, p. 130

Chapter Four: *Through the Pack Ice 1901–1902* [pp. 42–51]

44. 'Murray is excellent', report of the Ship Sub-Committee, 29.11.1899. RGS Archives AA 5/2/19
44. 'Goodbye old chap', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 71
44. 'With his quick brain', Bernacchi, *Saga of the 'Discovery'*, p. 212
46. 'all but his temper', Pound, p. 49
46. 'bad-tempered', ibid, p. 49
46. 'He is very definite' and 'no fear', ibid, p. 50
46. 'and made a very poor job', 'He said that at my age', and 'He was going to add sugar', ibid, p.55

47. 'These "brown studies" ', Bernacchi, *Saga of the 'Discovery'*, p. 211
47. 'his sense of right', ibid, p. 212
47. 'One of his weaknesses', ibid, p. 211
47. 'affected him quickly', ibid, p. 211
49. 'I had anticipated', Scott, RGS, AA 12/1/13: 11.28.1901, p. 10
49. 'as big a sea', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 26.11.1901, p. 81
49. 'there has been a great deal of fighting', SPRI, 342 1 1: 12.3.1901

Chapter Five: *Nudging the Great Barrier 1902* [pp. 52–61]

54. 'He was near a ton in weight', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 1.7.1902
54. 'we came thoroughly to enjoy', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. I, p. 131
55. 'There was a . . . heavy swell', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 22.1.1902, p. 105
55. 'The exploring party reported', SPRI 972· 1.20.1902
58. 'an exceedingly dangerous', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 4.2.1902, p. 111
59. 'At this time', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. I, p. 202
59. 'but necessities are often hideous', Seaver, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 49
62. 'eyes are turned towards', Scott, *Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. I, p. 213

Chapter Six: *Dogs, Skis and Men* [pp. 62–72]

62. 'a wretched specimen', Scott, *Diaries*, 10.2.1902, SPRI MS 352/1/2 *Diaries*
64. 'The ski boots', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 19.2.2002, p. 116

65. 'Do not even attempt', Herbert, Wally, letter to R. Fiennes, 2.5.1976
66. 'It was undeniable cruelty', Neider, p. 91
66. 'a combination of horses and dogs', Gran, *50 Years Polar Remembrance*
66. 'In recent times', Geoff Somers, letter to R. Fiennes, 2002
67. 'Polar exploration without ski', Sverdrup, Otto, *Nyt Land*, H. Aschenhough & Co., 1903, Vol. I, pp. 19/20
68. 'We have been trying', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. II, p. 88
68. 'Another thing', ibid, p. 88
69. 'I am bound to confess', ibid, Vol. I, p. 229
72. 'Thank God', Yelverton, p. 134

Chapter Seven: *The First Winter* [pp. 73–87]

74. 'everything was wrong', Scott, *Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. I, p. 273
74. 'That we were eventually able', ibid, p. 273
76. 'Men don't improve', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 13.8.1902, p. 171
77. 'helped to preserve an atmosphere' and 'of infinite benefit', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 101
77. 'You can see nothing', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 18.7.1902, p. 163
77. 'The Skipper is endlessly', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 103
79. 'We are not all angels', SPRI, 972: 8.24.1902
79. 'we are treated', Baughman, p. 134
79. 'the Captain was quite', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 101
80. 'These little troubles', SPRI, 753: 5.31.1902
84. 'We will go', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 12.6.1902, p. 151
85. 'I am inclined', Scott, *The Voyage of the Discovery*, Vol. I, p. 515
85. 'when one thinks', SPRI, 654/1: 9.26.1902

86. 'None of them were', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 3.10.1902, p. 195

Chapter Eight: *The Southern Journey 1902–1903* [pp. 88–108]

90. 'Should I not return', Armitage, *Two Years in the Antarctic*, p. 144
90. 'Shackle started', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 6.11.1902, p. 212
90. 'Confident in ourselves', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. II, p. 23
91. 'Shackleton in front', ibid, p. 33
91. 'the most eerie sound', Griffith Taylor, 'How I survived the Scott ordeal', *Cavalier magazine*, 1961, SPRI
93. 'Today I have been trying', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. II, p. 54
93. 'well in hand', Wilson, *Cheltenham in Antarctica*, p. 66
93. 'The amount of shouting', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 30.11.1902, p. 220
93. 'The coast we are making for', ibid, 27.11.1902, p. 218
93. 'Snow grains falling', ibid, 1.12.1902, p. 220
93. 'in preparing our hot stuff', ibid, 2.12.1902, p. 220
94. 'Our hunger is very', ibid, 18.12.1902, p. 226
94. 'We have decided now', ibid, 19.12.1902, p. 226
95. 'It is a moral cowardice', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. II, p. 92
95. 'Poor Wilson has had', ibid, p. 73
97. 'We argued, however', ibid, p. 73
97. 'we have had the unlooked', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 28.12.1902, p. 229
97. 'luckily it all remained', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. II, p. 84
99. 'I sprang up', ibid, p. 99
99. 'I think we could all have wept', ibid, p. 104

100. 'Shortly after their return', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 134
100. 'During the winter, Wilson', ibid, p. 134
101. 'Armitage is a peculiar chap', Skelton, *'Discovery' Journal*, 11.9.1902, SPRI
101. 'I think Armitage's character', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p.137
101. 'All the crocks I', ibid, p. 137
101. 'On January 15 I broke down', Fisher, p. 79
102. 'I say Shackles, how', Preston, *A First Rate Tragedy*, p. 68
102. 'had it out with Scott', Seaver, *Edward Wilson of the Antarctic*, p. 114
103. 'The Captain and I', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 23.1.1903.
103. 'during these three months', Gwynn, p. 70
104. 'the relief ship, *Morning*', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 3.2.1903, p. 244
104. 'I turned in', Mill, *The Life of Sir Ernest Shackleton*, p. 79
104. 'we had plodded with', *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. II, p. 125
107. 'Mr Shackleton's breakdown', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 133
107. 'I hear it is true', ibid, p. 134
107. 'It is with great reluctance', Scott, certificate for E.H. Shackleton, RGS
108. 'Fortunately my appointment', Armitage, *Cadet to Commodore*, p. 131
108. 'Mr E.H. Shackleton', Pound, p. 89
108. 'we went on very slowly', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 134

Chapter Nine: *Lost on the Plateau 1903–1904* [pp. 109–32]

112. 'in my opinion his', Royds, diary, 30.5.1903, p. 252
112. 'Armitage applied to', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 18.7.1903, p. 271

113. 'My appointment', Armitage, *Cadet to Commodore*, p. 131
114. 'I was told', ibid, p. 133
114. 'I received valuable assistance', ibid, p. 157
114. 'did not allow the matter', ibid, p. 155
115. 'Two years now since', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 16.7.1903, p. 271
115. 'Hundreds of thousands', ibid, 29.4.1903, p. 256
116. 'On looking at her', ibid, 15.8.1903, p. 282
116. 'Every Tuesday for dinner', ibid, 1.9.1903. p. 287
117. 'I can imagine nothing', ibid, 7.9.1903, p. 289
118. 'If he can do it', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 163
118. 'The gravity of this loss', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. II, pp. 239–40
119. 'a rule of thumb', ibid, p. 274
119. 'the prospect which lay', ibid, p. 253
121. 'We all know each other', Yelverton, p. 264
121. 'The worst time for', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. I, pp. 473–4
121. 'the sledges have grown', ibid, p. 474
122. 'There must be no', ibid, p. 475
122. 'Once the hoosh', ibid, pp. 479–81
123. 'It is very trying work', ibid, pp. 488–9
124. 'With these two men', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. II, p. 259
125. 'Half an hour before', ibid, pp. 280–1
126. 'Well, I'm blowed', ibid, p. 285
126. 'It is certainly', ibid, p. 293
126. 'What a splendid', ibid, p. 290
127. 'Few dog parties', SPRI, *Polar Record*, Vol. V 37/38, 1949, p. 316
127. 'He takes the cake', Royds, letter to P. Aldrich, 12.2.1903, MS 582/1–2: D
127. 'Few of our camping', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. II, p. 265
127. 'no class of men', Preston, p. 73

127. 'any sort of', Savours, *The Voyages of the Discovery*, p. 86
130. 'I feel more disgusted', Ludlam, p. 91
130. 'the utterly unnecessary', Scott, letter to Admiral Sir Arthur Moore, 1904, SPRI MS475/3/1 2: D
130. 'A glorious sight met', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. II, p. 347
131. 'Scott was terribly excited', Preston, pp. 78–9
131. 'About lunch time', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Discovery' Expedition*, 17.2.1904, p. 340
131. 'Mulock was on watch', ibid, p. 340

Chapter Ten: *A Promise Broken* [pp. 135–63]

133. 'My dear Captain Scott', Yelverton, p. 326
134. 'a very jolly evening', Markham, diary entry, 15.9.1904, reported in the *Geographical Journal* 24/4: Oct 1904, RGS, p. 384
134. 'felt they could do anything', *Geographical Journal*, 24/4· Oct. 1904, p. 384, SPRI
134. 'The inference is', Fisher, p. 69
136. 'I want to marry you', Young, p. 88
137. 'I suppose the world does', ibid, p. 241
137. 'He may be a genius', ibid, p. 241
139. 'My Dear Shackleton', Scott, letter to Shackleton, SPRI, 1456/23/1: 2.18.1907
140. 'I feel sure with', ibid
140. 'I don't want to be', Scott, letter to Shackleton, SPRI, 1456/23 2: 2.18.1907
141. 'I think you ought', SPRI 1456/26: 2.28.1907
141. 'I had always a wish', letter from Shackleton to Sir Clements Markham, 8.3.1907, SPRI MS 22: D
142. 'the sacrifice you are making', SPRI 1456 23/4: 3.26.1907. The date 26 March on this was probably a misprint for 16 March, as it is acknowledged in Shackleton's letter of 23 March
142. 'To make everything clear', SPRI MS 25: D, Shackleton's letter to Scott, 17.5.1907

142. 'with him [Scott]', Preston, p. 222
144. 'he hasn't got the guts', Marshall, diary, 24.1.1908, RGS
144. 'I have been through', Shackleton, letter to his wife, 26.1.1908
145. 'There can be no doubt', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 187
145. 'it is my intention', R. Amundsen, letter to F. Nansen 22.8.1910 (author's italics)
146. 'for a time Shackleton', Mawson, letter to Margery Fisher, 1956
146. 'I am very, very busy', Pound, p. 148
146. 'this comprehensive and important', Bernacchi, *Saga of the 'Discovery'*, p. 114
149. 'confusedly and insecurely', Preston, p. 100
149. 'we grow to better understanding', Scott, letter to Kathleen Scott, 1.11.1908
149. 'he was full of enthusiasm', Scott, letter to Kathleen Scott, 28.11.1908
149. 'I'm obstinate, despondent', Scott, letter to Kathleen Scott, as quoted in Young, p. 104
150. 'laziness, untidiness, touchiness', Preston, p. 100
150. '"I think", he said,' Huxley, p. 215
150. 'unqualified congratulations on', Ludlam, p. 123
151. 'Bravo!', ibid, p. 124
151. 'I never saw anyone', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, pp. 216–17
152. 'In the immediate future', Ludlam, p. 124
153. 'A general feeling of relief', Marshall's diary entry for 12.8.1908, Mills, p. 68
154. 'I thought you would like', Mills, *The Life of Sir Ernest Shackleton, p.159*
155. 'The English nation', R. Amundsen, letter to J. Scott Keltie, 25.3.1909, RGS
158. 'There was not room', Ludlam, p. 125
159. 'write or speak to him', R.F. Scott, letter to Skelton, 21.3.1910, SPRI MS 342/28/65
160. 'entirely friendly', Ludlam, p. 134
160. 'the race', ibid, p. 135
160. 'The main objective', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 218

161. '£40,000 is needed', *The Times*, 13.9.1909
161. 'It's no good talking', Pound, p. 179

Chapter Eleven: *The Race Begins 1910* [pp. 165 192]

164. 'She was the largest', Preston, p. 114
164. 'I shall never forget', Evans, *South with Scott*, p. 6
166. 'There is no real reason', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 230
166. 'Shackleton was five weeks', Taylor, p. 241
168. 'no happiness but', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 29.8.1911, p. 309
168. 'We got sick of each other', Pound, p. 243
169. 'I am very disappointed', Simpson, letter to Professor Schuster, SPRI 1122/1/2: 1.11.1901
169. '"Simpson", wrote Wilson', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 5.7.1910, p. 18
169. 'One thing which never fails', Thomson, p. 149
169. 'I did not like Dr Wilson', Mawson, p. 53
170. 'spends all his time', Thomson, p. 151
171. 'If only they will leave', Seaver, *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic*, p. 111
171. 'a fat little man', Preston, p. 108
171. 'What a silly', Evans, *South with Scott*, p.8
172. 'a man with brains', Smith, *I Am Just Going Outside*, p. 88
172. 'I told Scott I', *Daily Telegraph*, quoting Colonel Yardley of the Inniskilling Dragoons, 15.2.1913
172. 'The job is most suitable', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, January 1910
173. 'I'm Oates', Evans (later Lord Mountevans), 'My Recollections of a Gallant Comrade', *The Strand Magazine*, December 1913
173. 'we never for a moment', Limb and Cordingley, p. 95
175. 'We waited', Tryggve Gran, *Fra Tjuagutt til Sydpolfarer*, Ernst G. Mårtensen, p. 178
175. 'Could Scott have beaten', Gran, *50 Years Remembrance*, Forlag, 1974

175. 'a hurry and scurry', Gran, *Slik var Det*, Gyldenal Norst Forlag, 1945, p. 75
175. 'Dear Sir', Pound, p. 181
176. 'You shall go to', Kathleen Bruce, letter to R. F. Scott, quoted by Louisa Young, p. 98
176. 'a very very clever woman', Preston, p. 98
176. 'ready to strike', Pound, p. 184
176. 'He was not an alarmist', Ludlam, p. 133
177. 'If nothing is heard', Pound, p. 193
177. 'No one else', Preston, p. 123
178. 'The bunkers', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 29.6.1910, p. 16
178. 'the coal is now', ibid, 27.10.1910, p. 60
178. 'In this fashion', Solomon, p. 62
179. 'The Skipper has decided', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, 23.11.1910
179. 'He hits it off well', Seaver, *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic*, p. 161
179. Wright, 2.10.1910, p. 27
179. 'If the voyage', Gran, *The Norwegian with Scott*, pp. 13–14
180. 'Beg leave to inform you', Fram Museum, Oslo
180. 'The *Fram* goes direct', *Daily Mail*, 11.2.1913
180. 'While Captain Scott', Ludlam, p. 147
181. 'I do not belong', Amundsen, R., *Gjennem Luften til 88° Nord*, Gylkdendal Norsk Forlag, 1925, p. 20[illegible].
182. 'Unknown', Gran, *50 Years Polar Remembrance*
182. '[Amundsen] is going to', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 242
182. Wright, p. 35
182. 'so considerably altered', Pound, p. 202
183. 'Bloody Norskies', Oates, letter to William King, 13.11.1910
183. 'It will make us look', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, 23.11.1910
183. '[Amundsen's] proceedings', Thomson, p. 183
184. 'He is a good fellow', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 20.1.1911, p. 104
185. 'rather sickening', Smith, *I Am Just Going Outside*, p. 119

185. 'Meares is reluctant', Scott, *Personal Journals*, p. 4
186. 'Scott has been kicking up', Oates, diary, 23.11.1910
186. 'I have now ordered', ibid, 28.11.1910
186. 'Dear Mother', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, 17.11.1910
186. 'Oates was anxious', Seaver, *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic*, p. 164
187. 'Dear Mother, *the ponies*', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, 23.11.1910 (author's italics)
187. 'Victor . . . Narrow chest', Oates, diary, undated
188. 'From the first', Cherry-Garrard, *Annotated Journals*, 1910
189. 'a shallow man', Wheeler, *Cherry*, p. 79
189. 'Teddy Evans climbed down', Cherry-Garrard, *Annotated Journals*
189. 'Nobody likes her', Bowers to May Bowers, 28.11.1910, SPRI
189. 'Dear Mother, Mrs Scott', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, 23.11.1910
189. 'Evans' tantrums', Scott, Kathleen, diary, 29.11.1910
190. 'May it never be known', Bowers to Emily Bowers, 7.12.1910
190. 'anyone to see him sad', Young, p. 117
190. 'for tea in the stern', ibid, p. 117
190. 'personally I had a heart', Evans, *South with Scott*, pp. 29–30
190. 'If you could look down', Gwynn, pp. 170–1

Chapter Twelve: *Near Disaster 1911* [pp. 193–225]

192. 'wondering what the', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 1.12.1910, p. 65
192. 'risk nothing and do', Gwynn, p. 173
192. 'It makes me feel', Limb and Cordingley, p. 103
192. 'a full gale', Ponting, p. 14
193. 'I am afraid it's', Cherry-Garrard, p. 53
193. 'Seems a primitive', Debenham, *The Quiet Land*, 3.12.1910, p. 12
193. 'Thus were we driven', Taylor, p. 41
195. 'on the weather rail', Cherry-Garrard, p. 57

195. 'A dog was drowned', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 2.12.1910, p. 11
195. 'actually lifting', Evans, 'My Recollections of a Gallant Comrade', *The Strand Magazine*, December 1913
195. 'I was drenched', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, November 1910
195. 'Not a word', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 7.12.1910, p. 16
195. 'Scott himself working', Evans, *South with Scott*, p. 34
196. 'Captain Scott was', Gwynn, p. 173
197. 'I have never thought', Cherry-Garrard, *Journal*, 11.12.1910, SPRI
197. 'Dr Wilson then', Debenham, *The Quiet Land*, 15.12.1910, p. 26
198. 'is like a slug', ibid, 12.12.1910, p. 24
198. 'our patience was', Evans, *South with Scott*, p. 42
198. 'penguin stews and "hooshes"', ibid, p. 44
198. 'To Scott any delay', Limb and Cordingley, p. 105
198. 'I can imagine', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 30.12.1910, pp. 56–7
199. 'Huge icebergs crept', ibid, p. 57
199. 'It is rather a surprising', Scott, *Personal Journals*, p. 45
199. 'we three talked', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 7.12.1910, p. 15
199. 'their ignorance is colossal', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, 22.1.1911
200. 'Oates is unremitting', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 28.12.1910, p. 51
200. 'Talking to Capt. Scott', Debenham, *The Quiet Land*, p. 31
200. 'Comfortable quarters for', Scott, *Personal Journals*, p. 65
203. 'What the ice gets', F.A. Worsley, *Endurance*, p. 4
203. 'Indefinite conditions', Young, p. 105
203. Wright, p. 77
203. ibid, p. 77
203. 'Scott himself came', Cherry-Garrard, p. 104
204. 'between the way', Priestley, letter from Cape Adare, undated, SPRI
204. 'astonished', Smith, *I Am Just Going Outside*, p. 128
204. '"Oates", he wrote', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 7.1.1911, p. 80

204. 'a more unpromising lot', Oates, notes on the ponies, SPRI
204. 'might have proved', Smith, *I Am Just Going Outside*, p. 129
204. 'The dogs are getting', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 6.1.1911, p. 78
205. 'we found the old', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 27.1.1911, p. 99
205. 'Everyone declares that', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 6.1.1911, p. 78
206. 'any definite information', R. F. Scott to J. J. Kinsey, 22.1.1910, SPRI MS 701/8/13–34: D
209. 'I can't stand', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, 31.1.1911
209. 'would fifty times', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, 22.1.1911
210. 'If we had more', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 3.2.1911, p. 121
210. 'raging chaos', Cherry-Garrard, p. 116
210. 'Scott's tent was a', Preston, pp. 141–2
210. 'Fight your way', Cherry-Garrard, p. 116
210. 'all our ponies were', ibid, p. 116
211. 'It taught us the nature', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 14.2.1911, p. 133
211. 'The incident is deplorable', ibid, pp. 133–4
211. 'We are five', ibid, 13.2.1911, p. 132
212. 'Oates proposed to Scott', Gran, *Fra tjuagutt til sydpolarfarer [From kid to south polar explorer]*, 1974, Oslo, Ernst G. Mårtensens Forlag
212. 'It would have been', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 15.2.1911, p. 135
212. 'Oates is certainly', Smith, *I Am Just Going Outside*, p. 140
213. 'It was not expected', Cherry-Garrard, p.127
213. 'I was running', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 21.2.1911, p. 105
214. 'Scott told Meares', Cherry Garrard, *Annotated Journals*
214. 'I feel that a man', Cherry-Garrard, *Journal*, 12.1911
214. 'Up to this day', Cherry-Garrard, *Annotated Journals*
215. 'Well, if they are', Lambert, pp. 47–48
215. 'all seemed charming', Wilfred Bruce, letter to Kathleen Scott, quoted by Anderson, p. 203

216. 'Curses loud and deep', ibid, p. 203
216. 'heavy arguments . . .', ibid, p. 203
216. 'It is very unfortunate', Lambert, p. 50
216. Wright, p. 81
217. 'We must at all costs', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 262
218. 'Every incident', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 22.2.1911, p. 147
218. 'For an hour or so', Cherry-Garrard, p. 132
218. 'By Jove', Cherry-Garrard, *Annotated Journals*
218. 'Scott in the tent', ibid
219. 'We spent a very', Evans, *South with Scott*, p. 77
219. 'One thing only fixes', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 22.2.1911, p. 147
219. 'If you have a destination', Shaw to Norman, 4.10.1915, British Library, Add. MS. 50562, fols, pp. 92–93
219. 'As for Amundsen's', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 22.2.1911, p. 107
220. 'was so genuinely upset', Bowers, diary letter undated, SPRI
220. 'If we reach the Pole', Gran, *The Norwegian with Scott*, p. 63
220. 'I think Amundsen's enterprise', Gran, *50 Years Polar Remembrance*
220. 'Now every effort', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 1.3.1911, p. 150
223. 'The plan was', ibid, 28.2.1911, p. 150
223. 'Meares and I', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 28.2.1911, p. 108
223. 'My orders were', Cherry-Garrard, p. 142
223. 'misunderstood their orders', ibid, p. 142
223. 'Crean . . . who had', ibid, p. 142
223. 'Crean drank his', Pound, p. 232
224. 'It was 2 pm', Cherry-Garrard, pp. 143–4
224. 'At 5 a.m. I woke', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 28.2.1911, p. 110

Chapter Thirteen: *The Worst Journey 1911* [pp. 226–61]

226. 'After some hours', Cherry-Garrard, pp. 145–6
227. 'I sent a note', ibid, p. 146
227. 'Oh I just kept going', SPRI, Polar Record, 3 (17): 78–79 (1939)
227. 'The Killers were too interested', Cherry-Garrard, p. 147
228. 'Scott . . . was too relieved', ibid, p. 148
228. 'Captain Scott was so pleased', ibid, pp. 148 9
229. 'While supper', ibid, p. 149
229. 'The hardest jump', ibid, pp.150–2
231. 'there was an open', ibid, pp. 160–1
231. 'Six hours earlier', Bowers, diary letter, undated, SPRI
231. 'no one in the world', Cherry-Garrard, Chatto & Windus, p. 582
232. 'We lost 6 ponies', Limb and Cordingley, p. 120
232. 'Our party is split up', Gran, *The Norwegian with Scott*, 1.3.1911, p. 64
232. 'Scott was the one', ibid, p. 68
232. 'Inside it is dark', ibid, p. 68
232. 'The way thoughts', Wilson, *Cheltenham in Antarctica*, p. 88
232. "We spent . . . our evenings", Cherry-Garrard, p. 164
232. 'Scott and Wilson', ibid, pp. 166–7
233. 'I am very disappointed', Debenham, *The Quiet Land*, pp. 124 5
233. 'I was closer to Scott', Griffith Taylor, 'How I survived the Scott ordeal' *Cavalier Magazine*, 1961, SPRI
233. 'This life . . . is quite interesting', Gran, *The Norwegian with Scott*, p. 73
233. 'Some of our party', Evans, 'My Recollections of a Gallant Comrade', *Strand Magazine*, December 1913
233. 'We wonder what', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 5.3.1911, p. 115
233. 'On top of all', Cherry-Garrard, p. 163
234. 'In choosing the site', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 13.4.1911, p. 178
235. 'Here we have come', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 13.4.1911, p. 121

235. 'a male, very fat', ibid, 3.4.1911, p. 119
236. 'It was a good piece of work', Evans, *South with Scott*, p. 92
236. 'We gladly started off', ibid, p. 93
236. 'it seemed folly', Pound, p. 237
236. 'the snow hid everything', Cherry-Garrard, p. 175
237. 'If ever there was', Griffith Taylor, 'How I survived the Scott ordeal', *Cavalier Magazine*, 1961, SPRI
237. 'Opinions were varied', Debenham, *The Quiet Land*, p. 92
237. 'to ensure Taylor's safety', Cherry-Garrard, p. 176
237. 'truly awful', Gran, *The Norwegian with Scott*, p. 76
237. 'I roused the party', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 13.4.1911, p. 176
237. 'We reached some stranded icebergs', Gran, *The Norwegian with Scott*, p. 78
240. 'Our expedition to', Gran, *50 Years Polar Remembrance*
240. 'The presentation was followed', Gran, ibid
241. Wright, p. 138
241. 'the cab-horse', Limb and Cordingley, p.129
242. 'disgusted', Smith, *I Am Just Going Outside*, p. 157
242. 'no love lost', ibid, p. 158
244. 'From what I see', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, 24/31.10.1911
244. 'Myself, I dislike', ibid, 24/31.11.1911
244. 'having a "first class" ', Smith, *I Am Just Going Outside*, p. 133
244. 'please remember that when a man', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, 24/31.10.1911
244. 'think from what I say that Scott', ibid, 22.1.1911
245. 'Meares is excellent to a point', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 22.02.1911
245. 'the genius of', Debenham, 'Scott 1912 – An Expedition in Harmony', *Geographical Magazine*, 1962
245. 'We got on very well', Limb and Cordingley, p. 127
245. 'Priestley and I', Lambert, p.79
246. 'I feel rather a beast', ibid, p.79
246. 'Nothing is so important', Fiennes, *Mind over Matter*, p. 231
246. 'It was made clear', ibid, p. 234
247. 'Meares is the wanderer', Debenham, *The Quiet Land*, p. 126

247. 'It was interesting', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 22.5.1911, p. 130
247. 'The old bull lay', Lambert, p. 37
248. 'But indeed the whole time', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 20.1.1911, p. 103
248. 'The ski bindings', Gran, *50 Years Polar Remembrance*
249. 'We were using', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 27.6.1911, p. 141
249. 'Scott was playing', Taylor, p. 236
250. 'If you felt', Cherry-Garrard, p. 199
250. 'Scott, who always', ibid, pp. 204–5
251. 'If then I say', ibid, p. 230
251. 'We are, with', Debenham, *The Quiet Land*, p. 127
251. 'Captain Oates', ibid, p. 41
252. 'He worries me', Pound, p. 236
252. 'Scott was a man', Gran, 'With Scott's Last Expedition', *Observer Magazine*, 31.3.1974
253. 'The thought of', Sverre Hassel, diary, 13.8.1911, University Library, Oslo
254. 'He also impressed upon', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 25.6.1911, p. 136
254. 'the biggest scientific', Wilson, *Cheltenham in Antarctica*, p. 89
255. 'Another new departure', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 20.6.1911, p. 252
255. 'This winter travel', ibid, 27.6.1911, p. 262
257. 'They are the best', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 27.6.1911, p. 142
257. 'Antarctic exploration is', Cherry-Garrard, p. 304
258. 'I for one', ibid, p. 242
259. 'Wilson is very thin', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 2.8.1911, p. 283
260. 'It was all', Cherry-Garrard, p. 315
260. 'Everyone was out', Debenham, *The Quiet Land*, p. 117
260. 'suddenly there was', Gran, *The Norwegian with Scott*, p. 208
261. 'I am fully alive', Pound, pp. 55–6

Chapter Fourteen: *The Dangerous Glacier* [pp. 262–94]

262. '[The] utmost thing on his', Gran, *50 Years Polar Remembrance*
262. 'If you people want to suffer', Gran, *The Norwegian with Scott*, 6.9.1911, p. 122
263. 'I never met such', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 279
263. 'a remarkably pleasant and instructive', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 1.10.1911, p. 320
263. 'At the breakfast table', Amundsen, diary, 17.9.1911, University Library, Oslo
264. 'The whole journey there', Debenham, *The Quiet Land*, pp. 102–3
265. 'I don't know whether it is possible for men', ibid, p. 104
266. 'I do not believe', Cherry-Garrard, p. 595
268. 'It is trying', Pound, p. 254
268. 'Rather a horrid day today', Young, p. 134
268. 'Hooper accompanied Lashly's car', Evans, *South with Scott*, p. 166
269. 'the motors advanced the necessaries', ibid, p. 173
269. 'No praise could be too great', Ponting, p. 266
269. 'Knowing in what respects', ibid, p. 266
269. 'The general design seemed', Cherry-Garrard, p. 332
270. 'You're young', Gran, 'With Scott's Last Expedition', *Observer Magazine*, 31.3.1974
272. 'While the sun is shining', Seaver, *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic*, p. 233
272. 'The weather was about', ibid, p. 232
272. 'It is curious', Cherry-Garrard, p. 349
272. 'When eating snow he', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 10.8.1911, p. 294
273. 'It is satisfactory', Scott, diary, 5.11.1911
273. 'Scott told me today', Oates, diary, November 1911
273. 'The Soldier thinks', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 12–13.11.1911, p. 361
273. 'if only these wretched old cripples', Oates, diary, 12.11.1911

274. 'Scott realises now', Oates, diary, 18.11.1911
275. 'Just a note from the Barrier', Scott, letter to Kathleen Scott, 24.11.1911
275. 'ponies doing fairly well', Cherry-Garrard, *Annotated Journal*
276. 'Meares ... has just come up', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 25.11.1911, p. 369
276. Wright, p. 201
276. 'A year's care', Cherry-Garrard, p. 346
276. 'He was a game little devil', Oates, diary, 28.11.1911
276. 'Altogether things look', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 29.11.1911, p. 374
276. Wright, p. 203
277. 'everything looks well', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 2.12.1911, p. 376
278. 'There is no doubt', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 1.12.1911, p. 375
278. '[Victor] did a splendid march', Cherry Garrard, p. 351
278. Wright, p. 203
278. 'It was important', Cherry-Garrard, p. 350
279. 'real humdingers at *that* time', Susan Solomon, e-mail to R. Fiennes
279. 'The pony wall blew down', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 3.12.1911, pp. 376–7
279. 'What on earth does such weather', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 5.12.1911, p. 379
279. 'I think we shall get', Oates, diary, 29.11.1911, p. 146
279. 'Another blizzard started, which tore', Evans, *South with Scott*, p. 184
280. 'I think it would be fairer', ibid, p. 186 (author's italics)
281. 'There was not one man', Cherry-Garrard, p. 361
281. 'The horses could hardly move', ibid, p. 360
282. 'We lay down on our stomachs', Shackleton, p. 185
282. 'A wet, warm blizzard of such', Solomon, p. 178
283. 'Well! I congratulate you', Cherry Garrard, p. 362
283. Wright, p. 235

286. 'Couldn't have gone', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 12.12.1911, p. 217
286. 'The starting was worse', Cherry-Garrard, p. 367
286. 'I have never seen', Seaver, *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic*, p. 242
286. 'our tea leaves', Cherry-Garrard, p. 367
287. 'been enduring the pains', ibid, pp. 366–7
288. 'Evans' party could not', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 10.12.1911, p. 386
289. 'Captain Scott got fairly wound up', Bowers, diary, 25.12.1911
289. 'Scott fairly legged it', Cherry-Garrard, pp. 179–80
289. 'one gets down to bedrock', Bowers, quoted in Pound, p. 268
289. 'Wright wanted to push', Cherry-Garrard, *Annotated Journal*
290. 'Scott will be here sooner or later', Ludlam, p. 190
291. 'Of course, we had Shackleton's', Evans, *South with Scott*, p. 195
291. 'and this latitude', Mills, p. 80
291. 'Our lips are very sore', King, 17.12.1911, p. 141
291. Wright, p. 220
291. '[Teddy] Evans and Bowers', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 19.12.1911, p. 398
292. 'There also', Cherry-Garrard, p. 376
292. 'I dreaded this necessity', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 20.12.1911, pp. 398–9
292. 'my feet are giving me', Oates, diary, 19.12.1911
293. 'I said I hoped I had not disappointed him', Thomson, p. 268
293. 'getting played out', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 10.12.1911, p. 386
293. 'One of the greatest successes', Scott, *Personal Journals*, October 1911, p. 338
293. Wright, p. 221
293. Ibid, p. 221
294. 'who knew he was done', E. L. Atkinson, quoted by Cherry-Garrard, diary, 4.4.1912
294. 'Sorry to part with', Patrick Keohane, diary, 21.12.1911, SPRI
294. 'bring the dogs southwards', Lagerbom, p. 166

294. 'We had a long talk', Cherry-Garrard, p. 398
294. Wright, p. 213

Chapter Fifteen: *The Black Flag* [pp. 295–317]

295. 'We have weeded', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 22.12.1911, p. 401
295. 'As first man', King, p. 144
295. 'as big', Solomon, p. 192
295. 'a confusion of elevations', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 22.12.1911, p. 402
295. 'The horizons which now opened'. Fiennes, diary
296. 'the pace of them', Seaver, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 161
296. 'I trust this may prove', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 23.12.1911, p. 403
297. 'Rather a ghastly sight', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 290
297. 'One cannot allow', ibid, p. 290
298. 'got an unusual burst', Bowers, diary, 27.12.1911, SPRI
298. 'The back tendon of', Oates, diary, 26.12.1911
298. 'Scott is very annoyed', ibid, 28–29.12.1911
299. 'Captain Scott came into', Evans, *South with Scott*, p. 204
300. 'We have caught up', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 30.12.1911, p. 409
300. 'It is difficult', Solomon, p. 194
301. 'He told us all', Preston, p. 176
301. 'and his team', Evans, *South with Scott*, p. 205
301. 'Did 15 miles', ibid, p. 206
302. 'P.O. Evans, of course, is', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 10.12.1911, p. 386
303. 'the greatest source of pleasure', ibid, 1.10.1911, p. 325
304. 'a thoroughly well-meaning', Preston, p. 159
304. 'I felt very sorry for him', Evans, *South with Scott*, p. 206
304. 'Poor Teddy – I am sure', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 292
306. 'A home is where there', Ibsen, p. 20
307. 'the foot which went', Cherry-Garrard, *Annotated Journals*
307. 'whether I shall have the', Pound, p. 267

308. 'I am afraid the letter', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, 3/4.1.1912
308. 'If anything should happen', ibid, 24–8.10.1911
308. 'I'm afraid, Teddy,' Evans, 'My Recollections of a Gallant Comrade', *The Strand Magazine*, December 1913
308. 'Our party were on ski', Cherry Garrard, pp. 514–5
308. 'Bowers has a heavy time', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 7.1.1912, p. 416
308. 'it is wonderful to see', ibid, 4.1.1912, p. 412
308. 'Nothing comes amiss', ibid, 8.1.1912, p. 417
309. 'Our food continues to amply', ibid, 7/8.1.1912, p. 416
310. 'The marching is growing', ibid, 9.1.1912, p. 418
310. 'it is more tiring for me', Bowers, diary, 4.1.1912, SPRI
310. 'The worst wind-cut sastrugi', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 6–7/1/1912. pp. 229–30
310. 'I heard Scott discuss', Cherry-Garrard, p. 427
310. 'The Polar Party', ibid, p. 434
310. 'a sea of fish hook waves', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 6.1.1912, p. 414
310. 'I must stick to skis', Jones, *Polar Portraits*, p. 288
311. 'Without them . . . climbing on sheer ice', Amundsen, sledging diary, 1.12.1911, University Library, Oslo
311. 'has a nasty cut', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 7.1.1912, p. 416
311. 'Evans who cut his knuckle', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 7.1.1912, p. 230
311. 'I watched with intense admiration', Fiennes, *Mind over Matter*, p. 119
311. 'Evans' hand was dressed', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 8.1.1912, p. 416
311. 'Scott had two phrases', Debenham, *In The Antarctic*, p. 41
312. 'beyond the record', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 9.1.1912, p. 418
312. 'We have shot our bolt', Shackleton, p. 210
312. 'the most daring man', Kathleen Scott, diary, 14.6.1911
312. 'It falls to the lot', Shackleton, 26.1.1908, p. 172

312. 'I never had such pulling', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 11.1.1912, p. 419
312. 'being chary of leaving stores', ibid, 9.1.1912, p. 418
312. 'Time after time', Cherry-Garrard, p. 517
313. 'At camping tonight', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 12.1.1912, p. 420
313. 'Again we noticed', ibid, 14.1.1912, p. 422
313. 'My pemmican', Smith, *I Am Just Going Outside*, p. 203
313. 'It is wonderful', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 15.1.1912, p. 423
314. 'We started off', ibid, 16.1.1912. p. 423
314. 'Soon we knew', ibid, p. 423
314. 'This told us the whole story', ibid, 16.1.1912, p. 423
314. 'The age of the tracks', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 16.1.1912, p. 231
314. 'I am awfully sorry', Seaver, *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic*, p. 250
315. 'The coldest march I ever', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 17.1.1912, p. 232
315. 'From Amundsen's direction of tracks', ibid, 17.1.1912, p. 232
315. 'of ± 30" [800 yards], 'Survey in Antarctica', *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 1924, p. 216
315. 'Great God! this is', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 17.1.1912, p. 424
315. 'We have attained', Bjaaland Olav, *Antarctic Diary*, 1910–1912
316. 'Dear Captain Scott, As you', Limb and Cordingley, p. 157
317. 'Neither, at this seriously meaningful time', Gran, *50 Years Polar Remembrance*
317. 'I am glad to say', Seaver, *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic*, pp. 250–1

Chapter Sixteen: *Intimations of Tragedy* [pp. 318 38]

318. 'Well, we have turned', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 18.1.1912, p. 426
319. 'I think Oates is feeling', ibid, 20.1.1912, p. 428
319. 'One of my big', Oates, diary, 25.1.1912
319. 'were ruined by having', Fiennes, *Mind over Matter*, p. 166

319. 'He did look old, thin', Stroud, *Shadows on the Wasteland*, p. 147
320. 'Our hands are never', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 19.1.1912, p. 236
321. 'Marched on foot', ibid, 25.1.1912, p. 237
322. 'I think Wilson, Bowers', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 23.1.1912, p. 430
322. 'There is no doubt', ibid, 23.1.1912, p. 430
322. 'Evans has dislodged', ibid, 30.1.1912, p. 434
322. 'For supper we had', Debenham, *The Quiet Land*, p. 88
323. 'I wish to God', Fiennes, *Mind over Matter*, p. 162
323. 'The asthmatic condition', Preston, p. 189
323. 'Thin air, low pressure', Fiennes, *Mind over Matter*, p. 161 162
324. 'Titus' toes are blackening', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 4.2.1912, p. 240
325. 'Mike's hands had', Fiennes, *Mind over Matter*, p. 194
326. 'It is like going ashore', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 8.2.1912, p. 441
326. 'Since the last depot', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 4.2.1912, p. 239
326. 'Evans' fingers suppurating', ibid, 5.2.1912, p. 240
326. 'Coal seams', ibid, 8.2.1912, p. 241
326. 'It has been extremely', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 8.2.1912, p. 440
327. 'We have two full days' food', ibid, 10.2.1912, p. 442
327. 'their full', Cherry-Garrard, p. 545
327. 'The worst day we have had', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 11.2.1912, p. 442
327. 'You look around', Fiennes, *Mind over Matter*, pp. 198–9
328. 'There were times when', ibid, p.205
328. 'We go two miles', ibid, p. 205
328. 'greatly owing to', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 11.2.1912, p. 442
328. 'It was a test of', ibid, p. 443
328. 'by a fatal chance', ibid,12.2.1912, p. 443
329. 'Bowers has had', ibid, 13.2.1912, p. 444
329. 'Scott is quite wonderful', Seaver, *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic*, p. 244

329. 'plunged into', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 12.2.1912, p. 242
329. 'We ought to have gone', ibid, 5.2.1912, p. 240
330. 'We again had', ibid, 6.2.1912, p. 240
330. 'One of the great difficulties', Cherry-Garrard, p. 538
330. 'It was such an awful place', Mills, p. 84
331. 'collapsed – sick and giddy', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, 16.2.1912, p. 243
331. 'It is an extraordinary', Oates, diary, undated
331. '[He] is quite worn out', ibid, 15.2.1912
331. 'We could not possibly', ibid, 16.2.1912
331. 'Evans has nearly broken', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 16.2.1912, p. 446
331. 'We found him', Oates, diary, this entry is dated 18 February, although Evans's death occurred on 17 February
331. 'I was first', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 17.2.1912, p. 446
333. 'Wilson thinks it certain', ibid, 17.2.1912, p. 447
333. 'the result of concussion', Rogers, Allan F., 'The death of Chief Petty Officer Evans', *Practitioner*, 1974, SPRI
333. 'The diet consumed', ibid, pp. 11–12
334. 'Evans hasn't been cheerful', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 30.1.1912, p. 435
334. 'The causes of Evans's death', Dr Mike Stroud, letter to R. Fiennes, 3.1.2003
335. 'Wilson . . . knew the symptoms', Priestley, R.E., 'The Scott Tragedy', *Geographical Journal*, October 1926, SPRI, p. 342
335. 'is not a reliable criterion', ibid, p. 342
335. 'He was the biggest', Cherry-Garrard, p. 544
336. 'The absence of poor Evans', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 19.2.1912, p. 449
336. 'I take this opportunity', ibid, 16/17.3.1912, p. 462
337. 'The way to their', Gran, *50 Years Polar Remembrance*
337. 'They had just picked', Cherry-Garrard, p. 545

Chapter Seventeen: *The Greatest March Ever Made* [pp. 339–77]

339. 'They have taken', Gran, *The Norwegian with Scott*, p. 175
339. 'but from what I had heard', ibid, p. 177
342. 'I sincerely trust', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 19.2.1912, pp. 448–9
342. 'same terrible surface, ibid, 20.2.1912, p. 449
342. 'Terribly slow progress', ibid, p. 449
343. 'Bowers' wonderful sharp eyes', ibid, 23.2.1912, p. 450
343. 'Dug up Christopher for food', Oates, diary, 24.2.1912
343. '[We] shall have to be', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 24.2.1912, p. 451
344. 'full to the brim', Swithinbank, p. 92
345. '[Simpson] told me', Cherry-Garrard, *Annotated Journal*
346. 'we are getting into better ski', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 25.2.1912, p. 452
346. 'I never doubted his heart', ibid, 25.2.1912, p. 452
346. 'Oh! for a little wind', ibid, 25/26.2.1912, p. 452
347. 'The sun shines', ibid, 28.2.1912, p. 454
348. 'All nearly paralysed', Fiennes, *Mind over Matter*, p. 192
348. 'The end is in sight', ibid, p. 192
348. 'New kind of chisel-hard', ibid, p. 165
348. 'In the ten hours', Stroud, *Shadows on the Wasteland*, p. 162
349. 'very cold last night', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 1.3.1912, p. 454
349. 'Misfortunes', ibid, 2.3.1912, p. 455
349. 'Titus . . . disclosed his feet', ibid, 2.3.1912, p. 455
350. '[Ran] could no longer bear', Stroud, *Shadows on the Wasteland*, p. 163
350. 'We are in a *very* queer street', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 2.3.1912, p. 455
350. 'the wind at strongest', ibid, 3.3.1912, p. 455
351. 'the critical effect', Soloman, p. 235
352. Wright, p. 373
352. 'Simpson's three-volume treatise', Solomon, p. 113
353. 'Not the least', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 19.2.1912, p. 448

353. 'on this surface', ibid, 8.3.1912, p. 459
353. 'American scientists in the 1990s', Solomon, pp. 294, 296, 297, and BAS meteorological data, McMurdo Sound, 2000–2002
354. 'Our fuel dreadfully low', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 5.3.1912, p. 457
355. 'If we were all fit', ibid, 6.3.1912, p. 458
355. 'One of Oates' feet', ibid, 7.3.1912, p. 458
355. 'Poor Oates', ibid, 6.3.1912, pp. 457–8
355. 'Have to wait', ibid, 8.3.1912, p. 458
355. 'Amundsen and Daddy', Young, p. 148
356. 'We hope against hope', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 7.3.1912, p. 458
356. 'Oates' foot worse', ibid, 10.3.1912, p. 459
356. 'Shortage on our allowance', ibid, 10.3.1912, p. 459
356. 'To estimate', Cherry-Garrard, p. 427
357. 'To travel to One Ton Depot', ibid, p. 430
357. 'If Scott had not arrived', ibid, p. 430
358. 'On the two remaining days', ibid, p. 433
358. 'My orders', ibid, p. 434
359. 'In this sort of life', ibid, Chatto & Windus, p. 589
360. 'A few days after', 'He went so far as to say', 'I get back to Hut Point', 'Demitri immediately recovers' and 'On our arrival in New Zealand', all from Cherry-Garrard, *Annotated Journal*
361. 'Now I know', ibid
361. 'That's quite possible', ibid
361. 'I am afraid it is becoming clear', ibid
361. 'miserable jumble', Scott, diary, 10.3.1912
362. 'Titus Oates', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 11.3.1912, p. 460
362. 'not pulling much', ibid, 12.3.1912, p. 460
363. 'I practically ordered', ibid, 11.3.1912, p. 460
364. 'Truly awful', ibid, 14.3.1912, p. 461
364. 'What are we to do', Taylor, p. 443
364. 'you will have to make', ibid, p. 443
364. '[Bowers] had a scheme', Cherry-Garrard, p. 537
364. 'if you break your leg', ibid, p. 596

365. 'if anyone breaks down', King, p. 186
365. 'Our sick companions', Bowers, letter to Emily Bowers, March 1912
365. 'Lost track of dates', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 16/17.3.1912, pp. 461–2
366. 'That day a terrible storm ensued', Gran, *50 Years Polar Remembrance*
367. 'This is a sad ending', Smith, *I Am Just Going Outside*, p. 226
367. 'We knew that poor Oates', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 16/17.3.1912, p. 462
367. 'I am still strong', Seaver, *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic*, p. 262
368. 'Birdie and I', Seaver, *Edward Wilson of the Antarctic*, pp. 293–4
368. 'forlorn hope', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 21.3.1912, p. 463
368. 'Blizzard as bad as ever', ibid, 22/3.3.1912, p. 463
369. 'two of the 5 of us', Wilson, *Diary of the 'Terra Nova' Expedition*, p. 247
370. 'a continuous gale', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 29.3.1912, pp. 463–4
371. 'the immense shove of the man', Cherry-Garrard, p. 390
371. 'Everyday we have been ready to start', ibid, p. 464
371. 'Last entry', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 29.3.1912, p. 464
371. 'never a word of blame', ibid, p. 470
372. 'I would bet', Skelton, letter to Hodgson, 26.3.1913, SPRI
373. 'exposure and weakness', *Daily Mail*, 14.2.1913
373. Wright, p. 344
373. 'They were thin', Neider, p. 284
373. 'Scott and his companions', R. Amundsen, *Mitt Liv som Polarforsker*, Gyldendal Norsk Forlag, 1927, p. 69
374. 'a little sugar', SPRI, MS 761/8/11
374. 'I can testify certainly', Edward Atkinson, MS 761/8 11, SPRI
374. 'the morphia and opium', Cherry-Garrard, *Annotated Journal*
374. 'It was a horrid sight', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 305

374. 'We have the last *half*', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 18.3.1912, p. 463
375. 'We have done the greatest', Scott, letter to J. M. Barrie, *Personal Journals*, pp. 471–2
375. 'You must understand', Scott, *Personal Journals*, p. 475
375. 'Excuse writing: it is –40', ibid, p. 473
375. 'I had looked forward', Gwynn, pp. 221–2
375. 'You know I cherish', ibid, pp. 221–3
376. 'It is no disparagement', Ludlam, p. 227

Chapter Eighteen: *The Legacy* [pp. 378–404]

378. 'This second year', Debenham, *The Quiet Land*, p. 143
379. 'It is all I can do not to speak out', Cherry-Garrard, *Annotated Journal*
379. Wright, p. 345
379. 'I shed a few tears', SPRI, *Polar Record*, Vol. 14, No. 88, 1968, pp. 33–9
380. Wright, p. 346
380. 'and there', Cherry-Garrard, pp. 496–7
380. 'That scene can never', ibid, p. 497
380. 'It was something', Gran, in *Scott's Last Journey*, BBC 2, 19.3.1972
381. 'Hereabouts died a very gallant', Scott, *Personal Journals*, p. 468
381. 'I think of Scott', Gran, *The Norwegian with Scott*, p. 219
381. 'Are you all well?', Cherry-Garrard, p. 584
382. 'We landed to find', ibid, p. 593
382. 'I doubt if St. Paul's', Pound, pp. 299–300
383. 'All these long weary', Young, p. 158
383. 'We are weak', Scott, *Personal Journals*, p. 477
384. 'They died like Englishmen', *Nottingham Evening Post*, 12.2.1913
384. 'It is a splendid tragedy', *Daily Mail*, 11.12.1913
384. 'The scientific notes', Filchner, *Nottingham Evening Post*, 12.2.1913

384. 'Scott has conquered', Charcot, *Daily Mail*, 12.2.1913
384. 'Scott would not turn aside', Charcot, *Sheffield Independent*, 8.3.1912
385. 'I am unwilling', Amundsen, *Daily Mail*, 11.2.1913
385. 'Immortal glory rises', Hedin, *The Times*, 13.2.1913
385. 'No polar explorer', Gran, *50 Years Polar Remembrance*
385. 'In the history', Gran, *Kampen om Sydpolen*, Ernst G. Mortensens, 1961
386. 'I would not', Shackleton, *Daily Telegraph*, 2.4.1912
388. 'And certainly . . . for the vast majority', Riffenburgh, p. 199
389. 'Commander Evans', *Daily Mail*, Christchurch, 15.2.1913
390. 'It is well known', *South: The Race to the Pole*, National Maritime Museum, p. 90
391. 'Unfortunately I can not help you', Robert Feeney, e-mail to R. Fiennes, 24.2.2003
391. 'The Committee (Curzon)', Cherry-Garrard, *Annotated Journal*
392. 'he had a habit', Cherry-Garrard, Chatto & Windus, p. 595
392. 'I am distinctly conscious', Scott, letter to Fridtjof Nansen, 2.11.1901, University Library, Oslo
393. 'Not a single article', Scott, *Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. I, p. 229
393. 'It is already evident', Scott, *Personal Journals*, 27.10.1911, p. 346
393. 'Cooking for five', ibid, 5.1.1912, p. 414
393. 'He said', King, p. 118
393. '[Scott's] instincts', Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 156
394. 'the ossification of Scott', Lambert, p. 184
394. 'looking over his shoulder', Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 421
394. 'sculpt out his post expedition image', Lagerbom, p. 176
394. 'his alibi', Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 507
395. 'The intensity of', Ponting, p. 292
395. 'Birdie . . . died in', Seaver, *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic*, p. xi
396. 'That was the glory', ibid, p. xix

396. 'They say – deeply moved', ibid, p. xx
396. 'I have heard discussions', ibid, pp.xix–xxi
396. 'They died having done', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 305
397. 'Captain Scott lay', Gran, *The Norwegian with Scott*, p. 216
397. 'it looked very', SPRI, letter from Lashly to R. Skelton, 18.1.1913, ms 324/23/1–5; D, SPRI
397. Wright, p. 346
397. 'When I entered', Crean, letter to Captain R.H. Dodds (author's italics) as quoted by Smith, *An Unsung Hero*, p. 172
398. 'I must say I', Crean, letter to J. Kennedy, January 1913, SPRI
398. 'Bowers and Wilson were', Cherry-Garrard, pp. 497–8
398. 'Captain Scott had died last', Atkinson, 'Account of Events Concerning Southern Party', MS 761/8/11, SPRI
398. 'I went over Bill's body', Cherry-Garrard, *Annotated Journal*
399. 'If this letter reaches', Scott, *Personal Journals*, p. 470
399. 'I write when we are', ibid, pp. 470–1
399. 'We have had four days', ibid, p. 472
400. 'The diary of Wilson', ms 175; D, SPRI
400. 'we are pretty well done', Scott, *Personal Journals*, p. 474
401. 'We may lose', Ludlam, p. 151
401. 'It might be said', Seaver, *Scott of the Antarctic*, p. 39
401. C. Wright in *Radio Times* interview, 16.3.1972
402. 'Scott's reputation', Cherry Garrard, Chatto & Windus, pp. 593–4
402. 'Owing to the great', Bernacchi, *Saga of the 'Discovery'*, p. 201
403. 'After all . . . we are setting', Scott, *Personal Journals*, p. 473
403. 'Certainly, the war', Paxman, p. 2
404. '*any* public display', ibid, p. 12
404. 'In left-wing circles', ibid, p. 12

Chapter Nineteen: The Last Word [pp. 405 -436]

405. 'I must warn you', Wally Herbert, letter to Ranulph Fiennes, 19.2.2002
406. 'Everyone knows', Strachey, p. 111

407. 'It is not [the biographer's] business', ibid, p. 10 (author's italics)
407. 'If the biographer is wise', ibid, Preface
409. 'against a background', Sheffield, p. xvii
409. 'sad comment', Duncan Wu, *The Independent*
409. 'It's some time', Philip Hensher, *The Spectator*, 30.11.2002
411. 'I never met Con', letter from G. B. Shaw to K. Scott, 23.3.1923, *Bernard Shau : Collected Letters III*, ed. Dan Laurence, p. 817
411. 'most incompetent failure', G. B. Shaw, letter to Lord Kennet, 21.2.1948
412. 'you chaff and sneer', Rose, p. 197
412. 'His whole criticism', F. Debenham, letter to the editor of the *Geographical Journal*, July 1928
413. 'We must now summarize', Hayes, *Antarctica*, p. 180
413. 'Captain Scott must have been', Hayes, *The Conquest of the South Pole*, p. 128
414. 'anything but the simple', Huxley, *Scott of the Antarctic*, Preface
416. '[At] about -40° C.', Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 332
416. 'without the risk', ibid, p. 355
417. 'incapable of the specialised interplay', ibid, pp. 168–9
417. 'My nose, lips, jaw', Huntford, *The Amundsen Photographs*, p. 81
417. 'Scott forced the pace', Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 438
417. 'with an imaginary foe', ibid, p. 397
417. 'It is one man's interpretation', Vivian Fuchs, review of *Scott and Amundsen* in *Geographical Journal*, Vol. 146, p. 273
417. 'Scott . . . came from a rich', Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 25
418. 'Scott personified', ibid, p. 524
418. 'start of the collapse', ibid, p. 119
418. 'Scott had the nervous uncertainty', ibid, p. 308
418. 'The appearance of', ibid, p. 260
418. 'Scott . . . ran her under', ibid, p. 156
418. 'it is an advantage', Scott, *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'*, Vol. I, p. 300

418. 'One has to interpret', Huntford, *Encounter*, Vol. 54, No. 5, May 1980, p. 17
418. 'intuition', ibid, p. 17
418. 'No. These are landscapes', Wheeler, *Terra Incognita*, p. 59
418. 'His book is interpretive', *Times Literary Supplement*, 2.6.1972
419. '[Huntford was] satisfied', Wayland Young, *Encounter*, Vol. 54, No. 5, May 1980, p. 18, SPRI
419. 'discovered that Scott', Carl Grøndahl, *Afternposten*, 1980, translated by Gordon Thomas
419. 'and that is exactly', ibid
419. 'I have found more than', ibid
419. 'spiteful things', ibid
419. 'tampering with the record', R. Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*,p.187
419. 'selective', ivid, p. 189
420. 'in what he tells', ibid, p. 189
420. 'This is reconstruction', ibid, p. 530
420. 'pathetic little gesture', Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 521
420. 'The heroic efforts', British Museum (Natural History), *Natural History Reports*, 1914
420. 'had already done most of the work', Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 521
420. 'I can't *stand* Wilson', Wheeler, *Terra Incognita*, p. 141
421. 'you will have to depend', Limb and Cordingley, p. 12
421. 'please remember', Oates, letter to Caroline Oates, 24 28.10.1911
421. 'Oates's hard comments', Limb and Cordingley, p. 139
421. 'We may get through', Pound, p. 203
422. 'the extremities of suffering', King, p. 172
422. 'Mrs Oates . . . was perhaps going too far', R. Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 523
422. 'I'm fairly sure', letter from Sue Limb to R. Fiennes, 16.3.2003
422. 'Captain Scott would be', R. Huntford, *Shackleton*, p. 361
422. 'there used to be great trouble', ibid, p. 361

422. 'had evidently been', ibid, p. 361
422. 'This was the almost inevitable', R. Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 170
423. 'dull lieutenant', ibid, p. 133
423. 'The elementary error', ibid, p. 229
423. 'From the start he', R. Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 170
423. 'break Evans . . . so as to ease', ibid, p. 439
423. 'There is absolutely no justification', review of Scott and Admundsen by P. Law 60. *Overland* 82, 1980, p. 60
423. 'intuition', R. Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 507
423. 'to lie down with him', R. Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 507
424. 'Though married', Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 126
424. 'Nansen and Kathleen Scott', ibid, p. 510
425. 'I think if anyone read *carefully*', K. Scott quoted in *Encounter*, Vol. 54, No. 5, May 1980, p. 14, SPRI
425. 'I seem to have missed the letters', Huntford, *Encounter*, November 1980, p. 126
425. 'But what happened', Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 122
425. 'they would have almost certainly', ibid, p. 122
425. 'It would be simpleminded', D. Drewry, letter to *The Times*, 16.2.1985
426. 'He was always spitting venom', Elspeth Huxley, telephone conversation with Peter Scott, 19.8.1979, Cambridge University Library, A400 Scott Papers
426. 'was the sort of man', ibid
426. 'Roland Huntford had no official position', William Mills, letter to R. Fiennes, 13.1.2003
426. 'The result was', David Wilson, letter to R. Fiennes, 26.5.2003
427. 'to achieve a dispassionate', Huntford, letter to Peter Scott, 21.4.1978
427. 'May I take the opportunity', Huntford, letter to Peter Scott, 21.3.1978

427. 'I'm glad that your book', Peter Scott, letter to R. Huntford, 28.3.1978
427. 'Mr Huntford came to me', *Daily Telegraph*, report of press statement, 19.9.1979
428. 'had seriously and to my mind', ibid, 19.9.1979
428. 'Apparently your client', Peter Scott's lawyers to R. Huntford's lawyers, September 1979
428. 'I object to Roland Huntford's book', Wayland Young, *Encounter* Vol. 54, No. 5, May 1980, p. 19, SPRI
428. 'you published a letter', John Hemming, *The Times*, 20.11.1979
429. 'Reading this book', Caroline Boucher, *The Observer*
429. 'Huntford's assault on Scott', Francis Spufford, *Daily Telegraph*, 6.10.2001
429. 'Huntford, a journalist', P. Beck, *Contemporary Review*, Vol. 250, No. 1452, 1987, SPRI
429. 'An account by an admirer', Dr Gordon Robin, *Polar Record*, 19 (123), 624–6, SPRI
430. 'Huntford has seen fit', Ellen McGhie, *Daily Telegraph*, 17.10.1979
430. 'horrid man', Huntford, transcript of an interview, 2002, R. Fiennes' personal papers
430. 'It is perfectly clear', Huntford, e-mail to R. Fiennes, 3.6.2003
430. 'my mother was Russian', Huntford, transcript of an interview, 2002, R. Fiennes
430. 'his father was an Army officer', Charles Swithinbank, telephone conversation with R. Fiennes, 16.12.02
431. 'Born South Africa', Huntford, jacket flap of *The New Totalitarians*
431. 'Oh, I left in disgrace', Huntford, transcript of an interview by Gordon Thomas, 2002
431. 'Quantum mechanics', Huntford, transcript of an interview, 2002
431. 'an abiding contempt', ibid
432. 'the nearest example', Huntford, front jacket flap of *The New Totalitarians*

432. 'Yes, you're right', Huntford, transcript of an interview, 2002
432. 'I think he was a horrible man', ibid
432. 'he fell', Leif Mills, letter to R. Fiennes, 24.2.1998
432. 'Once such seeds were sown', Solomon, p. xvi
433. 'the present struggle', Griffiths, pp. ix–xxxiv
433. 'a gripping 7-episode film drama', *The Last Place on Earth* press packet
433. 'Scott never said anything', Gran, *Observer magazine*, 31.3.1974
433. 'the Empire's spastic evolution' and 'the glories of imperialism', Lagerbom, pp. 221–2
434. 'The author tries to give', Judy Skelton, review in *Antarctic*, Vol. 18, No. 1, 2000 of *The Rescue of Captain Scott* by Don Aldridge
434. 'Too bad the tragedy', T.H. Baughman, review of *The Rescue of Captain Scott* by Aldridge, *Polar Record*, 37 (200)
435. 'not exceptionally low', R. Huntford, *The Last Place on Earth*, p. 499
435. 'For three straight weeks', Solomon
435. 'It is difficult', Cherry Garrard, Chatto & Windus, p. 582
435. 'I loved every hair on his head', Tom Crean, undated letter to Peter Scott, SPRI
435. 'He was a thoroughly cheerful', Hodgson, MS 1181, SPRI
435. 'Sound in his judgement', Ponting, p. 162
435. 'He wouldn't ask you to do', Bill Burton in *Scott's Last Man*, National Radio documentary, New Zealand, 29.2.1987
436. '[Scott] had achieved something', Tryggve Gran, quotes from *Slik van Det* and *Kampen om Sydpolen* as reported in Ellen McGhie's letter to the *Daily Telegraph*, 17.10.1979
436. 'He is thoughtful', Wilson, letter to his parents, Seaver, p. 84

Index

Abbott RN, Petty-Officer George 379
Adams RN, Lieut. Jameson Boyd 152, 312
Albemarle, HMS 139, 143
Aldington, Richard 405
Aldridge, Don 434
Alert, HMS 6
Allan RN, Petty Officer David 23
altitude problems on plateau 322–3
Amundsen, Gustav 175
Amundsen, Leon 157, 181–2, 325
Amundsen, Roald: use of native methods 11; focussed on North Pole 138, 155, 157; not wishing to dog Scott's steps 145; praises Shackleton 155; why he must have known of Scott's plans 156–7; secretly switches plans from North to South Pole 157, 175, 180; avoids meeting Scott 163, 174–5; telegraphs intentions to Scott 180, 182; plans base at Bay of Whales 181; plans made public 182; Bay of Whales encounter with Eastern Party 215–16; hostility to him in Norway 220; dissension within his party 35, 246, 263–4; Gran disparages him in contrast to Scott 252; sets out prematurely for Pole 263; sets out for Pole 264; finds Axel Heiberg Glacier route to polar plateau 274, 279–80, 281, 284; reaches South Pole 289–90, 315; on passing Shackleton's farthest south 291; no science programme to hold him back 291, 316; on return journey 300, 321; his message for Scott 316–17; dislike of polar plateau 323; depot-locating difficulties 323–4; return to Bay of Whales 325; news of his success 355; on deaths of Scott's party 373, 385; death 401; uselessness of his journey 413; the race for the Pole 81, 216–17, 239–40, 253–4, 261, 277, 279, 294, 313, 314–6, 425; compared with Scott by Huntford 415–16, 417–18; *North West Passage, The* 419–20
Amundsen Scott South Pole Station 290
Antarctic (Nordenskjöld's expedition ship) 61
Antarctic Peninsula 61, 109
Antarctica Unveiled (Yelverton) 434
Arctowski, Henryk 138–9
Armitage RNR, Lieut. Albert (on *Discovery* expedition): 32; favours ponies 32–3, 63; looks after dogs and sledging gear 33, 63–4, 65, 92; 34, 37, 38, 48, 57; on exploration along Barrier 55, 69; taking magnetic readings 58–9, 110; 60; on depot-laying journey south 73; 76; locates Ferrar Glacier 85, 110, 112, 117, 128, 86, 90; attempts to free *Discovery* from ice 105, 126, 129; refuses offer to return on *Morning* 107–8; on western journey 106, 110, 121; 111; his expedition book 99, 101, 113; his autobiography 99, 101, 113–14, 135; his grudge against Scott for refusing

Armitage RNR, Lieut. Albert – *cont.*
second southern journey 112–14, 159; later embittered memories 37, 99–101, 102–3, 420, 422; praises Scott's leadership 134; Scott on Armitage 114; Skelton on Armitage 101, 112, 114–5, 135
Arrival Bay 60
Arrol Johnston Motors 170
Atkinson RN, Surgeon Edward (on *Terra Nova* expedition): 188, 191, 208, 231, 238; in anti-Scott faction 241, 242, 247, 422; 250, 260; pony leader on Pole journey 267, 285, 286, 288; told to go back 293–4; Scott's orders to him for dog teams 294; uses dogs to rescue Teddy Evans 339, 340–1; 342; his orders to Cherry-Garrard 357, 360; first vain search for Pole party 369–70; on discovering death tent 372, 374, 379–80, 390, 398, in charge at Cape Evans 357, 378, 379; 382, 433
Axel Heiberg Glacier 274, 279–80, 281, 284, 316, 324

Balloon Bight 56, 57–8, 59
Barne Glacier 234
Barne RN, Lieut. Michael (on *Discovery* expedition): 23, 29, 34, 36, 37, 48; on aborted Cape Crozier journey 69, 70–2; leads manhaul to lay Bluff Depot 76, 83; leads Southern Journey support team 90–1; 109; coastal survey 110; 111; second winter 115; depot-laying 117; south-west surveying journeys 128; researches polar motor travel for Scott's *Terra Nova* expedition 137–8, 140, 143, 146, 149, 157, 402
Barrie, James 135, 161, 375
Barrier, the (Ross Ice Shelf) 5–6, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 63, 88, 94, 143, 148, 162, 163, 167, 181, 201, 207, 208, 223, 225, 227, 230, 257, 265, 270–81, 353
Barrier Inlet 142, 143
Baughman, T.H. 434
Bay of Whales 144, 181, 215–16, 239, 284, 325
Beardmore Glacier 154, 162, 207, 209, 214, 265, 266, 274, 278, 279–80, 284, 324, 326, 330
Beardmore, William 138
Beardsley, Aubrey 135–6
Belgica (de Gerlache's expedition ship) 74, 76, 80, 155
Benjamin Bowring 48
Bernacchi, Louis (on *Discovery* expedition): 39, 43, 53; magnetic research programme 58–9, 60, 63–4, 111–2, 128, 148; in first winter 77, 78, 81, 104, 106; in second winter 115; on Scott's scientific interests 44; on Scott 47; on Scott's naval formalities 77; 131, 146, 402, 421
Bjaaland, Olav 323
Black & Edgington, Greenock 249
Black Island 64, 207, 209
Bligh, William 407
Bluff Depot 83, 84, 90, 207, 284
Boadicea, HMS 17–18
Bonner RN, AB Charles 50–1, 52
Borchgrevink's Bight 143
Borchgrevink, Carsten 8, 9–10, 35, 39, 43, 53, 59, 105, 143, 181, 217
Bowers, Lieut. Henry (Birdie) (on *Terra Nova* expedition): on voyage out 178, 188, 189, 191; appointed storekeeper 184–5, 186; in the storm 193, 195, 196; organises sledgeloads for depot journey 205–6; on depot journey 213, 220; the pony disaster 221, 222, 223–4, 226–31; 233–4; on Cape Evans foray 237; 238, 253; on Cape Crozier penguin winter journey 254–5, 257–60; spring outing to

Ferrar Glacier confirms likely Pole selection 262–3; consulted by Scott on Pole sledging plans 264; pony leader on Pole journey 267, 270, 272, 276, 277–8, 279, 281; manhauling south 286–7, 289; glacier surveying 291; 295; breaks hypsometer thermometer and lets watch lose time 297–8; selected for final Pole team 303, 304, 307; keeps up without skis 308–9; sees Norwegian flag at Pole 314, 315, 316, 317; on the return journey 320, 322, 324, 329; rock collecting 326, 330; 332, 343, 346, 347, 356, 362; the suicide option declined 364, 365; wind foils intention to go with Wilson to fetch help 367–8, 369, 370–1; 372, 374; death 1, 376, 397–8; his last message 400–1; 380; *The Fifth Man* 433; character 170–1, 288; Teddy Evans on Bowers 171; Scott on Bowers 399; Bowers on Scott 1, 179, 196
Bowring Brothers, Newfoundland 164–5
Brent, Peter 413
Brett, Henry 62, 86, 115
British Antarctic Survey (BAS) 247
Bruce, Kathleen see Scott, Kathleen
Bruce RNR, Lieut. Wilfred 168, 186–7, 188, 215
Bruce, William S. 10, 61, 110, 1487
Bulwark, HMS 143, 146
Burton, Charlie 246
Burton RN, Stoker William 435

calorific intake and expenditure 932, 283, 285, 335–6, 373
Campbell RN, Lieut. Victor (on *Terra Nova* expedition): 171, 173, 184; in the storm 193; 201, 202; leads Northern (originally Eastern) Party 184–5, 208, 245–6; encounter with Amundsen 215–16; sends news to Scott 217; makes scientific base at Cape Adare 340; marooned for a year 342, 378, 379, 381
Cape Adare 5, 10, 53, 56, 59, 74, 105, 194, 217
Cape Armitage 222, 223, 225
Cape Crozier 55, 56, 69, 72, 89, 111, 201, 210, 254
Cape Evans 201–2, 207, 231, 233–4, 235, 236, 237, 238, 242–54, 256
Cape Royds 146, 248
Cape Town 43–4, 177, 178–9
Cape Wilson 89, 97, 207
Cardiff 177
Castle Rock 70
Charcot, Dr Jean 61, 143, 145, 147, 162, 384
Cheetham RNR, Boatswain Alfred 201, 202
Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (on *Terra Nova* expedition): 170; in the storm 192; in the pack ice 197; on depot journey 206, 213; crevasse incident 214, reaction to Amundsen's presence 218, the pony disaster 224, 227; 231, 232, 243; edits *South Polar Times* 253; on Cape Crozier penguin winter journey 254–5, 257–60, 266; tests Summit Rations 296; pony leader on Pole journey 267, 269, 278, 281; manhauling south 286, 291–2; told to turn back 292–3, 294, 340; wrong about Oates's war wound 307; on the return journey 337–8, 344; job of taking dogs to await Scott's party devolves on him 341, 342; at One Ton Depot 353, 354, 358, 362; his interpretation of Atkinson's orders 357; his dilemma 358–9, 360–1, 379; on the suicide option 364; at the death tent 380, 381, 398; Oates's memorial 381; mind preyed on by suggestion he could have saved

Cherry-Garrard, Apsley – *cont.*
Scott's party 379, 381, 391, 411–12; on Scott's diary 393; on the expedition's legacy 395–6; on its scientific purpose 420; on Teddy Evans 188–9; on Oates 204; on Scott 198, 203, 210, 250–1, 287, 392, 402; writes *The Worst Journey in the World* 218, 255, 379, 403, 410–2
Christian, Fletcher 407–8
Christiania (Oslo) 32
Clarke, Charles 115
Clissold, Thomas 268, 340
Cloudmaker, the 284, 290, 327–9, 330
Colbeck, Captain William 105, 108, 126, 131
Coldest March, The (Solomon) 434
Cook, Dr Frederick 138, 142, 156, 160, 388
Cook, Captain James 4, 401
Corner Camp 207, 209, 210, 213, 235, 240, 269, 284, 339
Coulman Island 54, 56
Crater Hill 64, 70, 72, 222
Crean RN, AB Thomas
(on *Discovery* expedition) 50; strength and ability 80; second winter 116; 127, 150
(on *Terra Nova* expedition) 173, 175, 206; on depot journey 209; the pony disaster 223–4, 227–8, 230, 231; on Cape Evans foray 236; 238, 248; pony leader on Pole journey 267, 272; manhauling south 286, 295, 301, 304; excluded from final Pole team 305; on the return journey 339, 340, 341, 351, 370; 378; at death tent 397–8, 435
Cumming, Hannah see Scott, Hannah
Curzon, Lord 390, 391, 393

Dailey, Frederick 117, 118
Daily Mail 36, 134–5, 176, 389–90
Davies RN, Ldg Shipwright Francis 381
Day, Bernard (on *Terra Nova* expedition)
engineers Scott's tracked cars 170; at Fefor trials 174; 185, 202, 238; winter repairs to motorised sledges 248; with motorised sledge party on Pole journey 267, 268–9, 275; 340, 402
Debenham, Frank (on *Terra Nova* expedition)
170, 182; in the storm 193; 200; glacier study party 208; 232, 233; on Cape Evans foray 237; 250, 251, 260, 268, 297, 322, 340, 378–9, 412, 413; of the anti-Scott faction 241–2, 243; praises Scott's leadership 245; on Oates421
de Gerlach de Gomery, Adrien 8, 35, 74
Dell RN, AB James 43
Dellbridge RN, Warrant Officer James 23
Desolation Camp 89, 120, 124, 126
diaries, reliability of 45, 78; editing of 392, 419
Discovery (1901–4 expedition ship)
construction 33–4; overcrowded 39; Dundee launch 40; loading in London 40–1; construction faults noted 41; expedition sails 41; heavy coal consumption 42; leaks 42, 50; keeping up speed 48; reaches Lyttelton on schedule 49; dry-docking 49–50; overloaded at Lyttelton 50; easy passage through pack ice 196, 200, 201; winters at Hut Point 61; icebound for second season 105–6; Admiralty ultimatum 129–30; freed from ice 130–1; sails for New Zealand132; return to Spithead 133; on display 134; acquired by Hudson's Bay Company 164, 175
Discovery expedition (1901–4)
Scott appointed leader 26; clash of objectives 28, 30, 31, 40; equipment

and supplies 31; man versus dogs versus ponies debate 32–3; *Discovery* built and equipped 33–4; crew recruitment 35–8; scientific recruitment 39; resignation of Gregory 40; launch of *Discovery* 40; loading in London 40–1; expedition sails 41; shipboard hierarchy 43; Murray leaves at Cape Town 43–4; magnetospheric anomalies research at 65S 48–9; bird specimens collected from Macquarie Island 49; reaches Lyttelton on schedule 49; in the pack ice 52–3, 196, 200, 201; reaches Cape Adare 54; sails south into McMurdo Sound 54–5; establishes Cape Crozier message point 55; explores east along Barrier 55–7; hydrogen balloon reconnaissance 58; Hut Point camp established 60; route made onto Barrier 63–4; abortive Cape Crozier journey 69–72; first winter at Hut Point 76–87; Southern Journey 88–104, 148; relief ship's departure 108; *Discovery* icebound for second season 105–6; Armitage locates Ferrar Glacier 110; Barne's coastal survey south 110; second winter at Hut Point 115–16; Cape Crozier penguin forays 117, 128; Scott's western journey 117–26, 127; return of *Morning* with *Terra Nova* 129; Admiralty ultimatum 129–30; *Discovery* freed from ice 131; sails for New Zealand 132; the scientific achievement 127–8

dog-sledging

(on *Discovery* expedition) man versus dogs debate 7, 10, 32–3; dogs brought on board at Lyttelton 50–1; pre-winter trial runs at Hut Point 63–6; dog harnesses adapted 80; first spring trials 81, 84–5; on Southern Journey 90–2, 93–5, 98, 99; Herbert on 65; Nansen on 66; Summers on 66; not used by *Nimrod* expedition 155, 266

(on *Terra Nova* expedition) man versus dogs debate 166; Meares enlisted to procure dogs and ponies 167; on board ship 185; trial dog-sledging in pack ice 197; pre-winter trial runs 204–5, 229; Scott insists men run with the sledges 345; on the Pole journey 265–6, 272–3, 275, 277; Scott's aversion to cruelty but acceptance of killing dogs for dog food 94–5, 99, 167

Doorly, Gerald 102, 105

Doyle, Sir Arthur Conan 161–2

Drewry, Dr David 425

dry valleys 126, 148

Drygalski, Prof. Erich von 10, 32, 33, 61, 76, 85, 87, 110, 128, 147, 148

Duncan, Isadora 136

Duncan, James 79

Dundee Shipbuilding Company 33

Egerton, Admiral Sir George 12, 13, 24, 26

Eminent Victorians (Strachey) 406–7

Emperor penguin research 87, 117, 127–8, 236; Cape Crozier winter journey 254, 258–9, 260

Empress of India, HMS 13, 22

England, Captain Rupert 144, 147

English, The (Paxman) 403–4

Erebus, HMS 5, 6, 143

Eskimos (Inuit) 7, 11–12, 31

Evans RN, Petty Officer Edgar (Taff)

(on *Discovery* expedition) 23; on abortive Cape Crozier journey 69, 71; his strength and ability 80, 311; the second winter 116; on the western journey 117, 118, 124, 125, 126, 127, 148, 265, 266

Evans RN, Petty Officer Edgar – *cont.*
(on *Terra Nova* expedition) 175, 177; ordered home then reprieved 188, 191; accompanies glacier study party 207, 231; 248; spring outing to Ferrar Glacier confirms likely Pole selection 262–3; pony leader on Pole journey 267, 286, 299; damages hand 301; selected for final Pole team 302–3, 305, 306; hand not healing 311; deterioration on return journey 322; vulnerability to scurvy 322; 324, 325; losing strength 326, 327, 329; death 331–6; 351, 389, 390, 398, 411; Scott on Evans 311

Evans RN, Lieut. Edward (Teddy)
with *Discovery*'s relief ship *Morning* 105; nurses his own expedition plans 135, 158
(on *Terra Nova* expedition) joins as second-in-command 158–9; mans expedition office 160, 161; inspects *Terra Nova* with Scott 164–5; 173; starts to quarrel with Taff Evans 177; on voyage out 178, 179, 183; threatens to resign in New Zealand 188–9; in the storm 194–6; in the pack ice 197, 198; 201; takes weakest depot journey ponies back to Cape Evans 211, 213; reaction to Amundsen's presence 219, 239–40; 235; on Cape Evans foray 236; 248, eagerness to reach Pole 262; spring journey to Corner Camp 262; leads motorised sledges on Pole journey 267, 268–9; manhauls and lays trail 270, 275, 278, 279, 280–1, 285–6, 288; glacier surveying 291; performance criticised by others 289, 293; 295, 296, 299, 301; excluded from final Pole party 304; on return journey 306, 308, 326, 329; nearly dies 335, 338, 339; picked up by *Terra Nova* 340, 341; 346, 351, 352, 358, 370; returns with *Terra Nova* 381; 391, 410; on Bowers 171; denies alleged row with Scott 389, 423; character 178, 189

Evans, Hilda 178, 189–90

Feather RN, Petty Officer Thomas 117, 120, 121

Feeney, Prof. Robert 391

Fefor, Norway 173–4

Ferrar Glacier 85, 89, 110, 111, 112, 117, 125, 126, 262–3

Ferrar, Hartley 39, 57, 60, 64, 85, 112, 117, 121, 128, 148

Field, Admiral Mostyn 147

Fiennes, Ranulph
motives for expeditioning 24, experience of organising polar expeditions 27, 31; unreliability of diaries 45; sailing into Southern Ocean 48; warned off using dogs by Herbert 65; langlauf expertise irrelevant to load-hauling 68; criterion of team selection 83–4; manhauling across Antarctic with Stroud 98, 285, 300, 309, 321, 323, 327, 348, 350, 373, 403, 414–15, navigational difficulties 119; natural empathy with Oates 171–2, 186, 435; clashes of personality 200; unpredictability of weight-bearing sea ice 202–3; danger of travel on sea ice 226; leadership and loyalty 246–7; winter sledge repairing 248; Black & Edginton tentage 249; south polar cricket 249; snowmobiles as descendants of Scott's motor sledges 269; on Beardmore Glacier 280, 295–6; value of the competitive edge 286–7; avoiding duplicated items on sledges 298; at the South Pole 318, 414; suffering on the plateau 319,

dangers of frostbite and gangrene 325; pathfinding through unknown icefields 328; size and weight irrelevant to calorific intake 335–6, 373; experience of extreme cold 348; frostbitten agonies 350; Scott's last biscuit 390–1; diaries and expedition books 392; progress checking against earlier travellers 417; Huntford declines to meet 430
Filchner, Wilhelm 384
First World War see Great War
Fisher, Admiral Sir John 18, 138, 149
Forde RN, Petty Officer Robert 208, 211, 262, 267, 340
Fram 76, 180, 200
Franklin, Sir John, search for 6, 7, 11, 61, 104
Franz Josef Land 32
Fuchs, Arved 328
Fuchs, Vivian 25, 41, 174, 292, 417
Funchal, Madeira 42

Gap, the 64, 221, 222, 223, 224
Gateway, the 154, 207, 278, 281, 283, 284, 285, 332
Gauss (Drygalski's expedition ship) 10, 76, 109
geological evidence of Antarctica's continental nature 98, 128, 148, 367, 420
Gerof, Demetri (on *Terra Nova* expedition)
168, 187, 198, 263; on Pole journey with Meares 267, 272, 278; returns to Cape Evans 283; 294, 339, 340; with Cherry-Garrard to One Ton Depot to await Scott's party 341, 342, 354, 358, returns sick to Hut Point 360, 361
Glacier Tongue 231, 233, 234, 256
Goldie, Sir George 138
Gorbachev, Raisa 414
Goschen, Viscount 26
Gran, Lieut. Tryggve (on *Terra Nova* expedition)
Nansen introduces to Scott 174–5; on voyage south 196; teaches skiing in pack ice 197–8; on depot journey 210, 211, 213, 220; reaction to Amundsen's presence 220, 248, 252; 231; on Cape Evans foray 237; 238, 248, 249, 250; Scott's criticism of him 252; 260; on spring journey to Corner Camp 262; 269, 270, 317, 337, 339, 340, 345; on discovering death tent 374, 380–1, 396, 397, 398; 385, 430, 433, 436; on Scott 179–80, 252
Granite Harbour 55, 56
Great Ice Barrier see Barrier
Great War 176, 269, 394–5, 397, 408–9
Greve, Marit 429
Greve, Tim 429
Griffiths, Trevor 433
Gwynn, Stephen 421

Hall, Charles 11
Hands, William 16
Handsley RN, AB Jesse 117, 121
Hanssen, Helmer 376–7
Hare, Clarence (on *Discovery* expedition)
on abortive Cape Crozier journey 69, 71, 72, 79–80, 107; on Scott 46–7
Harmsworth, Alfred 32, 36
Hayes, Rev. Gordon 412–13
Headland, Bob 145, 400
Heald RN, AB William 69, 85
Hedin, Sven 385
Herbert, Wally 65, 279, 316, 405–6
high plateau, the 162, 166, 298, 322–3
Hillary, Edmund 24–5, 41, 174, 302
Hodgson, Thomas 39, 75, 79, 107, 115, 116, 147, 435
Hoegate Brewery, Plymouth 15, 23
Holt, Kåre 413
Hooper, Frank 268, 275, 345

Hudson's Bay Company 11, 164
Hunt, John 301–2
Huntford, Roland
391, 393, 396; his conspiracy theories 400, 414, 419, 425; publication of *Scott and Amundsen* 414; its pervasive influence 415, 429, 432–4; his total contempt for Scott 432; his ignorance of Antarctic conditions 416–17, 418, 431, 435; portrays Scott as incompetent imperialist failure 393, 415, 417–18, 423, 429; compares Scott unfavourably with Amundsen 415–16, 417–18, 425; emphasis on class divide 418; recourse to intuition 418–19, 430; selective omission 419, 425, 430; disparages *Terra Nova* expedition's scientific results 420, 423; dislike of Wilson 420; use of Oates's last letters 420–1; and Mrs Oates's evidence 421–2; his accusations of team dissension challenged 422–3; his version of Pole party's last days 423, claims Markham was homosexual 424, 433; accuses Kathleen Scott of adultery with Nansen 424, 433; accuses Scott of extra-marital affair 425; use of Scott Polar Research Institute headed paper 426–7; loses Peter Scott libel case 427–8; his Shackleton biography 428–9; his Nansen biography 429, 432; critical reaction to *Scott and Amundsen* 429–30; declines to meet Fiennes 430; the Griffiths film 432, 433
Hut Point 56, 60, 63, 70, 72, 73, 89, 131, 146, 184, 201, 205, 220, 221, 222, 223, 231–4, 235, 256, 272, 274, 349
Huxley, Elspeth 414, 426
Huxley, Leonard 391, 392

In the Footsteps of Scott expedition 60–1

Jackson, Captain Frederick 32, 37, 64–5
Jellicoe, Admiral of the Fleet, John, Earl 143
Johansen, Hjalmar 217, 263, 325, 413
Joyce RN, AB Ernest 142

Kane, Elisha 11
Keltie, Dr John 138
Keohane RN, Petty Officer Patrick (on *Terra Nova* expedition)
211; pony leader on Pole journey 267; manhauling south 286; sent back 294, 340; first vain search for Pole party 369–70
King Edward VII Land 56, 57, 69, 72, 111, 201, 210, 255
King, Harry 432
Koettlitz, Dr Reginald (on *Discovery* expedition)
37, 59, 63; on abortive Cape Crozier journey 69, 70, 72; on depot-laying journey 73; 92, 106; diagnosis of Shackleton's condition 106–7; in second winter 115
König, Felix 146
Kristensen, Monika 279

Lagerbom, Charles 433–4
Lashly RN, Ldg Stoker William
(on *Discovery* expedition) strength and ability 80; 97; second winter 116; on western journey 117, 118, 120, 124, 125, 126, 127, 148, 265, 266
(on *Terra Nova* expedition) 175; in the storm 193; with motorised sledge party on Pole journey 267, 268, 269, 285–6, 288, 295, 296–7, 299; sent back 304; on the return journey 339, 341, 351; at death tent 397; 398
Last Place on Earth, The (film) 407, 432–3
Law, Dr Philip 246–7, 423
Lawrence, T.E. 405

Levick RN, Surgeon Murray 216, 245–6, 247
Lillie, Dennis 170
Limb, Sue 421, 422
Longhurst, Cyril 29, 130
Longstaff, Cedric 38
Longstaff, Llewellyn 9, 39, 104
Lower Barrier Depot *207*, *284*, 343
Lower Glacier Depot 283, *284*, 331
Ludlam, Harry 413
Lyttelton, New Zealand 49, 184

MacFarlane RN, Petty Officer William 106
Macquarie Island 49
Majestic, HMS 23, 29, 36, 124
Mallory, George Leigh 24
manhauling
7, 10–11, 31, 33; (on *Discovery* expedition) pre-winter trial at Hut Point 64, 65, 68; in impressive style 118; 121, 124, 127; (on *Terra Nova* expedition) 166, 211; the way to achieve Pole 265–6; on Beardmore Glacier 286; 288, 289; on the plateau 299–300; on the return journey 321; efficiency of 403
Markham, Sir Clements
his own polar experience 7; promotes Antarctic exploration 8–10, 27; preference for RN methods 9, 10, 12; his detractors 10, 12; considers Eskimo techniques inapplicable to polar exploration 12; favours manhauling 7, 10–11, 33; advertises for expedition leader 12–13; early encounters with Scott 12–13, 18–19, 22; possibly encourages Scott to apply 23–4, 25–6, 423; appoints Scott leader 26, 27; his objectives for *Discovery* expedition 28, 31, 40; recommends Shackleton 38; organises relief ship105, 109; overruled by Admiralty 130–1; celebrates *Discovery*'s return 135; and future expedition plans of Barne, Shackleton and Scott 137; and Shackleton's expedition 141; urges Scott to take Teddy Evans as *Terra Nova* second-in-command 158; on *Terra Nova* Advisory Committee 160; recommends Bowers 171; learns Amundsen is going to McMurdo sound 192; Scott's last message for 376; 410; Huntford on 424, 433
Marshall, Dr Eric 144, 145, 152, 153, 154, 312, 348
Mawson, Sir Douglas 35, 146, 152, 169, 387
McClintock, Lieut. Leopold 7, 11, 31, 33, 166
McGhie, Ellen 430
McKay, Captain Harry 132
McMurdo Sound (Bay) 6, 30–1, 40, 54–5, 60, 126, 140, 201
McMurdo station (USA) 382
Meares, Cecil (on *Terra Nova* expedition)
buys and delivers dogs and ponies 168, 186–7; 185; in the storm 195; trial dog-sledging in ice pack 197; takes dogs ashore at Cape Evans 201–2; dog-sledging practice 204–5; 210; on depot journey 211, 213; refuses to enter crevasse to rescue dogs 213–14, crossing the sea ice 220, 221; marooned at Hut Point 233, 235, 238; Scott criticises his dog handling 245; 247, 263; with dogs on Pole journey 267, 272–3, 276, 278; on the return journey 283; intention to return with *Terra Nova* 294; Scott's last instruction for meeting returning Pole party with dogs 307–8; possible consequences of his leaving expedition early 340, 341, 342, 360;

Meares, Cecil – *cont.*
criticised by Cherry-Garrard 361; in anti-Scott faction 241, 242, 421–2; character 167–8
Melbourne 182, 183
Messner, Reinhold 25, 266–7, 280, 327–8, 376
Middle Barrier Depot 207, 284, 349, 358
Mid Glacier Depot 284, 290, 327
Mill Glacier 292
Mill, Dr Hugh Robert 30, 100, 151, 412
Minna Bluff 64, 89, 110, 111, 207, 210, 271, 272
Monarch, HMS 18
Morning (*Discovery* expedition relief ship) 104–5, 106, 108, 126, 129–30
motorised polar sledge travel
Barne explores prototypes for Scott 137–8, 143, 156, 157; Charcot's machine 143; Scott's Finchley motorised sledge developed with continuous track 143, 149–50, 158–9; Shackleton's polar car fails 152, 153, 158, 170; Skelton joins Barne 158; Charcot looses confidence in his machine 162; Scott decides to take motorised sledges on *Terra Nova* expedition but not rely on them functioning 165–6; Day recruited to be in charge of motorised sledges 170; Fefor trials 173–4; one lost unloading at Cape Evans 202; performance disappoints Scott 229; winter repairs to 248; on Pole journey 264–5, 268–9; as precursor of tanks 269, 402
Mount Erebus 6, 54, 70, 104, 125, 152, 201, 256, 257
Mount Hooper Depot 355, 356, 357, 382
Mount Hope 278
Mount Markham 89, 276, 277
Mount Terror 54, 60, 256
Mulock RN, Sub-Lieut. George 105, 110, 111, 115, 128, 131, 138
Murray, Dr George 40, 43–4

Nares, Captain Sir George 6
Nansen, Fridtjof
7, 11, Scott seeks his advice 32, 33, 64–7, 90, 92, 94; 76, 83, 84, 127, 155, 157, 158, 163; introduces Gran to Scott 174–5; enigmatic response to news of Amundsen's duplicity 182; 220, 297; reaction to Amundsen's success 355; 392, 413; and Kathleen Scott 424–5; Huntford biography 429
National Geographic Society 160
National Maritime Museum 390, 434
Nelson, Edward 170, 238, 243, 250, 345
Nightingale, Florence 406–7
Nimrod (Shackleton's expedition ship) 142, 143, 144, 152
Nordenskjöld, Otto 10, 61, 109, 128, 147
North Pole 11, 156, 160

Oates, Caroline 172, 243, 245, 308, 360, 367, 421–2
Oates, Captain Lawrence (Titus) (on *Terra Nova* expedition)
knowledge of horses 167, 168; on voyage out 178, 179, 188, 189, 191; increases his ponies' fodder 185–6, 244; poor view of the ponies' quality 187, 204; saving them in storm 195, 196, 244; on depot journey 208, 220; against using *hesterskø* 209–10, 243; challenges Scott's location of One Ton Depot 212; the pony disaster 228, 229, 230–1; blames Scott for it 232; 233, 238; wants to make race for Pole 239–40, 244; praised by Scott for his care of ponies 241, 245, 275, 283; hopes not to have to say extra year 244; his Boer War leg injury

irrelevant 249, 292, 307; 251; suggests use of mules 265; pony leader on Pole journey 267, 269, 273, 274–5, 276, 277, 279, 281, 283; manhauling south 286; worries about his feet 292; 294, worries about his leg 298–9; 301; selected for Pole party 302–3, 304–5, 306; message to his mother about his notebooks 308, feeling cold and fatigue 313; on the return journey 319, 322, 324; condition worsening 324–5, 326; 'very near the end' 362; the suicide option 363; death 365–7, 390; search for his body and memorial 381; as national hero 1, 386–7, 395, 403; charge he was forced to leave tent by Scott 411–12; his last letters 420–1; leads anti Scott faction 1, 172, 183, 186, 199, 200, 209, 242, 243–5; on Teddy Evans 198; on Gran 209; Scott on Oates 200, 212–13, 242, 243, 275, 283, 301; character 171–3, 183, 186, 196, 241, 243

Oates, Violet 421

Observation Hill 60, 64, 222, 382

Omelchenko, Anton 168, 187, 249, 260, 340

One Ton Depot 206, 207, 209, 212–13, 274, 284, 337–8, 339, 342, 345, 351, 353, 355, 357, 367

Orwell, George 404

Outlands, Devenport 15, 20, 22, 177

Parry, Sir William 31

Peary, Robert
7, 11, 33, 64, 138; claims North Pole 156, 160; turns attention to South Pole 156, 160; 287, 344, 384, 388

Pennell RN, Lieut. Harry 193, 195, 197, 201, 203, 208, 215, 217

Personal Journals of Captain Scott, The (ed. Huxley) 391–3

Plumley RN, Stoker Frank 55, 69, 79, 117

Polar Record 429–30

ponies
used successfully by Shackleton 150, 152, 153–4, 166–7; ponies versus dogs debate 167; on depot journey 209–13, 215, 220, 239; advantages of *hestersko* 209–10; pony disaster 221, 222, 223–5, 226–31; 241; to go as far as Beardmore Glacier 265; to be shot as they tire 265–6; on Pole journey 270, 272, 273, 274, 275; start shooting ponies 276; pony meat caches 278; the last of the ponies despatched at Shambles Camp 280–2

Ponting, Herbert (on *Terra Nova* expedition)
66, 167; in the storm 192; to lead geologists' party 199; hazards of photography on ice floes 203, 268, 238, 269, 303, 340, 364, 393, 395, 410, 412, 435

Port Chalmers, New Zealand 187–8, 191, 192

Priestley, Raymond
(on *Nimrod* expedition) 152, 204; (on *Terra Nova* expedition) 170, 182, 203, 206; on the Norwegian challenge 216; in Northern Party 245–6, 247, 334, 335, 340; 410, 412

Pound, Reginald 413

Quail Island, Lyttelton 186–7

Quartermain, L.B. 413

Quartley RN, Ldg Stoker Arthur 69, 71, 87

Race, The (Holt) 413

Rae, Dr John 11

Razorback Island 236, 237

Rennick RN, Lieut. Henry 184

Resolute, HMS 7, 11

Resolution, HMS 4
Rhodes, Cecil 3
Richards, Admiral Sir George 7
Riffenburgh, Beau 388
Robin, Dr G. de Q. 426, 427
rock samples see geological evidence
Rodin, Auguste 136, 149
Ross Island 56, 69, 81, 89, 110, 142, 201, 207, 208, 256
Ross, James Clark 4, 5–6, 31–2, 52, 53, 55, 143, 181, 401
Ross Sea 6, 200
Rover, HMS 13, 18–19
Royal Geographical Society 4, 8, 9, 10, 28, 137, 138, 139, 146, 390
Royal Society 5, 8, 28, 147
Royds RN, Lieut. Charles (on *Discovery* expedition)
29, 34, 36, 37, 55; leads abortive Cape Crozier journey 69–72; Scott's conduit to crew 76; first winter 75, 79, 80; updates Cape Crozier message point 87; garrulous letter writer 102; attempt to blast *Discovery* free of pack 105; 111, 112; second winter 115, 116; leads Cape Crozier penguin foray 117; 128, 146; his meteorological work 148; on Scott 127; on Armitage 112; on Teddy Evans 105

Safety Camp 207, 208, 209, 213
Schwatka, Francis 11
scientific research
(on *Discovery* expedition) 9–10, 127–8, delayed and flawed assessment of expedition research 146–7; *Discovery*'s achievement 147–8
(on *Terra Nova* expedition) 158, 239, 250, 391–2, 326, 330, 384–5, 386
Scotia (Bruce's expedition ship) 61
Scott, Archie (brother) 16, 20, 21–2, 23
Scott Base (NZ) 382
Scott, Bertie (cousin) 21
Scott, Ettie (sister) 22, 24, 25, 376
Scott, Grace (sister) 20, 22, 23
Scott, Hannah (mother) 15, 23, 25, 37, 136, 376
Scott, John (father) 15, 16, 21–2, 23
Scott, Kathleen (wife)
meets Scott 135–7; marriage 149; 150; birth of Peter 161; 170, 173–4; her interest in the expedition 176; sails to Cape Town with Scott 178; and on to Melbourne 179; and to New Zealand 184; rows with Evans's 189–90; farewell to Scott 190, 191; 268, 275; hears of Amundsen's success 355, 382; hears of Scott's death on way to New Zealand 382–3; 390, 396, 411, 413, 421; Gran on her unpopularity 176; Huntford on 424
Scott, Peter (son) 161, 268, 355, 375, 383, 386, 390, 425, 426, 427–8
Scott, Philippa, Lady 390
Scott Polar Research Institute, Cambridge 145, 182, 384, 400, 426–7, 432
Scott RN, Commander Robert Falcon
family origins 15; Outlands childhood 15–17; joins training ship HMS *Britannia* 7, 17; midshipman on HMS *Boadicea* 17–18; HMS *Monarch* 18, meets Markham on training ship HMS *Rover* 13, 18–19; posted as sub-lieutenant to HMS *Amphion* 19; demonstrates leadership qualities in storm en route to Vancouver 19, HMS *Caroline* 19; torpedo training ship HMS *Vernon* 20, 21; torpedo lieutenant on HMS *Vulcan* 21; HMS *Defiance* 22; contributes section on mining to RN's Torpedo Manual 22; meets Markham again on HMS *Empress of India* 14, 22; HMS

Majestic 23; applies to lead Markham's Antarctic expedition 23–4, 25–6; promoted Commander 26
(on *Discovery* expedition) appointed leader 26; his conditions of acceptance 29, 32; concerns with *Discovery* 33–5; first meeting with Shackleton 38; becomes unchallenged leader 40; involves himself in scientific programme 44, 77–8; on the outward voyage 46–51; orders seal shoot in ice pack 52; and skiing practice 52–3; exploration along Barrier 55–7; hydrogen balloon reconnaissance 58; encourages pre-winter dog-sledge, manhaul and ski trials 63–9; leads depot-laying journey south 73–4; leads first spring outing to test dog-sledges 81; plans Southern Journey 83–4, 87; leads Southern Journey 88–99, 101–2, 104, 266; sends Shackleton home with relief ship 99–100, 101–2, 106–8; contemplates second winter 105; plans for next season 110–12; finds faster route onto Ferrar Glacier 117, his western journey 117–26, 127; his achievement 127; returns a national hero 133–4; alleged hostility to Shackleton challenged 83–4, 99–103, 107–8, 134, 134–5, 291, 423
writes *The Voyage of the 'Discovery'* 74, 135, 137; meets and proposes to Kathleen 135–7; nurtures new expedition plans 137–8; the HMS *Albemarle* collision 139, 143; reaction to Shackleton's Antarctic plans 139–42; rivalry with Shackleton established 108, 142, 150–1; commands HMS *Bulwark* 143, 146, 149; reaction to Shackleton's going back on promise 144; demands reappraisal of flawed report on *Discovery*'s scientific programme 146–7; marries Kathleen 149, promoted to Admiralty 150; welcomes Shackleton home 151–2; birth of Peter Scott 161
(on *Terra Nova* expedition) fundraising and planning 158, 160, 161–2; assembling team 158; acquires *Terra Nova* 164–5; building on Shackleton's *Nimrod* experience 162–3, 166, 168, 238–9, 264, 266, 267, 274, 277, 282, 287, 290–1, 300, 417; motorised sledge testing 173–4; response to impending war 176; mail boat to Cape Town 177–8; joins *Terra Nova* from Cape Town to Melbourne 179; reaction to Amundsen's telegram 182, 183, 184; mail boat from Melbourne to Lyttelton 184; reprieves Taff Evans 188; farewell to Kathleen 190; writes to niece 190; in the Southern Ocean storm 194–6; exasperation in pack ice 198; establishes Cape Evans camp 202; blames himself for loss of motorised sledge 202; on dog-sledging practice 204–5; encourages skiing with two sticks 205; the depot journey 206, 208; impressed by *hestersko* 210; sends weakest ponies back 211; calls halt thirty miles short of 80S 212–13, anxious to nurse ponies back to Cape Evans 213; rescues dogs from crevasse 213–14; learns Amundsen is unloading in Bay of Whales 215, 218; his reaction 219, 238, 240, 261, 264; the race for the Pole 81, 216–17, 239–40, 253–4, 261, 277, 279, 294, 313, 314–6, 425; the pony disaster 228–30; leads bold foray to Cape Evans 236–7; announces plans for following season 238–41; visits

Scott RN, Commander Robert Falcon (on *Terra Nova* expedition) – *cont.*
Shackleton's hut 247; criticises Gran 252; devises Summit Rations 259; spring outing to Ferrar Glacier 262–3; divulges his polar sledging plans 264–7; tackles financial problems 268; pony leader on Pole journey270; impressed by Meares' dogs273; and by Oates's care of ponies 275, 283; still able to manhaul with the best 289, 311; sends back first sledge team 292–4; sorts out sledge-running problem 299; factors towards selecting his five-man Pole team 302–7; sends updated instructions to Meares re meeting returning party with dogs 307–8, 341; reaction to finding Amundsen's flag at Pole 314–15, 317; observes skiing or walking immaterial to rate of manhaul progress 324; on return journey blames himself for losing route in icefield 327–9; on Taff Evans's death 334, 337; admits they are 'in very queer street' 350; the suicide option declined 365; and Oates's death 365–6, 367; foot frostbitten 367, 368; last diary entry 371–2; letter to James Barrie 375, 399, 400; last letter to Kathleen 375–6; Message to the Public 383–4, 394; did he die last? 397–401; letter to Wilson's wife 399; letter to Bowers' mother 399; Shackleton on Scott's achievement compared to Amundsen's 386; Scott's achievement 402; Scott on Teddy Evans 304; Scott on Oates 200, 212–13, 242, 243, 275, 283, 361; charge Scott forced Oates to leave tent examined 411–12; character 16–17, 20, 21, 46–8, 78, 104, 115, 116, 122, 128, 150–1, 180–1, 198, 200, 203, 232, 233, 234, 242, 251–2, 260, 267, 282, 287; aversion to cruelty but acceptance of killing dogs for dog food 94–5, 99, 167; belief in naval discipline 35–6, 75–6, 78, 79–80, 171, 205, 264, 418; as incompetent imperialist failure 2, 393, 411–12, 415, 417–18, 423, 429, 433–4; as hero exemplar 2, 386, 397, 388, 395, 396, 397, 403; leadership qualities 18, 19, 22–3, 35–6, 46, 49–50, 63, 75–6, 83–4, 91, 98, 122, 180, 185, 189, 196, 206, 237–8, 246, 251, 264; practicality, inventiveness and willingness to experiment 77, 83, 120, 166, 174–5, 210, 244, 251–2; tendency to blame himself 202, 211, 327, 367, 371, 392, 393, 394; use of diary 20, 302, 347, 371, 392–4
Scott of the Antarctic (film) 404
Scott, Rose (sister) 22
Scott's Last Expedition (ed. Huxley) 394
scurvy
deaths under Nares 6; causes not fully understood 37, 59, 75; Scott takes every opportunity to acquire fresh meat 49, 52, 59, 75, 80, 116, 247; symptoms on *Discovery* expedition 85–6; Taff Evans's vulnerability to 322; Teddy Evans nearly dies from 335, 339, 341, 372, 341; no signs on bodies of Scott, Bowers and Wilson 372
Seaver, George 102–3, 401, 413
Shackleton RNR, Sub-Lieut. Ernest (on *Discovery* expedition) 37–8; first meeting with Scott 38; in charge of stowage in London docks 41; restacking the holds en route 42; in charge of unloading and reloading at Lyttelton 49–50; 54; photography from hydrogen balloon 58; in charge of stores over winter 62, 183; on pre-

winter manhaul trial from Hut Point 64; edits *South Polar Times* 78, 83; chosen for Southern Journey 83, 84; on Southern Journey 88–100, 101–2, 104, 266; sent home as unfit with relief ship 99–100, 101–2, 106–8, welcomes Scott home 133–4; Scott's alleged hostility to Shackleton challenged 83–4, 99–103, 107–8, 134, 134–5, 291, 423; friendship with Wilson 46, 83
(on *Nimrod* expedition) 134, 135, 137; announces his plan to go for South Pole 133–39; comes to agreement with Scott to avoid McMurdo base 141–2; rivalry with Scott established 108, 142, 150–1; sets sail in *Nimrod* 142; obliged to break promise not to land at McMurdo 143–5; differences with ship's captain 143, 146; tests polarised motor car 150, 152, 153, 170; base at Cape Royds 152; expedition's first ascent of Mount Erebus 152; expedition egalitarianism examined 153; use of ponies 150, 152, 153–4, 209, 210–11, 282; no dogs taken 266; his Pole bid compared with Scott's Southern Journey 153; finds way through Gateway onto Beardmore Glacier 154, 155, 166, 278–9; achieves new farthest south 154–5; triumphant return 151–2, 155
146, 155, 178, 182; his *Nimrod* expedition studied by Amundsen 181; and by Scott 162–3, 166, 168, 238–9, 264, 266, 267, 274, 277, 282, 287, 290–1, 300, 417; his view of Scott's achievement compared to Amundsen's 386; his *Endurance* journey 388; death 401; character 35, 43, 46, 76, 287; Mawson on Shackleton 146
Shackleton Inlet 89, 96, 97, 207
Shambles Camp 207, 281, 332, 337, 342
Shaw, George Bernard 218, 219, 411–12
Sheffield, Dr Gary 409
Shepard, Oliver 246
Shirase, Lieut. Nobu 155
Simpson, George (on *Terra Nova* expedition)
169, 238, 243, 250, 262–3, 275, 303, 340, 351–2, 361; praises Scott's scientific interest 169
Sinclair, AB Robert 51
Skelton, Judy 434
Skelton, Reginald
(on *Discovery* expedition) 23, 29, 34, 36, 41; monitors *Discovery*'s fuel consumption 42; 49–50, 54, 58, 60; on abortive Cape Crozier journey 69, 70, 72; in first winter 76, 77, 85, 87, 104; in second winter 115; on western journey 117, 120, 121; his photography 128, 135; 132; on Armitage 101; helps with motorised sledge development 158–9, 174, 402; ousted from place on *Terra Nova* expedition by Teddy Evans 158–9, on deaths of Pole party 372
skis
(on *Discovery* expedition) crew try them out on ice floes 52–3; and at Hut Point 66–7; ski technique irrelevant to load-hauling 53, 68, 416, single ski stick technique 73–4, 85, 90; use on Southern Journey 90; not used by Shackleton's expedition 155
(on *Terra Nova* expedition) Gran introduced by Nansen as ski instructor 173–4; Gran instructs on ice floes 197–8; two stick technique 205, 295; 249; ponies spooked by them 270; difficulty of predicting need for 300, 310; Bowers' ability to keep up on foot with skiers when manhauling 308–9

Skuary, the 201
sleeping bags 72, 80, 249, 255
snow-blindness 95–6, 286–7, 321, 329
Solomon, Dr Susan 279, 282, 351–2, 432–3
south magnetic pole 5, 57, 89, 112, 152, 318
South Pole
Amundsen's party at 289–90; Scott's party at 314–16; Amundsen's message for Scott 316–17; Fiennes at 318, 414
South Polar Times 78, 83, 253
Spufford, Francis 429
Stanley, Henry 387
Stroud, Dr Mike
98, 283, 285, 311, 318–19, 321, 323, 325, 327; on possible cause of Evans's death 334; 335–6, 348–9, 350, 373, 403, 414–15
Summers, Geoff 66
Sverdrup, Otto 11, 249
Swan, Robert 25
Swithinbank, Dr Charles 344

Taft, President William Howard 384
Taylor, Griffith (on *Terra Nova* expedition)
170; in the storm 193; 199; with glacier study party 208, 232, 233, 236; on Cape Evans foray 237; 243, 249, 250, 340, 410
Tensing Norgay 302
Terra Incognita (wheeler) 418
Terra Nova
(*Discovery*'s relief ship) 129–32
(1910–13 expedition ship) 164–5; sails from Cardiff 177; 179; in Lyttelton 184–5; overloaded 185–6, 192; blessed by Bishop of Christchurch 188; 190; sails for Antarctica 191; weathers Southern Ocean storm 192–3, 195; in pack ice 196, 199; anchors off Cape Evans 201; runs aground 203; attempts to deliver Eastern Party 208, 215–16; lands Eastern (now Northern) Party at Cape Adare 217; leaves for New Zealand 217; returns to Cape Evans 262, 318; ferrying scientists 340; picks up leavers 340; leaves for New Zealand again 342; returns 1913 381–2
Terra Nova expedition (1910–13)
to combine scientific programme and attempt on Pole 158, 239; plans to use motorised sledges, manhauling, ponies and dogs 161, 165–7; ship acquired 164–5; team selection 167–74; *Terra Nova* sails from Cardiff 177; voyage to New Zealand 177–91; weathers Southern Ocean storm 192–3, 195; delayed in pack ice 196–201; unloading at Cape Evans 201–5; the journey to One Ton Depot 206–13; blizzard at Corner Camp 210; Amundsen's presence discovered 215–20; the pony disaster 221, 222, 223–5, 226–31; parties marooned at Hut Point 231–5; return to Cape Evans 236–7; winter 1911 at Cape Evans 238; gear checking 248–9, 255; winter scientific programme 250; midwinter celebrations 252–3; Cape Crozier penguin winter journey 254–5, 257–9; Pole journey sets out over Barrier 270–9; freak blizzard 279–80, 282, 286; reaches Gateway 281–2; onto Beardmore Glacier 283; glacier surveying 291–2; on to the high plateau 298; Pole party selected 302–7; Pole party sets off 308; passes Shackleton's farthest south 312; finds Amundsen's flag at South Pole 314–17; the return journey over plateau 318–26; onto the Beardmore

Glacier 326; rock-hunting foray 326, 330; route missed in Beardmore icefields 327–30; death of Evans 331–6; on to the Barrier 332; fuel leaks 344–6, 349, 389; freak weather on Barrier 347, 350–4, 434–5, crystaline surface impedes manhauling 350–1, 353; Oates weakening 362; the suicide option 363–5, 374; death of Oates 365–7; the last days of Scott, Bowers and Wilson 367–9, 370–1, 374–6; cause of deaths 372–3; Scott's expedition achievement compared with Amundsen's 376–7, 385, 386; second winter at Cape Evans 378–9, 381; discovery of death tent 379–81, 397–8; world response 382, 384–6; the heroic image established 386–7, 388, 395, 396, 397, 403
Terror (Ross's expedition ship) 5, 6, 143
Theroux, Paul 415
Thomson, David 414
Three Degree Depot *284*, 300, 325
Titanic sinking 382, 386, 387
Transantarctic Mountains 148

Upper Glacier Depot *284*

Vahsel Bay 146
Vernon, HMS 20, 21
Victoria Land 5, 53, 88, 111, 121, 124
Vienna Geographical Society 146
Vince RN, AB George 69, 71–2, 73, 81, 116, 131, 132, 232, 235
Voyage of the 'Discovery', The (Scott) 74, 135, 137, 171
Vulcan, HMS 21

Weddell Sea 146, 160, 182
Weller, AB William 69
Wheeler, Sara 418
White Island 56, 64, *89*, *207*, 209, 213, 268, 271, 272
Wild RN, AB Frank
(on *Discovery* expedition) 69, 71, 79, 80, 87
(on *Nimrod* expedition) 142, 152, 282, 312, 330; gives Scott *Nimrod* progress charts 274, 287
Williamson RN, AB Thomas
(on *Discovery* expedition) 117
(on *Terra Nova* expedition) 175–6, 379–80
Wilson, Dr David 426–7
Wilson, Dr Edward (Bill)
(on *Discovery* expedition) 39, 48, 52; expedition's chief butcher 54, 95, 247; 55, 59; pre-winter manhaul trial from Hut Point 64; depot-laying journey 73, in first winter 76, 77; chosen for Southern Journey 83, 84; on Southern Journey 88–99, 102, 103, 104, 266; diagnosis of Shackleton 106–7; his Emperor penguin egg research project 111, 117, 128, 147; in second winter 115, 116; consulted on Scott-Shackleton expedition clash of interests 141; disapproves of Shackleton breaking his word 144–5
(on *Terra Nova* expedition) vets scientific applicants 168–70; on voyage out 178, 179, 180; the Southern Ocean storm 192; penguin catching on floes 197, 198; at Hut Point 205; dog-driver on depot journey 206, 211, 213; the crevasse incident 214; reaction to Amundsen's presence 218, 219; crossing the sea ice 220, 221, 222, 223, 224–5; marooned at Hut Point 232, 233, 235; 243, 247, 252, 253; on Cape Crozier penguin winter journey 254–5, 257–9; pony leader on Pole journey 267, 277, manhauling south 286, 288; selected

Wilson, Dr Edward – *cont.*
for Pole party 302–4, 307; his five-man sledge drawing 305; 311; at South Pole 314–15; on the return journey 320; snow-blindness 321; 322, 324; supervises rock-hunting foray 326, 330; 329–30, 332, 346, 347, 350, 354, 355, 356, 362, 364; letter to Mrs Oates 367; wind foils intention to go with Bowers to fetch help 368–70; 372, 374; death 1, 376, 397–8, 400–1; Scott's letter to his wife 399; Wilson on Scott 1, 46, 103, 142, 436; on Scott's scientific interest 77–8; his sketches and watercolours 96, 135, 147, 305; on Armitage 112–13; on Kathleen 137
Wilson, Oriana 177, 179, 189, 190, 191; Scott's letter 399
Wilson, President Woodrow 384
Wolseley Motors, Birmingham 174
Wright, Charles (on *Terra Nova* expedition)
35, 169, 178, 182, 203; on glacier study party 208, 232; 241, 243, 250, 262; pony leader on Pole journey 267, 276–7, 278, 280, 283; manhauling south 286, 288, 291; told to turn back 293–4; 340, 341, 352, 361; discovering the death tent 373, 379–80, 397, 401

Young, Wayland 419, 423, 428
Younghusband, Major Francis 133

The life of Captain Scott by Sir Ranulph Fiennes, the man described by the Guinness Book of Records as 'the world's greatest living explorer'.

'A valuable corrective to the trend of Scott debunking . . . One by one, and with commendable attention to detail, Fiennes explodes the accumulated myths.'
Sunday Telegraph

'Fiennes' own experiences certainly allow him to write vividly and with empathy of the hell that the men went through.' *The Sunday Times*

'Fiennes expertly uses anecdotes from modern expeditions. It's hard to see how ***Captain Scott*** can be surpassed as the definitive account of the life of this remarkable man.' *Geographical Magazine*

'It is fascinating to read an account of that horrific journey written by a man whose curriculum vitae suggests that he visits the poles as casually as most of us visit the pub. He defends Scott point by point, and marshals convincing arguments from his own experiences to do so.' *Literary Review*

'Sumptous detail . . . A fascinating read, and a powerful argument against the conventional view of Scott as second best.' *Living History*

'Stirring . . . no one is better placed than Fiennes to understand what Scott may have experienced or to appreciate the enormity of his achievement.' *Daily Mail*

Visit our website at **www.madaboutbooks.com**

ISBN 0-340-82699-1

9 780340 826997 00799

CORONET BOOKS
Non-fiction/biography

UK £7.99

Cover image: *The British Antarctic Expedition, 13th April 1911, Cape Evans.*
Photograph by Herbert G. Ponting/©Popperfoto Author photograph: © John Cleare